Georgia Department of Public Health

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOLS FOR REGISTERED PROFESSIONAL NURSES IN PUBLIC HEALTH 2018

Office of Nursing

Revised August 2019

TABLE OF CONTENTS

UPDATES TO 2018 NURSE PROTOCOLS 9
INTRODUCTION TO NURSE PROTOCOLS 13
THE NURSE PROTOCOL PROCESS 17
A. MECHANISM FOR NURSE PROTOCOL DEVELOPMENT, REVIEW AND REVISION 17
B. General TimeLine for BIAnnual Review and Update of Nurse Protocols (ODD-NUMBERED YEARS) ... 19
C. TOOL FOR REVIEWING NEW NURSE PROTOCOLS 21
D. STANDARD FORMAT FOR NURSE PROTOCOLS 21
E. WORD PROCESSING FOR NURSE PROTOCOLS 22
F. CERTIFIED NURSE PROTOCOL REVIEW FORM 25
G. ACKNOWLEDGMENTS 26
GUIDELINES FOR NURSE PROTOCOLS 32
A. Purpose 32
B. Definitions 32
C. Drugs to be Covered by Nurse Protocol 33
D. Drugs covered by NURSE PROTOCOL Or Other Policy or procedure 34
E. REQUIREMENTS FOR A REGISTERED PROFESSIONAL NURSE WHO USES A NURSE PROTOCOL 35
F. LICENSED PRACTICAL NURSES 36
G. Requirements for Nurse Protocols 36
H. Delegated Authority for Ordering Dangerous Drugs 36
I. DISPENSING DANGEROUS DRUGS 37
J. Accountability 38
K. Signing Nurse Protocol Agreements 38
L. EXAMPLE nurse protocol signature page 40
M. EXAMPLE Nurse protocol for administering vaccines 41
N. EXAMPLE emergency nurse protocol agreement 42
O. Retention of Nurse Protocols 44
P. NURSE Protocol agreement formats for APRNS 44
Q. GENERAL TEMPLATE for aprn nurse protocol agreement 46
R. TEMPLATE for Women's Health nurse protocol agreement 48
S. TEMPLATE for HIV nurse protocol agreement 50
T. EXAMPLE Drug Formulary for advanced practice registered nurses 53

U. TEXTS/REFERENCES USED/RECOMMENDED FOR APRNS 56

DRUG DISPENSING PROCEDURE 61

A. Definitions 62

B. General Requirements 63

C. Drug Storage and Record Keeping 64

D. Outdated, Deteriorated, Returned and Recalled Drugs 67

E. Inventory 68

F. Labeling and Appropriate Containers 68

G. Patient Counseling Components 69

H. Drug Programs/Contracts 71

I. Dispensing/Administering of 340B and 340B PVP Products 72

J. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION 73

TRANSPORTING DANGEROUS DRUGS 78

A. PURPOSE 78

B. ACCOUNTABILITY STANDARDS 79

C. TRANSPORTING DANGEROUS DRUGS TRAINING COMPONENTS 79

D. Example of acknowledgement of completion of transporting dangerous drugs training components 81

ORIENTATION, TRAINING, AND QUALITY ASSURANCE 84

A. Initial Orientation and Training 84

B. Continuing Education/Training 84

C. Documentation of Training 85

CHILD HEALTH NURSE PROTOCOLS 89

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR MILD ACNE 90

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PEDIATRIC ALLERGIC RHINITIS 95

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR IMPACTED CERUMEN/EARWAX 105

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR CONJUNCTIVITIS 109

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR CONSTIPATION 117

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR CRADLE CAP 126

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR ATOPIC DERMATITIS (ECZEMA) 129

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR MILD CONTACT DERMATITIS 136

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR DIAPER DERMATITIS (DIAPER RASH) 142

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR DYSLIPIDEMIA SCREENING 146

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR FEVER 152
ACETAMINOPHEN 154
IBUPROFEN CHILDREN'S SUSPENSION & CHEWABLE TABLETS 155
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR IMPETIGO 160
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR TREATMENT OF IRON DEFICIENCY ANEMIA 167
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR OTITIS EXTERNA 177
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PEDICULOSIS CAPITIS (HEAD LICE) 182
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PINWORMS 193
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR RINGWORM: 198
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR RUBRAL/HEAT RASH 202
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SCABIES 206
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR TEETHING 213
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR THRUSH (ORAL CANDIDIASIS) 219
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR TINEA PEDIS 224
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR UPPER RESPIRATORY INFECTION 228

DIABETES MELLITUS IN ADULTS NURSE PROTOCOLS..... 236

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR DIABETES MELLITUS IN ADULTS 238
APPENDIX A Clinical Tasks in the Care of Patients with Diabetes 265
APPENDIX B Clinical Tasks in the Follow-up Care of Patients with Diabetes 267
APPENDIX C Treatment Algorithm of Type 2 Diabetes 269
APPENDIX D Summary of Recommendations for Adults with Diabetes 271
APPENDIX E Correlation between A1C level and mean plasma glucose levels on multiple testing over 2–3 months 273
APPENDIX F Management of Lipids in Patients with Diabetes 276
APPENDIX G Referral Sources for DSME/T and DPP/Lifestyle Change Programs 280

EMERGENCY GUIDELINES, POLICIES, PROCEDURES AND PROTOCOLS..... 286

GUIDELINES FOR EMERGENCY KITS/CARTS IN PUBLIC HEALTH CLINIC SITES 287
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR ALTERED LEVEL OF CONSCIOUSNESS, SYNCOPE AND/OR SEIZURE ACTIVITY 291
GUIDELINES FOR ALLERGIC REACTIONS, INCLUDING ACUTE ANAPHYLAXIS IN ADULTS, INFANTS AND CHILDREN 294
POLICY FOR REVIEWING EMERGENCY PROTOCOLS/PROCEDURES IN PUBLIC HEALTH CLINIC SITES..... 307
EMERGENCY CHECKLIST FOR PUBLIC HEALTH CLINIC SITES 308

EVALUATION TOOL FOR PRACTICE DRILL 310
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SHOCK/HEMORRHAGE 312
GUIDELINES FOR SUSPECTED OPIOID OVERDOSE 316

HIV 325

RECOMMENDATIONS FOR USE OF THE HIV/AIDS-RELATED STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOLS 326
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR CONTINUATION OF ANTIRETROVIRAL THERAPY IN HIV-INFECTED ADULT 327
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR DISSEMINATED MYCOBACTERIUM AVIUM COMPLEX PROPHYLAXIS IN HIV-INFECTED ADULT 334
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR HERPES ZOSTER (SHINGLES) IN HIV-INFECTED ADULT 343
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR NEW ONSET (ACUTE) DIARRHEA IN HIV-INFECTED ADULT 352
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR ORAL CANDIDIASIS IN HIV-INFECTED ADULT 361
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR OROLABIAL HERPES SIMPLEX IN HIV-INFECTED ADULT 368
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PCP PROPHYLAXIS IN HIV-INFECTED ADULT 375
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PERSISTENT (CHRONIC) DIARRHEA IN HIV-INFECTED ADULT 383
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PRE-EXPOSURE PROPHYLAXIS (PrEP) USE IN THE PREVENTION OF HIV 394
Appendix A: Clinician Determination of HIV Status for PrEP Provision 407
Appendix B Risk Behavior Assessment Tables 408
Appendix C: Paying for PrEP Patient Insurance 410
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SEBORRHEIC DERMATITIS IN HIV-INFECTED ADULT 412
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR TOXOPLASMOSIS PROPHYLAXIS IN HIV-INFECTED ADULT 420

IMMUNIZATION 429

Childhood and Adult Immunization Program 430

OTHER INFECTIOUS DISEASES 433

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR AMEBIASIS, UNCOMPLICATED (Amebic Colitis) 434
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PREVENTIVE TREATMENT OF *HAEMOPHILUS INFLUENZAE* TYPE b (Hib) DISEASE CONTACTS 440
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PREVENTIVE TREATMENT OF INVASIVE MENINGOCOCCAL DISEASE CONTACTS, INCLUDING MENINGITIS 447
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PREVENTATIVE TREATMENT OF PERTUSSIS CONTACTS 456
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR IDENTIFICATION AND TREATMENT OF PROBABLE PERTUSSIS CASES 462
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR RHEUMATIC FEVER - PROPHYLACTIC ANTIBIOTIC THERAPY 470

PREVENTION OF ZIKA RELATED INFECTION 476
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PREVENTION OF MOSQUITO RELATED ZIKA INFECTION 477
APPENDIX A RIFAMPIN PEDIATRIC DRUG CHART 482
APPENDIX B DEET CONTAINING REPELLENTS COVERED BY MEDICAID 484

PERINATAL HEPATITIS B PREVENTION 487

PRIMARY HYPERTENSION IN ADULTS 489

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PRIMARY HYPERTENSION IN ADULTS 491
Appendix A Definitions and Recommendations for Lifestyle Modifications 512
Appendix B Proper Technique for Blood Pressure Measurement 514
Appendix C EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES 517

SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED DISEASES 521

GENERAL INFORMATION REGARDING STD EVALUATION & SCREENING 523
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR GONORRHEA Uncomplicated Urethral, Endocervical, Rectal or Pharyngeal 525
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR CHLAMYDIA 537
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOLS FOR BACTERIAL VAGINOSIS (BV) 547
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR TRICHOMONIASIS 554
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR UNCOMPLICATED VULVOVAGINAL CANDIDIASIS (VVC) (Yeast infection) 562
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PELVIC INFLAMMATORY DISEASE (PID) 568
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR EPIDIDYMITIS, SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED 576
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR CERVICITIS 582
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR NONGONOCOCCAL URETHRITIS (NGU) 587
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR LYMPHOGRANULOMA VENEREUM (LGV) 594
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR GENITAL/PERIANAL WARTS 602
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR GENITAL HERPES 610
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SYPHILIS, EARLY SYMPTOMATIC (PRIMARY and SECONDARY) 622
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR LATENT SYPHILIS (EARLY AND LATE) 635
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PEDICULOSIS PUBIS (crabs/pubic lice) 650
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SCABIES RELATED TO SEXUAL TRANSMISSION 655
GA Department of Public Health Penicillin Allergy Testing (PRE-PEN) Protocol 662

TUBERCULOSIS 667

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR ACTIVE TUBERCULOSIS (TB) DISEASE AGE 15 AND OVER 669

Table 1: Regimen Options - Treatment of Patients with Drug-Susceptible TB 674
Table 2: First-Line TB Drugs Dosages 675
Table 3: TREATMENT OF TB - DRUG INTERACTIONS 681
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR LATENT TUBERCULOSIS INFECTION (LTBI) AND PRESUMPTIVE LTBI 685
Table A: Treatment of LTBI – Recommended Drug Regimens [and Dosages for Adults] and Children .. 694
Table B: Treatment of LTBI – Drug Adverse Reactions and Monitoring 695
Table C: Treatment of LTBI – Drug Interactions 697
Table D: Pediatric Dosages – Isoniazid in Children and Adolescents 699
Table E: Daily Pediatric Dosages - Rifampin in Children and Adolescents 700
Table F: Treatment of LTBI-Isoniazid and Rifapentine Dosages in Children and Adults 700

WOMEN'S HEALTH 705

CENTERS FOR DISEASE CONTROL AND PREVENTION (CDC) US MEDICAL ELIGIBILITY CRITERIA (MEC), SELECTED PRACTICE RECOMMENDATIONS (SPR) FOR CONTRACEPTIVE USE AND QUALITY FAMILY PLANNING (QFP) 706
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PREVENTIVE CARE AND HEALTH SCREENING 721
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR EMERGENCY CONTRACEPTIVE PILLS (ECPs) 730
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR INITIATION OF CONTRACEPTIVES 736
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR COMBINED HORMONAL CONTRACEPTIVES 742
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PROGESTIN-ONLY PILL (MINIPILL) 756
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR MEDROXYPROGESTERONE ACETATE (DMPA) (Injectable Contraceptive) 763
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR VAGINAL CONTRACEPTIVE DIAPHRAGM 775
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SPOTTING OR BREAKTHROUGH BLEEDING WHILE USING HORMONAL CONTRACEPTIVES 779
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR IUD-RELATED DYSMENORRHEA 786
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR COPPER IUD-RELATED MENORRHAGIA 790
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR BACTERIAL CYSTITIS 796
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR DYSMENORRHEA (PRIMARY) 801
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR IRON-DEFICIENCY ANEMIA IN NON-PREGNANT WOMEN 805
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SCREENING MAMMOGRAPHY 810
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR ORDERING DIAGNOSTIC MAMMOGRAMS AND BREAST ULTRASOUNDS 813
STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SPONTANEOUS UNILATERAL NIPPLE DISCHARGE (NON-LACTATING) 818

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR LACTATIONAL MASTITIS 824

STANDARD WOMEN'S HEALTH APRN PROTOCOLS 828

STANDARD APRN PROTOCOL FOR AMENORRHEA 830

STANDARD APRN PROTOCOL FOR CONTRACEPTIVE IMPLANT INSERTION 836

STANDARD APRN PROTOCOL FOR CONTRACEPTIVE IMPLANT REMOVAL 846

STANDARD APRN PROTOCOL FOR IUD INSERTION: COPPER T380A 851

STANDARD APRN PROTOCOL FOR IUD INSERTION: Levonorgestrel (LNG) Releasing Intrauterine System® 861

STANDARD APRN PROTOCOL FOR LOST IUD STRINGS 872

STANDARD APRN PROTOCOL FOR IUD REMOVAL/COMPLICATIONS AND ACTIONS 876

APPENDIX A: CONTRACEPTIVES 881

LEGAL REFERENCES 889

Updates to 2018 Nurse Protocols	
Tuberculosis	
Active TB Disease Age 15 and Over	Obtain Hemoglobin A1C on all patients instead of blood glucose initially and Hgb A1C only if glucose abnormal. (April 2018)
Women's Health	
Emergency Contraceptive Pills Protocol	1. Removed all language regarding the Yuzpe method from protocol. (April 2018) 2. Added language that the use of a home pregnancy test may be performed if the patient desires. (April 2018) 3. Changed language from *use a backup method for 2 weeks* to *use a backup method until next menses*. (April 2018)
Spotting or Breakthrough Bleeding While Using Hormonal Contraceptives	1. Changed maximum dose of Ibuprofen from 1.2gm/day to 2.4gm/day. (April 2018) 2. Language added that it is acceptable for woman to have a longer course of therapy with either NSAID or hormonal treatment due to breakthrough bleeding. (April 2018)
Copper IUD Related Dysmenorrhagia	Added the option to take Ibuprofen 800mg 3 times a day (maximum 2.4gm/day). (April 2018)
APRN Protocol: Contraceptive Implant Insertion	1. Clarified that if patient is using DMPA, implant insertion can occur at any time. (April 2018) 2. Removed specific language regarding the management of breakthrough bleeding for contraceptive implants; refer to Nurse Protocol for Spotting and Breakthrough Bleeding while on Hormonal Contraception instead. (April 2018)
Emergency Guidelines	
Guidelines for Emergency Kits/Carts in Public Health Clinics	Revised language regarding epinephrine vials and/or auto-injectors to be kept in carts. (August 2018)
Guidelines for Suspected Opioid Overdose	Addition of new guideline (January 2019)
HIV	

Pre-exposure Prophylaxis (PrEP) Use in the Prevention of HIV	Addition of new protocol (December 2018)
LEGAL REFERENCES	
Legal References unintentionally deleted from previous version so replaced the section with no edits. (August 2019)	

NURSE PROTOCOLS INTRODUCTION

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

INTRODUCTION TO NURSE PROTOCOLS

The nurse protocol legislation (O. C. G. A. § 43-34-23) enacted in 1989, authorizes Registered Professional Nurses (RNs) and Advanced Practice Registered Nurses (APRNs) who are agents or employees of a county board of health or the Georgia Department of Public Health (DPH) and who are adequately prepared, to perform certain delegated medical acts under the authority of nurse protocol. Since the passage of this important legislation, the DPH has provided direction and guidance relative to public health nursing practice under nurse protocol.

The purpose of this nurse protocol manual is to provide guidelines and standards for public health nursing practice under nurse protocol. Every two years, the DPH Office of Nursing coordinates the ongoing process of reviewing, revising and updating the nurse protocols to be consistent with best practice, current technology and research; throughout that two-year cycle, revisions and updates to the nurse protocols and nurse protocol manual are made and distributed as needed. Although the DPH reviews, revises and updates the nurse protocols and nurse protocol manual every two years, the districts must review, revise and update the nurse protocols used by RNs and APRNs at least once annually and make certain that the nurse protocols are signed and dated at least once annually by the RNs, APRNs and delegating physicians. The term “annually” is at least once within a twelve-month period. Thus, protocols used by RNs and APRNs can be dated and signed within twelve (12) months from the previous date, but must not exceed twelve (12) months.

Nurse protocols become effective in districts when signed each year by the delegating physician(s). Each district must maintain a copy of the nurse protocol manual and all signed nurse protocols for five (5) years.

The updated and re-dated nurse protocol manual is posted on the Office of Nursing website http://dph.georgia.gov/nurse-protocols

Abbreviations used in this manual are consistent with the Georgia DPH policy, *Use of Abbreviations, Acronyms, Symbols and Dose Designations*.

New material and wording changes are highlighted in bold print. Names of nurse protocols that contain modifications in content are highlighted in bold print in the tables of contents; if the only change in a nurse protocol is that a reference has been updated, it will not appear in bold print in the table of contents.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

THE NURSE PROTOCOL PROCESS

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

THE NURSE PROTOCOL PROCESS

The purpose of the process at the state level is to assure that nurse protocols are standardized and consistent across programs, consistent with current statutes, rules and regulations and based on the latest technology, current practice standards and cost-effective measures. The process continues at the district level where the nurse protocols are adopted for local use and signed and dated at least once annually. Although minor changes may need to be made at the district level (e.g., due to district medication availability), it is recommended that the nurse protocols be adopted without modification. When modifications are made to the nurse protocols, it is recommended that a legal and medical review be conducted at the district level to assure compliance with current statutes, rules, regulations and practice standards, and that the justification for the change be documented and on file in the District.

A. MECHANISM FOR NURSE PROTOCOL DEVELOPMENT, REVIEW AND REVISION

1. The Office of Nursing:

    a. Convenes meetings of the Nurse Protocol Committee, at least biannually (every two years).
    b. Oversees the biannual process of reviewing, revising and updating all nurse protocols and the nurse protocol manual.
    c. Manages revisions to nurse protocols in collaboration with the appropriate state office program nurses, state office of pharmacy, office of legal services, physicians and other staff as needed.
    d. Assures that the Department of Public Health Legal Services Office reviews and approves the final draft of each nurse protocol manual and nurse protocol that is reviewed, revised and updated.
    e. Assures that final signatures are obtained from the State Health Officer and Medical Director of the Nurse Protocol Committee and each physician who serves as the physician consultant for each respective nurse protocol before distributing the revised nurse protocol or the updated nurse protocol manual.
    f. Conducts Nurse Protocol Orientation and Credentialing Program for State Office Nurses at least bi-annually.

2. The Nurse Protocol Committee:

    a. Includes at least one public health physician in clinical practice, selected nurses from districts or counties, state office nurses and representatives from the state pharmacy, laboratory, and nutrition offices. A current list of the Nurse Protocol Committee members can be found in section G*, Acknowledgments.*
    b. Reviews all proposed new nurse protocols to assure that they meet established criteria for format and content.
    c. Reviews any significant/extensive revisions to existing nurse protocols to assure that they continue to meet established criteria for format and content.
    d. Reviews and approves recommended nurse protocols for inclusion in the nurse protocol manual during the biannual process of reviewing, revising and updating of

the manual.

3. State Office Nurses (SONs):

   a. Attend Nurse Protocol Orientation and Credentialing Program offered by the Office of Nursing at least bi-annually. **This credentialing program for SONs provides a formal orientation to cover the nurse protocol statute, frequently asked questions, the role of the nurse consultant and the interface between Quality Assurance/Quality Improvement and nurse protocol practice. The goal is to assure the integrity of the nurse protocol process and the quality of technical assistance and consultation provided regarding statutory requirements related to public health nursing practice.**

      This is required for designated SONs who have responsibility for the lead role in nurse protocol development, review, revision and updating, who provide consultation and technical assistance to districts and who chair the clinical teams for their program areas, as well as any designated back-up SONs who work in those program areas and are expected to provide consultation and technical assistance. It is recommended that all other SONs and others who provide critical input into nurse protocols (e.g., members of the Nurse Protocol Committee representing Pharmacy, Nutrition, Immunizations, Epidemiology and Laboratory) also complete the program.

   b. Assure that each program for which there is a nurse protocol has a designated and qualified Medical Consultant to provide and/or assist with clinical consultation and development, revision, updating and utilization of nurse protocols.
   c. Assure that the clinical team reviews the nurse protocols for their respective program and assists in drafting revisions and/or new nurse protocols at least biannually. (Each clinical team comprises, at a minimum, the state office nurse, state pharmacy director/designee, physician/medical specialist and nurses in clinical practice. Nutrition, immunizations, laboratory and epidemiology representatives are included as needed.)
   d. Assure that nurse protocols are developed or revised according to the timeline using the outline and format described in section B, *General timeline for BIAnnual Review and Update of Nurse Protocols (ODD-NUMBERED YEARS.*
   e. Assure that nurse protocols adhere to the DPH policy, *Use of Abbreviations, Acronyms, Symbols and Dose Designations.* https://dph.georgia.gov/resourcesformsmanuals
   f. Assure that new nurse protocols and extensive revisions are reviewed according to the tool in section C, *Tool for reviewing New Nurse Protocols.* A copy of the completed tool should accompany each new and extensively revised nurse protocol that is presented to the Nurse Protocol Committee.
   g. Finalize revisions and new nurse protocols after considering all comments, questions and recommendations from the clinical team and Nurse Protocol Committee reviewers.
   h. Obtain signed approval form from the clinical team Medical Consultant to accompany the updated program section or any revisions.

4. Steps for Adoption of Nurse Protocols for District Use:

   a. Use the latest nurse protocols as the basis for the yearly review and update of all nurse protocols issued.
   b. Change the information and revision date in the nurse protocol header to the appropriate district information and review/revision date before issuing them to local nurses.
   c. Add additional sources used to the reference list at the end of any nurse protocol that is changed significantly from the nurse protocol (e.g., different diagnostic criteria and/or treatment choices) to assure compliance with current statutes, rules, regulations and practice standards.

B. GENERAL TIMELINE FOR BIANNUAL REVIEW AND UPDATE OF NURSE PROTOCOLS (ODD-NUMBERED YEARS)

Activity	Person(s) Responsible	Month
1. Convene the Nurse Protocol Committee mid-year meeting via conference call. Confirm specific dates for timeline.	Office of Nursing	January
2. Review/update Nurse Protocol Manual:		January – April
a. Review/update programmatic nurse protocols with clinical teams. Submit new nurse protocols to Protocol Committee members, with completed Review Tool *(Tool for reviewing New Nurse Protocols).*	State Office Nurses	
b. Participate on clinical teams for all nurse protocols as needed.	Office of Pharmacy**,** District Pharmacy, Immunization, Nutrition, Lab	
c. Review/update non-programmatic portions of the manual.	Office of Nursing	
3. Submit final drafts of nurse protocols for Office of Nursing review. Obtain Medical Consultant signatures on protocol review forms *(Certified Nurse Protocol Review Form).*	State Office Nurses	April - May
4. Nurse Protocol Committee Meeting:		May
a. Convene and lead meeting.	Office of Nursing	
b. Describe revisions/changes to each program's nurse protocols.	State Office Nurses	

c. Approve the nurse protocols.	Nurse Protocol Committee	
5. Assure that editing is complete and submit final draft for legal review. Make additional editing changes as advised.	Office of Nursing	June - July
6. Obtain final approval of manual from Medical Director for the Nurse Protocol Committee and DPH Commissioner and obtain signatures on cover page.	Office of Nursing	August
7. Distribute revised manuals electronically to health districts. **Provide hardcopies of the revised manual to OON staff, State Office Nurse Consultants, and DPH Legal Office.**	Office of Nursing	September
8. Update website.	Office of Nursing	September – December
9. Review and update district nurse protocols.	District Nursing & Clinical Directors	September – December
10. Adopt updated nurse protocols and train nurses.	District Nursing & Clinical Directors	December – January

C. TOOL FOR REVIEWING NEW NURSE PROTOCOLS

Purpose of the tool: An instrument for use by clinical teams when developing a new nurse protocol (or extensively revising an existing nurse protocol). Submit a copy of the completed form with the proposed new/revised nurse protocol to all members of the Nurse Protocol Committee, as a guide for their review.

Title of Nurse Protocol: _____

Program:_____ Date: _____

Criteria	Yes	No	Incomplete	Comments
1. Content includes practice which is consistent with the definition of a Nurse Protocol, i.e., ordering drugs, medical treatments, and/or diagnostic studies; dispensing drugs.				
2. Content complies with pertinent Laws, Rules, & Regulations and Policies/Guidelines.				
3. Content reflects consistency with current practice standards, research, and literature.				
4. Interventions are considered reasonable from a cost standpoint.				
5. Content consistent across all programs and populations served*.				
6. Reviewed by: a. Physician b. Nursing c. Pharmacy d. Nutrition e. Lab f. Other:				

*Specify, in the Comments column, the programs that have reviewed this nurse protocol.

Completed by: _____

D. STANDARD FORMAT FOR NURSE PROTOCOLS

TITLE

DEFINITION Define the condition

ETIOLOGY Describe the cause and/or contributing factors

SUBJECTIVE History, Symptoms

OBJECTIVE Signs, Physical examination findings, Laboratory findings

ASSESSMENT Nursing Diagnosis/Clinical Judgment

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES** (If applicable)

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

a. Generic drug name (or correct brand name) and strength
b. Dose/dosage form
c. Route of administration
d. Frequency
e. Duration

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES (If applicable)

a. Examples: nutrition, application of heat

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Informational packets
   a. Symptoms
      NOTE: Refers to a.
   b. Treatments

NOTE: Refers to 1.

FOLLOW-UP

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

REFERENCES

List the sources used to write the nurse protocol, in the format found in Section 15 of *The Gregg Reference Manual, **Eleventh** Edition*. Use at least one reference that is dated within the past 2-3 years, or note as **(Current)** any older reference.

E. WORD PROCESSING FOR NURSE PROTOCOLS

PROGRAM Microsoft Word

FONT Arial Regular 12; header/footer is to be in Arial Regular 9
New material and wording changes are to be in bold font. In tables of contents, nurse protocols containing changes in content are to be in bold font (if the only change is that a reference has been updated, it is not to be in bold font).

MARGINS Top and Bottom – 0.8 Left and Right – 0.8 Footer and Header – 0.5

TABS	Every 5 spaces (0.5 inches) from left margin
TITLE FORMAT	The all-capitalized title of the nurse protocol is centered on two lines, with two spaces after the title. **EXAMPLE** **STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR** **(DISEASE OR CONDITION)**
SPACING	Two spaces between major headings and numbered subheading. Exception: between references, which begin at the left margin and are single-spaced.
PUNCTUATION	**One** space after each period and colon. Exception: 0.5-inch tab following periods in outline numbers or letters.
TEXT ALIGNMENT	The text will be left justified but will not be right justified or centered with exception of the TITLE and the Header/Footer. (The text will have a smooth left edge and a jagged right edge.)
CAPS/BOLDING	**TITLE** Each major section, and sub-sections under **PLAN.** Under **PHARMACOLOGIC** the words **AND, OR, PLUS,** and **FOLLOWED BY.** Place these words one tab over from the text. **NOTE** is used to call attention to important information and the word **NOTE** should be bolded. However, the text after **NOTE** is written normally (non-bolded).
OUTLINING	The outline format starts with numbers, (1., 2., etc.)

EXAMPLE

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

(May or may not have text here first)

1. Text

   a. Text

   b. Text
      1) Text
      2) Text
         a) Text
         b) Text

2. Text

NOTE: There must be more than one item in a subsection to use numbers, letters, or bullets.

ITALICS Italics are used in the **ETIOLOGY** section and occasionally in other sections, for the names of microorganisms.

HEADERS Before issuing protocol(s) to nurses, change the header to the issuing District's information and the date of issuance. Header is to be in Arial Regular 9 bold font. It is to be right justified.

EXAMPLE

Health District
Standard Nurse Protocols for Registered Professional Nurses
2018

Headers should be on all pages of the manual except for the title page. Under File, Page Set-up, set header margin at 0.5 inches. Then use the Header/Footer feature under "View" at the top of the screen. Editing a header will change it for the entire following section.

FOOTERS Under File, Page Set-up, set footer margin at 0.5 inches. Then use the Header/Footer feature under "View" at the top of the screen. Editing a footer will change it for the entire following section.

The section name of the manual should be centered. The page number should be at the right margin. Use Arial Regular 9 font.

F. CERTIFIED NURSE PROTOCOL REVIEW FORM

This certifies that I have reviewed the nurse protocols defined below for use by Public Health Nurses in the expanded role and Advanced Practice Registered Nurses in Public Health:

Clinical Team Physician_____ Phone_____

Signature_____

Date Reviewed_____

Specialty _____

Affiliations_____

_____

Title(s) of Nurse Protocol(s):

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

G. ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

NURSE PROTOCOL COMMITTEE

Kortney Floyd, CPNP Deputy Chief Nurse for Nurse Protocols Department of Public Health	**William Grow, FACP** District Health Director, District **8**-1 Medical Director, Nurse Protocol Committee
Meshell McCloud, RN, MS, APRN, WHNP-BC Deputy Chief Nurse, DPH Georgia Department of Public Health	Melissa Tobin D'Angelo, MD Physician Consultant Acute Disease Epidemiology Section Georgia Department of Public Health
Janet McGruder, BSN, RN, MBA PHSO Nurse Consultant Immunization Unit Department of Public Health	Sandra Metcalf MPH, BSN, RN QM Nurse Consultant HIV Office Department of Public Health
Michael (Mac) Coker, MSN, RN, ACRN HIV/AIDS Nurse Consultant Department of Public Health	Jessica Tuttle, M.D. Physician Consultant Epidemiology Section, Department of Public Health
Tonia Parrott, Ph.D, MT (ASCP) Clinical Microbiology Services Director Georgia Public Health Laboratory Georgia Department of Public Health	Takeiya Jones BSN, RN, CLC Child Health Clinical Coordinator, Maternal and Child Health Section Georgia Department of Public Health
Kimberley Hazelwood, PharmD Pharmacy Director Department of Public Health	Donelle Humphrey-Franklin, RPh, MBA Assistant Pharmacy Director Department of Public Health
Kimberly Brown STD Nurse Consultant **Department of Public Health**	Shana Scott JD, MPH Health Systems Team Lead Chronic Disease Prevention Section Georgia Department of Public Health
Sara Kroening RN, MSN, FNP-BC Deputy Chief Nurse- School Health Georgia Department of Public Health	Angela Y. Bradford RD, LD Program Specialist/Nutrition Education Georgia WIC Program, Program Operations and Nutrition Office **Georgia Department of Public Health**
Marie Smith, RN, BSN Director of Nursing & Clinical Services North Georgia Health District (Dalton)	Bonnie Cox Nurse Consultant Maternal and Child Health Section Georgia Department of Public Health

Lisa Thomas, RN, BSN, MSN Director of Nursing & Clinical Services South Health District	Angie Callaway, RN, BSN Assistant Director of Public Health Nursing North Georgia Health District
Betty Dixon, BSN, MHSA, DrPH Director of Nursing & Clinical Services Coastal Health District	Catharine Smythe, RN, MSN Director of Nursing & Clinical Services Cobb/Douglas Health District
Keisha Lewis-Brown, RN, BSN, MSN Director of Nursing East Metro Health District	Kelly Knight, RN, APRN Director of Nursing & Clinical Services South Central Health District
Caroline Hawkins, MHP, BSN, APRN-BC District Nursing Director Clayton Health District	Tammy Burdeaux, RN, BSN, CRNI Director of Nursing & Clinical Services East Central Health District
Kitty Bishop RN, MSN Director of Nursing & Clinical Services Southwest Health District	Angie Hanes, RN-C Director of Nursing & Clinical Services North Health District
Cheryl Bandy, RN, BSN Director of Nursing & Clinical Services Northwest GA Health District	Patricia Joseph, RN, MBA Manager of Nursing Services DeKalb County Board of Health
Wendy LeVan, RN, BSN Director of Nursing & Clinical Services LaGrange Health District	Anita Barkin, RN, FNP, DrPH Director of Nursing & Clinical Services North Central Health Dist.
Pam Smith MSN, WHNP-BC, IBCLC District of Nursing & Clinical Services Northeast Health District	Susan Alt, BSN, ACRN HIV/AIDS Services, District 9-1
Kay Davis, RN, MSN Assistant Director of PH Nursing & Clinical Services Southeast Health District	Amy Fenn, RN Assistant Director of Nursing Child Health Coordinator LaGrange Health District
Tori Endres, RN, MSN Director of Nursing & Clinical Services West Central Health District	Cindi R, Hart, RN, MSN Nursing & Clinical Director Southeast Health District

PHYSICIAN CONSULTANTS

	TITLE	**ADDRESS**
William Grow, MD, FACP **Medical Director of Nurse Protocol Committee**	District Health Director District 8-1	P.O. Box 5417 Valdosta, GA 3601
Melissa Kottke, MD, MPH, MBA Women's Health Nurse Protocols	Assistant Professor, GYN/OB Emory University Medical Director, Jane Fonda Center for Adolescent Health	Emory University 1256 Briarcliff Road Atlanta, GA 30306
Gregory S. Felzien, MD, AAHIVS HIV/AIDS, STD and Other Infectious Diseases Nurse Protocols	Medical Advisor Division of Health Protection, IDI-HIV Georgia Department of Public Health	15th Floor 2 Peachtree Street, NW Atlanta, GA 30303
Susan Ray, MD Tuberculosis Nurse Protocols	Associate Professor, Infectious Disease, Emory University School of Medicine	Emory University School of Medicine Woodruff Extension Building: Room 206 46 Armstrong St., S.E. Atlanta GA 30303
Patrick O'Neal, MD Emergency Procedures Nurse Protocols	**Commissioner, Georgia Department of Public Health**	15th Floor 2 Peachtree Street, NW Atlanta, GA 30303
Vivian Lennon, MD, FAAP Children's Health Nurse Protocols	Medical Director Primary Care Children's Healthcare of Atlanta at Chamblee-Primary Care Center	Plaza Fiesta, 4166 Buford Hwy NE, Atlanta, GA 30345

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

GUIDELINES FOR NURSE PROTOCOLS

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

GUIDELINES FOR NURSE PROTOCOLS

A. PURPOSE

The purpose of these guidelines is to provide direction, promote consistency and support practice under nurse protocol by registered professional nurses in public health, in accordance with all applicable statutes, rules and regulations.

B. DEFINITIONS

1. Nurse Protocol

   Nurse Protocol means a written document mutually agreed upon and signed by a nurse and a licensed physician, by which the physician delegates to that nurse the authority to perform certain medical acts pursuant to subsection (b) of O.C.G.A. § 43-34-23. These acts shall include, without being limited to, the administering and ordering of any drug. O.C.G.A. § 43-34-23(a)(7).

   Each registered professional nurse (RN) must have access to the current standard nurse protocol(s), under which the RN is practicing at the practice site. Each RN may have his/her individual set of standard nurse protocols which are signed by the nurse and the delegating physician(s) or there may be one set of standard nurse protocols which each RN and the delegating physician(s) sign.

2. Order

   Order means to select a drug, medical treatment or diagnostic study through physician delegation in accordance with a nurse protocol or a physician assistant's job description. Ordering under such delegation shall not be construed to be prescribing, which act can only be performed by the physician, nor shall ordering of a drug be construed to authorize the issuance of a written prescription. O.C.G.A. § 43-34-23(a)(8).

   The RN shall write the drug order in accordance with the nurse protocol and based on a patient assessment each time the drug is ordered. If the patient continues the drug on subsequent visits, the nurse must reorder the drug based on the nurse protocol. Documentation of the written drug order by the RN shall include the following components:

   a. Date ordered
   b. Generic name or actual brand name of drug
   c. Strength of drug
   d. Dose
   e. Dosage form
   f. Route of administration
   g. Frequency

h. Duration of therapy
i. Quantity dispensed/provided
j. Signature of RN or APRN who ordered the drug

3. Delegating Physician

   Delegating Physician means the physician(s) who has/have mutually agreed to and signed the nurse protocol. The District Health Director may be the delegating physician or one of the delegating physicians. The Department of Public Health recommends that each delegating physician be engaged in current clinical practice on a full-time or part-time basis.

4. **Dispensing Physician**

   Dispensing Physician is a physician that dispenses[1] medications in the absence of a Pharmacist. State law allows physicians to dispense pharmaceuticals from their office once processes are completed to become compliant with state law regulations regarding dispensing pharmaceuticals. More information can be found at https://medicalboard.georgia.gov/become-dispensing-physician

5. Legal Signature

   Entries into the patient's medical record must be dated and signed by the person responsible, using full name and letters that denote professional title (e.g., Suzie A. Jones, R.N. or Suzie A. Jones, A.P.R.N.).

6. Dispensing Procedure

   Dispensing procedure means a written document signed by a licensed pharmacist and a licensed physician, which establishes the appropriate manner under which drugs may be dispensed pursuant to this Code Section.[2]

7. Record Review

   Specify that record reviews of nursing practice under nurse protocol (of RNs and APRNs) by the delegating physician will be completed at least once annually. Ideally, it is preferred that record reviews be completed on a quarterly basis throughout each year to identify strengths and opportunities for improvement in a timely manner.

C. DRUGS TO BE COVERED BY NURSE PROTOCOL

Any drugs which the RN orders and dispenses must be covered by nurse protocol.

---

1 **Dispense means to issue one or more doses of any drug in a suitable container with appropriate labeling for subsequent administration to, or use by, a patient. O. C.G.A. § 43-34-23 (a) (3.1)**
2 O. C.G.A. § 43-34-23

The following drugs are to be covered by nurse protocols:

Dangerous Drugs means any dangerous drug as defined in O.C.G.A. § 16-13-71, but does not include any controlled substance or Schedule I controlled substance.

Dangerous drugs are required to bear upon the package the words "Caution Federal Law Prohibits Dispensing Without Prescription," "Rx Only" or words of like import. These drugs may also be referred to as "Legend" drugs.

Dangerous drugs are not to be stored in the nurse's home, car, or other prohibited location.

D. DRUGS COVERED BY NURSE PROTOCOL OR OTHER POLICY OR PROCEDURE

1. Immunizations/Vaccines: All public health locations that provide vaccine services will utilize the current edition of the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program (GIP) Manual, which is developed based on the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices Recommendations and the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention's (CDC) Epidemiology and Prevention of Vaccine Preventable Diseases' (Pink Book) for administering vaccines to children and adults located at: https://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-publications

   a. RNs and APRNs administer vaccines under a nurse protocol based on Code Section **43-34-23 and** 43-34-25 in accordance with the Immunization Program Manual.
   b. LPNs do not practice under nurse protocol. LPNs administer vaccines (they do not order or dispense drugs) under the supervision of an RN, APRN or Physician in accordance with the Georgia **Licensed Practical** Nurse Practice Act [O.C.G.A. § 43-26-32(7)].
   c. For Off-site Settings, vaccine services will be provided under the same immunization nurse protocol in off-site settings (e.g., school flu clinics) as described above. A copy of the immunization nurse protocol document should be taken to each offsite clinic location. The GIP Manual can be accessed off-site via the web link above.

2. Over the Counter (OTC)/Nonprescription Drugs are given to patients or called in to a pharmacy. These drugs include vitamins, oral iron preparations, acetaminophen, etc., which do not bear upon the package the words "Caution Federal Law Prohibits Dispensing Without Prescription," or "Rx Only."

   a. Nurse Protocol must be in place for the following situations:
      1) If the OTC drug is repackaged (i.e., taken out of the manufacturer's original container, such as a bottle of 100 tablets) and/or labeled in any manner or with any information different from the manufacturer's label, the drug must be provided in accordance with nurse protocol.
      2) If the OTC drug is called in to a licensed pharmacist who will provide the drug to the patient (e.g., NIX Creme Rinse for a Medicaid eligible

patient), the drug must be provided in accordance with nurse protocol.

b. District/County Policy **&** Procedure or Nurse Protocol. If the OTC drugs are in the original manufacturer's container and no changes are made in the directions on the manufacturer's label (i.e., given to the patient just as it comes from the manufacturer), this may be covered by either district/county policy and procedure or nurse protocol.
c. No Policy and Procedure or Nurse Protocol Needed. If an OTC drug is recommended to the patient by the RN but not given to the patient nor called in to the pharmacy, it does not need to be covered by a policy, procedure, or nurse protocol. Such recommendations should be documented in the patient's medical record.

3. Professional Drug Samples: Professional Drug samples are forbidden in public health facilities unless a written district policy or procedure has been established to allow a licensed physician and/or a licensed pharmacist to request, receive and sign for professional drug samples and to distribute the professional drug samples to patients. The written district policy or procedure must be approved by the State Office of Pharmacy. (See Drug Dispensing Procedure).

4. Dangerous drugs: Drugs whose packaging includes the words "Caution Federal Law Prohibits Dispensing Without Prescription," or "Rx Only." RNs must follow nursing protocol to dispense or call in to pharmacy). Refer to section I, Dispensing Dangerous Drugs, and the Drug Dispensing Procedure.

5. During times of emergency, an emergency nurse protocol agreement should be developed to establish **an agreement** between a delegating physician and RNs and/or APRNs to authorize them to administer, order and dispense specific dangerous drugs. See the Emergency Nurse Protocol Agreement sample that follows.

E. REQUIREMENTS FOR A REGISTERED PROFESSIONAL NURSE WHO USES A NURSE PROTOCOL

A Registered Professional Nurse who uses a nurse protocol must:

1. Hold a current license to practice as a registered professional nurse (RN) in Georgia,

2. Document preparation and performance specific to each medical act authorized by a nurse protocol, including ordering dangerous drugs, medical treatments or diagnostic studies. Prior to the RN functioning under a nurse protocol, there should be written documentation that the RN has training, preparation and/or orientation relative to each medical act authorized by the specific nurse protocol and can perform such acts. Documentation may include supervisory notes, orientation plans, direct observation of clinical performance, skills checklist(s) and/or performance appraisal(s), and

3. Adhere to the written nurse protocol.

F. LICENSED PRACTICAL NURSES

LPNs in public health administer drugs **as assigned** under the supervision of either an RN, APRN or physician and in accordance with the Georgia **Licensed Practical** Nurse Practice Act [O.C.G.A. § 43-26-32(7)].

G. REQUIREMENTS FOR NURSE PROTOCOLS

A nurse protocol must meet all the following requirements:

1. Be reviewed, revised or updated annually. **Per** DPH legal services, the term "annually" is interpreted to mean twelve (12) months. However, nurse protocols can be dated and signed within twelve (12) months of the previous date, but must not exceed twelve (12) months. This means that if a nurse protocol was signed on March 15, 201**8**, that same nurse protocol must be signed on or by March 15, 201**9 to** continue to practice under the respective nurse protocol. The nurse protocol must bear the review date and signatures of the delegating physician(s) and RN(s). There is no authority to perform acts using a nurse protocol which has expired without annual review, revisions and updates.

2. Specify that record reviews of nursing practice under nurse protocol (of RNs and APRNs) by the delegating physician will be completed at least once annually. Ideally, it is preferred that record reviews be completed on a quarterly basis throughout each year **to** identify strengths and opportunities for improvement in a timely manner.

3. Be available and accessible in each of the specific settings where RNs function under nurse protocols and be available upon request.

4. Include the specific terms/conditions under which delegated medical acts may be performed.

5. Include the condition(s) for immediate consultation with a delegating physician or a physician designated in his or her absence.

6. Include a statement that the RN has read and understands all statutes, rules and regulations pertaining to nursing practice under nurse protocol and has read and understands the drug dispensing procedure.

H. DELEGATED AUTHORITY FOR ORDERING DANGEROUS DRUGS

RNs who are delegated the authority to order dangerous drugs must do so in accordance with written nurse protocols. The nurse protocol must outline the parameters that must be followed pursuant to ordering the drug and must also specify the drug and the specific conditions under which it may be ordered.

I. DISPENSING DANGEROUS DRUGS

RNs are authorized to dispense dangerous drugs only under the following conditions:

1. The dispensing is in accordance with a written drug dispensing procedure[3] and under the authority of an order issued in conformity with a nurse protocol.

2. There must be documented preparation and performance (i.e., ability to perform) specific to dispensing dangerous drugs based on a written dispensing procedure. Documentation should include that each RN has read and understands the drug dispensing procedure.

3. A copy of the drug dispensing procedure must be accessible in each of the specific settings where RNs dispense under nurse protocols and be available upon request. The procedure must be signed by the pharmacist and physician who have established it.

4. The RN shall exercise diligence in protecting drugs and records from loss or theft, in accordance with the rules of the Georgia Board of Pharmacy.

5. The RN is not authorized to dispense a drug:

    a. Based on a prescription written by either a public health or private physician;
    b. Pursuant to an order written on a patient's chart by a physician, an advanced practice registered nurse, physician's assistant or another RN;
    c. Based on a written or verbal recommendation from a communicable disease specialist (CDS); or
    d. Based on a drug order received over the phone.
    e. When any of the above situations occur, the RN functioning under nurse protocols:
        1) Adds the written information or documents the oral information received (e.g., medical diagnosis, physician's prescription) to the patient's chart;
        2) Reviews any written information in the chart; and
        3) Based on his/her review of the information and clinical assessment of the patient, decides whether to order any of the drugs listed in the appropriate nurse protocol, to seek medical consultation or to refer the patient.
    f. If the nurse decides to order a drug listed in the nurse protocol, he/she assumes responsibility for ordering the drug in accordance with the nurse

3 Georgia Board of Pharmacy Rules 480-30-.02- General Requirements, “Any person who dispenses drugs in accordance with a dispensing procedure and under the authority of a job description or standard nurse protocol shall comply with all record keeping, labeling, packaging and storage requirements imposed upon pharmacists and pharmacies with regard to such drugs pursuant to O.C.C.A. § 26-4 and 16-13, and those regulations contained in this chapter.”

protocol and dispensing the drug **per** a written drug dispensing procedure. An example of how this may be documented in the patient's chart is as follows:

ASSESSMENT
History and clinical data do not contraindicate OCs.

PLAN
Ortho Tri-Cyclen one tablet PO daily for 12 months. Dispensed 12 cycles. Provided instruction about the drug, how to take **drug,** and symptoms**/**side effects to report.

Next visit **September 1,** (current year).

NOTE: The nurse can dispense drugs only on his/her own order and in accordance with a nurse protocol agreement and a drug dispensing procedure.

g. If the nurse seeks medical consultation, the results of the consultation are documented in the patient's chart. Based on the medical consultation and clinical assessment of the patient, the nurse decides whether to order any of the drugs in the nurse protocol, to seek further medical consultation or to refer the patient. This includes when the medical consultation results in a dosage, drug or any medical act which is not covered by the current nurse protocol.
h. If the nurse decides to refer the patient, the referral must be documented in the patient's chart. The documentation should include where/to whom the patient was referred, what medical information was sent with the patient or authorized to be released and any assistance and/or instructions provided to the patient. Results of the referral and any changes in the patient's plan of care should subsequently be documented.

J. ACCOUNTABILITY

The District Health Director is accountable for ensuring that the appropriate nurse protocols are in place in his/her district. The District Health Director and the District Public Health Nursing and Clinical Director should collaborate in the development, monitoring and updating of nurse protocols, assuring compliance with all statutes, rules and regulations pertaining to practice under nurse protocol. Each district should also form and sustain a District Nurse Protocol Committee to assist in managing the ongoing review of the nurse protocols.

K. SIGNING NURSE PROTOCOL AGREEMENTS

1. Signature Requirements

   a. Items to include on the signature page to document compliance with specific rules and regulations of the Georgia Board of Nursing (GBON) and the Board of

Pharmacy:

1) That each RN is adequately trained and prepared to perform the delegated medical acts (document the specific training in the nurse's personnel or supervisory file).
2) That the RN has read and understands all statutes, rules, and regulations pertaining to nursing and nursing practice under nurse protocol and have read and understand the drug dispensing procedure.
3) That record reviews of nursing practice under nurse protocol (of RNs and APRNs) by the delegating physician will be completed at least **annually. Ideally, it is preferred that the record reviews be completed on a quarterly basis throughout each year to identify strengths and opportunities for improvement in a timely manner.**

b. The signature page should represent an agreement between the delegating physician(s) and the RN(s).
c. Each person should use his/her legal signature as it appears in patient records (i.e., full name/letters denoting the professional title - MD, DO, RN).
d. A nurse protocol must be reviewed, revised or updated annually. The nurse protocol signature page must be dated within 12 months of the previous date signed. This means that if a nurse protocol was signed on March 15, 201**8**, that same nurse protocol must be signed on or by March 15, 201**9 to** continue to practice under the respective nurse protocol. Rationale for this includes the following:
    1) The nurse protocol agreement is a legal document used by the Registered Professional Nurse (RN) and each RN and delegating physician(s) should assure the nurse protocol signature page is signed within 12 months of the previous date.
    2) **Per** DPH legal services, the term "annual" is interpreted to mean 12 months**.**
    3) **Per** the Inspector General's Office, from an auditor's perspective, "annual" means 12 months without fail.

e. A single signature page may cover a single nurse protocol, a set of nurse protocols or multiple nurse protocols **if** revisions are signed and dated by all parties (refer to the example on the following page).

2. Review/Revision Requirements

All nurse protocols must be reviewed at least annually. Changes in drug treatment and health care technology should be incorporated into revised nurse protocols in a timely manner. Annual reviews and revisions which involve ordering drugs, diagnostic studies and/ or treatments should be signed and dated by the delegating physician(s) and the nurse(s). Supervisors should assure that nurses have been taught about each nurse protocol and any revisions before they sign the nurse protocol agreement.

L. EXAMPLE NURSE PROTOCOL SIGNATURE PAGE

NURSE PROTOCOL SIGNATURE PAGE

The signatures below indicate **an agreement** between the delegating physician(s) and the registered professional nurse(s) (RNs) who are authorized to perform the delegated medical acts contained in the nurse protocols for [insert name of designated nurse protocols (e.g., Family Planning) and date on nurse protocols (e.g., 1/10)].

All RNs and APRNs whose signatures appear on this page:

1. Have been adequately trained and are prepared to perform the delegated medical acts contained in the designated nurse protocols; such training is documented in the nurses' personnel/supervisory files.

2. Have read and understand all statutes, rules and regulations pertaining to nursing practice under nurse protocol and have read and understand the drug dispensing procedure.

3. Have been given an opportunity to have questions answered.

Record reviews by the delegating physician(s) will be completed at least once annually. Ideally, it is preferred that record reviews be completed on a quarterly basis throughout each year **to** identify strengths and opportunities for improvement in a timely manner.

_____ _____
Signature of Delegating Physician Date

_____ _____
Signature of RN Date

M. EXAMPLE NURSE PROTOCOL FOR ADMINISTERING VACCINES

NURSE PROTOCOL FOR ADMINISTERING VACCINES
SIGNATURE PAGE

NOTE: This type of signature page would be used by RN or APRNs when the vaccine must be transported to non-county Health Department sites such as school-based clinics.

The signatures below indicate **an agreement** between the delegating physician(s) and the registered professional nurse(s) RN(s) who are authorized to administer the following vaccines:

- Seasonal Influenza Vaccine
- Meningococcal Vaccine
- Pneumococcal Vaccine
- Tetanus-containing Vaccine

All RNs and APRNs whose signatures appear on this signature page:

1. Have been adequately trained and are prepared to perform the delegated medical acts contained in the designated nurse protocols; such training is documented in the nurses' personnel/supervisory files.

2. Have read and understand all statutes, rules and regulations pertaining to nursing practice under nurse protocol and have read and understand the drug dispensing procedure.

3. Have been given an opportunity to have questions answered.

Record reviews by the delegating physician(s) will be completed at least once annually. Ideally, it is preferred that record reviews be completed on a quarterly basis throughout each year **to** identify strengths and opportunities for improvement in a timely manner.

_____ _____
Signature of Delegating Physician Date

_____ _____
Signature of RN Date

N. EXAMPLE EMERGENCY NURSE PROTOCOL AGREEMENT

EMERGENCY NURSE PROTOCOL AGREEMENT
FOR ADMINISTERING, ORDERING, AND DISPENSING SPECIFIC DANGEROUS DRUGS DURING TIMES OF EMERGENCY

NOTE: This type of signature page would be used during times of emergency (e.g., anthrax attack, pandemic). The Public Health District may use this to develop a nurse protocol to expedite the process of treating individuals impacted by the emergency.

The signatures below indicate **an agreement** and understanding between the delegating physician(s) and the registered professional nurse(s) (RNs) and/or advanced practice registered nurses (APRNs) that the undersigned individuals are authorized to administer, order and dispense the specific dangerous drugs listed below in accordance with the manufacturer's information attached to this signature page for each of the drugs listed:

DANGEROUS DRUGS TO BE ADMINISTERED:

For the following populations (i.e., adult, children **older** than 5 years of age, pregnant women):
1._____ 2._____

For the following indications listed:
1._____ 2._____

List the specific drugs to be administered, attach the Drug Manufacturer's insert for each):
1._____ 2._____

DANGEROUS DRUGS TO BE ORDERED AND DISPENSED:

For the following populations (i.e., adult, children **older** than 5 years of age, pregnant women):
1._____ 2._____

For the following indications listed:
1._____ 2._____

List specific Drugs to be ordered and dispensed, attach the Drug Manufacturer's insert for each):
1._____ 2._____

The delegating physician, RNs and APRNs whose signatures appear on this signature page agree that the RNs and APRNs:

1. Have been adequately trained and are prepared to perform the delegated medical acts contained in the designated nurse protocols; such training is documented in the nurses' personnel/supervisory files.

2. Have read and understand all statutes, rules and regulations pertaining to nursing practice under nurse protocol and have read and understand the drug dispensing procedure.

3. Have been given an opportunity to have questions answered.

4. Record reviews by the delegating physician(s) will be completed at least once annually. Ideally, it is preferred that record reviews be completed on a quarterly basis throughout each year **to** identify strengths and opportunities for improvement in a timely manner.

5. This authorization/agreement shall terminate **after** the emergency or when my services are no longer required.

Signature of Delegating Physician	Date
Signature of RN or APRN	Date
Signature of RN or APRN	Date
Signature of RN or APRN	Date
Signature of RN or APRN	Date

O. RETENTION OF NURSE PROTOCOLS

1. The district shall retain one copy of each nurse protocol for at least five years, so that it can be retrieved in case of an audit or legal issue.
2. The Department of Public Health shall maintain copies of the Nurse Protocol Manual produced by the Department for at least five years.

P. NURSE PROTOCOL AGREEMENT FORMATS FOR APRNS

Advanced Practice Registered Nurses (APRNs) in public health may use the same format for nurse protocols as that used by RNs and/or they may use the following APRN format. The following format provides the essential components of what should be included in the nurse protocol for APRNs.

1. Area of Specialty. Specify the area(s) of specialty in which the APRN holds current certification, as authorized by the Georgia Board of Nursing.

2. Dangerous Drugs. A nurse protocol must specify parameters under which delegated medical acts may be performed; therefore, the written nurse protocol agreement for APRNs must specify the drugs that may be ordered. The nurse protocol agreement must either include a list of drugs to be ordered or a drug formulary must be attached to the nurse protocol agreement.

   Drugs selected should follow drug formulary guidelines that base drug selection on the most clinically appropriate and cost-effective drugs. A number of published drug formulary guidelines may be used in making these determinations**.** An example of a drug formulary may be found in section T, *Example Drug Formulary For Advanced Practice Registered Nurses.*

   In addition to the written nurse protocol document, the APRN who dispenses drugs, under the authority of an order issued in conformity with the nurse protocol, must adhere to a drug dispensing procedure. This written document, signed by a licensed pharmacist and physician, must be readily accessible at the site where the APRN is practicing under nurse protocols and be available upon request. **Per** the drug dispensing procedure used in Public Health, the APRN must also document the drug(s) dispensed on a drug dispensing sign-out sheet or a document with comparable requirements.

3. Medical Treatments. Specify the medical treatments, if any that may be ordered by the APRN.

4. Diagnostic Studies. Specify the diagnostic studies, if any that may be ordered by the APRN.

5. Reference Guidelines for Practice. Specify the text(s), written guidelines, and/or other reference documents**,** which will be used by the individual APRN relative to the area of specialty. For example: "*Current Practice Guidelines in Primary Care*

*201**6***, by Joseph S. Escherick, Daniel S. Clark, and Evan D Slater, shall serve as a reference guide." These texts and documents should be current and readily available. The use of such texts and documents must clearly exclude any controlled substances or Schedule I controlled substances.

6. Consultation. Specify the conditions for immediate consultation with the delegating physician.

7. Patient Evaluation/Follow-Up. Specify that the frequency and guidelines for patient evaluation/follow-up by the delegating physician will be determined collaboratively between the APRN and the delegating physician.

8. Documentation. Specify how services will be documented.

9. Signatures. Each APRN who practices under these nurse protocols and each delegating physician must sign and date the written **agreement**.

10. Annual Review. The nurse protocols must be reviewed, signed and dated at least annually.

Q. GENERAL TEMPLATE FOR APRN NURSE PROTOCOL AGREEMENT

NURSE PROTOCOL AGREEMENT FOR ADVANCED PRACTICE REGISTERED NURSES IN PUBLIC HEALTH

Area of Specialty: _____

Dangerous Drugs (list or attach a list of the general categories or types of drugs to be ordered; a formulary is optional; list or formulary shall not include controlled substances Schedule III, IV or V). An example of a drug formulary may be found in section T, *Example Drug Formulary For Advanced Practice Registered Nurses.*

Diagnostic Studies (check all that apply):

- __Laboratory tests as appropriate
- __X-ray
- __Ultrasound
- __Other (specify): _____

Medical Treatments: May be ordered as appropriate for the area of specialty.

Reference Guidelines for Practice: The following references shall be utilized as guidelines for practice, excluding all controlled substances listed in these documents. List specific text, such as:

1. Joseph S. Esherick, Daniel S. Clark and Evan D. Slater, *Current Practice Guidelines in Primary Care 201**6***, 1**4**th ed., McGraw-Hill Professional Publishing, 201**6**.

2. Nurse Protocols for _____sections from *Nurse Protocols for Registered Professional Nurses,* Georgia Department of Public Health, 201**8**.

3. Other reference(s) (specify):_____

Consultation: The delegating physician will be available for immediate consultation by phone, facsimile, pager, and/or e-mail. If the delegating physician is not available, the delegating physician shall designate another physician who concurs with the terms of this agreement.

Patient Evaluation/Follow-Up
Specify that the frequency and guidelines for patient evaluation/follow-up by the delegating physician will be determined collaboratively between the APRN and the delegating physician.

Documentation: The APRN shall document services provided in accordance with the nurse protocol agreement. The APRN shall document all drugs ordered, dispensed and handled in accordance with the Georgia Nurse Practice Act, the Rules of the Georgia Board of Nursing, Rules and Regulations of the Georgia Board of Pharmacy and Department of Public Health requirements.

Record Reviews: A sampling of records shall be reviewed **at least annually. Ideally, it is preferred that record reviews be completed on a quarterly basis throughout each year to identify strengths and opportunities for improvement in a timely manner.**

This document indicates **an agreement** between the delegating physician and the APRN who is authorized to practice under a nurse protocol agreement. The APRN, whose signature appears below, has:

1. Been adequately trained and is prepared to perform the delegated medical acts specified in this nurse protocol agreement,

2. Read and understands all statutory rules and regulations pertaining to nursing and practice under nurse protocol and has read and understands the drug dispensing procedure, and

3. Been given an opportunity to have questions answered.

_____ _____
Advanced Practice Registered Nurse Signature Printed Name of APRN

_____
Date

_____ _____
Delegating Physician Signature Printed Name of Delegating Physician

_____
Date

R. TEMPLATE FOR WOMEN'S HEALTH NURSE PROTOCOL AGREEMENT

NURSE PROTOCOL AGREEMENT FOR ADVANCED PRACTICE REGISTERED NURSES IN PUBLIC HEALTH

Area of Specialty: _____Women's Health_____

Dangerous Drugs (list or attach a list of the general categories or types of drugs to be ordered; a formulary is optional; list or formulary shall not include controlled substances Schedule III, IV or V).

List may include:

- Contraceptives
- Drugs for the treatment of bacterial cystitis, sexually transmitted infections and vaginal infections
- Drugs for the treatment of minor gynecological problems (e.g., amenorrhea, dysmenorrhea)
- Hormone therapy for the treatment of symptoms of menopause
- Diaphragm
- Intrauterine device or system
- Hormonal implant
- Hormonal ring

Medical Treatments: May order as appropriate for Women's Health.

Diagnostic Studies (check all that apply):

- ✓___Laboratory tests as appropriate
- ✓___X-ray
- ✓___Ultrasound
- ____Other (specify): _____

Reference Guidelines for Practice: The following references shall be utilized as guidelines for practice, excluding all controlled substances listed in these documents:

1. Joseph S. Esherick, Daniel S. Clark and Evan D. Slater, *Current Practice Guidelines in Primary Care 2015*, **14**th ed., McGraw-Hill Professional Publishing, **2016**.

2. Nurse Protocols for Women's Health, *Nurse Protocols for Registered Professional Nurses in Public Health,* Georgia Department of Public Health, 201**8**.

3. Nurse Protocols for Sexually Transmitted Diseases (STD), *Nurse Protocols for Registered Professional Nurses in Public Health*, Georgia Department of Public Health, 201**8**.

4. R. A. Hatcher, et al., *Contraceptive Technology***,** 20th revised ed., **Ardent Media, Inc., New York**, 2011**. (Current Edition).**

Consultation: The delegating physician will be available for immediate consultation by phone, facsimile, pager, and/or e-mail. If the delegating physician is not available, the delegating physician shall designate another physician who concurs with the terms of this agreement.

Patient Evaluation/Follow-up: The frequency and guidelines for patient evaluation/follow-up by the delegating physician will be determined collaboratively between the APRN and the delegating physician. Patients will be evaluated through sampling of record reviews at least quarterly and case conferences as needed.

Documentation: The APRN shall document services provided in accordance with the nurse protocol agreement. The APRN shall document all drugs ordered, dispensed and handled in accordance with the Georgia Nurse Practice Act, the Rules of the Georgia Board of Nursing, Rules and Regulations of the Georgia Board of Pharmacy and DPH requirements.

Record Reviews: A sampling of records shall be reviewed at least once annually. **Ideally, it is preferred that record reviews be completed on a quarterly basis throughout each year to identify strengths and opportunities for improvement in a timely manner.**

This document indicates an agreement between the delegating physician and the APRN who is authorized to practice under a nurse protocol agreement. The APRN, whose signature appears below, has:

1. Been adequately trained and is prepared to perform the delegated medical acts specified in this nurse protocol agreement; and

2. Read and understands all statutory rules and regulations pertaining to nursing practice under nurse protocol and has read and understands the drug dispensing procedure.

3. Been given an opportunity to have questions answered.

_____ _____
Advanced Practice Registered Nurse Signature Printed Name of APRN

Date: _____

_____ _____
Delegating Physician Signature Printed Name of Delegating Physician

Date: _____

S. TEMPLATE FOR HIV NURSE PROTOCOL AGREEMENT

NURSE PROTOCOL AGREEMENT FOR ADVANCED PRACTICE REGISTERED NURSES IN PUBLIC HEALTH

Area of Specialty: Care of HIV-infected adults and adolescents.

Dangerous Drugs (list or attach a list of the general categories or types of drugs to be ordered; a formulary is optional; list or formulary shall not include controlled substances Schedule III, IV or V). May order dangerous drugs for the outpatient treatment of HIV infection and primary care conditions as defined in the reference guidelines listed below.

List may include:

- Antiretroviral Agents
- Drugs for the outpatient management of HIV disease including prophylaxis and/or treatment for opportunistic infections
- Drugs for the treatment of sexually transmitted diseases, tuberculosis, hepatitis, and other infectious diseases
- Drugs for the management of primary care conditions including hypertension, diabetes, asthma, and hyperlipidemia
- Contraceptives
- Hormone therapy for the treatment of symptoms of menopause

Diagnostic Studies (check all that apply):

- ✓ Laboratory tests as appropriate
- ✓ X-ray
- ✓ Ultrasound
- ____Other(specify): _____

Medical Treatments: May order as appropriate for the area of specialty.

Reference Guidelines for Practice: The following references shall be utilized as guidelines for practice, excluding all controlled substances listed in these documents:

1. **Department of Health and Human Services Panel on Antiretroviral Guidelines for Adults and Adolescents, "Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in HIV-1-Infected Adults and Adolescents," (Current edition),** http://www.aidsinfo.nih.gov/contentfiles/adultandadolescentgl.pdf **(March 1, 2017).**

2. GA DPH, Nurse Protocols for HIV/AIDS-Related, Sexually Transmitted Diseases, and Women's Health, *Nurse Protocols for Registered Professional Nurses in Public Health*, 201**8**.

3. The North American Menopause Society, *Menopause Practice: A Clinician's Guide*, 5th ed., 2014, http://www.menopause.org/publications/professional-publications/professional-clinical-textbook (**April 21, 2017**).

4. **Panel on Opportunistic Infections in HIV-Infected Adults and Adolescents. "Guidelines for the prevention and treatment of opportunistic infections in HIV-infected adults and adolescents: recommendations from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, the National Institutes of Health, and the HIV Medicine Association of the Infectious Diseases Society of America," (Current edition),** http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/contentfiles/lvguidelines/adult_oi.pdf **(March 3, 2017).**

5. **Panel on Treatment of HIV-Infected Pregnant Women and Prevention of Perinatal Transmission, "Recommendations for Use of Antiretroviral Drugs in Pregnant HIV-1-Infected Women for Maternal Health and Interventions to Reduce Perinatal HIV Transmission in the United States," (Current edition),** http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/contentfiles/lvguidelines/PerinatalGL.pdf**. (April 21, 2017).**

6. **TARGET Center, "Resource Library," (current edition),** https://careacttarget.org/topics **(April 21, 2017).**

7. **TARGET Center, "A Guide to the Clinical Care of Women with HIV/AIDS," *Resource Library,* (current edition),** https://careacttarget.org/library/guide-clinical-care-women-hivaids **(April 21, 2017).**

8. **U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Health Resources and Services Administration, HIV/AIDS Bureau, "Guide for HIV/AIDS Clinical Care," April 2014,** https://aidsetc.org/guide/contents **(March 1, 2017).**

Consultation: The delegating physician will be available for immediate consultation by phone, facsimile, pager, and/or e-mail. If the delegating physician is not available, the delegating physician shall designate another physician who concurs with the terms of this agreement.

Patient Evaluation/Follow-up: The frequency and guidelines for patient evaluation/follow-up by the delegating physician will be determined collaboratively between the APRN and the delegating physician.

Patient evaluation by the delegating physician may include:

1. All new patients should be evaluated or examined by the delegating physician at least once: patients with CD4 counts less than 200/mm^3 examine/evaluate within 3 months; patients with CD4 counts 200-500/mm^3 examine/evaluate within 6 months; and patient with CD4 counts greater than 500/mm^3 examine/evaluate within 12 months.

2. Patients not responding to routine therapy should be evaluated or examined by the delegating physician within 7 days of when the APRN identifies that the patient is not responding to routine therapy.

Documentation: The APRN shall document services provided in accordance with the nurse protocol agreement. The APRN shall document all drugs ordered, dispensed and handled in accordance with the Georgia Nurse Practice Act, the Rules of the Georgia Board of Nursing, Georgia Board of Pharmacy Rules and Regulations and DPH requirements.

Record Reviews: A sampling of records shall be reviewed at least once annually. Ideally, it is preferred that record reviews be completed on a quarterly basis throughout each year to identify strengths and opportunities for improvement in a timely manner.

This document indicates an agreement between the delegating physician and the APRN who is authorized to practice under a nurse protocol agreement. The APRN whose signature appears below has:

1. Been adequately trained and is prepared to perform the delegated medical acts specified in this nurse protocol agreement,

2. Read and understands all statutory rules and regulations pertaining to nursing practice under nurse protocol and has read and understands the drug dispensing procedure, and

3. Been given an opportunity to have questions answered.

_____ _____
Advanced Practice Registered Nurse Signature Printed Name of APRN

_____
Date

_____ _____
Delegating Physician Signature Printed Name of Delegating Physician

_____
Date

T. EXAMPLE DRUG FORMULARY FOR ADVANCED PRACTICE REGISTERED NURSES

(Listing of Generic Drugs by Specific Classes)

Antihistamine Agents

Chlorpheniramine maleate
Diphenhydramine HCl
Zyrtec

Antimicrobial Agents

Antifungals
Fluconazole
Griseofulvin
Itraconazole
Ketoconazole
Nystatin
Terbinafine

Cephalosporins
Cefotaxime
Ceftriaxone
Cefuroxime
Cephalexin

Penicillins
Amoxicillin
Ampicillin
Augmentin
Benzathine penicillin G
Penicillin VK

Macrolides
Erythromycin
Azithromycin

Tetracyclines
Doxycycline
Tetracycline

Miscellaneous
Metronidazole
Trimethoprim /Sulfamethoxazole

Antivirals
Acyclovir
Amantadine
Famcyclovir
Ribavirin
Rimantadine
Valacyclovir

Fluoroquinolones
Ciprofloxacin
Levofloxacin
Moxifloxacin
Ofloxacin

Antituberculosis
Aminosalicylic acid
Capreomycin
Cycloserine
Ethambutol
Ethionamide
Isoniazid
Pyrazinamide
Rifabutin
Rifampin
Rifapentine
Streptomycin

Blood Formation Agents -- Iron Preparations

Ferrous fumarate
Ferrous sulfate

Cardiovascular Drugs -- Cardiac Glycoside

Digoxin

Cardiovascular Drugs -- Anti-hypertensive Agents

Angiotensin-Converting Enzyme Inhibitors
Benazepril
Captopril
Enalapril
Fosinopril

Beta-Adrenergic Blockers
Atenolol
Propranolol
Toprol XL

Calcium Channel Blockers
Norvasc
Verapamil

Centrally-Acting
Clonidine
Reserpine

Peripherally-Acting
Prazosin
Reserpine

Vasodilator
Hydralazine

Central Nervous System Agents

Anticonvulsants
Carbamazepine
Gabapentin
Lamotrigine

Phenytoin
Tegretol XR
Valproic Acid

Analgesics/Antipyretics (Non-narcotic)
Acetaminophen
Aspirin

Nonsteroidal Anti-inflammatory
Ibuprofen
Naproxen

Electrolyte, Caloric, and Water Balance

Diuretics
Furosemide
Hydrochlorothiazide
Spironolactone

Replacement Preparations
Ensure
Potassium Chloride

Eye, Ear, Nose and Throat (EENT) Preparations

Antibiotics
Bacitracin
Ciloxan
Erythromycin
Floxin Otic
Gentamycin

Anti-inflammatory
Dexamethasone
Loteprednol
Prednisolone

Mydriatics
Atropine
Homatropine
Tropicamide

Vasoconstrictors
Naphazoline
Oxymetazoline
Phenylephrine
Tetrahydrozoline

Gastrointestinal (GI) Drugs

Antiemetics
Promethazine

Antiflatulents
Simethicone

Laxatives
Castor Oil
Mineral Oil
Psyllium (Metamucil)
Stool Softener

Antidiarrheals
Bismuth subsalicylate
Loperamide

Miscellaneous GI Drugs

Cimetidine
Famotidine
Lansoprazole
Metoclopramide
Nizatidine
Ranitidine
Sulcrafate

Hormones and Synthetic Substitutes

Adrenals

Prednisone
Triamcinolone

Antidiabetic Agents

Glipizide
Glucophage
Glucovance
Glyburide
Insulin
Metformin

Thyroid Agents

Levothyroxine

Respiratory Agents

Bronchodilators

Albuterol
Bitolterol Mesylate
Pirbuterol Acetate

Xanthine Derivatives

Aminophylline
Theophylline

Anticholinergics

Ipratropium bromide

Membrane Stabilizer

Cromolyn sodium
Nedocromil

Corticosteroids

Beclomethasone dipropionate
Budesonide turbuhalar
Fluinsolide
Fluticasone propionate
Methylprednisolone
Prednisolone
Prednisone
Triamcinolone acetonide

Skin and Mucous Membrane Agents

Antibiotics

Bacitracin
Benzoyl Peroxide
Clindamycin
Erythromycin
Mucopirocin
Tetracycline

Antivirals

Acyclovir
Penciclovir

Antifungals

Ciclopirox
Clotrimazole
Ketoconazole
Miconazole
Nystatin
Terbinafine
Tolnafate

Anti-inflammatory Agents

Low Potency

Aclometasone dipropionate
Hydrocortisone

High Potency

Betamethasone dipropionate
Halcinomide
Triamcinolone acetonide 0.5%

Intermediate Potency

Flurandrenulide
Triamcinolone acetonide 0.1%

Highest Potency

Augmented Betamethasone dipropionate (Diprolene)
Halobetasol

U. TEXTS/REFERENCES USED/RECOMMENDED FOR APRNS

1. AIDS Education and Training Center (AETC), "The Clinical Manual for Management of the HIV-Infected Adult," a living document at https://aidsetc.org/guide/contents

2. American Academy of Pediatrics, *Pediatric Clinical Practice Guidelines & Policies: A Compendium of Evidence-Based Research for Pediatric Practice*, **16th** edition, American Academy of Pediatrics, 201**6**.

3. John G. Bartlett and Joel E. Gallant, *Medical Management of HIV Infection 2012*, Johns Hopkins University, Division of Infectious Diseases, (Current Edition).

4. Richard E. Behrman, et al., *Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics*, 19th ed. W. B. Saunders Company, Philadelphia, 2011. (Current Edition).

5. Louis M Bell, Peter M Bingham, MD and Esther K Chung, *The 5-Minute Pediatric Consult*, 6th ed., Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2012. (Current Edition).

6. Rose W. Boynton, *Manual of Ambulatory Pediatrics*, 6th ed*.,* Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia, 2009. (Current Edition).

7. Burns, C., Dunn, A., Brady, M., Starr, N., & Blosser, C., 5th ed., *Pediatric primary care* (2012). Saunders: St. Louis, MO.

8. Frank J Domino, *The 5-Minute Clinical Consult 2014*, 20th ed., Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2013.

9. Paul Chan, MD and Margaret T Johnson, MD, *Treatment Guidelines for Medicine and Primary Care 11th ed., 2009*, (Current).

10. Marilyn W. Edmunds and Maren S. Mayhew, *Procedures for Primary Care Practitioners, 3rd* ed., Mosby-Year Book, St. Louis, 2009.

11. Fitzpatrick, T.B., et al. (2013). *Color atlas and synopsis of clinical dermatology (7th ed.)* New York: McGraw-Hill.

12. Ralph Gonzales and Jean S Kutner, *Current Practice Guidelines in Primary Care 2011*, 10th ed., McGraw-Hill Professional Publishing, 2010. (Current Edition).

13. Joseph F Hagan, Jr, MD, Judith S Shaw, RN, Paula M Duncan, MD, *Bright Futures: Guidelines for Health Supervision of Infants, Children and Adolescents*, 3rd ed., American Academy of Pediatrics, 2008. (Current Edition).

14. Thomas W. Hale, *Medications and Mother's Milk*, 16th ed., Pharmaceutical Medical, Amarillo, 2014.

15. R. A. Hatcher, et al., *Contraceptive Technology*, 20th revised ed., Physicians' Desk

Reference Inc, 2011. (Current Edition).

16. McCance, K.L., & Heuther, S.E. (2014). *Pathophysiology; The biologic basis for disease in adults & children*. (7th Ed). Maryland Heights, MO: Mosby.

17. Stephen J. McPhee and Maxine A. Papadakis, (eds.), *Current Medical Diagnosis and Treatment 2015*, 54th ed., McGraw-Hill Companies, 2015.

18. Jay P Sanford, Robert Moellering, George Eliopoulos, et al, editors, *The Sanford GuideTo HIV/AIDS Therapy 2015,* 23th ed., Antimicrobial Therapy, 2015.

19. Seidel, H.M., et al. *Mosby's Guide to Physical Examination, 8th Edition.* Mosby, 2014.

20. US Preventive Services Task Force, *The Guide to Clinical Preventive Services 2014*. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality, http://www.ahrq.gov/professionals/clinicians-providers/index.html (June 24, 2015).

21. Wright, L. M., & Leahey, M. (2012). *Nurses and families: A guide to family assessment and intervention*, 6th ed., Philadelphia: F. A. Davis. (Current Edition).

Pharmacology and Lab:

22. Allen J. Ellsworth, et al., 3rd ed., *Mosby's Medical Drug Reference for Health Professions 2011,* Mosby, St. Louis, 2012.

23. Marilyn W. Edmunds and Maren S. Mayhew, *Pharmacology for the Primary Care Provider*, 4 th ed., Mosby Inc, 2013. (Current Edition).

24. Richard J. Hamilton, *Tarascon Pocket Pharmacopoeia: 2015 Deluxe Lab Coat Edition,* Jones and Bartlett Publishers, 2014.

25. Kathleen Deska Pagana and Timothy J. Pagana, *Mosby's Diagnostic and Laboratory Test Reference*, 12th ed., Mosby Inc., 2014.

26. Carol K. Taketomo, Jane H. Hodding and Donna M. Kraus, *Lexi-Comp's Pediatric & Neonatal Dosage Handbook*, 20th Revised Edition, Lexi-Comp Inc, 2014.

27. Beatrice B. Turkoski, et al., *Lexi-Comp Drug Information Handbook for Advanced Practice Nursing,* 15th ed., Lexi-Comp Inc, 2014-2015.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

GEORGIA DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH DRUG DISPENSING PROCEDURE

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

DRUG DISPENSING PROCEDURE

The following procedure is for the proper procurement, storage, record keeping, labeling, and handling of drugs and/or devices by authorized agents or employees of the Georgia Department of Public Health and the County Boards of Health.

Licensed Pharmacist:

Print name _____

Signature _____ _____
Date

Licensed Physician:

Print name _____

Signature_____ _____
Date

All registered professional nurses or physician's assistants who dispense dangerous drugs and/or devices under the authority of an order issued in conformity with a nurse protocol or job description and as an agent or employee of the Department of Public Health or any county board of health, shall meet the same standards and comply with all record-keeping, labeling, packaging, storage and all other requirements for the dispensing of drugs imposed upon pharmacists and pharmacies with regard to such drugs and/or devices, as outlined by the following dispensing procedure. This procedure applies to all drugs and devices within the district, whether purchased through state or local funds. The Pharmacy Director for the Department of Public Health, or a qualified designee, may make periodic on-site visits to health districts and/or local health departments to provide technical assistance and review drug use, storage and handling.

A. DEFINITIONS

For the purpose of this dispensing procedure, the following definitions apply:

1. Administer or Administration means to give a unit dose of any drug or to perform any medical treatment or diagnostic study. O.C.G.A. § 43-34-23(a) (1).

2. Dangerous Drug means any dangerous drug as defined in O.C.G.A. § 16-13-71, but does not include any controlled substance or Schedule I controlled substance. See also O.C.G.A. § 43-34-23(a) (3). Dangerous drugs are required to bear upon the package, the words "Caution Federal Law Prohibits Dispensing Without Prescription", "Rx only," or words of like import. These drugs may also be referred to as "Legend" drugs.

3. Device means an instrument, apparatus, contrivance or other similar or related article, including any component part or accessory, which is required under federal law to bear the label, "Caution: federal or state law requires dispensing by or on the order of a physician". O.C.G.A. § 26-4-5(9).

4. Dispense means to issue one or more doses of any drug in a suitable container with appropriate labeling for subsequent administration to, or use by, a patient. O.C.G.A. § 43-34-23 (a) (3.1)

5. Dispensing Procedure means a written document signed by a licensed pharmacist and a licensed physician that establishes the appropriate manner under which drugs may be dispensed pursuant to O.C.G.A. § 43-34-23(a) (4).

6. Distribute means the delivery of a drug or device other than by administering or dispensing. O.C.G.A. § 26-4-5(11).

7. Job description means a document, signed by the primary supervising physician and the physician assistant, in which the primary supervising physician delegates to that physician assistant authority to perform certain medical acts and which describes the professional background and specialty of the primary supervising physician and the qualifications including related experience of the physician

assistant; and includes a general description of how the physician assistant will be utilized in the practice. A job description shall not be required to contain every activity the physician deems the physician assistant qualified to perform but shall confine the activities of the physician assistant to those in the scope of practice of the primary supervising physician. O.C.G.A. § 43-34-102(4).

8. Nurse means a person who is a registered professional nurse licensed as such under Article 1 of Chapter 26 of Title 43. O.C.G.A. § 43-34-23(a) (6).

9. Nurse Protocol means a written document mutually agreed upon and signed by a nurse and a licensed physician, by which document, the physician delegates to that nurse the authority to perform certain medical acts pursuant to subsection (b) of O.C.G.A. § 43-34-23. These acts shall include, without being limited to, the administering and ordering of any drug. O.C.G.A. § 43-34-23(a) (7).

10. Order means to select a drug, medical treatment or diagnostic study through physician delegation in accordance with a nurse protocol or a physician's assistant's job description. Ordering under such delegation shall not be construed to be prescribing nor shall ordering of a drug be construed to authorize the issuance of a written prescription. O.C.G.A. § 43-34-23(a) (8).

11. Practitioner or Practitioner of the Healing Arts means a physician, dentist, podiatrist or veterinarian, and shall include any other person licensed under the laws of Georgia to use, mix, prepare, dispense, prescribe and administer drugs in connection with medical treatment to the extent provided by the laws of Georgia. O.C.G.A. § 26-4-5(33).

12. Prescription Drug Order means a lawful order of a practitioner for a drug or device for a specific patient; such order includes an electronic visual image prescription drug order and an electronic data prescription drug order. O.C.G.A. § 26-4-5(36).

B. GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

1. Although the Department of Public Health and the county boards of health may stock drugs and related supplies which are not considered dangerous drugs (e.g., ferrous sulfate tablets, reagent strips), the storage, record keeping and inventory control requirements shall apply to all drugs, biologicals (vaccines and diluents), and related items. Furthermore, all biologicals (vaccines and diluents) must be handled and stored according to any specifics related to the individual vaccine listed in the storage and handling guidelines located in the Georgia Immunization Program Manual. The manual may be accessed on line at https://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-publications.

2. The District Health Director or licensed physician signing this agreement shall designate a secure lockable area, room(s), which shall be known as the medication room(s) which is devoted to business related to pharmaceuticals and medical devices. Also, they shall designate a person in charge of the medication room(s). The District Health Director shall keep this information current and on file, available upon request.

All drugs should be kept out of reach of unauthorized staff and patients.

3. A hard copy and/or computer or electronic access to current medication reference materials must be available in all health departments and/or health centers (at a minimum, a hard copy or electronic version of Drug Facts and Comparisons [eFacts and Comparisons], American Hospital Formulary Service or Lexi-Comp Drug Information Handbook [Lexi-Comp Online].)

4. All drugs or devices which bear, or are required to bear, upon the package, the words "Caution, Federal Law Prohibits Dispensing Without Prescription", “Rx only” or words of like import, shall be issued pursuant to one of the following:

   a. A prescription from a licensed practitioner authorized to prescribe.
   b. An order issued in conformity with a nurse protocol or job description.

5. A registered professional nurse or physician's assistant is only authorized to dispense pursuant to an order issued in conformity with a nurse protocol or job description, not a prescription or an order written on a chart or phoned in by a physician.

6. The telephone number of a poison center shall be conspicuously posted in the medication room and pharmacy areas (e.g., Georgia Poison Center 1-800-222-1222).

C. DRUG STORAGE AND RECORD KEEPING

1. All drugs shall be stored in designated areas known as the medication room, within the facility that are sufficient to insure the proper sanitation, temperature, light, ventilation, moisture control, segregation and security. These conditions must also be considered when drugs are being distributed/transported from one area/facility to another area/facility.

   a. All drugs requiring refrigeration must be stored in a refrigerator designated for drug use. The refrigerator and/or freezer must have either a thermometer or an electronic temperature monitoring device that monitors the unit's internal temperature. The temperature must be recorded by a clinic employee. Documentation shall be made twice daily by initialing a temperature log during clinic hours to insure the proper temperature range specified for those particular drugs. The document must provide the printed employee name and identifying initials. Temperature logs must be kept on file for three years.

   NOTE: Refrigerators/freezers can be monitored with an external electronic temperature monitoring device which electronically monitors internal temperatures with a temperature probe (e.g., Sensaphone).

   b. All pharmaceuticals are to be stored and maintained at the correct temperature according to the individual product package insert for 24 hours a day, seven days a week**.** Extreme changes in temperature have the potential to change the effectiveness and/or stability of the drug. All pharmaceuticals that are improperly

stored must be immediately segregated from stock and labeled unusable. See Section D. OUTDATED, DETERIORATED, RETURNED AND RECALLED DRUGS.

c. Store drugs for external use apart from drugs for internal use or injection (segregate at least by using different shelving or bins).

2. All drugs shall be stored in a secured area (under lock and key when not in actual use). All access entries to the medication room(s) must be locked at all times prohibiting outside entry. Security of the medication room(s) must be maintained 24 hours a day. Authorization to the medication room(s) must be reserved to those employees performing functions requiring access such as dispensing and inventory management and control.

   Whenever more than one authorized person has access to drugs from a common inventory, one person shall be designated "in charge" of said inventory. The person designated "in charge" of said inventory shall ensure that a complete and accurate record of all drugs on hand, received, dispensed, issued, removed or otherwise disposed of, has been kept in accordance with the record-keeping requirements of the Board of Pharmacy.

   The district must keep a current list of those employees authorized to have access to the medication room(s). This list must be kept on file and signed annually by the District Health Director and the person “in charge” of said inventory.

   The medication room(s) should be sufficiently secure to deny access to unauthorized persons. When the security of the medication room is breached, a police report should be filed and an actual count of the inventory should be conducted and documented.

3. Upon receipt of pharmaceuticals and/or medical devices, invoices must be signed and dated. Any discrepancies must be clearly noted on the invoice and reported within one business day to the distributor. Resolution must be noted on the invoice. All invoices must be maintained on file for five years. For purchases made by the State Office of Pharmacy, signed and dated invoices must be submitted to the State Office of Pharmacy within 72 hours of receiving the product.

4. Records of dispensing are to be made and kept by the dispensing facility for two (2) years in a secure location and retrievable upon request. Dispensing records may be manual hard copy on a *Drug Dispensing Sign-out Sheet* or electronic print version.

   Required documentation for dispensing records when a drug or device is dispensed pursuant to an order issued in conformity with a nurse protocol includes:

   a. Patient’s name and address,
   b. Name, strength, and dosage form of drug dispensed with the National Drug Code (NDC) number,
   c. Quantity dispensed,
   d. Date dispensed,

e. Name of the nurse ordering and dispensing,
f. Name of practitioner (delegating physician),
g. Lot number and expiration date, per legal requirements, and
h. Identifying serial number (prescription number).

If using an electronic dispensing record in place of the manual *Drug Dispensing Sign-out Sheet*, the electronic dispensing record should clearly identify who is ordering the pharmaceutical or medical device and ideally the computer entry person, if other than the person ordering. The electronic dispensing records must be printed in hard copy every twenty-four (24) hours and filed in a secure location. The electronic dispensing print-out record must be readable without the aid of a special device. The dispenser(s) is/are responsible for verifying completeness and accuracy of the entries to the system**,** including any voided transactions, and must provide documentation that medication order information entered into the computer is correct, by dating and signing the print-out in the same manner as signing a check or legal document (e.g., Mary A. Smith or M. A. Smith).

5. A running inventory of drugs received, dispensed, and removed from designated storage areas must be verified by actual count at least monthly. Discrepancies in inventory should be researched and findings should be clearly noted. Reconciliation should occur immediately if variances are found. If a manual and an electronic inventory are kept simultaneously, then both inventories must be the same.

6. Districts that contract for local retail or hospital pharmacy services must ensure that a list of state supplied drugs dispensed from the pharmacy location to public health patients is forwarded to appropriate district staff or state program on a monthly basis. Districts that contract for local retail or hospital pharmacy services must keep contracts on file with a copy of a current pharmacy license. The District/County must ensure no drug diversion and no violations of federal or state laws or regulations.

7. All records pertaining to drug accountability (from ordering and receipt of drug to actual patient administration) must be kept on file. The Georgia Drugs and Narcotics Agency and the Department of Public Health and its inspectors shall have the authority to conduct inspections or audits on all drugs received and/or disposed of by an agent or employee of the Department of Public Health or any County Board of Health. Prescriptions and/or orders shall be kept on file for a minimum period of two (2) years from the date they are filled. Refer to the Public Health Record Retention Policy for specific program requirements that may be more stringent.

8. No health center in which drugs are handled shall operate in any manner or dispense any drugs under unclean, unsanitary, overcrowded, unhealthy conditions or under any condition that endangers the health, safety or welfare of the public. All drugs shall be kept beyond the normal reach of small children.

9. Drug samples are forbidden in public health facilities unless a written district procedure approved by the State Office of Pharmacy has been established for their use by a licensed physician and a licensed pharmacist.

D. OUTDATED, DETERIORATED, RETURNED AND RECALLED DRUGS

1. Examine drug stock at least monthly and remove from stock all outdated, improperly stored, and deteriorated drugs. Stock must be rotated so the shortest dated stock will be used first. No outdated or deteriorated drug may be kept in stock for patient use. Under no circumstance shall any drug be dispensed or administered that bears a date of expiration that has been reached or that is in a deteriorated condition.

2. Remove all outdated, improperly stored, deteriorated, unused or overstocked drugs from inventory and label unusable. For vaccines, contact the Immunization Program for guidance. The District Pharmacist or District/County Drug Coordinator will be responsible for compiling and sending the required documentation to the drug manufacturer, drug wholesaler or the reverse drug distributor (i.e. **INMAR**) for handling the drugs appropriately. For any drug purchased through the State Office of Pharmacy, prior notification and a copy of the prepared documentation is required to be sent to the State Office of Pharmacy to ensure that credit is applied to the appropriate state account. For any drugs purchased by the county or district, documentation must be retrievable and available upon request. The proper documentation should be kept on file for a minimum of two (2) years. Information on drugs purchased or supplied with state or federal funds must be submitted upon request. Documentation should include the following:

    a. Name and strength of the drug, expiration date, lot number, unit or size and quantity of drug returned.
    b. The name and street address of the clinic/county/district returning drugs.
    c. The date of the return.
    d. The reason the drug is being returned (e.g., out-of-date, improperly stored, deteriorated, discontinued, unused, overstocked).

    Depending on the drug and/or the contract, an exchange for fresh stock, a return for credit or a return for “destruction only” may occur.

3. Drug Recalls. If a drug recall for pharmaceutical supplies purchased by the Office of Pharmacy is issued by a manufacturer or other authorized agency, the District Pharmacist or Drug Coordinator will be notified of the procedure to follow to insure that all recalled public health issued drugs are removed from stock at the state, district and county level.

    For pharmaceutical supplies purchased by the district or county, the district pharmacist or drug coordinator would work with the drug manufacturer or wholesaler and pull any recalled drugs. Documentation must be submitted to the State Office of Pharmacy upon request.

4. See the Georgia Immunization Program Manual, Storage and Handling Guidelines regarding the disposition of outdated, expired or wasted vaccines. The manual is

located at https://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-publications

E. INVENTORY

1. Annual Inventory is an inventory of all drugs and/or devices in each health district, including all clinics/medication rooms, must be conducted, documented, and signed at the end of each fiscal year. See Appendix A for template. This inventory must include all drugs for use in public health whether these drugs are located in the district, the county health department or a local retail or hospital pharmacy. The completed annual inventory must be maintained on file at the district level for a period of two (2) years and a copy must be submitted by the second week of July to the State Office of Pharmacy on an annual basis. Inventory information on drugs purchased or supplied with state or federal funds must be submitted upon request.

2. Each health district should maintain a supply of drugs on hand within the district, adequate to supply the needs of the district, but not to exceed a three (3) month supply. Inventory levels for each drug should be established, and then reviewed and adjusted on a routine basis to maintain proper inventory control.

3. Vaccine inventory must be documented and managed in the Georgia Registry of Immunization Transactions and Services (GRITS). O.C.G.A. § 31-12-3.1

F. LABELING AND APPROPRIATE CONTAINERS

1. All drugs and/or devices for use in the health department shall be in appropriate containers (manufacturer's original package or prescription vial), including the use of:

   a. Child-proof containers.
   b. Light-resistant and moisture-proof containers.
   c. Adequately-labeled containers to identify, at a minimum, the brand name or generic name, strength, lot number and expiration date.

2. Any drug and/or device issued or dispensed to the patient for self-administration shall be in appropriate containers (manufacturer's original package or light resistant prescription vial, both with child-proof caps, unless a waiver is on file for non-safety caps) and labeled with the following information:

   a. Name, address and telephone number of the health district, health department or health center.
   b. Date and identifying serial number (at minimum, the three (3) digit county code and any other necessary identifying numbers).
   c. Full name of the patient.
   d. Name of the drug and strength.
   e. Name of drug manufacturer (optional).
   f. Directions for use to the patient.
   g. Name of delegating physician.

h. The expiration date of the drug.
i. Such other accessory cautionary information as may be required or desirable for proper use and safety to the patient.
j. FDA labeling requirement. For drug products dispensed in health departments, it is a requirement to provide the FDA Side Effect Statement, "Call your doctor for medical advice about side effects. You may report side effects to FDA at 1-800-FDA-1088." Each authorized dispenser or pharmacy must distribute the side effects statement with each prescription drug product dispensed. One or more of the following options to distribute the side effects statement must be selected:
    1) Distribute the side effects statement on a sticker attached to the unit package, vial, or container of the drug product,
    2) Distribute the side effects statement on a preprinted pharmacy prescription vial cap,
    3) Distribute the side effects statement on a separate sheet of paper,
    4) Distribute the side effects statement in consumer medication information, or
    5) Distribute the appropriate FDA-approved Medication Guide that contains the side effects statement.

3. All drugs must be identified up to the point of administration to, or use by, the patient. Therefore, the nurse should *READ LABELS THREE TIMES*.

    a. When the drug is selected from the storage area.
    b. When preparing, labeling, dispensing or administering the product.
    c. When returning the original container or package to the storage area, or discarding it.

4. The contents and the label of every drug must be verified by the licensed individual authorized to dispense, issue or administer drugs before each drug is given to the patient.

5. When a dispensing nurse uses any person to assist in the measuring of quantities of medication and the typing of labels, excluding the dispensing of drugs, the dispensing nurse must be physically present in the dispensing area and actually observing the actions of such person in doing such measuring and typing, and the dispensing nurse must be the verifier of the contents and the label.

G. PATIENT COUNSELING COMPONENTS

The following patient counseling components are a requirement of the Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1990, and the Georgia State Board of Pharmacy Rules and Regulations. The purpose, in part, is to enhance the public health and welfare by requiring that consultation be offered to patients regarding their medications and various conditions that could affect or be affected by the use of those medications.

1. Patient Records

a. A patient record system shall be maintained for patients for whom Prescription Drug Orders are dispensed or for whom drugs are dispensed under the authority of a nurse protocol or job description. The patient record system shall provide for the immediate retrieval of information necessary for the nurse or physician's assistant to identify previously dispensed drugs. Such patient's record shall contain, at a minimum:
    1) Full name of the patient for whom the drug is intended,
    2) Date of birth,
    3) Patient's gender, and
    4) Address of the patient (and telephone number if available).

b. Unless the patient or the patient's agent refuses such information, the nurse or physician's assistant dispensing under the authority of a nurse protocol or job description shall make a reasonable effort to obtain from the patient or patient's agent and record:
    1) Any known allergies, drug reactions or idiosyncrasies,
    2) Chronic conditions or disease states of the patient, and
    3) The identity of any other drugs, including over-the-counter drugs, or medical devices currently used by the patient.

    If the patient or the patient's agent refuses to provide such information as listed above, it should be documented with the patient’s or patient’s agent’s signature.

c. The nurse or physician's assistant dispensing under the authority of the nurse protocol or job description shall make a reasonable effort to obtain, record and maintain a list or record of all drug orders obtained by the patient at the site where the drug was dispensed within the preceding two (2) years, showing the following information:
    1) Name and strength of the drug,
    2) Quantity and date dispensed,
    3) Name of the nurse or physician's assistant ordering and dispensing the drug, and
    4) Comments from the nurse or physician's assistant relevant to the individual's drug therapy, including any other information peculiar to the specific patient or drug.

d. A patient’s record shall be maintained for a period of not less than two (2) years from the date of the last entry in the profile record.

2. Prospective Drug Review

For the purpose of promoting therapeutic appropriateness, before ordering a drug(s) from a nurse protocol or job description and before dispensing any such drug(s), the nurse or physician's assistant shall, at a minimum, review the patient's records and each drug(s) ordered to identify:

a. Drug over-utilization or under-utilization.

b. Therapeutic duplications.
c. Drug-disease contraindications.
d. Drug-drug interactions.
e. Incorrect dosage, dosage form or duration of therapy.
f. Drug-allergy interaction(s).
g. Clinical abuse or misuse.

Upon recognizing any of the above, the nurse or physician's assistant ordering the drug shall take appropriate steps to avoid or resolve the problem including, if necessary, consultation with the delegating physician.

3. Patient Counseling

a. Before dispensing a drug and/or device which has been ordered under the authority of a nurse protocol or job description, and following a review of the patient's record, the nurse or physician's assistant shall personally offer to discuss matters which will enhance or optimize drug therapy with each patient, or caregiver of such patient. Such discussion shall include appropriate elements of patient counseling, based on the professional judgment of the nurse or physician's assistant. Such elements may include but are not limited to the following:

1) The name, strength and description of the drug.
2) The dosage form, dose, route of administration and duration of drug therapy.
3) Intended use of the drug and expected action or result.
4) Any special directions and precautions for preparation, administration and use by the patient.
5) Common, severe side effects, adverse effects or interactions, and therapeutic contraindications that may be encountered, including their avoidance, and the action required if they occur.
6) Techniques for self-monitoring drug therapy.
7) The proper storage of the drug.
8) Follow-up information regarding the need for continued drug therapy, if applicable.
9) Action to be taken in the event of a missed dose.
10) Comments relevant to the individual's drug therapy, including any other information peculiar to the specific patient or drug.

b. Additional forms of patient information may be used to supplement verbal patient counseling when appropriate or available.
c. Documentation of drug and/or device counseling must be clearly noted in the patient’s chart.

H. DRUG PROGRAMS/CONTRACTS

1. 340B Drug Pricing Program

The 340B Drug Pricing Program resulted from enactment of Public Law 102-585, the

Veterans Health Care Act of 1992, which is codified as Section 340B of the Public Health Service Act. Section 340B limits the cost of covered outpatient drugs to certain federal grantees, federally-qualified health center look-alikes and qualified disproportionate share hospitals.

Source: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Health Resources and Service Administration, Office of Pharmacy Affairs. More information is located at http://www.hrsa.gov/opa/

Eligible programs (covered entity) within Georgia Public Health:

a. An entity receiving a grant under subpart II of part C of Title XXVI of the Ryan White Care Act (RWCA) (relating to categorical grants for outpatient early intervention services for HIV disease) - Early HIV Intervention Services Categorical Grants (Title III of the RWCA).
b. A State-operated AIDS Drug Assistance Program (ADAP) receiving financial assistance under the RWCA.
c. An entity receiving funds under section 318 (42 USCS §247c) (relating to treatment of sexually transmitted diseases) or section 317(j) (2) (42 USCS§247b (j) (2)) (relating to treatment of tuberculosis) through a State or unit of local government, but only if the entity is certified by the Secretary.

2. 340B Prime Vendor Program (PVP)

The program is free and voluntary to facilities that are already 340B eligible. The 340B PVP provides additional savings to 340B participants registered with the Prime Vendor. The program provides access to 340B sub-ceiling prices for drug products, favorable rates to access multiple wholesale distributors, and access to other related value-added products. The PVP is free to all 340B covered entities, but the covered entity must enroll in the PVP. More information is located at https://www.340bpvp.com/

3. Minnesota Multistate Contracting Alliance for Pharmacy (MMCAP)

MMCAP is a voluntary group purchasing organization operated and managed by the State of Minnesota serving government-authorized healthcare facilities. The state of Georgia is a MMCAP participant. The Department of Administrative Service (DOAS) is the administrator for Georgia. The goal of MMCAP is to provide member organizations the combined purchasing power to receive the best prices available for pharmaceuticals, hospital supplies, and related products. More information is located at **http://www.mmd.admin.state.mn.us/mmcap/**

I. DISPENSING/ADMINISTERING OF 340B AND 340B PVP PRODUCTS

1. 340B and 340B PVP purchased products may only be administered/dispensed to a patient of the covered entity. The Office of Pharmacy Affairs has published final notice of guidelines on definition of a patient to allow a clearer understanding of which individuals may receive prescribed medications purchased at the legislatively

mandated discount of Section 602of the Veterans Healthcare Act of 1992.

In summary, an individual is a “patient” of a covered entity (with the exception of State-operated or funded AIDS drug purchasing assistance programs) only if:

a. The covered entity has established a relationship with the individual, such that the covered entity maintains records of the individual's health care, and
b. The individual receives health care services from a health care professional who is either employed by the covered entity or provides health care under contractual or other arrangements (e.g. referral for consultation) such that responsibility for the care provided remains with the covered entity; and
c. The individual receives a health care service or range of services from the covered entity which is consistent with the service or range of services for which grant funding or Federally-qualified health center look-alike status has been provided to the entity. Disproportionate share hospitals are exempt from this requirement.

An individual will not be considered a "patient" of the entity for purposes of 340B if the only health care service received by the individual from the covered entity is the dispensing of a drug or drugs for subsequent self-administration or administration in the home setting.

An individual registered in a State operated AIDS drug purchasing assistance program receiving financial assistance under title XXVI of the PHS Act will be considered a "patient" of the covered entity for purposes of this definition if so registered as eligible by the State program.

For more information, please refer to the October 1996 Final Notice Regarding Section 602 of the Veterans Health Care Act of 1992 Patient and Entity Eligibility.

2. 340B PVP may contract to allow use of pharmaceutical products to patients that do not meet the patient definition. The 340B PVP will provide notification on each product in this category to the participating 340B PVP entities.

J. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

1. The Prescription Drug Marketing Act (PDMA) of 1987 establishes legal safeguards for prescription drug distribution to ensure safe and effective pharmaceuticals. It was passed in response to the development of a wholesale sub-market (known as the "diversion market") for prescription drugs. More information is located at https://www.fda.gov/RegulatoryInformation/Legislation/SignificantAmendmentstotheFDCAct/PrescriptionDrugMarketingActof1987/default.htm

2. The Robinson-Patman Act (15 U.S.C. 13 (a)-(f)) specifically makes it unlawful for “one engaged in commerce to discriminate in price between different purchasers of commodities of like quality and grade where the effect may be substantially to lessen competition.”

3. The Food and Drug Administration

   The Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) is a codification of the general and permanent rules published in the Federal Register by the Executive departments and agencies of the Federal Government. Title 21 of the CFR is reserved for rules of the Food and Drug Administration. Each title (or volume) of the CFR is revised once each calendar year. A revised Title 21 is issued on approximately April 1st of each year.

   CFR 21 is downloaded from the files of the Government Printing Office (GPO) and contains the most recent revision. The CFR at GPO, both current and historical, can also be searched directly at https://www.accessdata.fda.gov/scripts/cdrh/cfdocs/cfcfr/cfrsearch.cfm.

   a. To report non-emergencies about medical products: medicines, medical devices, blood products, biologics, and special nutritionals:

      The FDA's MedWatch program allows healthcare professionals and consumers to voluntarily report a serious adverse event, product quality problem or product use error, that they suspect are associated with the drugs, biologicals, medical devices, and dietary supplements they prescribe, dispense or use.

      These problems include serious adverse reactions and events, product quality problems and product use errors. Reporting can be done online, by phone, or by submitting the MedWatch 3500 form by mail or fax. Visit the MedWatch site, https://www.fda.gov/Safety/MedWatch/default.htm, for more details.
   b. To report non-emergencies about vaccines:

      Adverse reactions and other problems related to vaccines should be reported to the Vaccine Adverse Event Reporting System, which is maintained by FDA and the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. The vaccine reporting form may be found at http://vaers.hhs.gov. A copy of the form may also be obtained by calling 1-800-822-7967 or at the FDA website, http://www.fda.gov/.

4. Report accidental poisonings to Georgia Poison Center. 80 Jesse Hill Drive, SE P.O. Box 26066. Atlanta, GA. 30335-3801

   Emergency Phone: 1-800-222-1222
   TTY/TDD: (404) 616-9287
   Administrative Phone: (404) 616-9237

   Website: www.georgiapoisoncenter.org

THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY

TRANSPORTING DANGEROUS DRUGS

THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY

TRANSPORTING DANGEROUS DRUGS

A. PURPOSE

The purpose of this protocol is to define the parameters, accountability standards and training required for the transport of dangerous drugs (i.e., drugs that are prescribed or ordered, which includes vaccines, but excludes controlled substances) between/among clinic sites by public health personnel.

The Protocol for Transporting Dangerous Drugs is consistent with the Attorney General Opinion 86-28 of 1986, which exempts state agencies from the Dangerous Drug Act. A letter from the Office of the Attorney General to the State Public Health Pharmacy Director in 1995 reaffirms that the state public health agencies would still not be subject to the requirements of the Dangerous Drug Act. The protocol does not conflict with Drug Enforcement Agency (DEA) requirements, as the protocol is only for dangerous drugs and does not include controlled substances. The protocol does not conflict with any Food and Drug Administration (FDA) requirements of federal laws.

Public Health employees, such as Immunization Program field staff and District Drug Coordinators, assigned job responsibilities for transporting dangerous drugs to meet specific program requirements, must comply with the training and accountability standards defined within this protocol. Public Health employees assigned job responsibilities for transporting dangerous drugs must meet the following criteria:

1. Have a signed job description which documents specific job responsibilities for transporting dangerous drugs to meet specific program requirements and which require compliance with the following performance standards:

    a. O.C.G.A. §16-13-72 (Sale, distribution or possession of dangerous drugs),
    b. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention Vaccine Storage and Handling Toolkit at https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/hcp/admin/storage/toolkit/, and
    c. Sections B, C, D, and E of the Drug Dispensing Procedure, in the manual, Nurse Protocols for Registered Professional Nurses in Public Health at http://dph.georgia.gov/nurse-protocols

2. Have completed a Transporting Dangerous Drugs Training Program, as approved by the Department of Public Health, at least once annually.

3. Received approval from the District Health Director or Program Director to transport vaccines and dangerous drugs.

4. Have complied with the job responsibilities for transporting dangerous drugs as documented in the specific job description and in accordance with a performance review completed at least once annually.

5. Have signed an acknowledgement statement prohibiting the transport of dangerous drugs to their home or any site other than a public health clinic site or site receiving

state supplied vaccine.

B. ACCOUNTABILITY STANDARDS

Public Health personnel who transport dangerous drugs must comply with all standard operating procedures related to the storage and handling of dangerous drugs, including the following:

1. Overseeing proper receipt and storage of vaccine and drug shipments.
2. Preparing vaccine and drugs for transport.
3. Assuring appropriate storage of drugs and vaccine per manufacturer's recommendations.
4. Monitoring temperature and the environment of drug and vaccine storage areas and containers.
5. Using appropriate refrigerator/freezer or other storage environment.
6. Monitoring expiration dates of vaccines and drug stock.
7. Disposing of any spoiled or expired vaccine or drug.
8. Using proper containers for transport of drugs and vaccines.
9. Documenting transport and receipt of drugs and vaccines.

The approving District Health Director or Program Director must:

1. Be available during the time drugs are transported
2. Be accessible by phone for reporting any theft, damage, temperature excursions, and interruptions to the cold chain and/or violations in the storage requirements per product package inserts.
3. Comply with the guidelines, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention Vaccine Toolkit, at https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/hcp/admin/storage/toolkit/.

C. TRANSPORTING DANGEROUS DRUGS TRAINING COMPONENTS

The public health employee must minimally complete the following components at least once annually in order to be approved by the District Health Director or Program Director to transport dangerous drugs:

1. Read and understand the provision of the statute, pertaining to the sale distribution or possession of dangerous drugs, (O.C.G.A. § 16-13-72).

2. Read and understand the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention Vaccine Storage and Handling Toolkit at https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/hcp/admin/storage/toolkit/.

3. Read and understand Sections B, C, D and E of the Drug Dispensing Procedure, in the manual, Nurse Protocols for Registered Professional Nurses in Public Health at http://dph.georgia.gov/nurse-protocols.

4. Review the requirements for transporting dangerous drugs with supervisor including any additional directives.

5. Observe at least two (2) onsite inspections of how dangerous drugs are stored, handled and transported from one public health clinic site to another with an employee who is approved to transport dangerous drugs.

6. Complete at least one (1) onsite inspection of a public health clinic site under supervision of an employee who is approved to transport dangerous drugs.

7. Execute an acknowledgment indicating that you have read and understood all requirements of the Transporting Drugs Training Components and agree to adhere all provisions.

D. EXAMPLE OF ACKNOWLEDGEMENT OF COMPLETION OF TRANSPORTING DANGEROUS DRUGS TRAINING COMPONENTS

I, _____, acknowledge that I have read and understood the following training components required by public health employees transporting drugs:

- (O.C.G.A. § 16-13-72) – pertaining to the sale, distribution or possession of dangerous drugs,
- The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention Vaccine Storage and Handling Toolkit at https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/hcp/admin/storage/toolkit/, and
- Sections B, C, D, and E of the Drug Dispensing Procedure in the Standard Nurse Protocols for Registered Professional Nurses manual at http://dph.georgia.gov/nurse-protocols.

I further acknowledge that I have discussed the requirements for transporting dangerous drugs with my supervisor and had the opportunity to ask questions to clarify any component of the requirements.

I further acknowledge that I am prohibited from transporting dangerous drugs to my home or any other site other than a public health clinic site or site that receives state-supplied vaccine.

Having read and understood the requirements associated with transporting dangerous drugs, I agree to be bound by the terms as set forth in the training components', applicable documents and directives of my supervisor and approving authority.

_____
Signature of Employee

_____
Signature of Supervisor

_____
Transport approved by: Signature of District Health Director or Program Director

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

ORIENTATION, TRAINING, AND QUALITY ASSURANCE FOR NURSE PROTOCOLS

ORIENTATION, TRAINING, AND QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. INITIAL ORIENTATION AND TRAINING

A comprehensive orientation and training program ensures that registered professional nurses are effectively integrated into the Public Health system, are prepared to practice under the authority of nurse protocols, are introduced to the concepts of population health-based nursing practice and can contribute to quality assurance and quality improvement (QA/QI) for public health nursing practice.

Orientation and training of Public Health Nurses includes both the general orientation given to all new public health employees and more specific clinical orientation and training necessary to function under standards and nurse protocols for one or more specific programs. The Office of Nursing has the responsibility to set training and practice standards in collaboration with State Office Nurses and in accordance with the most current research and evidence-based practice. The extent to which the standards are implemented is determined by those who govern the day-to-day activities of public health programs and services at the local level. The QA/QI "initial required" and "annual required" training practice standards are delineated in Section IV of the QA/QI Manual and must be used to document the training completed by an individual RN as part of the preparation for practicing under nurse protocol. Although, orientation and training should be individualized as much as possible per the expertise the nurse brings to the job, and to meet the needs of the particular public health setting, individual RNs practicing under nurse protocol must complete all listed initial required trainings prior to practicing under a specific nurse protocol.

The clinical orientation may be concurrent with the general orientation. By observing other nurses and beginning to perform some tasks under supervision, the nurse should gain understanding of the role of the Public Health Nurse and the use of nurse protocols in the delivery of patient services.

District/county orientation, training, and QA/QI plans should be consistent with nursing practice standards and Department of Public Health guidelines such as the latest Quality Assurance/Quality Improvement for Public Health Nursing Practice manual, programmatic manuals, and nurse protocols which may be viewed at http://dph.georgia.gov/resourcesformsmanuals.

The tools and guidelines found in Orientation to Public Health Nursing Practice Under Nurse Protocol may be used in orientation, training, and for manual updates. **https://dph.georgia.gov/trainDPH.**

B. CONTINUING EDUCATION/TRAINING

Every Public Health Nurse should have the opportunity for continuing education and training in accordance with changes in technology and job responsibilities. Specific programmatic expectations for continuing education are included in the QA/QI manual described above.

Training programs are an appropriate way to educate nurses about any changes to nurse protocols after the annual review.

C. DOCUMENTATION OF TRAINING

Each RN and APRN is responsible for documenting examples of their professional growth and development at least once annually (e.g., workshops, seminars, community/professional meetings).

Documentation of all training that demonstrates RNs and APRNs are prepared to practice under standards and nurse protocols for one or more specific programs should be maintained on file for five years at the district office and by the individual nurse.

Training files must be made available for review by RNs and APRNs during QA/QI reviews.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHILD HEALTH NURSE PROTOCOLS

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHILD HEALTH NURSE PROTOCOLS

Review Team:

Vivian Lennon, MD Medical Director Primary Care Children's Healthcare of Atlanta	**Takieya Jones, BSN, RN, CLC** Nurse Consultant Child Health Georgia Department of Public Health
Kay Davis, RN, MSN Assistant Clinical Coordinator Immunization Coordinator Southeast Health District	**Denice Vance, MS, RD, LD, CLC** Nutrition Program Specialist Georgia WIC Program, Program Operations and Nutrition Office Georgia Department of Public Health
Cynthia L. Grovenstein, RN, BSN County Nurse Manager Effingham County Health Department Coastal Health District	**Kortney Floyd, APRN, CPNP** Deputy Chief Nurse – Nurse Protocols Office of Nursing Georgia Department of Public Health
Kimberley Hazelwood, PharmD Pharmacy Director Georgia Department of Public Health	**Donelle Humphrey-Franklin, RPh, MBA** Assistant Pharmacy Director Georgia Department of Public Health

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR MILD ACNE

DEFINITION Comedones (blackheads, whiteheads), pimples and tender red bumps on the face, chest or back, or any combination. Usually occurs during puberty and can last until age 20-30.

ETIOLOGY Due to increasingly active androgenic hormones, there is increased activity of sebaceous glands with obstruction of the sebaceous glands of the skin. This leads to rupture of the gland and release of sebum, a fatty acid into the surrounding tissue resulting in an inflammatory reaction producing an acne nodule. Bacterial colonization of the trapped sebum may produce inflammation.

SUBJECTIVE **Patient may complain of blackheads, whiteheads, pimples to face, chest, and/or back.**

Patient may report:

a. Use of acne-causing medications (e.g., corticosteroids, phenytoin, greasy cleansing creams, cosmetics, oils).
b. Underlying endocrinopathy (e.g., polycystic ovary syndrome, congenital adrenal hyperplasia).
c. Condition often worsens during periods of stress or cyclic menstrual flares.
d. Psychological distress caused by presence of facial lesions.
e. Family history of acne.

OBJECTIVE **Physical examination may reveal the following criteria that are useful in classifying acne:**

a. Mild inflammatory: scattered small whiteheads, with minimum blackheads, and tender red bumps on face; most common in early teens and adult women in their 20s.
b. Generalized inflammatory: generalized eruption of pimples and whiteheads on the face and trunk;
c. Severe inflammatory: large, deep inflammatory nodules associated with pimples and whiteheads. May also leave scarring.

It is also necessary to assess female's pregnancy status by either asking last menstrual period or performing pregnancy test.

ASSESSMENT Acne, Mild Inflammatory

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Non-prescription products

    a. If 12 years of age or older, for mild acne (fewer than 20 papules and non-pustular pimples):
        1) Benzoyl peroxide gel or cream, 5-10%, topically (available over-the-counter as Oxy-5, Oxy-10 and Persa-Gel). Use gel for oily skin, cream for dry skin.
        2) Begin with 5% gel or cream **daily.**
        3) Leave initial application on for 15 minutes. Increase exposure time in 15-minute increments as tolerance allows.
        4) Once tolerated for 2 hours, it can be left on the skin overnight.
        5) If necessary, advance to 2 times a day.
        6) Increase or decrease the strength and/or frequency of application depending on tolerance and response.

    NOTE: For patients with predominantly whiteheads and blackheads (Comedonal Acne) with very few inflammatory components (erythematous papules, pimples or small pustules), this therapy will not be effective. Topical retinoids are required and referral is indicated if treatment is desired.

2. Prescription products

If **non-prescription products** listed above yields an insufficient response after a trial of at least 4-6 weeks:

    a. If 12 years of age or older, for mild acne (fewer than 20 papules and non-pustular pimples):
        1) Each morning wash with Benzoyl peroxide, gel or cream, 5-10%, topically (available over-the-counter as Oxy-5, Oxy-10 and Persa-Gel). Pat dry.
        2) Apply a thin layer of either Clindamycin Topical Gel 1% or Erythromycin Topical Gel 2%.
        3) Each evening **apply** Benzoyl peroxide gel or cream5-10%, topically (available over-the-counter as Oxy-5, Oxy-10 and Persa-Gel) as described above.
        4) May apply Clindaymcin Topical Gel 1% or Erythromycin Topical Gel 2% either once daily or twice daily depending on irritation and effectiveness.

OR

b. Benzoyl peroxide plus erythromycin (Benzamycin®), contains 3% erythromycin and 5% benzoyl peroxide in gel form (alcohol base), generic available. Apply 1-2 times a day to clean, dry skin.

OR

c. 5% benzoyl peroxide plus 1% clindamycin gel (BenzaClin®). Apply 1-2 times a day to clean, dry skin**.**

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Shampoo hair regularly.

2. Gently wash face with water and mild soap or cleanser (e.g. Dove, Basis, Purpose, Cetaphil lotion) no more than 2-3 times a day**,** and shower or bathe daily.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Keep hands off face. Avoid picking lesions which may lead to scar formation.

2. Avoid greasy cleansing oils, mousse and cosmetics because they block oil glands. Use non-acnegenic cosmetics and moisturizers, if needed. **Cover face when using hair spray.**

3. Avoid scrubbing skin, because it irritates the openings of oil glands and can cause them to be more tightly closed.

4. Do not expect to completely prevent any new lesions.

5. Eat a well-balanced diet **for general health and well-being**. There is **limited** evidence that **supports using specific dietary strategies to decrease acne symptoms or prevent acne.**

6. Educate patient about increased photosensitivity with use of products listed above.

7. When applying medications listed above, avoid contact with eyes, inside of nose, mouth and all mucous membranes.

8. When apply**ing** medications listed above, avoid contact with clothing or hair. Some bleaching/staining may occur.

9. Contact clinic if any problems obtaining medications.

FOLLOW-UP

Return to clinic in 2 to 4 weeks after initiating therapy, then every 1 to 2 months **to assess improvement of acne.**

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present. When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol.

1. Patient is less than 12 years of age.
2. No improvement in mild acne in 8-12 weeks.
3. Secondary bacterial infection.
4. Acne is moderate, severe or cystic, refer to MD or APRN.
5. An underlying condition suspected, refer to MD or APRN.
6. Blackheads and whiteheads are the predominant lesions.
7. Pregnant or breastfeeding patient.
8. **Any female with acne, menstrual irregularities (primarily oligomenorrhea) or hirsutism (unusual body hair), that may be suggestive of polycystic ovary syndrome.**
9. **Refer to Family Planning if indicated. Adolescent girls may benefit from oral contraceptives (RN may still provide care under this protocol).**
10. **Refer for counseling if acne is due to psychological stress (RN may still provide care under this protocol).**

REFERENCES

1. Facts and Comparisons, "*Facts and Comparisons*," Wolters Kluwer Health, Inc., 2017 https://fco.factsandcomparisons.com/lco/action/search?q=Benzoyl%20Peroxide%20Topical&t=name, (August 14,2017).

2. Facts and Comparisons, "*Facts and Comparisons*," Wolters Kluwer Health, Inc., 2017 https://fco.factsandcomparisons.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/fc_dfc/5549978 (August 14,2017).

3. Thomas K. McInery, et al., *American Academy of Pediatrics Textbook of Pediatric Care,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2009, pp. 1802-1807 and 1809. (Current)

4. Carol K. Taketomo, et al., "Pediatric and Neonatal Dosage Handbook, 19th ed., Lexi-Comp, Hudson, Ohio, 2012, pp. 401-402.

5. U.S. National Library of Medicine, "Polycystic Ovary Syndrome," *MedLine Plus Polycystic Ovary Syndrome*, February 2013, http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/000369.htm (March 23, 2013).

6. **Graber, Amy. Treatment of Acne Vulgaris, UpToDate, (last updated February 2, 2017)**

7. **Kahl & Hughes. "The Harriet Lane Handbook." 18th edition. Elsevier. pp. 239-241**

8. **American Academy of Dermatology. "Growing Evidence Suggests Possible Link Between Diet and Acne." https://www.aad.org/media/news-releases/growing-evidence-suggests-possible-link-between-diet-and-acne. (February 5, 2013).**

9. **Burris, Rietkurk, Shikany, & Woolf. "A Low Glycemic Load Diet Improves the Hormonal Response Associated with Acne in a Cohort of Adults with Moderate and Severe Acne." September 2016.** https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jand.2016.06.132

10. **Marcason, W. Milk Consumption and Acne. Journal of the American Dietetic Association. 2010.**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PEDIATRIC ALLERGIC RHINITIS

DEFINITION An allergic disease affecting the nasal mucosa and often the conjunctiva. It may be seasonal **due to** pollens that depend on wind for cross-pollination, or perennial (non-seasonal).

ETIOLOGY Seasonal

In the eastern United States, the following are the most common causes, with pollination time varying by several months depending on location:

a. Ragweed, August – October
b. Grasses, May - July
c. Trees, March – July
d. Combinations of a, b and c

Perennial

a. House dust/house-dust mites
b. Feathers
c. Mold spores
d. Animal dander
e. Foods. Most authorities believe that if foods are causative, other signs of hypersensitivity occur with allergic rhinitis (e.g., urticaria, asthma, gastro-intestinal symptoms).

Aggravating factors:

a. Tobacco smoke
b. Air pollutants
c. Sudden temperature changes.
d. Wood heaters, fireplaces, carpets, etc.

SUBJECTIVE Patient may report:

a. Seasonal symptoms **that** tend to occur the same time each year:

    1. Nasal itching, **congestion and watery drainage.**
    2. **Itchy eyes with excessive tearing.**
    3. **Postnasal drip with sore throat, cough and itchiness.**

b. **Coexisting atopic diseases such as eczema, food allergies or asthma**.
c. **Significant impact on school performance and sleep patterns.**

OBJECTIVE **Physical examination may reveal:**

a. Clear, thin nasal discharge.
b. **Nasal mucosa may be normal to pink to pale gray and edematous.**
c. Enlarged nasal turbinates.
d. “Allergic salute" - rubbing of the nose upward and outward (seen especially in children) and "wrinkling" of the nose.
e. Conjunctival injection **with or without clear drainage and** dark semi-circles (“allergic shiners") under the eyes.
f. Mouth breathing

ASSESSMENT Allergic Rhinitis

Seasonal – **rule out:**

a. Upper respiratory tract infection
b. Infectious conjunctivitis
c. **Any food allergies.**

Perennial – **rule out:**

a. Recurrent upper respiratory tract infection
b. Vasomotor rhinitis (of unknown cause, non-infectious, non-seasonal, and non-allergenic).
c. Deviated nasal septum.
d. Side effects of medications, such as overuse of vasoconstricting nose drops/sprays.
e. Chronic sinusitis.
f. Chronic contact with tobacco smoke (smoke is a primary irritant, allergy not required).

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. **Nasal Corticosteroids:**

For age 2 and over with seasonal allergic rhinitis, a nasal corticosteroid is regarded as first-line therapy (before using oral antihistamines).

a. Mometasone furoate nasal spray, (Nasonex®)
   1) Children 2-11 years of age**,** 50mcg (1 spray) in each nostril once daily (total daily dose 100mcg).
   2) Children 12 years of age and older, 100mcg (2 sprays) in each nostril daily (total daily dose 200 mcg).

Priming: Prior to initial use, the pump must be primed by

actuating 10 times or until a fine spray appears. The pump may be stored unused for up to 1 week without re-priming. If unused for more than 1 week, re-prime by actuating 2 times, or until a fine spray appears.

OR

b. Fluticasone propionate nasal spray, **(50mcg/actuation) or available as OTC products** (Flonase® **Allergy Relief, GoodSense Nasoflow**)
   1) Children 4 years of age and older, initial: 50mcg (1 spray) in each nostril once daily (total daily dose 100mcg).

   Patients not responding adequately to the 100mcg daily dose or those with more severe symptoms may use 100mcg (2 sprays) in each nostril daily (2 sprays in each nostril once daily or 1 spray in each nostril twice daily). Total daily dosage should not exceed 2 sprays in each nostril (200mcg)/day. Dosing should be at regular intervals. Once adequate control is achieved, the dosage should be decreased to 100 mcg (1 spray in each nostril) daily.

OR

c. Fluticasone furoate, **Flonase Sensimist 27.5mcg/spray available as OTC product**
   1) Children 2-11 years: initial 1 spray (27.5mcg/spray) per nostril once daily (55 mcg/day). Patients not adequately responding may use 2 sprays per nostril once daily (110 mcg/day). Once symptoms are controlled, dosage may be reduced to 55 mcg once daily. Total daily dosage should not exceed 2 sprays in each nostril (110 mcg)/day.
   2) Children 12 years of age and older: Initial: 2 sprays (27.5 mcg/spray) per nostril once daily (110 mcg/day). Once symptoms are controlled, dosage may be reduced to 1 spray per nostril once daily (55 mcg/day). Total daily dosage should not exceed 2 sprays in each nostril (110 mcg)/day.

   Prime before using for the first time by shaking the contents well and releasing 6 test sprays into the air away from the face. When fluticasone has not been used for more than 30 days or if the cap has been left off the bottle for 5 days or longer, prime the pump again until a fine mist appears. Shake well before each use.

OR

d. Triamcinolone acetonide aqueous suspension nasal spray**, (55mcg/actuation), available as OTC products GoodSense Nasal Allergy Spray, Nasacort Allergy 24HR, Nasacort Allergy 24HR Children)**
   1) Children 2-5 years: 55 mcg (1 spray) each nostril once daily (total daily dose 110 mcg).
   2) Children 6-11 years: Initial: 110 mcg/day as 1 spray in each nostril once daily; may increase to 220 mcg/day as 2 sprays in each nostril if response not adequate; once symptoms controlled may reduce to 110 mcg/day.
   3) Children 12 years and older: initial 220mcg/day as 2 sprays in each nostril once daily; titrate to lowest effective dose once symptoms are controlled; usual maintenance dose: 110mcg/day as 1 spray in each nostril once daily.

   Prime before using for the first time by shaking the contents well and releasing 5 sprays into the air, away from the face. It will remain adequately primed for 2 weeks. If the product is not used for more than 2 weeks, then it can be adequately re-primed with 1 spray.

NOTE: For the **above list of** inhaled corticosteroids, it is recommended that once optimal symptomatic relief is achieved, dosage of the drug should be gradually reduced to the lowest effective dose.

The preparations listed **above** are preferred because of low systemic bioavailability and therefore less risk of systemic complications with chronic use. If adequate relief of symptoms has not been obtained after 3 weeks of treatment, discontinue use.

2. Antihistamines:

   a. Cetirizine/Zyrtec® Liquid 5mg/5mL, chewable 5mg tablet, tablet 5mg or 10 mg (available OTC).
      1) 2 years- 5 years: ½ - 1 teaspoon (2.5 to 5mg) PO every day or ½ teaspoon every 12 hours.
      2) 6 years-11 years: 5mg to 10mg PO every day.
      3) 12 years or older: 1tab (10mg) PO every day.

OR

   b. Loratadine/Claritin® Liquid 5mg/5mL, chewable 5mg tablet, orally disintegrating 5mg tablet, tablet 10mg (available OTC):

1) 2 years-5 years: 1 teaspoon (5mg) PO every day
2) 6 years-11 years: 10mg PO every day.
3) 12 years or older: 10mg PO every day.

NOTE: Manipulation of dosage within the prescribed ranges may be necessary to achieve symptomatic relief with a minimum of side effects (e.g., drowsiness, dry mouth, nervousness). Medication should be taken for several days/weeks at a time during symptomatic periods; intermittent single dose usage will not be as effective in controlling symptoms as regular dosing). Use loratadine and cetirizine with caution in patients with hepatic and renal impairment. **Some loratadine tablets may contain phenylalanine; use with caution in patients with phenylketonuria.**

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Infants **and toddlers less than 2 years of age:** If needed for nasal congestion use saline nose drops; **1** to **2** drops in each nostril, followed by gentle aspiration of nasal secretions with rubber suction bulb, particularly before feeding. Caution: may aggravate nasal congestion if nasal mucosa is injured (Available products: Ayr Baby Saline; Ayr Saline Drops; NaSal Saline Drops; Simply Saline Baby).

2. Children **2 years and above**: If needed for nasal congestion, use saline nose drops; **2** to **6** drops in each nostril every 2 hours. (Available products: Ayr Baby Saline, Ayr Saline, Little Noses, Simply Saline Baby, Ocean for Kids.

PATIENT COUNSELING/EDUCATION

1. Identification and avoidance of the offending antigen.

2. Most antihistamines cause drowsiness. Cetirizine and loratadine are known to be the least sedating. Counsel against driving or other activities that would present a risk if drowsy.

3. Cetirizine may cause photosensitivity reactions. Avoid sun exposure. Wear protective clothing and sunscreen while taking this medication.

4. For nasal corticosteroids, educate on the importance of priming and shaking the containers before administering medication; Optimal technique:

    a. Gently blow nose prior to use,
    b. Direct away from the septum, and
    c. Tilt head slightly forward to prevent swallowing the spray.

5. The patient should be instructed to consult their primary care provider of any recurrent epistaxis, nasal septum discomfort, irritation burning and/or stinging.

6. Females of child-bearing potential should inform clinician if they are or plan to become pregnant or plan to breastfeed.

7. Remind patient to drink a few sips of water or liquid after using nasal spray to help reduce throat irritation.

8. Some loratadine tablets may contain phenylalanine. Use with caution in patients with phenylketonuria.

9. Take the following measures as appropriate:

    a. Seasonal
        1) Avoid areas with heavy concentration of ragweed, trees or grass during pollinating season.
        2) Sleep with bedroom windows closed during the appropriate pollinating seasons.
        3) Use an air conditioner with an electrostatic precipitating filter to avoid pollen. Clean filter often.
        4) Change clothes and bathe after long periods outside.
        5) Do not hang clothes or bedding outside.

    b. Perennial
        1) Create a dust-free bedroom. Use a mouth-and-nose mask when cleaning.
        2) Remove everything from the room, including floor coverings, curtains, drapes, and closet contents. Keep door closed always.
        3) Clean the room thoroughly - walls, woodwork, ceiling, floor and closet. Wash the floor.
        4) Cover the mattress, box spring, and pillows with plastic dust-proof covers.
        5) Make sure the room contains a minimum of furniture, washable rugs and curtains. Avoid bed pads, heavy rugs, drapes, upholstered furniture, toys and knick-knacks.
        6) Clean the room daily using a vacuum cleaner, damp cloth or damp mop. Do not use a broom or duster.
        7) Keep bedroom windows and doors closed. If hot-air heating is used, cover vents with coarse muslin which is changed frequently.
        8) Change furnace air filter frequently.
        9) Vacuum stuffed furniture and rugs frequently.
        10) Keep pets (dogs and cats) outside, if possible.

11) Avoid damp and dusty places (e.g., attics, basements, closets, storerooms).
12) No stuffed toys if patient is dust-sensitive.
13) Use an air conditioner with an electrostatic precipitating filter to avoid dust.
14) No smoking inside the house, especially in child's bedroom.

10. Contact clinic if any problems obtaining medications.

FOLLOW-UP

Return visit in one week, and periodically as needed **to assess resolution and/or improvement of symptoms.**

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. Failure to respond to treatment, or severe/prolonged periods of symptoms not controlled by the above treatment measures (**especially persistent** interference with sleep or school performance), **consult with physician**.

2. Consideration for immunotherapy (hyposensitization), or leukotriene receptor antagonist.

3. Inability to tolerate antihistamines.

4. Patient requiring almost daily medication for perennial symptoms.

5. Patient requiring more than two orders for nasal corticosteroids per year.

6. Patients who are pregnant or breastfeeding.

7. Complications:

    a. Otitis media.
    b. Sinusitis.
    c. Nasal or sinus polyps from longstanding perennial allergic

rhinitis.

d. Asthma.
e. History of anaphylaxis.
f. Hepatic or renal impairment.

8. **Consult registered dietitian nutritionist (RD/RDN) if food allergy related. Children ages 0-5 years of age may be eligible for nutrition assessment, education, and counseling through the WIC Program.**

REFERENCES

1. L. Lai, T. Casale, J. Stokes, "Pediatric Allergic Rhinitis: Treatment," Immunology and Allergy Clinics of North America, 2005, 25:283-299. (Current)

2. Thomas K. McInery, et al, *American Academy of Pediatrics Textbook of Pediatric Care,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2009, pp. 1818-1821. (Current)

3. American Academy of Allergy Asthma and Immunology, "Outdoor allergens: Tips to remember." https://www.aaaai.org/conditions-and-treatments/library/at-a-glance/outdoor-allergens.aspx (February 11, 2013).

4. D. V. Wallace, M. S. Dykewicz, D. I. Bernstein, J. Blessing-Moore, L. Cox, D. A. Khan, et al., "The Diagnosis and Management of Rhinitis: An Updated Practice Parameter," *Journal of Allergy and Clinical Immunology,* 122(2), August 2008. (Current)

5. Merck Sharp and Dohme Corp, "Nasonex", http://www.nasonex.com/nasx/jsp/learn_about_nasonex/how_to_use_nasonex/index.jsp (February 12, 2013).

6. *Veramyst,* GlaxoSmithKline, Research Triangle Park, NC, August 2012.

7. L.R. Lustig, J.S. Schindler, *Current Medical Diagnosis and Treatment,* McGraw-Hill, New York, 2013, http://www.accessmedicine.com.medlib-proxy.mercer.edu/content.aspx?aID=2356, accessed February 11, 2013.

8. American Academy of Allergy Asthma and Immunology, "Rhinitis Hay Fever: Tips to Remember," http://www.aaaai.org/conditions-and-treatments/library/at-a-glance/rhinitis.aspx (February 11, 2013).

9. Carol Berkowitz, *Berkowtiz's Pediatrics: A Primary Care Approach,* 3rd ed., USA, 2008, pp. 413-414. (Current)

10. *Nasacort®AQ, sanofi-aventis U.S. LLC, Bridgewater, NJ, 2010.*

11. Carol K. Taketomo, et al., *Pediatric and Neonatal Dosage Handbook,* 19th ed., Lexicomp, Hudson, Ohio, 2012, pp. 346, 347, 746, 747, 1041, 1042.

12. **Facts and Comparison, "Facts and Comparisons," *Wolters Kluwer*** https://fco.factsandcomparisons.com/lco/action/home **August 15, 2017.**

13. **Facts and Comparison, "Facts and Comparisons," *Wolters Kluwer*** https://fco.factsandcomparisons.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/fc_dfc/5549031 **August 15, 2017.**

14. **Facts and Comparison, "Facts and Comparisons,"** ***Wolters Kluwer*** *https://fco.factsandcomparisons.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/fc_dfc/5549029* ***August 15,2017.***

15. **Kahl & Hughes. "The Harriet Lane Handbook." 18th edition. Elsevier. pp. 387-388.**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR IMPACTED CERUMEN/EARWAX

DEFINITION Ear wax is a protective waxy secretion produced in the ear canal. It is a lubricant that in most cases eliminates naturally. Because it is a hydrophobic agent (repels water) it serves to protect the delicate skin of the ear canal from maceration secondary to over-hydration. Cerumen impaction is an accumulation of cerumen in the ear canal that causes symptoms (e.g., ear pain, tinnitus, fullness in the ear, hearing loss or vertigo) or prevents assessment of the ear, or both. By this definition, cerumen impaction can occur when cerumen in the ear canal prevents needed assessment even if the canal is only partially occluded. When visualization of ear canal anatomy or the tympanic membrane is not essential to good care and is not associated with symptoms, cerumen in the ear canal is not considered “impacted”.

ETIOLOGY An excessive production of sebum by the sebaceous glands and apocrine sweat glands may cause occlusion in the external auditory canal. Impaction often occurs after objects are inserted into the ear canal in attempts to clean the ear.

SUBJECTIVE Patient/care-giver may have:

a. Observed soft, yellow wax or a drier, black and brown wax on the outer surface of the external auditory canal.
b. Noticed hearing impairment, ear pain, tinnitus, vertigo, or ear fullness.

OBJECTIVE **Physical examination may reveal:**

a. Yellow wax or a drier black and brown wax on the outer surface of the ear, or the auditory canal.
b. May or may not detect hearing impairment.

ASSESSMENT Excess Cerumen or Impacted Cerumen

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Carbamide peroxide product

   For child under 12 years: Tilt head sideways and instill into the affected ear(s) 1 to 5 drops (individualize based on child’s size) of carbamide peroxide product, e.g., Debrox or Auro, twice daily for up to 4 days. Allow the drops to remain in the ear for several minutes by keeping the head tilted; **then tilt head in opposite direction to allow fluid to drain from ear.**

For child 12 years and older: Tilt head sideways and instill 5 to 10 drops of carbamide peroxide product, e.g., Debrox or Auro, into affected ear(s) twice daily for up to 4 days. Allow the drops to remain in the ear for several minutes by keeping the head tilted. **then tilt head in opposite direction to allow fluid to drain from ear.**

NOTE: These agents should be avoided if there is a reason to believe that the tympanic membrane is not intact (such as H/O ventilation tube placement or recent ear discharge). Do not use if there is ear pain, irritation, rash in the ear, or any suspicion of ear drum perforation.

PATIENT COUNSELING/EDUCATION

1. Instruct to clean the ears properly, preferably with a washcloth.

2. Instruct not to insert Q-tips or other objects in ears; explain that this can cause impaction or injury.

3. Offer reassurance that cerumen production is a normal process.

4. Excessive cerumen production does not equal impaction. If visualization of ear canal anatomy or the tympanic membrane is not essential to good care and is not associated with symptoms, there is no need to be aggressive about cerumen removal.

5. Instruct not to use ear candling because there is no evidence of positive effects and ear candling may be associated with considerable risks, e.g., burns, occlusion, perforated tympanic membranes.

6. Contact clinic if any problems obtaining medications.

FOLLOW UP

As needed.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. If ear remains impacted and symptomatic, refer to MD/NP for cerumen removal and further evaluation.

2. If tympanic membrane is not intact, ear tube is in place, ear pain, irritation, rash in the ear, or any suspicion of ear drum perforation.

3. Diabetic or immunocompromised patient.

4. History of injury from syringing.

5. Foreign bodies.

6. History of ear surgery.

7. History of chronic otitis media or other middle ear diseases.

8. Uncooperative patient.

9. Pregnant patient.

REFERENCES

1. William W. Hay et al., *Current Diagnosis & Treatment: Pediatrics*, 21st ed., McGraw-Hill, United States of America, 2012, http://www.accessmedicine.com.medlib-proxy.mercer.edu/content.aspx?aid=56817986, accessed on February 12, 2013.

2. Thomas K. McInery, et al., *American Academy of Pediatrics Textbook of Pediatric Care,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2009, p. 121. (Current)

3. S. J. McPhee and M. A. Papadakis, *Current Medical Diagnosis & Treatment* 2011, McGraw-Hill, United States of America, 2013, http://www.accessmedicine.com.medlib-proxy.mercer.edu/content.aspx?aID=2356, accessed on February 12, 2013.

4. J. E. Tintinalli et al: *Tintinalli's Emergency Medicine: A Comprehensive Study Guide, 7th ed.,* McGraw-Hill, New York, 2011, http://www.accessmedicine.com.medlib-proxy.mercer.edu/content.aspx?aID=6387747, accessed February 12, 2013.

5. Robert M. Kliegman, et al., *Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics,* 19th ed., Elsevier, Saunders, Philadelphia, PA, 2011, accessed on February 12, 2013.

6. Carol K. Taketomo, et al., "*Pediatric and Neonatal Dosage Handbook,* 19th ed., Lexi-Comp, Inc., Hudson, Ohio, 2012, pp. 307-308.

7. Peter S. Roland, et al., "Clinical practice guideline: Cerumen impaction," *Otolaryngology Head and Neck Surgery*, Vol. 139, No. 3S2, September 2008, pp. S1–21. (Current)

8. Daniel F. McCarter, et al., Cerumen Impaction, *American Family Physician,* Vol. 75, No. 10, May 2007, pp. 1523-1528. (Current)

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR CONJUNCTIVITIS

DEFINITION

Conjunctivitis is inflammation of the conjunctiva. The conjunctiva are the mucous membranes of the eyelids and the surface of the eye. The conjunctiva is normally transparent but when inflamed it appears pink or red. There are three common types of conjunctivitis: bacterial, viral and allergic.

Bacterial conjunctivitis: Patients with bacterial conjunctivitis typically present with redness and discharge from one eye that can spread to both eyes. The affected eye is often stuck shut in the morning with purulent or mucopurulent discharge. The purulent discharge continues throughout the day. The discharge may be white, yellow or green. The discharge appears at the lid margins and the corner of the eye. Discharge reappears soon after wiping the lids. Bacterial conjunctivitis is very contagious and spread by contact with secretions. Bacterial conjunctivitis is commonly caused by:

a. ***Streptococcoccus pneumonia***
b. ***Hemophilus influenza***
c. ***Staphylococcus aureus***
d. ***Moraxella catarrhalis***

The following agents are of concern during the newborn period and require immediate referral:

a. ***Neisseria gonorrhea***
b. ***Chlamydia trachomatis***

NOTE: Emergent referral is necessary if purulent discharge started between 2 and 5 days of age. This could represent gonorrhea and may require systemic antibiotics without delay.

If the discharge started in the first 24 hours and clears within 48 hours, this is typical of chemical conjunctivitis secondary to the instillation of drops at birth to prevent gonorrhea infection and does not require referral of treatment.

Viral conjunctivitis is often accompanied by symptoms of an upper respiratory infection. Patients with viral conjunctivitis present with red eyes and watery or mucoserous discharge. They can describe a burning, sandy or gritty feeling in one or both eyes. They may report waking with crusty eyes from the dried discharge and then watery eyes throughout the day. It is very contagious and spreads by contact with secretions. Viral conjunctivitis has a self-limiting course much like the common cold. It can last from a few days to

several weeks.

Allergic conjunctivitis is caused by airborne allergens that cause an inflammatory reaction in both eyes. It presents with bilateral redness, watery discharge and itching. Itching is the primary complaint. Patients with allergic conjunctivitis often have history of atopic dermatitis, seasonal allergies or other allergies. This form of conjunctivitis is not contagious.

ETIOLOGY

Bacterial infection:

a. *Streptococcus pneumonia.*
b. *Hemophilus influenza.*
c. *Staphylococcus aureus.*
d. Moraxella catarrhalis
e. *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* (of particular concern during the newborn period)
f. *Chlamydia trachomatis*

Viral infection:

Adenovirus.

Allergic reaction:

Usually associated with such allergens as pollen, molds, animal dander and dust.

Foreign body or trauma.

SUBJECTIVE

Patient may report:

a. Eye irritation; sandy or gritty feeling in eyes
b. Eye discharge
    1) Watery: suggestive of viral or allergic.
    2) Purulent (yellow, white, or green): suggestive of bacterial
c. Itching of eyes (more suggestive of allergic conjunctivitis)
d. Mild photophobia.
e. Eyelid(s) stuck shut in the morning.
f. No complaints of decreased vision.
g. May have history of contact lens use (caution: high risk).
h. History of seasonal allergies.

OBJECTIVE

Physical examination may reveal:

a. Redness of one or both eyes
b. Discharge:

1) **Bacterial: Purulent discharge from one or both eyes that continues throughout the day**
2) **Viral: Mucoid or watery discharge from one or both eyes**
3) **Allergic: Stringy or watery discharge**

c. Chemosis (edema of the bulbar conjunctiva that can, at times, be marked when allergy is the cause).

ASSESSMENT Conjunctivitis: Bacterial, viral or allergic

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

Bacterial Conjunctivitis [4]	
Erythromycin 5mg/gram ophthalmic ointment	**Infants (birth to 12 months) and older: ½ inch (1.25 cm) 4 times daily for 5 to 7 days**
OR	
Trimethoprim-polymyxin B 0.1% - 10,000 units/mL ophthalmic drops	**Pregnancy Risk Factor C** **2 months of age and older: 1 to 2 drops 4 times daily for 5 to 7 days**
OR	
Bacitracin-polymyxin B 500 units-10,000 units/gram ophthalmic ointment	**Pregnancy Risk Factor C** **Infants (birth to 12 months) and older: ½ inch (1.25 cm) 4 times daily, for 5 to 7 days**
OR	
Bacitracin 500 units/gram ophthalmic ointment	**½ inch (1.25 cm) 4-6 times daily, for 5 to 7 days**
OR	
Ofloxacin 0.3% (preferred agent in contact lens wearers, but contact lenses should not be worn during treatment of infection	**Pregnancy Risk Factor C** **1 year of age and older: Instill 1 to 2 drops in affected eye(s) every 2 to 4 hours while awake for the first 2 days; then, instill 1 to 2 drops every 6 hours while awake for the next 5 days.**
OR	
Ciprofloxacin 0.3% ophthalmic drops (preferred agent in contact lens wearer) **Ciprofloxacin 0.3% ophthalmic ointment**	**Pregnancy Risk Factor C** **1 year of age and older: (Solution) Instill 1 to 2 drops into the affected eye(s) every 2 hours while awake for 2 days; then, 1 to 2 drops every 4 hours while awake for 5 days.** **2 years of age and older:(Ointment) Apply $^{1}/_{2}$-inch ribbon into the affected eye(s) 3 times per day for the first 2 days, followed by $^{1}/_{2}$-inch**

4 **As adapted from Up To Date by Takieya Jones RN, CLC GA Child Health Nurse Consultant**

	ribbon into affected eye(s) twice daily for 5 days.
OR	
Azithromycin 1% ophthalmic drops	1 year of age and older: 1 drop in affected eye(s) twice a day (8 to 12 hours apart) for 2 days; then 1 drop in affected eye(s) daily for 5 days.
OR	
Moxifloxacin Hydrochloride	Pregnancy Risk Factor C 4 months of age and older: (Moxeza®) Instill 1 drop into affected eye(s) 2 times daily for 7 days. Birth to adult: Vigamox® Instill 1 drop into affected eye(s) 3 times daily for 7 days.
Viral Conjunctivitis	
Lubricating drops/ointment OTC Advanced Eye Relief™, HypoTears; LiquiTears, Murine Tears®, Natures Tears; OTCTears Again®; Tears Naturale® Free; other generics	Drops: 1 to 2 drops every 1 to 6 hours as needed Ointment: ½ inch (1.25 cm) at bedtime or four times daily as needed
Allergic Conjunctivitis	
For short-term treatment: Antihistamine/vasoconstrictor ophthalmic preparations can cause temporary increased redness once medication is discontinued.	
Lubricating drops/ointment OTC Advanced Eye Relief™, HypoTears; LiquiTears, Murine Tears®, Natures Tears [OTCTears Again®; Tears Naturale® Free; other generics	Drops: 1 to 2 drops every 1 to 6 hours as needed. Ointment: ½ inch (1.25 cm) at bedtime or four times daily as needed.
For frequent episodes (occurring more than 2 days per month): Mast cell stabilizer/antihistamine ophthalmic Solutions. Itching should decrease within 24- 72 hours; may cause dry eye sensation or burning. It may take up to 2 weeks to see full efficacy of these agents. CHOOSE ONE FROM BELOW:	
Olopatadine 0.1% (Patanol), 0.2% (Pataday), 0.7% (Pazeo)	Pregnancy Risk Factor C 2 years and older: 1 drop per affected eye(s) twice daily (Patanol). OR 1 drop per affected eye(s) once daily (Pataday and Pazeo)
OR	
Alcaftadine 0.25% (Lastacaft) May require Prior approval for Medicaid	2 years and older: 1 drop per affected eye(s) once daily
OR	
Bepotastine 1.5% (Bepreve)	Pregnancy Risk Factor C

	2 years and older: 1 drop per affected eye(s) twice daily
OR	
Epinastine 0.05% (Elestat) **May require Prior approval for Medicaid**	**Pregnancy Risk Factor C** **2 years and older: 1 drop per affected eye(s) twice daily**
OR	
OTC Ophthalmic Products: **Ketotifen 0.025%** **(Zaditor, TheraTears, Alaway Children's Allergy, Claritin)**	**Pregnancy Risk Factor C** **3 years and older: 1 drop per affected eye(s) every 8 to 12 hours**
OR	
Emedastine 0.05% (Emadine) **May require Prior approval for Medicaid**	**3 years and older: One drop per affected eye(s) up to four times daily**

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

Warm or cool compresses may provide additional symptomatic relief of discomfort, if mild non-purulent conjunctivitis associated with an upper respiratory infection, allergic **or viral** conjunctivitis is present.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. **Contact lenses should not be worn during times of infection of the eye or during treatment of infections of the eye.**

2. Viral conjunctivitis may last up to 12-14 days.

3. **Bacterial conjunctivitis should respond to treatment within 2-3 days. Refer to primary care provider if no improvement or worsening of symptoms.**

4. Hands must be washed before and after application of ophthalmic ointment or solution. Instruct in hand washing technique and disposal of contaminated tissues.

5. Avoid contact of medication tube or bottle tip with skin or eye.

6. Do not share medication.

7. Dispose of medication when treatment is completed.

8. Do not share bath cloths/towels.

9. School or daycare attendance: Check with school. American Academy of Pediatrics' position is that children with infectious conjunctivitis under treatment may attend school provided reasonable

precautions are taken to avoid close physical contact. Children with allergic conjunctivitis are not infectious and may attend school.

10. May use cold, wet compresses. To clean eyes, use **clean towel** moistened with water. Use a fresh **side of the towel with each wipe. Also, always wipe eye from inner canthus toward outer canthus.**

11. Do not use the child's eye medicine for anyone else.

12. Contact clinic if any problems obtaining medications.

FOLLOW-UP:

Follow-up in 2-3 days **if no** symptom improvement.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present. (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. Infants less than three months of age **(see paragraph in Definition section regarding possible agents of concern during newborn period requiring immediate referral).**

2. No improvement in 2 to 3 days after initiation of treatment, or if symptoms worsen.

3. Foreign body, trauma or chemical injury.

4. Severe eye pain.

5. Vision changes.

6. Severe sensitivity to light.

7. Any irregularities of pupil size or reaction to light.

8. All contact lens wearers (possible infected corneal abrasion).

9. Any redness of eyelids.

10. Ill appearing, other body systems symptomatic

11. Pregnant or breastfeeding patient.

REFER IMMEDIATELY for patients with complaints of:

1. Severe foreign body sensation.
2. Ciliary flush (Keratitis, iritis, glaucoma): Severe injection [redness] in the transition zone between cornea and sclera.
3. Corneal Opacity (Keratitis): Whitish, cloudy film over the cornea.
4. Reduction in visual acuity (Keratitis, Iritis, Glaucoma).

REFERENCES

1. Sarah Long, *Principles and Practice of Pediatric Infectious Disease*, 4th ed., Elsevier Saunders, China, 2012, http://www.mdconsult.com/books/linkTo?type=bookPage&isbn=978-1-4377-2702-9&eid=4-u1.0-B978-1-4377-2702-9..00301-9, accessed on March 24, 2013.

2. **Lexi-Comp, Inc., *"Lexi-Comp Online,"* Lexi-Comp, Inc., 2016, http://lexicomponline.com/crlsql/servlet/crlonline (January 5, 2017).**

3. Facts and Comparisons, "*Facts and Comparisons*," Wolters Kluwer Health, Inc, 2013, http://online.factsandcomparisons.com/index.as (April 4, 2013).

4. Thomas K. McInery, et al., *American Academy of Pediatrics Textbook of Pediatric Care,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2009, pp.1702-1706, 2222 and 2361. (Current)
Robert Kliegman, et al., *Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics,* 19th ed., Elsevier Saunders, Philadelphia, PA, 2011, http://www.mdconsult.com/books/linkTo?type=bookPage&isbn=978-1-4377-0755-7&eid=4-u1.0-B978-1-4377-0755-7..00618-7, accessed on March 24, 2013.

5. Rose W. Boynton, et al., *Manual of Ambulatory Pediatrics*, 6th ed., Wolters Kluwer Health, Philadelphia, 2009, pp. 264-269. (Current)

6. Children's Healthcare of Atlanta, et al., "Georgia School Health Resource Manual," *Georgia School Health Resource Manual 2013 Edition, Chapter 4*, 2013, http://www.choa.org/Health-Professionals/Nurse-Resources/School-Nurses/School-Health-Consultant-2013 (March 24, 2013).

7. **Jacobs, Deborah. UpToDate. "Conjunctivitis." Last updated August 22, 2016.** http://www.uptodate.com/contents/allergic-conjunctivitis-management?topicKey=ALLRG%2F90512&elapsedTimeMs=0&source=search_result&searchTerm=conjunctivitis+treatment&selectedTitle=2%7E150&view=print&displayedView=full# **(January 5,2017)**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR CONSTIPATION

DEFINITION

Bowel movements which are associated with the passage of hard, dry, often painful, stools. Stool frequency is not a primary consideration when diagnosing constipation. Infrequent passage of stools that are soft and easily passed does not constitute constipation. In fact, in exclusively breastfed infants after the first month of life, this is common and not a concern.

ETIOLOGY

Acute Constipation **may be caused by:**

a. Insufficient amount of fiber and/or fluid in the diet.
b. Decreased physical activity.
c. **Early introduction of solid foods in infants less than 4 months.**
d. Emotional upset.
e. Uncomfortable circumstances for defecating.
f. Disruption of usual daily routine.
g. Aggressive toilet training techniques.

Chronic Constipation **may be caused by:**

a. Psychogenic stool-holding.
b. Chronic neuromuscular disorders.
c. Hirschsprung's disease.
d. Hypothyroidism.
e. Acute constipation that has not been adequately treated, resulting in an enlarged colon with decreased contractile strength (known as the 'vicious cycle' of constipation).

SUBJECTIVE

Acute Constipation:

a. Pain on defecation.
b. Stools are hard, dry.
c. Straining on defecation.
d. History of blood-tinged stools.
e. Mild abdominal pain.
f. Decrease in frequency of defecation from usual pattern may be taken as a sign of constipation if it is associated with other symptoms such as hard, dry stools.

Chronic Constipation

a. Psychogenic stool-holding:

    1. Onset in late infancy or early childhood.
    2. Large bowel movements at long intervals.
    3. Fecal incontinence (encopresis).

4. Behavior problems.

b. Chronic neuromuscular disease:

1. Other developmental problems.
2. Mild abdominal pain.

c. Hirschsprung's disease:

1. Soiling and retentive behavior – rare.
2. May present at any age but most become apparent at birth or in early infancy.
3. Anorexia and vomiting in early infancy.
4. First stool more than 24 hours after birth.

d. Hypothyroidism:

1. Poor feeding.
2. Vomiting.

OBJECTIVE Acute Constipation

a. Physical exam may be normal.
b. Anal fissure or perianal abscess.
c. Mild abdominal distention with a palpable, firm stool apparent on abdominal and rectal exam.

Chronic Constipation

a. Physical exam may be normal.
b. Abdominal distention with a palpable firm stool apparent on abdominal and rectal examination. With Hirshprung's disease there will be no stool in the rectum on rectal examination. The obstruction is above the rectum.
c. Muscle weakness, sluggish reflexes (hypothyroidism), **may have** dimple on lower back.

ASSESSMENT **Constipation (Acute or Chronic)**

1. **In most cases, physical exam will be within normal limits.**

2. **May present with an intestinal obstruction, but this is rare** (usually associated with abdominal pain and vomiting).

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

For patient with acute constipation (with symptoms such as pain, irritability, malaise):

1. Stimulation of stool passage

   a. Infants and children, 1 month to 2 years: Glycerin Suppository: **½ to** 1 infant suppository once per day until stool appears up to a maximum of 3 days.

   b. Children 2 through 5 years: 1 **pediatric** suppository (Fleet Pedialax or Colace Infant/Children)

   OR

   Fleet Baby Lax: 2mL to 5 mL of rectal solution once per day until stool appears up to a maximum of 3 days.

   c. Children 6 years or older: 1 adult suppository (Fleet Glycerin, Colace Adult/Children, Sani-Supp)

   OR

   5mL-15 mL rectal solution as enema (Fleet Liquid Glycerin Suppositories) once per day until stool appears up to a maximum of 3 days.

2. For use after initial relief from above. A brief course of **Polyethylene Glycol 3350 Powder,** Sorbitol 70% solution or Docusate sodium (as below) may be helpful to restore regularity. Should not use for more than 5-7 days.

   a. **Polyethylene Glycol 3350 Powder (MiraLax, GlycoLax) Children younger than 18 months: ½ tsp-1 tsp daily; 18 months-3 years: 2-3 tsp once daily; older than 3 years: 2-4 tsp once daily; Greater than 3 years: 17 grams powder (1 heaping tbsp per day mixed in 8 oz water or another non-carbonated beverage)**

   b. Sorbitol 70% Solution
      1) Children **1**-11 years: Oral: **1** mL/kg **once or twice daily with max of 30 mL**
      2) Children 12 years of age and older: Oral: **15-30 mL once or twice daily (60 ml max)**

   OR

   c. Docusate sodium- 5 mg/kg/day.
      1) Age less than 3 years: Orally 10-40 mg/day, in divided doses from 1-4 times a day.

2) Ages 3 through 5 years: Orally 20-60 mg/day, in divided doses from 1-4 times a day.
3) Ages 6-12 years: Orally 40-150mg/day, in divided doses from 1-4 doses a day.
4) Greater than 12 years of age: 50 to 360 mg/day in single or divided doses.

NOTE: This softens and prevents excessive drying of the stool. It is effective unless there is voluntary stool retention. Effect should be apparent 1-3 days after first dose.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Encourage increased water intake for children older than 1 year of age.

2. **For infants less than 4 months, can give 1 ounce a day of juice for every month of life up to about 4 months (a 3-month-old baby would get 3 ounces).**

   For infants greater than 4 months, offer 100% juice containing sorbitol such as prune, pear and/or apple juices. Due to a heavy concentration of sugar, add 1-2 oz. of water with 1-2 oz. of juice (apple, prune, pear) per day until stool has softened. No more than 4 total ounces of juice should be offered to infants 4-8 months. Limit juice intake to no more than 6 total ounces in infants 8-12 months.

   Sorbitol containing juices (apple, prune, pear) may be offered at full strength to children greater than 1 year of age. Do not give more than 4-6 ounces of 100 % fruit juice per day to children between 1 and 6 years of age. Children 7 years and older may drink up to 2, 4 oz. servings per day.

3. If anal fissure, suggest warm Sitz baths, gentle cleansing, petroleum jelly to anus.

4. Increase the amount of fruits, vegetables and other high fiber foods such as, whole grains. **(age 6 months and above).**

5. **Recommend giving normal volume of milk for age:**

   Formula fed: 2 months (21-32oz.), 4 months (26-32oz), 6 months and older whenever he/she displays signs of hunger (usually 5-6 times in 24 hours).

   Breastfed infants: feed ad lib as infant displays signs/symptoms of

hunger. May have need to nurse more frequently during growth spurts.

In children, greater than 1 year of age, limit milk intake to no more than 24-30 oz. daily. This includes cow's milk and any plant based alternatives.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Infants **(Infants and toddlers up to age 2):**

    a. Explain the need for adequate fluid intake.
        1) **Provide breastmilk and/or formula ad lib as the infant displays signs/symptoms of hunger. Infants less than 6 months should be able to receive adequate fluids through breast milk and/or formula alone. Infants less than 6 months should not be offered plain water without consulting their primary care provider.**
        2) For infants, greater than 6 months and who are eating solid foods, plain water may be given as recommended by a doctor.

    b. Counsel on overall quality of diet and dietary needs appropriate for the age of the infant:
        1) If breastfeeding, continue to breastfeed
        2) If feeding formula, ensure proper mixing/concentration and that intake is appropriate for age:
            a) Formula fed 2 months (21-32oz.),
            b) 4 months (26-32oz),
            c) **6 months and older whenever he/she displays signs of hunger (usually 5-6 times in 24 hours).**
        3) Encourage fruit juices with sorbitol such as prune, plum and some apple juices. **See Non-Pharmacologic Measures section, #2, for appropriate amounts for age & recommended limits and educate that routinely giving an infant (less than 1 year old) juice outside of the treatment of constipation is not recommended.**
        4) Discontinue solids if introduced too early**, prior to 4 months of age.**

    c. **For infants, greater than 4 months who are tolerating complementary foods, puree fresh fruits and vegetables to make homemade baby foods that are high in fiber.**

d. **Increased fiber intake without adequate fluids will only worsen constipation.**

e. Do not use laxatives such as Castoria or Fleet Phosphate enemas; do not use mineral oil for infants (risk of aspiration pneumonia).

f. Honey or homegrown herbal teas should not be served to an infant less than 1 year of age since it may contain botulism spores that may cause infantile botulism.

g. Controlled trials with infant formula have not shown a relationship between iron in the formula and constipation.

h. Explain vicious cycle: constipation enlarges the colon; an enlarged colon is weaker leading to more constipation. If the cycle is not interrupted, the result can be debilitating for a child and family.

2. Children **(greater than 2 years of age)**

   a. Offer water during meals and snack times and provide additional water during physical activity.
   b. Offer apple or prune juice (limit to 4-6 oz./day).
   c. Limit milk intake to no more than 24-30 oz per day.
   d. Increase intake of whole grains/cereals, dried beans, fresh/dried fruits and vegetables, nuts/seeds (if age-appropriate). Add high fiber foods gradually. Encourage a wide variety of foods. Consume fruits and vegetables with peel or skin whenever possible.
   e. Increase and encourage regular physical activity when appropriate.
   f. Continuous treatment and follow up may be required for several weeks. Acute constipation can evolve into a major problem if not treated properly. (Explain 'vicious cycle' as described above for infants.)
   g. Contact clinic if any problems obtaining medications.

FOLLOW UP

In 2 to 3 days if no improvement. Seek prompt medical attention if symptoms worsen.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. Refer to MD/APRN if no improvement in 2-3 days.

2. Pain or other symptoms, if secondary to constipation, should be entirely relieved with the passage of stool. If this is not the case, then the cause of the child's symptoms may not be constipation and needs prompt diagnosis. Acute constipation with symptoms should be referred to MD/APRN promptly (same day) if there is not relief of symptoms with the acute therapy described above or if symptoms worsen.

3. Chronic constipation.

4. Signs of emotional/family issues.

5. Infants with any of the following: recurrent constipation, history of first bowel movement after 24 hours of age, any systemic signs such as vomiting or failure to gain weight.

6. Exclusively breastfed infants who **exhibit signs of chronic constipation.**

7. Substantial rectal bleeding – such as blood throughout the stool or blood clots equivalent to one teaspoon or more of blood.

8. Pregnant or breastfeeding.

9. Neonates.

10. **Consult a Registered Dietitian Nutritionist if in depth dietary guidance is needed, or if there is low access to the recommended fiber rich foods. Children aged 0-5 years of age may be eligible for vouchers for fresh fruits/vegetables and whole grain foods, and nutrition education and counseling through the WIC Program.**

REFERENCES

1. William W. Hay, et al., *Current Pediatric Diagnosis and Treatment*, 21st ed., McGraw-Hill, United States of America, 2012, http://www.accessmedicine.com.medlibproxy.mercer.edu/content.aspx?aID=56820852 Aaccessed on April 27, 2013.

2. Thomas K. McInery, et al., *American Academy of Pediatrics Textbook of Pediatric Care,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2009, pp. 1424-1432. (Current)

3. Robert M. Kliegman, et al., *Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics,* 19th ed., Elsevier, Saunders, Philadelphia, PA, 2011, http://www.mdconsult.com/books/linkTo?type=bookPage&isbn=978-1-4377-0755-7&eid=4-u1.0-B978-1-4377-0755-7..00324-9--sc0015, accessed April 27, 2013.

4. R. N. Ashraf, et al., "Additional Water Is Not Needed for Healthy Breast-Fed Babies In A Hot Climate." *Acta Paediatrica*, Dec. 1993, pp. 1007-11. (Current)

5. Susan S. Baker, et. al., Journal of Pediatric Gastroenterology and Nutrition, Clinical Practice Guideline Evaluation and Treatment of Constipation in Infants and Children: Recommendations of the North American Society for Pediatric Gastroenterology, Hepatology and Nutrition , Vol. 43, No. 3, September 2006 Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia, http://www.naspghan.org/user-assets/Documents/pdf/PositionPapers/constipation.guideline.2006.pdf. April 27, 2013. (Current)

6. Eve R. Colson, et. al., The Merck Manual Online, *"Constipation in Children,"* Merck Sharp & Dohme Corp., a subsidiary of Merck & Co., Inc., Whitehouse Station, N.J., U.S.A., February 2012, http://www.merckmanuals.com/professional/sec19/ch266/ch266g.html?qt=constipation%20infant&alt=sh, accessed April 27, 2013.

7. Culbert, Timothy P., Banez, Gerard A., "Integrative Approaches to Childhood Constipation and Encopresis", Pediatric Clinics of North America, Vol. 54, Issue 6, December 2007, Saunders Company, http://www.mdconsult.com/das/article/body/25707019-6/jorg=clinics&source=MI&sp=20186634&sid=1167715466/N/620167/1.html?issn=0031-3955, accessed April 27, 2013. (Current)

8. World Health Organization, "Up to what age can a baby stay well nourished by just being breastfed," 2013, http://www.who.int/features/qa/21/en/ (April 27, 2013).

9. **Pediatric Nutrition Care Manual. "Constipation." www.nutritioncaremanual.org (May 22, 2017).**

10. **AAP News and Journals. "The Use and Misuses of Fruit Juices in Pediatrics." http://pediatrics.aappublications.org/content/107/5/1210 (May 22, 2017)**

11. **Healthy Children.org. "Infant Constipation". https://www.healthychildren.org/English/ages-stages/baby/diapers-clothing/Pages/Infant-Constipation.aspx (May 22, 2017).**

12. **Healthy Lifestyle. "Infant and Toddler Health." http://www.mayoclinic.org/healthy-lifestyle/infant-and-toddler-health/expert-answers/infant-constipation/faq-20058519 (February 8, 2017).**

13. **Up to Date. "Constipation in Infants and Children: Beyond the Basics." https://www.uptodate.com/contents/constipation-in-infants-and-children-beyond-the-basics. (January 9, 2017)**

14. **American Academy of Pediatrics' Bright Futures. "Nutrition Supervision." https://brightfutures.aap.org/Bright%20Futures%20Documents/BFNutrition3rdEditionSupervision.pdf**

15. **World Health Organization. "Why Can't We Give Water to a Breastfeeding Baby Before the 6 Months, Even When it is Hot?" http://www.who.int/features/qa/breastfeeding/en/ (July 2014)**

16. **Pediatric Nutrition Care Manual "Constipation".** www.nutritioncaremanual.org **(May 22, 2017).**

17. **Justin L. Kaplan MD, Robert S. Porter MD, eds. 2016. Merck Manual Professional Version. Whitehouse Station, NJ. Merck Sharp & Dohme Corp., A Subsidiary of Merck & Co., Inc. STAT! Ref Online Electronic Medical Library. http://online.statref.com/Document.aspx?docAddress=4SjOdsL3tauzFrf29d6Ylg%3d%3d. (August 23, 2017).**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR CRADLE CAP

DEFINITION A form of seborrheic dermatitis that most babies show at some time during infancy. It is a result of excessive discharge from the sebaceous glands, but the cause is not understood. The lesions are usually multiple, discrete, circumscribed oval or nummular patches covered with fine, yellowish, slightly-oily scales on an erythematous base found on the scalp.

ETIOLOGY The actual cause is unknown.

SUBJECTIVE As described by the parent/care-giver:

a. Rash on scalp.
b. Dry, scaly flakes that do not resolve with normal shampooing of the head.

OBJECTIVE **Physical examination may reveal:**

a. Dry, scaly, sometimes greasy flakes on the scalp.
b. Running the finger firmly across the scalp surface will loosen the flakes.
c. Thick, yellowish, crusted lesions on the scalp, with scaling.
d. Papules or fissuring behind the ears and on the face.
e. Examine other body areas, seborrheic dermatitis can be focal or spread. Other common sites include: forehead, eyebrows, nasolabial folds, neck, axillae, and diaper area.

ASSESSMENT Cradle Cap

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

Apply emollient to loosen scales (white petrolatum, vegetable oil, mineral oil, baby oil) to the scalp (overnight if necessary), followed by removal of scales with a soft brush (e.g., a soft bristle hairbrush or soft unused toothbrush).

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Review instructions for management.

2. Teach parents that gentle scrubbing over the fontanels is safe.

3. Teach parent to continue treatment for several days after condition

clears.

FOLLOW-UP

In 1 to 2 weeks if no improvement.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. If no improvement after 10 to 14 days of proper management.

2. **If presence of secondary infection as evidenced by weeping, fissuring or maceration of the skin.**

REFERENCES

1. Thomas K. McInery, et al., *American Academy of Pediatrics Textbook of Pediatric Care,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2009, pp. 2485-2488. (Current)

2. Robert M. Kliegman, et al., *Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics,* 19th ed., Elsevier, Saunders, Philadelphia, PA, 2011, http://www.mdconsult.com/books/linkTo?type=bookPage&isbn=978-1-4377-0755-7&eid=4-u1.0-B978-1-4377-0755-7.00647-3--sc0020 . accessed on April 27, 2013.

3. Rose Boynton, et al., *Manual of Ambulatory Pediatrics,* 6th ed., Wolter Kluwer, Philadelphia, 2009, pp. 384-385. (Current)

4. Thomas P. Habif, *Clinical Dermatology*. 5th ed. St. Louis, Mo: Mosby; 2009, http://www.mdconsult.com/books/linkTo?type=bookPage&isbn=978-0-7234-3541-9&eid=4-u1.0-B978-0-7234-3541-9.00017-1--s0855, accessed on April 27, 2013. (Current)

5. **Kahl & Hughes. "The Harriet Lane Handbook." 18th edition. Elsevier. p. 243.**

6. **Sasseville, Denis, MD, FRCPC "Cradle Cap and Seborrheic Dermatitis in Infants." UpToDate, Wolters Kluwer 2017.** https://www.uptodate.com/contents/cradle-cap-and-seborrheic-dermatitis-in-infants?source=machineLearning&search=cradle%20cap%20children&selectedTitle=1~12&sectionRank=2&anchor=H29306861#H710058552 **accessed Aug. 28, 2017.**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR ATOPIC DERMATITIS (ECZEMA)

DEFINITION

A chronic inflammatory disorder of the skin manifested by some or all of the following: pruritic, erythematous, papular, vesicular, weeping lesions with scaling or crusting. It tends to occur in patients with an inherited allergic predisposition.

ETIOLOGY

In part, it is an atopic allergic response. The exact etiology is unknown. It is probably the most common problem in pediatric dermatology. It is not present at birth and usually does not occur before the age of three months. Dry skin resulting in a 'pruritus-scratching-inflammation-more pruritus' cycle clearly plays a role in the etiology of atopic dermatitis. Evidence suggests that food allergy is a very uncommon cause of atopic dermatitis. Manifestations are usually secondary to pruritus and scratching of the sensitive skin. The following may initiate and aggravate the itching and inflammation:

a. **Dry skin/cold weather.**
b. Perspiration/hot humid weather.
c. Irritating clothing (wool, silk).
d. Certain soaps, detergents or cosmetics.
e. Respiratory infections.
f. Frequent bathing.

SUBJECTIVE

Patient/caregiver may complain of:

a. Pruritus, rash.
b. Often, family history of allergic diseases (asthma, allergic rhinitis, urticaria) or atopic dermatitis.
c. Onset after two months of age.
d. History of asthma or allergic rhinitis (about 50% of cases).
e. **Rapid alternation between quiescent periods and exacerbations.**

OBJECTIVE

Physical examination may reveal:

Infancy (0–24 months)

a. Rough, erythematous, papular and occasionally vesicular or scaling eruption, which frequently progresses to weeping and crusting.
b. Location: commonly on cheeks, scalp, post-auricular area, neck, and extensor surface of forearms and legs; occasionally trunk and diaper area.
c. Frequent rubbing of involved areas by infant.

Childhood

a. Less weeping and crusting, **drier**, papular, scaling eruption with

hyperpigmentation.

b. Intensely pruritic and excoriated lesions with lichenification due to scratching.
c. Location: Commonly on flexor surfaces of wrist and neck and on antecubital and popliteal areas.

Adolescence and Adulthood

a. Dry, thickening skin, with accentuation of normal lines and folds; often hyperpigmentation.
b. Location: commonly on flexor areas of extremities, eyelids, back of neck and dorsum of hands and feet.

ASSESSMENT Atopic Dermatitis (eczema)

Consider for differential diagnosis:

1. Seborrheic dermatitis (sometimes impossible to differentiate in infancy).

2. Fungal infections of the skin.

3. Contact dermatitis (e.g., poison ivy).

4. Irritant dermatitis (e.g., diaper dermatitis).

5. Xerotic dermatitis (dry skin).

6. Rare systemic diseases of infancy associated with atopic dermatitis-type rash.

7. Scabies.

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Apply sparingly a low-potency steroid. Do not use on the face, underarms, or groin areas.

a. Hydrocortisone cream or ointment

Infants: 0.5%-1% hydrocortisone cream or ointment, twice daily, preferably after bath (cream during hot humid weather, otherwise ointment is best).

Children 1 year of age and older: 1%-2.5% hydrocortisone cream or ointment twice to three times daily, preferably after bath (cream during hot humid weather, otherwise ointment is best).

Apply until controlled. If treatment is required for more than 2-4 weeks for improvement of symptoms, the patient should be counseled to contact the clinic for a referral so that treatment can be adjusted or prolonged.

OR

b. Alclometasone dipropionate (Aclovate)

Children 1 year of age and older: Alclometasone dipropionate (Aclovate®) - Apply a thin film of alclometasone cream or ointment to the affected skin areas two or three times daily; massage gently until the medication disappears. Do not use for longer than 3 weeks. If treatment is required for more than 2-3 weeks for improvement of symptoms, the patient should be counseled to contact the clinic for a referral so that treatment can be adjusted or prolonged. Do not use on the face, underarms, or groin areas.

OR

c. Fluocinolone acetonide 0.01%

3 months and older: Fluocinolone acetonide 0.01% ointment or cream to the affected skin areas two or three times daily; massage gently until the medication disappears. Do not use for longer than 3 weeks. If treatment is required for more than 2-3 weeks for improvement of symptoms, the patient should be counseled to contact the clinic for a referral so that treatment can be adjusted or prolonged. Do not use on the face, underarms, or groin areas.

2. To help control pruritus use an over-the-counter antihistamine such as diphenhydramine (e.g., Benadryl) orally. The non-sedating antihistamines appear to have only a very modest influence on atopic dermatitis symptoms.

a. Diphenhydramine hydrochloride elixir

Children 2 through 5 years of age: Diphenhydramine hydrochloride elixir 12.5 mg/5 mL. May give 6.25 mg every 4 to 6 hours; do not exceed 37.5 mg/day.

Children 6 through 11 years of age: Diphenhydramine hydrochloride elixir 12.5 mg/5 mL. May give 12.5 to 25 mg every 4 to 6 hours; do not exceed 150 mg/day.

Adults and children 12 years of age and older: Diphenhydramine hydrochloride 25-50 mg orally 3 or 4 times a day (not to exceed 300 mg/day).

NOTE: Dosing should be based on severity of symptoms. Do not use topical diphenhydramine. **Contact delegating physician before administering diphenhydramine to a child under 2 years of age.**

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. For infants, **dietary restrictions are controversial in atopic dermatitis. If food allergy is a concern, patient should be referred to their primary care provider.**

2. Bathe using mild **non-perfumed** soap (Dove or Cetaphil) and add 1/2 to 1 capful of bath oil (Alpha-Keri or Aquaphor) in water. Apply moisturizer to wet skin after bath. Apply additional moisturizer (see below) three times daily. Avoid excessive bathing.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. **Avoid factors that initiate pruritus and irritate skin; the key is to reduce or eliminate factors that promote dryness or increased scratching so a severe rash can be prevented.**

    a. An environment that is slightly cool and well-humidified is best.
    b. Spend time indoors in warm weather. Humidify home in winter if heating system dries air.
    c. Use warm water for brief baths or showers; hot water causes itching.
    d. Use soft cotton clothing and bedding. Avoid wool, starched or rough clothing.
    e. Keep fingernails short.
    f. Recognize that emotional stress can worsen but not cause the disease.
    g. Use liquid detergent when washing clothes plus a second rinse cycle.

2. Instructions for topical care of atopic dermatitis:

    a. Wet the skin for 5-20 minutes twice a day.
    b. Avoid excessive exposure to soap. Use a mild soap (e.g., Dove or Cetaphil) for cleaning dirty areas.
    c. Pat dry and quickly apply the steroid preparation to the wet skin. Apply the steroid only on the areas of dermatitis.
    d. Apply lubricant (Eucerin Cream, Cetaphil Cream, Aquaphor Ointment, Vaseline Intensive Care Ointment) while the skin is still wet, twice a day.
    e. Use cream and ointment lubricants to all areas prone to dermatitis, even those not currently inflamed. Avoid lotions (vs. creams and ointments) because their low oil content renders them poor moisturizers.
    f. The lubricant may be applied over the steroid if the steroid is a cream.
    g. Reapply the lubricant throughout the day if the skin appears dry.
    h. As the skin improves, continue the lubricant twice a day, or more frequently.
    i. Decrease the topical steroid to once a day, or less frequently, as needed. It may also be possible to decrease the potency of the topical steroid, if a medium or high-potency steroid has been prescribed.
    j. Wash hands after applying steroid and lubricant.

3. Emphasize to child and family that this is a chronic condition and exacerbating factors must be controlled for successful management. Also, emphasize that good skin care, will decrease flare-ups and the need for topical steroids.

FOLLOW-UP

Return in one week, or periodically as needed.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. Children and adolescents with severe skin eruptions. (A prescription

for a medium or high-potency steroid may be necessary.)

2. Patient with dermatitis with crusting or weeping lesions. Antibiotics may be necessary to treat secondary infection.

3. Ocular complications.

4. Patient with mild dermatitis that worsens or does not improve after two weeks of treatment.

5. Patient with suspected bacterial or viral infection should be referred immediately to MD.

6. Patient with suspected underlying condition.

7. **Pregnant or breastfeeding patient.**

8. **Consult registered dietitian nutritionist for food allergy related education and counseling. Children 0-5 may be eligible to nutrition education and counseling through the WIC program.**

REFERENCES

1. Robert M. Kliegman, et al., Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics, 19th ed., Elsevier, Saunders, Philadelphia, PA, 2011, http://www.mdconsult.com/books/linkTo?type=bookPage&isbn=978-1-4377-0755-7&eid=4-u1.0-B978-1-4377-0755-7.00139-1--fr0010, accessed on April 27, 2013.

2. William Hay, et al., *Current Diagnosis & Treatment: Pediatrics*, 21st ed., McGraw Hill, United States of America, 2012, http://www.accessmedicine.com.medlib-proxy.mercer.edu/content.aspx?aID=56816195, accessed on April 27, 2013.

3. Thomas P. Habif, *Clinical Dermatology,* 5th ed., Mosby, St. Louis, Mo., 2009, http://www.mdconsult.com/books/page.do?eid=4-u1.0-B978-0-7234-3541-9.00017-1--s0855&isbn=978-0-7234-3541-9&type=bookPage&sectionEid=4-u1.0-B978-0-7234-3541-9.00017-1--p312&uniqId=236194843-9#4-u1.0-B978-0-7234-3541-9.00017-1--p312, accessed on April 28, 2013. (Current)

4. **Lexi-Comp, Inc.,"*Lexi-Comp Online*,"Wolters Kluwer, 2017 < http://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/1796619>, accessed onAugust 28, 2017.**

5. **Healthy Children.org "Starting Solid Foods." January 2017.** www.healthychildren.org/English/ages-stages/baby/feeding-nutrition/Pages/Switching-To-Solid-Foods.aspx

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR MILD CONTACT DERMATITIS

DEFINITION Acute or chronic inflammatory reaction to substances that come in contact with the skin.

ETIOLOGY Irritant contact dermatitis is caused by local absorption of an irritant through a break in the skin. The inflammatory response may result from a single exposure to a caustic agent or repeated minor damage to the skin, such as frequent handwashing. Common offending agents include soaps, detergents and oral solvents. Everyone is at risk for developing irritant contact dermatitis, but people vary in their response to the irritant. One form common in infants is irritant diaper dermatitis, caused by trapped moisture and friction at the site of contact with the diaper.

Allergic contact dermatitis is a delayed cell-mediated hypersensitivity reaction to an offending agent. During the sensitization phase, an allergen penetrates the epidermis and produces proliferation of T-lymphocytes. The T-lymphocyte cells enter the blood circulation, so that all the skin becomes hypersensitive to the allergen. This phase may take days or months, depending on the individual's sensitivity, the amount and concentration of the allergen, and the amount of penetration. In the elicitation phase, the antigen specific T-lymphocytes react to subsequent allergen exposure and produce the inflammatory response.

Poison ivy, oak and sumac produce many cases of allergic dermatitis. Other allergens include: fur; leather; nickel; topical antibiotics, antihistamines and anesthetics; shoe dyes or glue; hair dyes; adhesive tape; parabens (found in sunscreens and lotions); and latex.

SUBJECTIVE Patient (or caregiver) may:

a. Have history of exposure to chemicals, detergents, medications, plants, lubricants, cleansers or rubber gloves, metal jewelry (zinc)**,** at home or at work.
b. Have previous history of contact dermatitis.
c. Have Itching, swelling, rash of varying severity and duration.
d. Ask about response to any treatment used.

OBJECTIVE **Physical examination:**

1. Note character of eruption:
    a. Irritant contact dermatitis usually causes an erythematous dry, scaling eruption with an indistinct margin. Fissures sometimes occur.
    b. Chronic exposure may cause weeping lesions.
    c. Allergic contact dermatitis usually causes more erythema and edema. Vesicles, characteristic in response to poison ivy, oak

and sumac, often weep and form crusts.

2. Note location and pattern of the eruption, which suggest the cause:
   a. Scalp/ears: hair care products, jewelry.
   b. Eyelids: cosmetics, contact lens solution.
   c. Face/neck: cosmetics, cleansers, medications, jewelry.
   d. Trunk/axilla: deodorants, clothing.
   e. Arms/hands: poison ivy/oak/sumac, soaps, detergents, chemicals, jewelry, rubber gloves.
   f. Legs/feet: clothing, shoes.

ASSESSMENT Contact Dermatitis

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Lesions occupy less than 2% body surface area (less than 2x size of patient's palm) and do not involve the face:

   a. Apply triamcinolone 0.1% 2 to 3 times daily until clear (usually at least 2 weeks).

      Use ointments on dry or cracked skin and creams on inflamed or weeping lesions. Many patients prefer the cream. May need to taper application (twice daily and once daily) to avoid flare-up.

   b. Calamine lotion can be applied as an astringent, protectant, or soothing agent, for conditions such as poison ivy, poison oak, or minor skin irritations. Apply 1 to 4 times daily, avoid if skin is dry. Do not use on open wounds. Educate patient to ensure that they do not obtain Caladryl. Caladryl contains a topical analgesic and is not generally recommended for use in children.

OR

   c. Zinc oxide can be applied several times a day as required to soothe and promote healing of chapped skin.

2. In the early stages, if drainage is occurring, wet dressings, using gauze soaked in Domeboro astringent, are an option to control itching when ointments and the measures described below are insufficient to control pruritus during the first day or two of therapy. These dressings have the advantage of blocking the child's ability to scratch the area. For use as a wet dressing, saturate gauze in the solution; gently

squeeze. Apply saturated cloth loosely to the affected area. Change dressing every 2-3 hours.

3. For relief of itching:

    a. Diphenhydramine hydrochloride elixir

    Children 2 through 5 years of age: Diphenhydramine hydrochloride elixir 12.5 mg/5mL. May give 6.25 mg every 4 to 6 hours; do not exceed 37.5 mg/day.

    Children 6 through 11 years of age: Diphenhydramine hydrochloride elixir 12.5 mg/5mL. May give 12.5mg to 25 mg every 4 to 6 hours; do not exceed 150 mg/day.

    Adults and children 12 years of age and older: Diphenhydramine hydrochloride 25-50 mg orally 3 or 4 times a day (not to exceed 300 mg/day). Do not give in third trimester of pregnancy or to breastfeeding mother.

NOTE: Dosing should be based on severity of symptoms. Do not use topical diphenhydramine. **(Contact delegating physician before administering diphenhydramine to a child under 2 years of age).**

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Apply cold, wet compresses for 15-20 minutes 3-4 times a day during the blistering and weeping stage.

2. Cool tub baths, with or without colloidal oatmeal (e.g., Aveeno), to decrease inflammation and itching.

3. Dress the area, if necessary, to control scratching. A wet dressing is least likely to aggravate pruritis (Domeboro solution preferred).

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Educate on potential causes. Remove or avoid the irritant/allergen. Wear protective clothing and gloves.

2. For poison ivy, oak, etc:

    a. As soon as possible after exposure, wash the skin with lots of cold water and soap. To wash within 15 minutes is the most effective. If soap and water are not available, alcohol may be

used.

b. Poison ivy dermatitis is not spread elsewhere on the body or to another person, by fluid in the blister. It is spread by any oil from the plant still on the skin, clothes or tub. (Taking a shower rather than a bath is less likely to leave resin around the tub).
c. A rash will appear first on areas of skin which are thinner, or where the plant oil was more concentrated.
d. Teach how to identify poison ivy, oak and sumac.
e. Topical steroids do not work well on vesicles or weeping rashes, but may be used after the blistering stage.

3. Avoid use of topical preparations with benzocaines or other -caines.

4. Emollients (e.g., Eucerin, Lubriderm) can be used to protect and care for dry skin.

5. Advise that patch testing may be required to identify the irritant or allergen if more than one is possible.

6. Contact clinic if any problems obtaining medications.

FOLLOW-UP

Re-evaluate in 2-3 days, if no improvement or signs of bacterial infection occur.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present. (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. If moderate to severe dermatitis (greater than 2% body surface area) or significant involvement of the face (oral steroids can bring about dramatic improvement; the sooner oral steroids are started, the more effective they will be).

2. **For suspected secondary bacterial infection (significant extension of erythema and/or tenderness beyond the initial border of the rash; fever [not always present], malaise).**

3. If no response to treatment.

4. Pregnant or breastfeeding patient.

REFERENCES

1. M.A. Papadakis, S.J. McPhee, M.W. Rabow (eds), *Current Medical Diagnosis & Treatment 2013 52nd ed.,* McGraw-Hill, USA, 2013, <http://www.accessmedicine.com.medlib-proxy.mercer.edu/content.aspx?aID=747>, accessed on April 28, 2013.

2. Klaus Wolff, Richard Allen Johnson, *Fitzpatrick's Color Atlas & Synopsis of Clinical Dermatology,* 6th ed., McGraw-Hill, New York, 2009, <http://www.accessmedicine.com.medlib-proxy.mercer.edu/content.aspx?aID=5190332>, accessed on April 28, 2013. (Current)

3. C. Keith Stone, Roger L. Humphries, eds., *CURRENT Diagnosis & Treatment Emergency Medicine,* 7th ed., McGraw-Hill, New York, 2011, <http://www.accessmedicine.com.medlib-proxy.mercer.edu/content.aspx?aID=55759117>, accessed on April 28, 2013.

4. M. A. Papadakis, S. J. McPhee, *Quick Medical Diagnosis & Treatment,* McGraw-Hill, USA, 2013, <http://www.accessmedicine.com.medlib-proxy.mercer.edu/quickam.aspx>, accessed on April 28, 2013.

7. **William Weston, Contact dermatitis in children. UpToDate (last updated March 7, 2017)**

8. Brod, Bruce MD, "*Management of allergic contact dermatitis*" UpToDate Wolters Kluwer, < https://www.uptodate.com/contents/management-of-allergic-contact-dermatitis?source=machineLearning&search=poison%20ivy%20treatment&selectedTitle=1~48&sectionRank=2&anchor=H320159#H320159> accessed August, 28, 2017.

9. Lexicomp Online, Wolters Kluwer, 2017 <http://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/pdh_f/2860023> accessed August 28, 2017.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR DIAPER DERMATITIS (DIAPER RASH)

DEFINITION Inflammation of the skin within the area usually covered by the diaper.

ETIOLOGY It can be caused, and aggravated by, many factors acting separately or in combination. Contact irritants such as urine, stool and chemicals may be involved. Bacterial, fungal or viral infections may also cause diaper dermatitis. Other causes include seborrheic dermatitis or atopic dermatitis.

SUBJECTIVE **Patient (caregiver) may complain of:**

a. Pruritus
b. Irritability
c. Erythema

OBJECTIVE **Physical examination:**

a. Irritant contact diaper dermatitis will show mild erythema, especially on the buttocks, genitalia and lower abdomen with sparing in the creases.
b. Bacterial infection will show vesicles and/or pustules in the diaper area.
c. Monilial (candidal) infection will show smooth, shining, “fire-engine” red, papular and nummular rash, with well-circumscribed borders, that extends into creases, and satellite lesions that are outside the margin of the erythema. Oral thrush may also be present. Small pustules are often present on the periphery. Antibiotic use is a predisposing factor.
d. Affected area may be moist and exudative.
e. During healing of moderate to severe dermatitis, skin may be dry and scaly.

ASSESSMENT Diaper dermatitis.

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. For cases of diaper dermatitis that have the typical appearance of monilial infection (satellite lesions, etc.) or for cases of diaper dermatitis that have been present for more than 3 days without improvement.

    a. Apply nystatin 100,000 units/gm (e.g., Mycostatin©) cream lightly to affected area under a barrier ointment 3 times a day for 7-10 days. (May repeat cycle once).

b. Treat for oral thrush, if evident. (See Thrush - Oral Candidiasis protocol).

NOTE: Topical hydrocortisone and fixed-combination medications, Mycolog II and Lotrisone, should NOT be used. (Adverse systemic effects may occur due to use in an occlusive diaper area).

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. General Treatment and Prevention

   a. Keep diaper area dry and free from urine and stool:
      1) Change diapers frequently.
      2) Cleanse diaper area with warm water with each diaper change. Avoid use of soap which can be irritating to skin, and use mild, non-perfumed, non-medicated soap only if necessary.
      3) Air drying is useful.
      4) Avoid starch, other powders and petroleum jelly.

   b. Apply bland ointment (e.g., A&D ointment) or a barrier cream (e.g., zinc oxide or Desitin©) after each diaper change.
   c. Avoid the use of commercial diaper wipes, which are often perfumed and irritating. **Recommend using plain water and soft, non-abrasive towel for cleaning.**
   d. Infants using super absorbent disposable diapers have a significantly lower frequency and severity of diaper rash when compared with infants using cloth diapers. These should be recommended if the dermatitis is recurrent or severe.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Assure that parent/caregiver knows how to treat, as above.

2. Teach parent to promptly change diapers as needed.

3. Teach parent to gently wash area (do not scrub). If rash is severe and to avoid rubbing – to clean and rinse, use a water bottle to squirt warm water gently and pat dry.

4. Teach parent to use mineral oil on a cotton ball to remove dried feces.

5. For cases of recurrent or severe diaper dermatitis a change in the

type of diaper used is a reasonable consideration. Diaper rash is less common with use of super absorbent disposable diapers.

6. Contact clinic if any problems obtaining medications.

FOLLOW-UP

1. No follow-up needed if symptoms resolve within 2 weeks.

2. Reevaluate if symptoms persist or worsen beyond 2 weeks.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present. (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. Failure to respond to treatment.

2. Signs of bacterial infection are present.

3. **Any rash that is unusual or severe.**

REFERENCES

1. Robert M. Kliegman, et al., *Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics,* 19th ed., Elsevier, Saunders, Philadelphia, PA, 2011, <http://www.mdconsult.com/books/linkTo?type=bookPage&isbn=978-1-4377-0755-7&eid=4-u1.0-B978-1-4377-0755-7..00226-8--s0040 >, accessed on /April 28, 2013.

2. Paul S. Auerbach, *Wilderness Medicine*, 6th ed., Elsevier Mosby, Philadelphia, PA, 2012, <http://www.mdconsult.com/books/linkTo?type=bookPage&isbn=978-1-4377-1678-8&eid=4-u1.0-B978-1-4377-1678-8..00099-4--s0420> accessed on April 28, 2013.

3. American Academy of Pediatrics, "Diaper Rash," *Patient Education Online*, June 2010, <http://www.patiented.aap.org/content.aspx?aid=5297> (April 28, 2013). (Current)

4. Ruchir Agrawal, Dirk M Elston, et al., "Diaper Dermatitis", Medscape Reference, January 4, 2011, <http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/911985-treatment> , accessed on April 28, 2013.

5. Lexicomp Online, Wolters Kluwer Clinical Drug Information, Inc. < http://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/1799544#f_dosages> accessed August 24, 2017.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR DYSLIPIDEMIA SCREENING

DEFINITION Dyslipidemia is a condition marked by abnormal elevations of Total Cholesterol, Low-Density Lipoprotein cholesterol (LDL), Triglycerides, or deficiency of High-Density Lipoprotein cholesterol (HDL) in the blood.

ETIOLOGY Research indicates that atherosclerosis (fatty deposits of plaque in arterial walls) begins in childhood and progresses over the lifespan. Exact causes of atherosclerosis are not known, but certain factors that may damage arterial walls and lead to atherosclerosis are: smoking, high amounts of certain fats and cholesterol in the blood, high blood pressure and high amounts of sugar in the blood.

Dyslipidemias are disorders of lipoprotein metabolism that result in high levels of Total Cholesterol, LDL or Triglycerides and low levels of HDL. Dyslipidemia is a risk factor for cardiovascular disease (CVD) in adults. Early identification of youth with dyslipidemia can lead to interventions that may prevent or delay the progress of atherosclerosis and CVD.

Secondary causes are attributed to sedentary lifestyle, diets high in saturated fat and cholesterol, and conditions such as diabetes, nephrotic syndrome, hypothyroidism, and certain drugs may affect lipid profiles, e.g. progestins, anabolic steroids, corticosteroids and protease inhibitors.

SUBJECTIVE **Risk Factors:**

a. Family history of parent with elevated blood cholesterol (level of 240 mg/dL or higher), or known dyslipidemia.
b. Family history (parents, grandparents, aunt/uncle, or sibling with premature (before 55 years of age in males and before 65 years in females) cardiovascular disease (e.g. myocardial infarction, angina, stroke, coronary artery bypass graft/stent/angioplasty).
c. Unobtainable family history.
d. History of tobacco use.
e. History of diabetes.
f. History of hypertension.
g. History of excess alcohol intake.
h. Diet that includes excessive consumption of saturated (solid) fats and cholesterol. (Greater than 10 **%** of calories from saturated fatty acids).
i. Low levels of physical activity (less than one hour of active play/physical activity most days of the week).
j. Very high carbohydrate diet (greater than 60 percent of total energy).
k. **Significant risk factors/conditions may include**: chronic renal disease/end-stage renal disease/post-renal transplant, post-orthotopic heart transplant, Kawasaki disease with current or regressed aneurysms, chronic inflammatory disease (systemic lupus erythematosis, juvenile rheumatoid arthritis), HIV infection, nephrotic

syndrome.

OBJECTIVE **Reasons to consider lipid screening:**

a. Patient age falls within the recommendations for universal screening.
b. BMI at or greater than the 95th percentile for age (2 through 8 years old.)
c. BMI at or greater than the 85th percentile for age (9 through 20 years old.)
d. Patient is age 2-8 or 12-16 and meets "high risk" criteria for significant risk factors/conditions

ASSESSMENT At Risk for Dyslipidemia

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

1. **BMI: check annually for patient 2 years and older.**

2. **Blood Pressure: check annually for patient 3 years and above.**

3. **Universal Screening with non-fasting dyslipidemia screening for all patients once between ages 9-11 years; then again age 17-21 years.**

4. **High Risk Screening:**

   a. **Screen children ages 2-8 and 12-16 if they meet any of the high-risk criteria (Refer to list under SUBJECTIVE for high risk criteria). Test only once during this age range.**
   b. **BMI at or greater than the 95th percentile for age (2 through 8 years old).**
   c. **BMI at or greater than the 85th percentile for age (9 through 20 years old).**

NOTE: Lipid Profile should include total Cholesterol, LDL cholesterol, HDL cholesterol and Triglycerides. Ideally, lipid profile and glucose should be obtained in the fasting state for those patients in the high-risk group. If not possible, non-fasting samples may be obtained.

5. **Retest as needed if there are abnormal values or clinical concerns.**

6. Evaluate laboratory results **per** the following reference tables:

Youth: 2 through 19 years of age						
	Total Cholesterol (mg/dL)	LDL (mg/dL)	**Non-HDL cholesterol (mg/dL)**	**Triglycerides (mg/dL) 0-9 years**	**Triglycerides (mg/dL) 10-19 years**	**HDL (mg/dL)**
Acceptable	less than 170	less than 110	**less than 120**	**less than 75**	**less than 90**	**greater than 45**
Borderline	170-199	110-129	**120-144**	**75-99**	**90-129**	**40-45**
High	200 or greater	130 or greater	**145 or greater**	**100 or greater**	**130 or greater**	**
Low	**	**	**	**	**	**less than 40**
Source: Expert Panel on Integrated Guidelines for Cardiovascular Health and Risk Reduction in Children and Adolescents: Summary Report						

Youth 20 years of age					
	Total Cholesterol (mg/dL)	LDL (mg/dL)	**Non-HDL cholesterol (mg/dL)**	**Triglycerides (mg/dL)**	**HDL (mg/dL)**
Acceptable	less than **19**0	less than **120**	**less than 150**	**less than 115**	**greater than 45**
Borderline	**19**0-2**24**	**120-159**	**150-189**	**115-149**	**40-44**
High	2**25 or greater**	**160 or greater**	**190 or greater**	**150 or greater**	**
Low	**	**	**	**	**less than 40**
Source: Expert Panel on integrated Guidelines for Cardiovascular Health and Risk Reduction in Children and Adolescents: Summary Report					

THERAPEUTIC

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURE

1. Initiate Therapeutic Lifestyle Changes for all patients as follows:

    a. Patients 2 years of age or older follow nutritional guidance in accordance with Dietary Guidelines for Americans **2015-2020.**
    b. Physical activity recommendations for youth 2 years of age and older are 60 minutes or more of active play/physical activity per day.
    c. Lifestyle changes to include smoking avoidance, tobacco use cessation, healthful food and beverage intake, and **by increasing physical activity and reducing screen time.**

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Counsel patients and families:

    a. To balance caloric intake with physical activity.
    b. To consume more fruits, vegetables, fish, whole grains and low-fat dairy products.
    c. **To reduce the intake of calories from solid fats, saturated fat, and cholesterol.**
    d. **Solid fats are solid at room temperature and are primarily saturated fats. Solid fats mainly come from animal sources but include some plant sources. Some common solid fats are:**
        1) Butter
        2) Beef fat (tallow, suet)
        3) Chicken fat
        4) Pork fat (lard)
        5) Coconut and palm oils.

        Trans fats are also solid fats. Check the food label for trans fats. Primary sources of trans fat include:
        1) Shortening and other solid fats
        2) Pastries (i.e., cakes, doughnuts, cookies)
        3) Icing/frosting
        4) Margarine
        5) Microwave popcorn.

        Animal food sources all contain cholesterol. Oils from plant sources (vegetable and nut oils) do not contain any cholesterol. In fact, no foods from plants sources contain cholesterol.

    e. To increase the intake of monounsaturated and polyunsaturated fatty acids. Most oils (liquid fats) are high in monounsaturated or polyunsaturated fats, and low in saturated fats. Foods made up mostly of monounsaturated and polyunsaturated fats include:
        1) Olive oil
        2) Canola oil
        3) Safflower oil
        4) Peanut oil
        5) Corn oil
        6) Nuts and seeds.
    f. On decreasing intake of added sugars. Fruit and milk have naturally occurring sugars. However, added sugars can be commonly found in:
        1) Soft drinks and fruit drinks

2) **Candies and cookies**
3) **Cakes and pies**
4) **Ice cream**
5) **Sweetened yogurt**

g. On ways to increase physical activity and decrease sedentary lifestyles.
h. About associated risk factors such as, smoking, obesity, diabetes and hypertension.

2. Encourage family members with dyslipidemia risk factors to obtain medical evaluations as appropriate.

FOLLOW-UP

For patients screened with a fasting or non-fasting lipid profile with abnormal results, refer to a physician for follow-up.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. For patient on oral contraceptives refer to Standard Nurse Protocol for Abnormal Lipid Tests While Using Hormonal Contraceptives.

2. If patient is a tobacco user, referral to local cessation program and/or Georgia Tobacco Quit Line, 1-877-270-STOP (7867).

3. Pregnant or lactating patient **refer to APRN or physician.**

4. **Refer patients with significant risk factors to primary care provider.**

5. **Refer patients to a registered dietitian nutritionist (RDN) for consultation if lipid management requires individualized nutrition education and counseling. Children 1-5 years old may be eligible for nutrition education and counseling through the WIC Program.**

REFERENCES

1. Joseph R. Hagan, Jr., Judith S. Shaw, and Paula M. Duncan (eds.), *Bright Futures: Guidelines for Health Supervision of Infants, Children, and Adolescents*, 3rd ed., The American Academy of Pediatrics, Elk Grove Village, IL, 2008, pp. 111, 147**,** 228, and 235. (Current)

2. Georgia Department of Community Health, "Part II Policies and Procedures for Health Check Services (EPSDT)," **April 1, 2017,** https://www.mmis.georgia.gov/portal/Portals/0/StaticContent/Public/ALL/HANDBOOKS/Part%20II%20Policies%20and%20Procedures%20for%20EPSDT%20Services%20Health%20Check%20Program%2020170406170219.pdf

3. Rae-Ellen W. Kavey, Denise G. Simons-Morton and Janet M. de Jesus, (eds.), National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute, National Institutes of Health, "Expert Panel on Integrated Guidelines for Cardiovascular Health and Risk Reduction in Children and Adolescents: Summary Report," Pediatrics, Vol. 128, Supplement 5, December 2011, pp. S1-S44.

4. **NIH-National Heart, Lung and Blood Institute**: http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/health-pro/guidelines/current/cardiovascular-health-pediatric-guidelines

5. **USDA ChooseMYPlate.gov (United States Department of Agriculture)** https://www.choosemyplate.gov/saturated-unsaturated-and-trans-fats

6. **Cleveland Clinic, HealthEssentials.** https://health.clevelandclinic.org/2015/07/avoid-these-10-foods-full-of-trans-fats/

7. **American Heart Association** http://www.heart.org/HEARTORG/HealthyLiving/HealthyEating/Nutrition/Sugar-101_UCM_306024_Article.jsp#.WTGhKuvyvct

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR FEVER

DEFINITION

Fever is an elevation in normal body temperature. **A fever is generally harmless and can be considered a good sign that immune system is working and that the body is trying to heal itself.** Normal body temperature varies with time of day, activity level, age and general health. Infants tend to have higher temperatures than older children. In general, a person's temperature is highest during late afternoon early evening and lowest between midnight and early morning. The average normal body temperature is 98.6 degrees Fahrenheit (37 degrees Celsius). **Most pediatricians consider a rectal temperature above 100.4 degrees Fahrenheit (38 degrees Celsius) a fever.**

ETIOLOGY

Most fevers in children are seen in conjunction with an acute, infectious process. Fever control is of secondary importance to identification and control of its underlying cause.

SUBJECTIVE

Patient may:

a. Have history of exposure to other ill children or adults.
b. Be **less active than usual** or irritable.
c. Have symptoms of illness, such as rhinorrhea, cough, tachypnea, ear pain, dysuria, pain, chills, rash, urinary frequency and sudden enuresis.
d. Have fever pattern may be continuous, remittent, intermittent or recurrent.
e. Have history of recent immunization. However, caution is advised when attributing fever to an immunization. Immunized infants can also harbor an infectious process.
f. Have decreased appetite.
g. Complain of pain or discomfort.

OBJECTIVE

Physical examination:

a. Elevated temperature greater than 100.4 degrees Fahrenheit (38° Celsius).

NOTE: Rectal temperatures are recommended for infants and children under 2 years of age. If child is more than 2 years old obtain oral temperature. Ear and skin temperatures are not reliable and dependent on technology used and technique.

b. Pulse and**/or** respiratory rate may be elevated.

ASSESSMENT

Fever/Elevated body temperature.

Perform complete physical exam (**must rule out a more serious infection**).

NOTE: The decision on whether to treat fever is individualized to each child. Antipyretics do not alter the course of disease, and can cause side effects and toxicity. Temperature elevations do not correlate with severity of cause. The most common reason for treating fever is that fever makes the child uncomfortable. The decision to treat for comfort's sake should be based on how the child looks and behaves, not a temperature threshold.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

Laboratory tests as indicated by history and physical findings.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Aspirin should not be given to children because of its association with Reye's syndrome. Use of any medication in children which contain salicylates (such as Alka-Seltzer and Pepto Bismol) should be avoided.

If you do choose to treat a fever, the two recommended medications are:

1. **Acetaminophen (less prone to GI irritation)**

NOTE: Children with phenylketonuira (PKU) should not take Children's Anacin-3©, Children's Tylenol©, Double Strength Tempra©, Junior Strength Tylenol© and Tempra© in the chewable form. These products, in this dosage form, contain aspartame, which is metabolized in the GI tract to phenylalanine following oral administration.

OR

2. **Ibuprofen (only for children 6 months and older due to potential harmful effects on kidneys).**

NOTE: For anti-pyretic use, refer to recommendations in the following dosage charts. Under no circumstances should these two medications be given in alternating fashion to reduce fever. Failure of fever to respond to antipyretics is not predictive of severity of illness.

DOSAGE RECOMMENDATIONS FOR RELIEF OF FEVER AND PAIN IN CHILDREN

ACETAMINOPHEN

NOTE: Healthcare professionals should verify product concentration prior to providing dosing information. **Dose is 10 to 15 mg/kg/dose every 4 to 6 hours as needed. Do not give more than 5 does in 24 hours. Maximum of 75 mg/kg/day (not to exceed 4 g daily).**

Acetaminophen dosage

Child's weight		Liquid (suspension*)	Meltaways	Junior meltaways
Lbs	Kg	160 mg per 5 mL	80 mg tablet	160 mg tablet
12-17	5.4-7.7	2.5 mL	Do not use	Do not use
18-23	8.1-10.4	3.75 mL	Do not use	Do not use
24-35	10.9-15.9	5 mL	2 tablets	1 tablet
36-47	16.3-21.3	7.5 mL	3 tablets	1½ tablets
48-59	21.8-26.8	10 mL	4 tablets	2 tablets
60-71	27.2-32.3	12.5 mL	5 tablets	2½ tablets
72-95	32.7-43.1	15 mL	6 tablets	3 tablets

*You may see the word suspension on your child's medicine bottle. Suspension means the medicine is loose in the liquid. This type of medicine needs to be shaken well before it is given to your child.

*Lbs = pounds; kg=kilograms; mg=milligrams; mL=milliliters

IBUPROFEN CHILDREN'S SUSPENSION & CHEWABLE TABLETS

NOTE: Only for children 6 months and older due to potential harmful effects on kidneys. Healthcare professionals should verify product concentration prior to providing dosing information. 5 to 10 mg/kg/dose. Dose may be repeated every 6 to 8 hours, not more than 4 doses in 24 hours. Infant drops, use only the dropper provided.

Ibuprofen dosage for 12 years of age and older is 400mg every 4 to 6 hours as needed. (Maximum: 2,400mg/24 hours); treatment beyond 3 days is not recommended. To reduce the risk of adverse cardiovascular and GI effects, use the lowest effective dose for the shortest period of time.

Ibuprofen dosage

Child's weight		Infant's drops	Liquid (suspension*)	Chewable tabs	Junior chewable tabs
Lbs	Kg	50 mg per 1.25 mL	100 mg per 5 mL	50 mg	100 mg
18-23	8.1-10.4	1.875 mL	Do not use	Do not use	Do not use
24-35	10.9-15.9	2.5 mL	5 mL	2 tablets	Do not use
36-47	16.3-21.3	Do not use	7.5 mL	3 tablets	1½ tablets
48-59	21.8-26.8	Do not use	10 mL	4 tablets	2 tablets
60-71	27.2-32.3	Do not use	12.5 mL	5 tablets	2½ tablets
72-95	32.7-43.1	Do not use	15 mL	6 tablets	3 tablets

*You may see the word suspension on your child's medicine bottle. Suspension means the medicine is loose in the liquid. This type of medicine needs to be shaken well before it is given to your child.

*Lbs = pounds; kg=kilograms; mg=milligrams; mL=milliliters

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Give extra clear liquids such as Pedialyte, Enfalyte, water, juices and popsicles to prevent dehydration. **Observe urinary frequency, volume and color for early signs of dehydration.**

2. Avoid overdressing the febrile child.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Comfort measures.

2. Children with fever may not feel hungry and it is not necessary to force them to eat.

3. Offer fluids frequently.

4. How to take rectal and oral temperatures (depending on age of child) and to observe for other signs and symptoms which may develop.

5. Safety measures and keeping all medications out of reach of children **always**.

6. Teach parents to read labels and find other sources of acetaminophen that are often in over the counter medications and can cause toxicity.

7. Reinforce when parents should seek further medical evaluation.

8. Infants and children with fever should not attend daycare or school until afebrile **without the use of medication** for 24 hours.

9. **Educate parent on appropriate dosage of Acetaminophen and Ibuprofen to give child when at home. Reinforce that these medications should not be given in alternating fashions.**

10. **Discourage the use of alcohol sponging and physical cooling to reduce child's temperature. Never use alcohol for sponging, alcohol can be absorbed through the skin.**

    Physical cooling, like sponging, is usually unnecessary and may even be harmful, causing discomfort and chilling. Sponging allows heat to escape without adjusting the hypothalamic thermostat.

As cooling begins, the hypothalamus directs the body to produce more heat, causing muscular shivering and an increase in metabolic rate.

FOLLOW-UP

Return visit in 24-48 hours if no improvement.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present. (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. All infants under 3 months old with a temperature elevation.

2. Any child with decreased mental awareness.

3. **Any child that appears toxic (e.g., lethargic or irritable, noninteractive, poor perfusion, hypotension, petechial rash, cardio-respiratory distress, rigors).**

4. Any child with signs of acute illness accompanying the fever, such as meningeal signs, alteration in neurologic status, lethargy, pain, rash, petechiae, dysuria, swollen joints, or tachypnea after fever control or other signs of respiratory distress.

5. Fever greater than 102.2° Fahrenheit (39° Celsius) and any of the following (high-risk UTI and bacteremia criteria):

    a. Age 3-6 months.
    b. Age 6-12 months, uncircumcised male.
    c. Age less than 24 months and female unless obvious source.

6. Child has a history of febrile seizures.

7. **Any child who has a fever that lasts more than 3 days.**

8. Child with immunosuppression, history of chronic conditions such as heart disease or sickle cell disease.

9. Child with prosthetic devices.

10. Child with an unusual exposure history (examples: tick bite, foreign travel, unusual animal exposure, etc.).

11. Pregnant or breastfeeding patient.

REFERENCES

1. Thomas K. McInerny, et al., *American Academy of Pediatrics Textbook of Pediatric Care,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2009, pp. 418-422 and 1515-1528. (Current)

2. American Academy of Pediatrics, "Febrile Seizures," March 2013, <http://www.healthychildren.org/English/health-issues/conditions/fever/pages/Febrile-Seizures.aspx?nfstatus=401&nftoken=00000000-0000-0000-0000-000000000000&nfstatusdescription=ERROR%3a+No+local+token> (April 28, 2013).

3. American Academy of Pediatrics, "Signs and Symptoms of Fever," 11/25/2015, <http://www.healthychildren.org/English/health-issues/conditions/fever/pages/Signs-and-Symptoms-of-Fever.aspx> **(11/21/2015)**

4. Carol K. Taketomo, et al., *Pediatric and Neonatal Dosage Handbook,* 19th ed., Lexicomp. Hudson, Ohio, 2012, pp. 45-49, 863-869.

5. American Academy of Pediatrics, "How to Take a Child's Temperature," (**11/21/2015)**, <http://www.healthychildren.org/English/health-issues/conditions/fever/pages/How-to-Take-a-Childs-Temperature.aspx> (April 28, 2013).

6. American Academy of Pediatrics, "Fever and Your Baby," (**8/3/2016), <**http://www.healthychildren.org/English/health-issues/conditions/fever/pages/Fever-and-Your-Baby.aspx> (April 28, 2013).

7. Janice E. Sullivan, Henry C. Farrar and the Section on Clinical Pharmacology and Therapeutics, and Committee on Drugs, "Clinical Report−−Fever and Antipyretic Use in Children," *Pediatrics,* Vol. 127, No. 3, March 2011, pp. 580-587.

8. **Children's Healthcare of Atlanta (Acetaminophen & Ibuprofen dosage tables)**

9. **Ward, Mark A., MD, "Fever in infants and children: Pathophysiology and management" UpToDate 2017, Wolters Kluwer, <https://www.uptodate.com/contents/fever-in-infants-and-children-pathophysiology-and-management?source=machineLearning&search=fever%20treatment&selectedTitle=2~150&sectionRank=1&anchor=H11#H11> accessed August 24, 2017.**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR IMPETIGO

DEFINITION

A condition involving the superficial layer of the skin and characterized by honey-colored, crusted lesions or seropurulent vesicles surrounded by a narrow margin of erythema. It occurs in two forms: bullous and non-bullous.

Impetigo may be a complication of insect bites, abrasions or dermatitis. Peak incidence is in late summer and early fall. Impetigo is most common in infants and children.

ETIOLOGY

Virtually 100% of bullous impetigo and 75% of non-bullous impetigo is caused by *Staphylococcus aureus*. Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* infection may be present in impetigo. The remainder is caused by group A beta-hemolytic *Streptococcus*. Staphylococci normally spread from the nose to the skin and then infect the skin. It is commonly found on the face.

In non-bullous impetigo (greater than 70% of cases), skin lesions start as small erythematous macules and papules that develop into discrete, thin-walled vesicles, which become pustular and quickly rupture. As the vesicles rupture, a yellow fluid forms an exudate, which dries to form a stratified golden yellow crust that can spread the infection to other parts of the body. Cellulitis follows about 10% of cases of non-bullous impetigo.

Bullous impetigo infection occurs primarily in newborn infants and young children. The characteristic skin lesions of bullous impetigo are superficial, flaccid, thin-walled bullae that occur most often on the extremities but can occur anywhere.

Impetigo may be spread by direct contact with infected persons or it may be secondary to infections of the upper respiratory tract. The incubation period is 2-10 days. The untreated patient is contagious until lesions are healed; treatment shortens the period of contagiousness.

Acute glomerulonephritis (AGN) can follow streptococcal infections of either the skin or pharynx. It can occur at any age and the incidence is variable, ranging from 0 to 28%. The median latent period between infection and the development of AGN is 10 days. It is characterized by hematuria and hypertension. Treatment, even early treatment, does little to prevent the occurrence of AGN in the patient suffering from impetigo; however, it does reduce the spread of impetigo and therefore the development of AGN in other children.

SUBJECTIVE

Patient/caregiver complain of:

a. Superficial lesions, anywhere on the body, commonly begin on face.
b. Itching is common, which **scratching** may spread the infection.
c. Often a history of minor trauma such as insect bites or scratches, or scabies or herpes simplex lesions, provide an entry for the organism.

OBJECTIVE Physical examination:

a. Superficial clear vesicles are present, containing serous fluid that becomes purulent. The base is erythematous and lesions are surrounded by areas of erythema. May also observe ruptured pustules that have dried centrally and formed a honey-colored crust.
b. Lesions may vary in size from a few millimeters to several centimeters.
c. May have regional lymphadenopathy, which occurs more often in streptococcal than in staphylococcal infections.
d. Bullous impetigo is characterized by very large vesicles (bullae) that rupture and form circular, raw lesions resembling a second-degree burn; these eventually form a crust. **It is very infectious and may be present on multiple sites of body and even on other family members.**
e. **MRSA impetigo: Considered when impetigo is not improving despite the use of standard antibiotics**

ASSESSMENT Impetigo

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

1. Check urine for blood and protein if there is any history of unusually dark (smokey) urine.

2. Check blood pressure.

3. **Consider skin culture & skin sensitivity:**

   a. If there is reason to suspect Methicillin-resistant staphylococcus aureus (MRSA).
   b. History of MRSA infection in the household.
   c. Cellulitis.
   d. If there is an outbreak of impetigo in the community.
   e. Failure to respond promptly to treatment.
   f. If poststreptococcal glomerulonephritis is present.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Local treatment may be adequate when only one or two lesions are

present and there is no fever present.

a. Remove crusts by soaking and gentle washing with warm water and antiseptic soap before applying antibiotic ointment.

b. Mupirocin 2% ointment (prescription required) should be applied to lesions 3 times a day for 7-10 days.

OR

c. Retapamulin 1% ointment (prescription required).

   Children 9 months of age and older. Topical: Apply to affected area twice daily for 5 days. Total treatment area should not exceed 2% of total body surface area.

2. Reevaluate patient not showing a response in 2 to 3 days. May need culture and sensitivity testing.

3. Systemic treatment is used for multiple lesions (e.g., 3 or more), widely separated lesions or lesions that are not showing rapid response to local therapy. If infection is severe (e.g., multiple large lesions with fever or other systemic symptoms refer to a physician. **Before starting systemic antibiotic, obtain specimen for culture and sensitivity.**

   a. Cephalexin (Keflex), suspension of 125 mg/5mL or 250 mg/5 mL, or 500 mg capsules. Give 25-50 mg/kg/day orally, divided into 2 equal doses every 12 hours for 10 days.

      If younger than 1 year of age, divide into 3-4 doses. If over 15 years of age, 500 mg orally twice daily for 10 days.

   OR

   b. Erythromycin ethylsuccinate (EryPed, EES, Pediamycin) 200 **mg/5 mL** or 400 mg/5 mL suspension, or 200 mg chewable or 400 mg film-coated tablets.

      Give **Erythromycin ethylsuccinate** 30-50 mg/kg/24 hours, orally in four equally divided doses every 6 hours for 10 days. If twice-a-day dosage is desired, ½ of the total daily dose may be given every 12 hours. Doses may also be given three times daily by administering one-third of the total daily dose every 8 hours.

      Adolescents and Adults weighing 100 lbs or more:

Erythromycin ethylsuccinate 400 mg by mouth every 6 hours for 10 days.

NOTE: Do not use if allergic to macrolides. Give after meals to decrease gastric upset.

4. **If MRSA is suspected or confirmed, give:**

   a. **Clindamycin**

      Child Dose: Clindamycin 20mg/kg/day in three divided doses.
      Adult dose: Clindamycin 300 mg to 450 mg four times per day for 7-10 days.

      OR

   b. **Bactrim**

      Child Dose: Trimethoprim 8-12 mg/kg per day in two divided doses.
      Adult dose: Bactrim 1-2 double strength tablets twice per day for 7-10 days.

5. Treat or refer all family/household members in close contact who also have impetiginous lesions, to avoid reinfection and further spread.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Instruct family and child in importance of hand-washing.

2. Instruct in handling of linen and clothing separate from the rest of household.

3. Instruct in trimming and keeping nails clean.

4. Instruct in soaking and removal of crusts from lesions: gently wash the affected areas with clean gauze and antiseptic soap every day. Soak any areas of crusted skin in warm soapy water to help remove the layers of crust. It is not necessary to completely remove all crust.

5. Give parent information about symptoms of glomerulonephritis to observe for: hematuria; periorbital edema; headache; fever; malaise; or tea or “smokey”-colored urine.

6. May return to school 24 hours after starting antibiotic treatment.

Children with draining or open lesions should have lesions covered with a clean, dry dressing (gauze and tape or a loose bandage). Close contact with other children should be avoided.

7. Contact clinic if any problems obtaining medications.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Reevaluate **in 2-3 days** if **infection is** not showing a response **to medication, is worsening, or is spreading**.

2. Recheck in 18-21 days or sooner if rash/infection gets worse while on treatment. Note any signs or symptoms of glomerulonephritis (brown colored urine, hematuria, periorbital edema, headache, malaise). Check blood pressure. If indicated, check urine for blood and protein (dipstick adequate).

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present. (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. If rash is not completely resolved at end of medication regimen.

2. Infants under the age of 2 months.

3. **Non-adherence** with medication or instructions.

4. Severe infections (e.g., multiple large lesions with fever or other systemic symptoms).

5. If extensive local inflammation or cellulitis.

6. If any signs/symptoms of glomerulonephritis.

7. If multiple recurrences, to evaluate child for nasopharyngeal carriage state of *S. aureus.*

8. **If** progression after 24 hours of treatment or a culture positive for MRSA.

9. Pregnant or breastfeeding.

REFERENCES

1. Rose W. Boynton, et al., *Manual of Ambulatory Pediatrics,* 6th ed., Wolters Kluwer Health, Philadelphia, 2009, pp. 322-325. (Current)

2. Committee on Infectious Diseases, American Academy of Pediatrics, Larry K. Pickering, ed., *Red Book®: 2012 Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases.* 29th ed., American Academy of Pediatrics, USA, <http://online.statref.com/document.aspx?fxid=76&docid=66>, accessed on April 29, 2013.

3. Thomas K. McInerny, et al, *American Academy of Pediatrics Textbook of Pediatric Care,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2009, pp. 1853-1855. (Current)

4. Robert M. Kliegman, et al., *Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics,* 19th ed., Elsevier, Saunders, Philadelphia, PA, 2011, <http://www.mdconsult.com/books/linkTo?type=bookPage&isbn=978-1-4377-0755-7&eid=4-u1.0-B978-1-4377-0755-7..00657-6 >, accessed on April 29, 2013.

5. Carol K. Taketomo, et al., *Pediatric and Neonatal Dosage Handbook*, 19th ed., Lexicomp, Hudson, Ohio, 2012, pp. 321, 322, 323, 642, 643.

6. J.E. South-Paul, S.C. Matheny, E.L. Lewis, eds., *Current Diagnosis and Treatment in Family Medicine,* 3rd ed., McGraw-Hill, New York, 2011, <http://www.accessmedicine.com.medlib-proxy.mercer.edu/content.aspx?aID=8149632>, accessed on April 30, 2013.

7. J.E. Tintinalli, J.S. Stapczynski, et al., eds. *Tintinalli's Emergency Medicine: A Comprehensive Study Guide,* 7th ed., McGraw-Hill, New York, 2011, <http://www.accessmedicine.com.medlib-proxy.mercer.edu/content.aspx?aID=6383200>, accessed April 30, 2013.

8. W.W. Hay, Jr., et al., eds. *Current Diagnosis and Treatment: Pediatrics*, 21st ed., McGraw-Hill, New York, 2012, <http://www.accessmedicine.com.medlib-proxy.mercer.edu/content.aspx?aID=56834492>, accessed April 30, 2013.

9. Nemours, "Impetigo," *Kids Health.org,* May 2011, <http://kidshealth.org/PageManager.jsp?dn=KidsHealth&lic=1&ps=107&cat_id=20047&article_set=22786> (May 1, 2013).

10. **2017UpToDate- Oral Antibiotic Therapy for Impetigo- https://www.uptodate.com/contents/impetigo?source=machineLearning&search=Impetigo&selectedTitle=1~114&sectionRank=2&anchor=H11#H11**

11. **Kahl & Hughes. "Harriet Lane Handbook." 14th edition. pp. 243-244.**

12. Sage Journals, Journal of Pharmacy Practices, Beta-Lactam Hypersensitivity and Cross-Reactivity, Adrienne T. Terico, PharmD, Jason C. Gallagher, PharmD, FCCP,

BCPS http://www.jpedsurg.org/article/S0022-3468(14)00699-X/fulltext http://journals.sagepub.com/doi/pdf/10.1177/0897190014546109 http://www.jem-journal.com/article/S0736-4679(11)00545-2/fulltext

13. **Baddour, Larry M, MD, FIDSA, FAHA, "Impetigo" UpToDate, Wolters Kluwer 2017. https://www.uptodate.com/contents/impetigo?source=machineLearning&search=impetigo%20treatment&selectedTitle=1~113&sectionRank=1&anchor=H11#H11 August 24, 2017.**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR TREATMENT OF IRON DEFICIENCY ANEMIA

DEFINITION

Iron deficiency is a condition in which there is a reduction of iron in the body to less than normal. Iron depletion is the earliest stage of deficiency, where iron storage is decreased but serum iron concentration and blood hemoglobin levels are normal. Iron deficiency anemia is the most advanced stage of iron deficiency with low serum iron concentration and low blood hemoglobin concentration.

ETIOLOGY

Anemia occurs when there is a reduction in hemoglobin concentration or red blood cells, resulting in decreased oxygen carrying capacity of blood. Anemia may result from excessive blood loss, excessive blood cell destruction, or decreased blood cell formation. The latter anemia may result from inhibition of or loss of, bone marrow function, defective nucleoprotein synthesis (as in pernicious anemia) or deficiency of iron in the diet. The most common anemia in children is iron deficiency anemia. Iron deficiency occurs most commonly in late infancy, early childhood and adolescence.

Iron deficiency anemia represents the most severe end of the iron-deficiency spectrum. There is evidence that substantial iron deficiency during infancy and early childhood can have long term neurocognitive implications**,** and it is likely that by the time iron-deficiency progresses to anemia the neurological consequences have already occurred. Some of these neurodevelopment and behavior effects may be irreversible. It is, therefore, imperative that iron deficiency be prevented, and if not prevented then diagnosed early and treated aggressively.

Subsets at increased risk for iron deficiency include: infants of diabetic mothers, preterm infants and infants with growth restrictions; breastfed infants older than 6 months not receiving iron supplementation, children with elevated lead levels, children living at or below the poverty level, adolescents on low-**meat or no**-meat diets and post-menarchal girls.

NOTE: For female patient 18 years and over in Women's Health Program, see Standard Nurse Protocol for Iron Deficiency Anemia.

SUBJECTIVE

Patient may report:

a. Asymptomatic.
b. Poor appetite, inadequate diet, or anorexia.
c. Irritableness or fussiness.
d. Poor weight gain.
e. Headaches.
f. **Easily** fatigue**d**, listlessness, decreased social interaction, poor attention to tasks, developmental delays.

g. Pica (can be a symptom of iron deficiency anemia and/or lead poisoning; iron deficiency anemia increases risk for lead poisoning).
h. Excessive milk/dairy intake (more than 24 oz. per day) and limited intake of iron-containing foods.
i. Infants six months and older and exclusively fed human milk without iron supplementation (e.g., iron fortified cereals, oral iron, pureed meats).
j. Consumption of cow milk in infancy.
k. Gestational severe maternal iron deficiency, maternal hypertension and maternal diabetes mellitus.
l. History of intestinal parasites.
m. History of sickle cell anemia or thalassemia.
n. History of blood loss including GI bleeding or nose bleeds.
o. Heavy menstrual blood loss (greater than or equal to 80mL per month).
p. Excessive aspirin or antacid consumption.
q. **History of splenectomy or cholecystectomy.**

OBJECTIVE Physical examination may reveal:

a. Hemoglobin/hematocrit below acceptable values (see table).
b. Skin **pallor and/or** pale mucous membranes
c. Tachycardia
d. Elevated blood lead level. (Obtain lead level if indicated; reference Georgia Childhood Lead Poisoning Prevention Program Guidelines).
e. Premature (less than 37 weeks gestation) or low birth weight (less than 2,500 gm).
f. Check Georgia newborn screening results (and other states as available) for sickle cell and other hemoglobin variants.

ASSESSMENT **Iron deficiency anemia**

Assessment for iron deficiency anemia should be performed at the 12-month health check following Bright Futures/American Academy of Pediatric Recommendations for preventative Pediatric Health Care periodicity table or based on the subjective/objective findings that suggest anemia.

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

For obtaining hemoglobin value, follow the HemoCue® Hemoglobin System standard operating procedure guidelines.

DIAGNOSTIC CRITERIA

Iron deficiency anemia, presumptive if hemoglobin or hematocrit are below acceptable values and if:

a. No suggestion of sickle cell, thalassemia or other chronic illness including recurrent nosebleeds,
b. No recent infections or inflammatory conditions,
AND
c. 3 negative stools for occult blood (if performed).

A diagnosis of iron deficiency anemia can be confirmed following a presumptive diagnosis, if after iron supplementation the hemoglobin increases by at least 1 gm/dL, or the hematocrit increases by more than 3% in one month.

NOTE: Check stool for occult blood if abnormal stool history (tarry, bloody, chronic diarrhea).

Iron deficiency anemia may coexist when there is GI bleeding, chronic nosebleeds, lead poisoning or other chronic illness. However, these underlying causes should be addressed, usually by a referral, and the diagnosis of iron deficiency will commonly include a full CBC and reticulocyte count and, possibly, a serum iron measurement. Simple dietary iron-deficiency anemia is most common under 30 months of age. When iron deficiency anemia is identified after 30 months of age more aggressive efforts should be made to identify causes other than simple dietary deficiency such as occult GI blood loss or malabsorption.

AGE-SPECIFIC LOWEST NORMATIVE RED BLOOD CELL VALUES NOTE: If patient's hemoglobin/hematocrit is less than the values in this table, begin therapeutic treatment as listed above.		
Age[5]	Hemoglobin (g per dL)	Hematocrit (%)
6 months - 11 months	11	33
12 months - 23 months	11	32.9
24 months - 5 years	11.2	33
6 - 12 years	11.5	33
12 - 18 years (male)	13	39
12-18 years (female)	12	36

5 As created by Kortney Floyd APRN, CPNP GA DPH Deputy Chief Nurse, Nurse Protocols

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. **For Iron Deficiency Anemia (infants and children) give Ferrous Sulfate (Elemental Iron), 4 mg/kg/day once or twice daily PO. A range of 3 mg/kg/day to 6 mg/kg/day is acceptable. Maximum dose should not exceed 150 mg of elemental iron.**

   Treat for 2-3 months after hemoglobin/hematocrit return to normal to replenish total body stores. If adherence is a problem, the entire daily dose may be given as a single dose, with a meal. Do not give if patient has sickle cell or hemoglobin variants. Available OTC. See chart for a list of elemental iron products.

   Ideally, take iron supplement 30 to 45 minutes before meals or two hours after meals, and only with juice or water, rather than with food or milk. If gastric upset occurs, may take supplement after a meal or on a full stomach. **Avoid taking with dairy. See Patient Education section for more information.**

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Dietary counseling for iron deficiency anemia in children.

   a. Give list of iron-rich **food**s.
   b. **Encourage** vitamin C-rich foods **to improve iron absorption (plant sources only).**
   c. Reduce excessive dairy intake. (e.g., food sources of Iron in WIC manual).

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Poison control safety counseling; large doses of iron are poisonous. Store all medications out of reach of children. **If drug is taken by accident call the poison control center right away.**

2. The appropriate dose should be taken on an empty stomach. If unable to tolerate (GI upset occurs), advise to take after meals with 4 oz. of vitamin C-rich juice (orange, pineapple, tomato, grapefruit or apple juice fortified with vitamin C) to increase absorption of iron and decrease gastric irritation. Taking iron with food can decrease the iron absorption by at least 50%. However, this may be preferred if compliance becomes a problem because of gastric discomfort when taking iron between meals. If iron must be given with food for improved compliance then **avoid milk (including soy milk), milk**

products (i.e., yogurt, cheese), tea, and cereals.

3. **Iron can interfere with many drugs' absorption into the body. If the patient takes other medications, please check with pharmacist or healthcare professional.**

4. For children ages 1 to 5 years: **their daily total intake of milk containing products should not exceed 24 oz. per day (including cow's milk, goat's milk, soy milk, yogurt, ice cream, cheese and breast milk).**

5. Do not feed cow's milk **before 1 year of age.**

6. The American Academy of Pediatrics supports exclusive breastfeeding for the first 4 to 6 months of life; if formula fed, only iron-fortified formula should be used.

7. Iron products stain teeth. Instruct parents on importance of brushing teeth and rinsing the mouth after iron supplement is given.

8. Eat nutritious meals and snacks; limit low nutrient dense foods**.**

9. Iron can cause black stools, constipation or diarrhea.

10. **Some iron products contain tartrazine. If allergic to tartrazine, please check product ingredients.**

11. **For tablets, have the child swallow whole.**

12. **For liquid drops or elixir, use the measuring device that comes with the drug and measure carefully.**

FOLLOW-UP

1. Recheck hemoglobin/hematocrit after 4 weeks of treatment to assess for therapeutic progress and emphasize compliance.

    a. Iron Deficiency Anemia: An increase in Hgb of 1gm/dL or more; or Hct 3% or more confirms the diagnosis of iron deficiency anemia.
    b. If confirmed, reinforce dietary counseling, continue iron treatment and recheck hemoglobin or hematocrit in one month.

2. Continue iron supplementation for 2 to 3 months after hemoglobin/hematocrit has normalized.

3. Reassess approximately 6 months after successful treatment is completed.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present. (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. For patient with presumptive iron deficiency anemia, refer to physician if treatment has been given as directed and Hgb/Hct levels are not improving or have not returned to normal values after one to two months.

2. Refer if known HIV **infected patient**.

3. Chronic nosebleeds and/or GI bleeding.

4. For prevention of iron deficiency, in a term breastfed infant at least 6 months of age and not receiving sufficient iron from **complementary** foods (e.g., greater than or equal to 2 servings of iron-fortified infant cereal), refer to physician for consideration of iron supplementation to prevent deficiency.

5. For prevention of iron deficiency, in breastfed preterm or low birth weight infant between 1 and 12 months of age and not receiving oral iron supplementation, refer to physician for iron supplementation evaluation.

6. For prevention of iron deficiency, in formula fed preterm infant in first year of life, and not receiving oral iron supplementation or vitamin preparation with iron, refer to physician for evaluation.

7. Infant less than 6 months of age with abnormal hemoglobin or hematocrit.

8. All ages with hemoglobin less than 9 grams or hematocrit less than 27%.

9. Presence of sickle cell or other hemoglobin variants.

10. **Refer to nutritionist and/or WIC if child is under 5 years old and meets criteria.**

11. **Consult with physician for any irregularity in response to therapy.**

Weight	**Elemental Iron** Dosing by body weight is preferred. Acceptable dosing range is 3mg/kg/day to 6mg/kg/day (up to **150mg** per day max dose)	**Supplements should generally produce a hemoglobin rise of greater than 1 g/dL within four weeks. Check concentration closely prior to ordering/dispensing.** **Orders written in milliliters (mL) should be clarified by indicating the amount of elemental iron.**	
Lbs (kg)	**Dosages below are estimated ranges based on** 4 mg/kg/day	Suggested Product Options	
15-25 (7-11kg)	28mg-44mg	220 mg (44 mg iron) per 5 mL[6]	**Ferrous Sulfate Elixir**
		300 mg (60 mg iron) per 5 mL	**Ferrous Sulfate Syrup**
		75 (15 mg iron) per mL	**Ferrous Sulfate Solution**
		75 (15 mg iron) per mL	**Ferrous Sulfate Drops e.g., Fer-In-Sol** (with alcohol 0.02%)
26-32 (12-14kg)	48mg-56mg	220 mg (44 mg iron) per 5 mL [6]	**Ferrous Sulfate Elixir**
		300 mg (60 mg iron) per 5 mL	**Ferrous Sulfate Syrup**
		75 (15 mg iron) per mL	**Ferrous Sulfate Solution**
		75 (15 mg iron) per mL	**Ferrous Sulfate Drops e.g. Fer-In-Sol** (with alcohol 0.02%)
33-39 (15-17kg)	**60mg-68mg**	300 mg (60 mg iron) per 5 mL	**Ferrous Sulfate Syrup**
		220 mg (**44** mg iron) per **5** mL [6]	**Ferrous Sulfate Elixir**
		15 mg iron	**Carbonyl Iron Tablets, chewable** **Iron Chews** **Icar Pediatric**
		15 mg iron per 1.25 mL	**Carbonyl Iron Suspension** **Icar Pediatric**
40-43 (18-19kg)	**72mg-76mg**	220 mg (44 mg iron) per 5 mL [6]	**Ferrous Sulfate Elixir**
		300 mg (60 mg iron) per 5 mL	**Ferrous Sulfate Syrup**
		15 mg iron per 1.25 mL	**Carbonyl Iron Suspension** **Icar Pediatric**

6 Available from one or more manufacturer, distributor, and/or repackager by generic (nonproprietary) name.

Weight	**Elemental Iron** Dosing by body weight is preferred. Acceptable dosing range is 3mg/kg/day to 6mg/kg/day (up to **150mg** per day max dose)	**Supplements should generally produce a hemoglobin rise of greater than 1 g/dL within four weeks. Check concentration closely prior to ordering/dispensing.** **Orders written in milliliters (mL) should be clarified by indicating the amount of elemental iron.**	
Lbs (kg)	**Dosages below are estimated ranges based on** 4 mg/kg/day	Suggested Product Options	
44-52 (20-23kg)	**80mg-92mg**	15 mg iron per 1.25 mL	**Carbonyl Iron Solution** **Icar Pediatric**
		300 mg (60 mg iron) per 5 mL	**Ferrous Sulfate Syrup**
		325 mg (65 mg iron) [6]	**Ferrous Sulfate enteric-coated tablets**
		325 mg (65 mg iron) [6]	**Ferrous Sulfate film-coated tablets**
		160 mg (50 mg iron)	**Ferrous Sulfate, Dried: Tablet, extended-release** **Slow FE®**
		200 mg (65 mg iron)	**Ferrous Sulfate, Dried: Tablet** **Feosol®**
		45 mg (of iron)	Carbonyl Iron Tablets **Feosol® Caplets**
53+ (24kg+)	**96mg-150mg**	300 mg (60 mg iron) per 5 mL	**Ferrous Sulfate Syrup**
		325 mg (65 mg iron) [6]	**Ferrous Sulfate enteric-coated tablets**
		325 mg (65 mg iron) [6]	**Ferrous Sulfate film-coated tablets**
		160 mg (50 mg iron)	**Ferrous Sulfate, Dried: Tablet, extended-release** **Slow FE®**
		200 mg (65 mg iron)	**Ferrous Sulfate, Dried: Tablet** **Feosol®**
		45 mg (of iron)	Carbonyl Iron Tablets **Feosol® Caplets**
		324 mg (106 mg iron) [6]	**Ferrous Fumarate Tablet** **Hemocyte®**

REFERENCES

1. CDC, "Iron Deficiency United States, 1999-2000", Vol. 51(40); 897-899, October 2002.

2. CDC, "Recommendations to Prevent and Control Iron Deficiency in the United States," *MMWR*, Vol. 47, No. RR-3, April 1998. (Current)

3. Thomas K. McInery, et al., *American Academy of Pediatrics Textbook of Pediatric Care,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2009, pp. 2201-2210.

4. Carol Berkowitz, *Berkowtiz's Pediatrics: A Primary Care Approach,* 5th edition, June 20, 2014.

5. American Academy of Pediatrics, *Pediatric Nutrition Handbook*, 7th ed., 2013.

6. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, "Iron Deficiency," *Healthy People 2020,* http://healthypeople.gov/2020/topicsobjectives2020/objectiveslist. aspx? topicid=29 (May 8, 2013).

7. Robert Baker, Frank Greer, and The Committee on Nutrition, The American Academy of Pediatrics, "Clinical Report-Diagnosis and Prevention of Iron Deficiency and Iron-Deficiency Anemia in Infants and Young Children (0-3Years of Age), *Pediatrics*, 2010, pp. 1040-1050. (Current)

8. "Food Sources of Iron", *2011 Georgia WIC Procedures Manual and State Plan,* p. CT-227.

9. David H. Mahoney, Jr., "Iron deficiency in infants and young children: Screening, prevention, clinical manifestations, and diagnosis," *UpToDate® Wolters Kluwer Health,* April 2013, http://www.uptodate.com/contents/iron-deficiency-in-infants-and-young-children-screening-prevention-clinical-manifestations-and-diagnosis> (May 8, 2013).

10. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, April 3, 1998/Vol.47/No. RR-3 (current April 20, 2015).

11. Georgia Department of Public Health, Nurse Protocols for Registered Professional Nurses 2014, *Standard Nurse Protocol for Prevention and Treatment of Iron Deficiency with or without Anemia,* Child Health 8.73

12. **Facts and Comparisons Online. WolterKluwer, 2017 Clinical Drug Information, LLC.** https://fco.factsandcomparisons.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/fc_dfc/5548310 **accessed August 24, 2017.**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR OTITIS EXTERNA

DEFINITION Inflammation of the external auditory canal and auricle caused by a variety of infectious agents.

ETIOLOGY The most common cause of otitis externa is accumulation of water in the ear, leading to maceration and desquamation of the lining and conversion of the pH from acid to alkaline (e.g., swimming or frequent showers). It also may be initiated by trauma from scratching (fingernail or cotton-tipped applicator) or poorly-fitting earplugs for swimming. It may also accompany the chronic drainage from a perforated eardrum.

NOTE: It is unusual for an infant to be diagnosed with otitis externa. Before making this diagnosis in an infant, other causes of ear drainage and pain should be ruled out, including perforated otitis media and mastoiditis.

Common causative agents are *Staphylococcus*, *Pseudomonas* species and fungi, such as *Candida albicans*.

SUBJECTIVE **Patient may have:**

a. Pain and itching in ear(s).
b. Purulent discharge from ear.
c. Occasionally, decrease in hearing, or a sensation of obstruction in the ear(s).

OBJECTIVE **Physical examination:**

a. Pain aggravated by movement of the pinna tragus (the most common finding).
b. Ear canal may be swollen and erythematous. The patient may be resistant to any attempt to insert an ear speculum.
c. Debris and exudate may be seen in the canal; the drum may be impossible to visualize in severe cases.
d. Pre-auricular and/or post-auricular lymph nodes may be enlarged.
e. Swelling or pain over the mastoid should not be observed in uncomplicated otitis externa.

ASSESSMENT Otitis externa

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

NOTE: Tympanogram is contraindicated due to pain and need to avoid pressure.

THERAPEUTIC

Therapy centers around the basic principles of: local cleaning of debris and drainage of infection, restoration of the normal acidic protective barrier, judicious use of appropriate local and/or systemic antibiotics, and patient education to prevent recurrent infection.

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Desquamated epithelium and moist cerumen may need to be removed by gentle irrigation before treatment.

1. For those patients with an intact tympanic membrane:

   a. Children 1 year of age or older: Cortisporin otic suspension (not the solution), instill 3 drops in affected ear canal(s) 3-4 times a day for 10 days.

   OR

   b. Children 1 year of age or older, Cipro HC otic suspension, 3 drops in the affected ear canal(s) twice daily for 7 days.

   For each medication above, the bottle of medication should be warmed in hands for 1-2 minutes. Shake suspension well immediately before use. The head should lie with the affected ear upward for medication instillation, and stay in that position for 1- 5 minutes to facilitate penetration of the drops into the ear canal.

2. May take age-appropriate doses of acetaminophen or ibuprofen for pain.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC

Local cleaning is regarded by most otolaryngologists as an essential component of treatment. This is not easily accomplished in small children because of the tenderness of the ear canal. If the child will tolerate gentle irrigation with warm, dilute (1:1) peroxide solution that would be beneficial.

If not tolerated, but the canal is not totally obscured by exudates, it is reasonable to treat with antibiotic drops as advised below and follow-up by telephone in 24 hours. If there has been no improvement, then referral for debridement and instillation of a wick would be indicated.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Preventing external otitis may be necessary for individuals susceptible to recurrences, especially children who swim. The most effective prophylaxis is to place 2 or 3 drops ethyl alcohol 70% 1:1 solution with acetic acid 2% (household white vinegar) in the ear canal immediately after swimming or bathing. OTC commercially prepared drops (such as Swim Ear and Auro-Dry) are also available. Place 4-5 drops into affected ears after bathing, showering and swimming.

2. Counseling is provided regarding the causes of otitis externa, administration of ear drops, and signs and symptoms which indicate the need for further evaluation.

3. Swimming, particularly during the acute phase, should be avoided. Bathing should be done in such a way as to keep the head out of the water, to avoid introducing soapy water and dirt into the ear canal.

4. Keep fingers and instruments (e.g., cotton swabs) out of the ear canals. There is no need to clean canals with swabs.

5. Contact clinic if any problems obtaining medications.

FOLLOW-UP

Follow-up visit in one week to assess and document effect of treatment.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present. (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. Severe pain, fever or swelling of canal extensive enough to prevent instillation of drops. A cotton wick may be required.

2. Cellulitis of ear or surrounding tissue.

3. Patients with diabetes or other conditions predisposing them to more severe infection.

4. Failure to respond to treatment in 3 days (24 **hours** if significant exudate was present and local debridement was not tolerated).

5. More than one recurrence.

6. Tympanic membrane is perforated, not intact or not visualized.

7. Refer child less than 1 year of age.

REFERENCES

1. Robert M. Kliegman, et al., *Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics,* 19th ed., Elsevier, Saunders, Philadelphia, PA, 2011, <http://www.mdconsult.com/books/linkTo?type=bookPage&isbn=978-1-4377-0755-7&eid=4-u1.0-B978-1-4377-0755-7.00631-X>, accessed on April 26, 2013.

2. William W. Hay et al., *Current Pediatric Diagnosis and Treatment,* 21st ed., McGraw-Hill, United States of America, 2012, <http://www.accessmedicine.com.medlib-proxy.mercer.edu/content.aspx?aID=56817986>, accessed on April 26, 2013.

3. Thomas K. McInery, et al., *American Academy of Pediatrics Textbook of Pediatric Care,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2009, p. 2364. (Current)

4. **Goguen, Laura A., MD. "External otitis: Treatment" UpToDate 2017. Wolters Kluwer. < https://www.uptodate.com/contents/external-otitis-treatment?source=search_result&search=neomycin%20allergy%20cipro&selectedTitle=1~150> accessed August 24, 2017.**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PEDICULOSIS CAPITIS (HEAD LICE)

DEFINITION

Pediculosis Capitis is the infestation of the scalp and hair by head lice (Pediculus humanus capitis). Most commonly occurs in school-age children **because they have very close head to head contact. Head lice are not a sign of poor hygiene nor are they a health hazard. Lice do not cause the spread of any disease.**

ETIOLOGY

An adult head louse measures 2-3mm long (the size of a sesame seed), is greyish-white to tan in color and has 6 legs. The female louse can live up to 3-4 weeks and can lay up to 10 eggs per day, the eggs are firmly attached to the hair very close to the scalp usually within 4-5 mm by a glue-like substance produced by the female louse. The eggs are difficult to see because they are camouflaged by pigment to match the hair color. They are most easily identified at the posterior hairline. Empty egg casings (nits) are easier to see because they are white in color. The eggs require body heat to incubate and usually hatch within 7-12 days. After hatching a nymph will reach adult stage in 9-12 days. Females can begin laying eggs 1.5 days after reaching adulthood. Head lice survive by feeding on small amounts of human blood. They cannot survive if away from the scalp for more than a day. In addition, their eggs cannot hatch if away from the warm temperatures near the scalp.

Transmission occurs primarily by direct head-to-head contact with an actively infested person, and much less frequently by contact with infested objects such as hairbrushes, head gear, clothing, carpets, upholstered furniture and beds. Lice can only crawl; they do not jump or hop. Pets do not play a role in transmission of human lice. Combing dry hair can generate static electricity that may eject an adult louse up to 1 meter. Control measures should focus reducing the number of live lice on the head and limiting head to head contact.

SUBJECTIVE

Patient has:

a. Itching.
b. Rash.
c. Nits or adult lice seen.
d. May give history of exposure to lice.

OBJECTIVE

Physical examination:

a. **Identifying adult lice, nymphs or nits on the scalp establishes the diagnosis.**

b. Identification of live lice or **eggs** attached to head hair, eyebrows or eyelashes. Adult lice are hard to find, **often** less than 12/patient. **Eggs** are grayish white to brown in color. Hatched nits (empty egg cases) are translucent.
c. Common sites are the back of the head and behind the ears. **Eggs** are firmly attached to the hairs and cannot be moved up and down the hair shaft like hair casts, scales and dandruff. Recently laid nits are usually, but not always close to the scalp **within 1 cm.**
d. Small red papules or secondary excoriations **to the scalp, nape.**
e. Occipital or cervical lymphadenopathy may be present.

ASSESSMENT Pediculosis capitis (Head lice)

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

Pediculicide resistance, particularly to pyrethroids and malathion, is an increasing concern. The treatment choice should consider local resistance patterns (follow CDC Guidelines), agent-specific side effects, patient age, and treatment cost.

Only patients with live infestations should receive treatment.

Instruct pregnant or breastfeeding females to consult with their physician before using any pediculocides. Instruct person applying pediculocide to wear gloves, to avoid direct contact with product.

1. **Front-line treatment options** (for patients with active infestations who are not suspected to have head lice that are resistant to permethrin or pyrethrins):

   a. Permethrin 1% cream **(NIX)**

   Although NIX is FDA approved for infants at least 2 months old. Non-pharmacologic methods should be attempted first. Do not use NIX on patients who are allergic to synthetic pyrethroid, or pyrethrin, or any of its components, or chrysanthemums.
   1) Apply NIX to shampooed, rinsed and towel dried hair (make sure to use non-conditioning shampoo). Hair should be damp, not wet.
   2) Saturate the hair and scalp with NIX crème rinse. Not using enough pediculocide can result in treatment failure. Keep NIX out of eyes, nose and mouth. Keep eyes closed and protect with a washcloth.
   3) Leave on for 10 minutes but not longer. **Use a timer.**

4) Rinse NIX out with warm water and towel dry.
5) Follow Therapeutic measures in Non- Pharmacologic section.

Treatment with NIX may temporarily exacerbate pruritus, erythema, or edema. Patients may experience mild transient burning/stinging, tingling, numbness, or scalp discomfort. If any reaction persists, refer patient to a private care provider.

Re-treatment on day 9 is recommended to kill any surviving hatched lice.

OR

b. Pyrethrins with piperonyl butoxide (such as nonprescription A-200, Pronto and RID shampoo). Do not use on patients allergic to pyrethrins, chrysanthemums or ragweed.

NOTE: Only FDA approved for children age 2 **years** and older. **Keep away from fire, open flame, or excessive heat.**

1) Begin with completely dry hair. Saturate hair and scalp with solution. Not using enough pediculocide can result in treatment failure.
2) Wait 10 minutes, but no longer; **use a timer.**
3) **A**dd warm water to form lather, and rinse thoroughly. Keep product out of eyes, nose and mouth. Keep eyes closed and protect with a washcloth.
4) Follow Therapeutic measures in Non-pharmacologic section.

Re-treatment is recommended on day 9 to kill any hatched lice.

2. **If front line therapy medications are ineffective, the following medications are alternative options that can be used to treat head lice that may be resistant to previous treatments. (Safety concerns and side effects of these medications can be eliminated or reduced if used appropriately).**

a. **Sklice® (Ivermectin lotion). Patients 6 months of age or older; do not use in pregnant patients.**
   1) **Apply sufficient amount (up to 1 tube) to completely cover dry scalp and hair; for single-dose use only. For external use only.**
   2) **Apply to dry scalp and hair closest to scalp first, then apply outward towards ends of hair;**

completely covering scalp and hair.

3) **Leave on for 10 minutes (start timing treatment after the scalp and hair have been completely covered).**
4) **The hair should then be rinsed thoroughly with warm water. Avoid contact with the eyes. Nit combing is not required, although a fine-tooth comb may be used to remove treated lice and nits. Lotion is for one-time use; discard any unused portion. May cause skin or eye irritation.**

OR

b. **Benzyl alcohol 5% (Ulesfia®) Topical Lotion (prior authorization may be required). Patients 6 months of age or older.**
   1) **Apply appropriate volume for hair length to dry hair and completely saturate the scalp**
   2) **Leave on for 10 minutes**
   3) **Rinse thoroughly with water**
   4) **Repeat in 7 days. May cause skin and eye irritation, transient skin numbness.**

Hair length 0 to 2 inches: 4 to 6 ounces
Hair length 2 to 4 inches: 6 to 8 ounces
Hair length 4 to 8 inches: 8 to 12 ounces
Hair length 8 to 16 inches: 12 to 24 ounces
Hair length 16 to 22 inches: 24 to 32 ounces
Hair length greater than 22 inches: 32 to 48 ounces

OR

c. Spinosad (Natroba®) topical suspension for patients **6 months** of age and older. Preferred over Malathion. Contains benzyl alcohol. Do not use Natroba on individual allergic to benzyl alcohol.
   1) Shake bottle well before use.
   2) Apply Natroba to dry hair.
   3) Completely cover the scalp with Natroba first then apply outwards towards the ends of the hair. If not enough Natroba is used, some lice may escape treatment. It is important to apply enough Natroba. For very thick, medium length hair or long hair, an entire bottle (120 mL) of Natroba may be needed.
   4) Leave Natroba on hair for 10 minutes. Use a timer and start timing after Natroba has been completely applied.
   5) After 10 minutes, completely rinse Natroba from hair

and scalp with warm water.

6) Wash hands after applying Natroba.
7) Retreat in 7 days if live lice are present.

OR

d. Malathion (e.g., prescription Ovide®, prior authorization may be required). Do not use on patients under age 6 years or those with asthma. Direct supervision by an adult is required. **Maximum of 2 fl. oz.**
   1) Apply carefully to dry hair; completely saturate the scalp and hair. Change child into clean clothing once the malathion has been applied. Keep product out of eyes, nose and mouth. Keep eyes closed and protect with a washcloth.
   2) Allow hair to dry naturally; do not use a hair dryer or **another** electric heat source. Malathion is flammable. Warn to stay away from lighted cigarettes, open flames, and electric heat sources. Do not cover head with a cap or other occluding material.
   3) Consider applying at bedtime and covering the sleeping pillow with a towel. Leave 8 hours, then shampoo and rinse thoroughly. **Set a reminder to shampoo and rinse thoroughly.**
   4) Malathion is highly ovicidal, but may not kill all lice eggs. If live lice are seen in 7 to 9 days, repeat Malathion treatment.

3. For itching, may give diphenhydramine; may cause drowsiness. (Contact physician before administering diphenhydramine to a child under 2 years of age).

To help control pruritus use an over-the-counter antihistamine such as diphenhydramine (e.g., Benadryl) orally. The non-sedating antihistamines appear to have only a very modest influence on atopic dermatitis symptoms.

Children 2 through 5 years of age: Diphenhydramine hydrochloride elixir 12.5 mg/5mL. May give 6.25 mg every 4 to 6 hours; do not exceed 37.5 mg/day.

Children 6 through 11 years of age: Diphenhydramine hydrochloride elixir 12.5 mg/5mL. May give 12.5mg to 25 mg every 4 to 6 hours; do not exceed 150 mg/day.

Adults and children 12 years of age and older:

Diphenhydramine hydrochloride 25-50 mg orally 3 or 4 times a day (not to exceed 300 mg/day). Do not give in third trimester of pregnancy or to breastfeeding mother.

3. Evidence of secondary infection requires systemic antibiotic treatment. The patient should be assessed for impetigo treatment or physician referral.

NOTE: Manual removal of nits is advised because pediculocides are not 100% ovicidal, resistance to pediculocides is increasing and to avoid diagnostic confusion, which can result in overtreatment with pediculocides. Successful elimination and prevention of head lice infestation is important in effort to limit exposure to pediculocides, which are costly and in some cases ineffective. Additionally, in a recent study, these products were found in the urine of school children in Georgia, and the long-term effects of exposure to pediculocides is unknown.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Remove nits with a nit comb working through very small sections of hair at a time. Fine toothed metal combs specifically made for removing nits work better for most persons. Be sure to comb the hair close to the scalp where most unhatched nits will be located. Wet hair combing is recommended over dry hair combing.

NOTE: Wet hair may slow the lice making them easier to find and remove. Dry combing can cause a build-up of static electricity which has been reported to physically eject an adult louse from the head more than 1 meter.

Check for lice and nits on the comb, and clean the comb often. The hair should be combed thoroughly and meticulously, focusing on small areas of hair at a time. Use good lighting and look carefully for lice and nits by parting off small sections of hair. If possible, check outside in daylight. Remove any lice and nits found. Continue daily nit combing on wet hair, checking for any new lice or nits that were missed; continue for 2-3 weeks until lice and nits are no longer found.

2. It is important that all other close contacts are checked by a trained person and treated if active infestation is found. If possible, treat all infested persons at the same time. If checking close contacts by a trained person is not practical, advise combing wet hair with a nit comb and then checking the teeth of the comb, to improve detection of live lice and nits.

3. Environmental interventions are directed towards items that the

infested person has been in contact with during the 48 hours prior to treatment.

a. Launder clothing, bedding, towels and other items that have been used by the infested person in the past 2 days in hot water and/or dry on high heat for 20 minutes. Items that are not washable can be dry cleaned or sealed in a plastic bag and stored for 2 weeks.
b. Vacuum furniture, floorings, car seats and other fabric covered items. Fumigation of the home is not recommended, and can be toxic.
c. Soak brushes, combs and hair accessories in hot water (at least 130 degrees Fahrenheit) for 10 minutes.

4. Mild topical antipruritic/anti-inflammatory cream or ointment may be obtained over-the-counter for itching. May interfere with effectiveness of topical ointment.

5. Evidence of secondary infection requires systemic antibiotic treatment. The patient should be assessed for impetigo treatment or physician referral.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Instructions vary for pediculocide products. Follow product instructions. If re-treatment is recommended in 7 to 10 days, re-treat on day 9. Exception: Natroba retreat if live lice are seen 7 days after first treatment.

2. Stress importance of checking all other close contacts and treating infested contacts at the same time to prevent re-infestation.

3. Do not use conditioners, shampoo/conditioner combinations or crème rinses on hair prior to treatment. Do not re-wash hair for 1-2 days after the lice medication is removed. Exception: If using Natroba may shampoo hair immediately after treatment.

4. Teach importance of using pediculocides as instructed. It is important to completely saturate the hair and scalp with pediculocide, be sure to include behind the ears and at the back of the neck.

NOTE: Inadequate treatment can sometimes be mistaken for drug resistance.

5. Do not get pediculocides and other chemicals in the eyes, nose or

mouth. Cover eyes and face with towel. Instruct child to close eyes tightly. If pediculocide gets in the eyes, flush the eyes with large amounts of cool water immediately and seek medical care.

6. All topical pediculicides should be rinsed from the hair over a sink rather than in the shower or bath to limit skin exposure. Instruct patient to rinse with warm rather than hot water to minimize absorption.

7. Using vinegar: water solutions and other products after NIX may interfere with effectiveness and are not recommended.

8. Using a hair dryer alone, will not eliminate a head lice infestation. Malathion is flammable.

9. Home remedies to control head lice, (e.g., vinegar, mayonnaise, petroleum jelly, olive oil, isopropyl alcohol, butter and water submersion up to 6 hours**)** have not been proven effective in killing lice or eggs. Lice do not have air sacs or lungs and are not easily suffocated. Lice can survive for prolonged periods without air.

10. Chemicals such as gasoline and kerosene, or animal products should never be used.

11. Do not use more than one pediculocide product at a time.

12. Itching may persist for 1-2 weeks even after adequate treatment, and should not be considered a reason for reapplication of medication.

13. Avoid head-to-head or hair-to-hair contact. This is the most common mode of transmission. Other ways to prevent transmission include:

    a. Do not share combs, brushes or head gear/coverings with other persons.
    b. Hang coats where they do not touch those of other persons.
    c. Do not lie on furniture, pillows, stuffed animals or other items that have recently been used by an infested person.
    d. Practice good handwashing and cleaning under fingernails to prevent transmission especially after scratching.
    e. Avoid sleepovers and slumber parties during lice outbreaks.

14. General Hair Care Recommendations:

    a. Shaving a child's head or cutting the hair very short is not necessary to eliminate the infestation.
    b. Modest shortening of the hair to a length acceptable to both

the child and the parent will make combing easier.

15. Assure that head lice infestation is a common problem in the school-age population and affects children of all socio-economic groups.

16. Instruct caregiver that child may return to daycare or school the next day after first treatment for head lice. It is not recommended that child be excluded from school based on the presence of nits.

17. Teach as with all medications, to keep pediculocides safely stored, locked out of reach of children. Pediculocides should be used under direct adult supervision.

18. Do not swallow pediculocides. If swallowed, contact Poison Control Center immediately.

19. Contact clinic if any problems obtaining medications or questions about treatment.

20. Return to clinic if active infestation is suspected after completion of treatment.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Assess if infestation is active.

2. Evaluate **adherence** with treatment plan and response to therapy. Possible reasons for treatment failure include: inadequate treatment, resistant lice, re-infestation. Re-treatment may be necessary. Reinforce teaching. Consider use of an alternate regimen if not responding to treatment.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present. (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. Consult with physician regarding any question of management.

2. **Refer patient if** pregnant or breastfeeding.

REFERENCES

1. Lexi for drugs and Pediatrics, May 2015, Volume 135, Issue 5.

2. Head Lice. The Council on School Health and Committee on Infectious Diseases, Cynthia D. Devore, MD, FAAP. Gordan E. Schultze, MD, FAAP

3. "Lexicomp Online", "Wolters Kluwer Clinical Drug Information, Inc.2017, <http://online.lexi.com> (January 6, 2017).

4. Committee on Infectious Diseases, American Academy of Pediatrics, Larry K. Pickering, ed., *Red Book®: 2012 Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases* - 29th ed., American Academy of Pediatrics, United States of America, 2012, <http://online.statref.com/document.aspx?fxid=76&docid=1>, accessed on May 20, 2013.

5. Children's Healthcare of Atlanta, et al., *Georgia School Health Resource Manual*, 2013 Edition, 2013, <http://www.choa.org/Health-Professionals/Nurse-Resources/School-Nurses/School-Health-Consultant-2013> (May 20, 2013).

6. Christine J. Ko and Dirk M. Elston, "Pediculosis," Journal of the American Academy of Dermatology, 50:1-12, 2004. (Current)

7. Thomas K. McInery, et al., American Academy of Pediatrics Textbook of Pediatric Care, Elk Grove Village, IL, 2009, pp. 2181-2182. (Current)

8. The National Pediculosis Association, Welcome to head lice. org., 2013 <http://www.headlice.org/> (May 17, 2013).

9. CDC, Parasites – Lice - Head Lice, November 2, 2010, <http://www.cdc.gov/parasites/lice/head/treatment.html> (May 17, 2013).

10. Bayer Healthcare, LLC, "RID Lice Killing Shampoo," Lice Elimination with RID, 2012, <http://www.ridlice.com/elimination-step1.html> (May 17, 2013).

11. L. P. Naeher, et al., "Pesticide Exposure Resulting from Treatment of Lice Infestation in School-Aged Children in Georgia," Environment International, February 2009, pp. 358-62. (Current)

12. Mark Lebwohl, Lily Clark and Jacob Levitt, "Therapy for Head Lice Based on Life Cycle, Resistance, and Safety Considerations," Pediatrics, 2007, 119: 965-974. (Current)

13. Barbara L. Frankowski and Joseph A. Bocchini, Jr. "Clinical Report -Head Lice," *Pediatrics,* 2010, 126(2):392-403. (Current)

14. U.S. National Library of Medicine, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, National Institutes of Health, "Medline Plus Trusted Health Information for You," *Permethrin Topical*, May 2, 2013, <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/druginfo/meds/a698037.html>, (May 17, 2013).

15. U.S. National Library of Medicine, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, National Institutes of Health, "Medline Plus Trusted Health Information for You," *Pyrethrin and Piperonyl Butoxide Topical*, May 2, 2013, <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/druginfo/meds/a601105.html>, (May 17, 2013).

16. Gerald L. Mandell, John E. Bennett, Raphael Dolin, *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases*, 7th ed., Elsevier, Philadelphia, PA, 2010, <http://www.mdconsult.com/books/linkTo?type=bookPage&isbn=978-0-443-06839-3&eid=4-u1.0-B978-0-443-06839-3.00293-9--s0035>, accessed on May 17, 2013. (Current)

17. Dow Stough, Susan Shellabarger, John Quiring and Alvin A. Gabrielsen, Jr, "Efficacy and Safety of Spinosad and Permethrin Creme Rinses for Pediculosis Capitis (Head Lice)," *Pediatrics*, Vol. 124, No. 3, September 2009, pp. e389-e395. (Current)

18. ParaPRO LLC, Patient Information Natroba (Nah-TRO-buh) (spinosad) topical suspension, 0.9%, January 18, 2011.

19. Goldstein, Adam O. MD, MPH, Goldstein, Beth G, MD. "Pediculosis capitis" 2017 UpToDate, Wolters Kluwer, <https://www.uptodate.com/contents/pediculosis-capitis?source=machineLearning&search=head%20lice&selectedTitle=1~36&sectionRank=2&anchor=H28#H28 > accessed August 24, 2017.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PINWORMS

DEFINITION A parasitic nematode causing infestation of the intestines and rectum. Pinworms are the most common human worm infection in the United States **and worldwide.** Pinworms are indigenous to the climate of the southern United States, usually affecting young children and their families. Adult worms are 2-13 mm long and live in the intestines. Females deposit eggs on the perianal area, primarily at night, causing intense pruritus. Scratching contaminates the fingers and allows transmission back to the host or to contacts.

ETIOLOGY The nematode, *Enterobius vermicularis.*

SUBJECTIVE **Patient may complain of the following symptoms**:

a. No symptoms
b. Nocturnal perianal pruritus is the primary symptom.
c. Restlessness and disturbed sleep are common.
d. Young females may experience genital irritation with vulvovaginitis and dysuria.
e. History of caretaker's observation of worms in anal area at night while child is sleeping.
f. Anorexia, enuresis, insomnia, and grinding teeth during sleep.

OBJECTIVE Physical examination:

a. Observation of pinworm(s) during exam.
b. May have local irritation or secondary infection of scratched skin.

ASSESSMENT Pinworms

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

NOTE: Diagnosis based on symptoms and exam findings is sufficient; diagnostic test is optional.

Laboratory identification of eggs from perianal area: Apply transparent adhesive tape to the perianal area to pick up any eggs; apply tape to a glass slide and examine under a low-power microscope. A single test will usually detect 50% of infestations, 3 tests should detect 70%, and 5 tests should detect 100%. (Obtain specimens in the early morning before patient bathes or defecates).

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

If not taking piperazine **or** theophylline, and **patient** does not have liver disease, anemia or malnutrition, the following is an option but **may have the following side-effects**: anorexia, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea.

1. Pyrantel pamoate (Pin-X, Reese's Pin Worm Medication, Pyrantel Pamoate Suspension), available as a suspension of 144 mg/mL (equivalent to pyrantel base 50 mg/mL) or a Chewable tablet 720.5 mg (equivalent to pyrantel base 250 mg).

   Dosing: 11mg**/kg** pyrantel base/kg (maximum 1 gram). Administered orally as a single dose. Dosage should be repeated after 2 weeks. Dosing chart **is** below.

Pyrantel Dosing (Give as a Single Dose) in Children 7		
Weight range lb (kg)	**Number of chewable tablets (250mg)**	**Amount of suspension (mL) (50mg/mL)**
25-37lb (11-16 kg)	**½**	**2.5**
38-62lb (17 -28kg)	**1**	**5**
63-87lb (29-39 kg)	**1½**	**7.5**
88-112lb (40-50kg)	**2**	**10**
113-137lb (51-62kg)	**2½**	**12.5**
138-162lb (63-73kg)	**3**	**15**
163-187lb (74-84kg)	**3½**	**17.5**
188lb and greater (85kg and greater)	**4**	**20**

NOTE: If patient weighs less than 25 lbs or is **younger** than 2 years old, refer to physician.

a. The chewable tablet must be chewed thoroughly before swallowing. The chewable tablet contains aspartame which is metabolized to phenylalanine and must be avoided in patients with phenylketonuria.
b. Dose may be taken with or without food. Drug may be mixed with milk or fruit juice.
c. Repeat treatment once in 14 days.
d. Treat all household members simultaneously **even if other household members are asymptomatic**, with one of the above regimens, or refer for simultaneous treatment.

7 **As created by Takieya Jones RN, CLC GA DPH Child Health Nurse Consultant**

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. **Instruct parent to contact health department or** consult **their** physician if medication side effects such as anorexia, abdominal cramps, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, headache, or dizziness persist.

2. Hygienic precaution is essential to prevent reinfection. **Emphasize the importance of** personal hygiene, particularly hand washing before eating **or preparing food** and after using the toilet/**changing diaper**; do not scratch the infected area or place fingers in mouth.

3. Daily used bed linens, towels, underclothes and clothes of symptomatic family members should be washed in hot water at time of treatment and daily until infection is cleared.

4. Upholstered furniture and carpet should be vacuumed. Other flooring should be wet mopped.

5. **Shower** immediately upon rising for several mornings after treatment. **Showering is preferred over bathing because it avoids contaminating bath water with pinworm eggs**. **Also, discourage co-bathing**.

6. Keep fingernails trimmed short.

7. Wear snug fitting underwear to deter direct contact by scratching.

8. Petroleum jelly applied at the perianal area may decrease egg dispersal.

9. Contact clinic if any problems obtaining medications.

FOLLOW-UP:

If no improvement in **1** month.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present. (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. Child under 2 years of age or weighing less than 25 pounds.

2. Pregnant or lactating.

3. Patients with any that are contraindications for treatment; **patients** who are on **medications** that adversely interact with pyrantel pamoate.

4. Patients who develop side effects from treatment.

REFERENCES

1. Committee on Infectious Diseases, American Academy of Pediatrics, Larry K. Pickering, ed., *Red Book®: 2012 Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases* - 29th ed., American Academy of Pediatrics, United States of America, 2012, < http://online.statref.com/document.aspx?fxid=76&docid=63>, accessed on March 19, 2013.

2. Lexi-Comp, Inc., "*Lexi-Comp Online*," Lexi-Comp, Inc., Hudson, Ohio, 2013<http://lexicomponline.com/crlsql/servlet/crlonline> (March 11, 2013).

3. Facts and Comparisons, *"Facts and Comparisons*,*"* Wolters Kluwer Health, Inc., 2013, <http://online.factsandcomparisons.com/index.aspx> (March 11, 2013).

4. CDC, "Parasites – Enterobiasis (also known as Pinworm Infection), January 10, 2013, < http://www.cdc.gov/parasites/pinworm/index.html> (March 8, 2011).

5. CDC, "Parasitic Disease Information," *Parasites and Health Enterobiasis,* July 20, 2009, <http://www.dpd.cdc.gov/dpdx/HTML/Enterobiasis.htm> (March 18, 2013).

6. Thomas K. McInery, et al., *American Academy of Pediatrics Textbook of Pediatric Care,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2009, pp. 2432-2433. (Current)

7. CDC. "Pinworm Prevention." https://www.cdc.gov/parasites/pinworm/prevent.html

8. **Goldstein, Adam O. MD, MPH, Goldstein, Beth G, MD. "Pediculosis capitis" 2017 UpToDate, Wolters Kluwer, <https://www.uptodate.com/contents/pediculosis-capitis?source=machineLearning&search=head%20lice&selectedTitle=1~36&sectionRank=2&anchor=H28#H28 > accessed August 24, 2017.**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR RINGWORM: NON-HAIRY SKIN (TINEA CORPORIS)

DEFINITION Superficial fungal infection involving the face, trunk or limbs.

ETIOLOGY Several different fungi. Transmitted by direct contact with an infected person, animal, or contaminated articles.

SUBJECTIVE Pruritus (common) **but patient may be** asymptomatic.

OBJECTIVE Erythematous scaling patches **to the skin on body** (usually 1-2) that are round or oval. The lesions start small, then expand outward with clearing of the eruption in the center of the patch and activity restricted to the border of the lesion, as a ring. The border of the lesion is usually raised and scaly but may include small pustules or vesicles. Appearance of lesions are sometimes altered by prior application of topical corticosteroids and can mislead the examiner. Lesions are most common on the trunk, face, and arms.

Granuloma annulare can mimic tinea corporis. The distinguishing feature of tinea is the scale which may be subtle and delicate but will always be present with untreated tinea. If **the scale** is not present and there is only one isolated lesion, refer patient to **their pediatrician to** rule out Lyme Disease (not the most common cause of Granuloma Annulare but the most serious cause).

ASSESSMENT Tinea corporis (ringworm of the skin)

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Apply a non-prescription topical anti-fungal preparation. May choose one of the following:

   a. Clotrimazole 1% (e.g., Lotrimin, available as Lotrimin AF, cream or solution). Apply to affected areas twice daily for 4 weeks.

   OR

   b. Miconazole nitrate 2% (e.g., Micatin), cream. Apply to affected areas twice daily for 4 weeks.

   OR

c. **Ketoconazole 2% cream. Apply to affected areas twice daily for 4 weeks.**

OR, if can't use **any of** the above,

d. Tolnaftate 1% (e.g., Tinactin), cream or solution. Apply to affected areas twice daily for 4 weeks.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Contacts of infected persons should perform periodic inspections for signs of infection and seek medical evaluation as needed.

2. **Avoid direct contact with known sources of infection. Infected animals need veterinary examination.**

3. **Do not share clothing. Launder and dry clothing on hottest acceptable temperatures.**

4. Advise against OTC corticosteroid topical medications, they will exacerbate lesions.

5. Keep lesions dry. Fungi thrive in moist areas.

6. Avoid tight fitting clothing and clothing that restricts air movement. Cotton clothing is preferable.

7. Children generally can return to school **after applying medication to affected area(s) for at least** 24 hours.

8. It is important to apply the topical antifungal for 4 weeks, even if the rash clears in less than 4 weeks, to prevent recurrence.

9. Return to clinic if no significant improvement in 7 to 9 days.

10. Return to clinic sooner if lesions worsen.

11. Contact clinic if any problems obtaining medication.

FOLLOW-UP

1-2 weeks if no improvement.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present. (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. Children less than 2 years of age.

2. Severe or widespread infection.

3. Secondary bacterial infection.

4. Failure to respond to treatment; may require oral therapy. Also, several skin conditions can closely mimic ringworm, these include: granuloma annulare, nummular eczema, pityriasis rosea, psoriasis, seborrheic dermatitis, tinea versicolor, erythema chronicum migrans, and early Lyme disease.

5. If there has been tick exposure, refer to **physician** immediately. Early Lyme disease is an urgent diagnosis.

6. If present on scalp (tinea capitis).

7. Pregnant or breastfeeding patient.

REFERENCES

1. Robert M. Kliegman, et al., *Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics,* 19th ed., Elsevier, Saunders, Philadelphia, PA, 2011, http://www.mdconsult.com/books/linkTo?type=book Page&isbn=978-1-4377-0755-7&eid=4-u1.0-B978-1-4377-0755-7..00658-8--s0035>, accessed on March 19, 2013.

2. Committee on Infectious Diseases, American Academy of Pediatrics, Larry K. Pickering, ed., 2012, *Red Book®: 2012 Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases* - 29th ed., American Academy of Pediatrics, United States of America, 2012, http://online.statref.com/document.aspx?fxid=76&docid=67 , accessed on March 19, 2013.

3. Rose Boynton, et al., *Manual of Ambulatory Pediatrics,* 6th ed., Wolters Kluwer Health, Philadelphia, 2009, pp. 395-396. (Current)

4. Children's Healthcare of Atlanta, et al., "Georgia School Health Resource Manual," *Georgia School Health Resource Manual*, 2013 Edition, Chapter 4, 2013, http://www.choa.org/Health-Professionals/Nurse-Resources/School-Nurses/School-Health-Consultant-2013 (March 19, 2013).

5. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, *"Dermatophytes,"* March 15, 2012, http://www.cdc.gov/fungal/dermatophytes/ (March 19, 2013).

6. **Goldstein, Adam O., MD, MPH, Goldstein, Beth G, MD. *"Dermatophyte (tinea) infections."* 2017 UpToDate, Wolters Kluwer. <**https://www.uptodate.com/contents/dermatophyte-tinea-infections?source=machineLearning&search=tinea%20corporis%20treatment&selectedTitle=1~65&sectionRank=1&anchor=H26#H26>accessed **August 24, 2017.**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR RUBRAL/HEAT RASH

DEFINITION

Heat rash ("prickly heat") is characterized by an erythematous papular rash, distributed in areas where sweat glands are concentrated. Obstruction of the eccrine sweat ducts occurs often in neonates and often produces one or two clinical pictures depending on the level of obstruction:

1. Miliaria crystallina is characterized by tiny (1-2 mm), superficial grouped vesicles, without erythema, over intertriginous areas and adjacent skin (neck, upper chest). Obstruction occurs in the statum corneum portion of the eccrine duct.

2. Miliaria rubra is more common. Obstruction of the eccrine duct deeper in the epidermis results in erythematous, grouped papules in the same area. Rarely, these may progress to pustules.

ETIOLOGY

This rash results from obstruction of the ducts of the sweat glands. The ducts become distended and break, leaking sweat into the skin, which causes the irritation. Heat and high humidity in the external environment cause sweating that leads to swelling and plugging of the sweat gland orifice.

SUBJECTIVE

Patient may:

a. Fine, red raised rash on child. Pustules under neck and armpits may be present.
b. Itching.
c. History of over-dressing.
d. History of predisposing environmental factors (e.g., hot spells in summer or house kept too warm).

OBJECTIVE

Physical examination:

Rash is erythematous and vesiculopapular. Lesions are pinhead size and may coalesce on an erythematous patch or remain isolated. The sudden appearance of red patches of small papules and/or vesicles are discrete and accompanied by red areolae.

Rash is distributed in areas of sweat gland concentration and friction: over the trunk, neck, back of head, shoulders, chest, axillae, face, antecubital and popliteal fossae, and intertriginal areas.

ASSESSMENT

Rubral/heat rash, according to lesion appearance and history (hot, humid environment).

Differentiate from:

1. Contact dermatitis (history of contact, distribution in area of contact, edematous, erythematous and vesicular lesions)

2. Viral rashes (history of elevated temperature or other systemic symptoms)

3. Candidiasis (shiny, intensely inflamed, sharply-defined border, and satellite lesions)

4. Erythema toxicum neonatorum (raised yellow or white spots surrounded by red skin, usually appears within 2 days of life and self resolves by 14 days of life)

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. In severe cases, may apply nonprescription 1% hydrocortisone cream as a thin film and rub in gently three times a day for 1-2 days.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Avoid overdressing the child. The parent should dress the child as she/he would dress self for weather conditions.

2. Avoid hot, humid conditions. Keep patient in cool and dry environment as much as possible. Use air conditioner, fan and/or dehumidifier, if possible.

3. Keep patient’s skin clean and dry.

4. Bathe patient in tepid water for cooling.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. If hydrocortisone cream used, apply sparingly.

2. Use mild or hypoallergenic soap for bathing.

3. Use mild detergents to launder clothes and avoid bleach and fabric softeners.

4. Keep patient's fingernails short.

5. Avoid dressing patient or placing patient in contact with irritating clothing (e.g., synthetic fabrics, wool, nylon, plastic liners). Light cotton clothing is preferred.

6. Avoid extended sun exposures.

7. Return for reevaluation if condition does not improve with proper management.

FOLLOW-UP

1. No follow-up needed if symptoms resolve within **2** weeks.

2. Re-evaluate if symptoms persist or worsen beyond 2 weeks.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present. (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. If there is no improvement with treatment.

2. Exacerbation of the rash.

3. Pregnant or breastfeeding patient.

REFERENCES

1. Rose W. Boynton, et al., *Manual of Ambulatory Pediatrics,* 6th ed., Wolters Kluwer Health, Philadelphia, 2009, pp. 342-343. (Current)

2. William W. Hay, et al., *Current Pediatric Diagnosis and Treatment*, 21st ed., McGraw-Hill, United States of America, 2012, <http://www.accessmedicine.com.medlib-proxy.mercer.edu/content.aspx?aID=56816195>, accessed on March 19, 2013.

3. Robert M. Kliegman, et al., *Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics,* 19th ed., Elsevier, Saunders, Philadelphia, PA, 2011, <http://www.mdconsult.com/books/linkTo?type=bookPage&isbn=978-1-4377-0755-7&eid=4-u1.0-B978-1-4377-0755-7.00639-4--s0045>, accessed on March 19, 2013.

4. Thomas K. McInery, et al., *American Academy of Pediatrics Textbook of Pediatric Care,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2009, p. 784. (Current)

5. PubMed Health, *"Erythema toxicum,"* A.D.A.M Medical Encyclopedia, August 1, 2012, <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmedhealth/PMH0002429/> (March 19, 2013).

6. **Miller, Jami, MD. *"Miliaria"* UpToDate, Wolters Kluwer. <**https://www.uptodate.com/contents/miliaria?source=machineLearning&search=heat%20rash%20children%20treatment&selectedTitle=1~61&sectionRank=1&anchor=H444596809#H444596809 **>accessed August 24, 2017.**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SCABIES

DEFINITION

Infestation with the *Sarcoptes scabiei* mite. The initial skin lesion is a burrow made by an impregnated female to lay her eggs. It appears as a fine, wavy, dark line boring from a few mm to 1 cm in length, with a minute papule at the open end. Papules or vesicles contain the mite. After several days, sensitivity to the mite results in pruritus followed by punctate excoriations from scratching and impetiginous and eczematous changes at the site of the lesion. A generalized urticarial rash may also develop.

The condition is highly contagious and is spread predominately by skin-to-skin contact and to a lesser degree by contact with contaminated clothing or linens. Transmission to household members and sexual contacts is frequent. Outbreaks in schools, day care centers and nursing homes have occurred.

ETIOLOGY

The *Sarcoptes scabiei* mite. The female is about 0.44 mm long and has 4 sets of legs. The male is about half her size. Fertilization occurs on the skin surface. The impregnated female burrows into the stratus corneum and lays 1-3 eggs daily throughout her 30-day life cycle. Mites do not survive more than 3 days away from the skin. The eggs hatch in 3-5 days and the larvae return to the skin to grow, molt and mature.

In persons without previous exposure the incubation period is approximately 4 to 6 weeks. Thus, itching and lesions may be **un**apparent during the initial infestation and these persons are asymptomatic carriers. Repeat infestations generally lead to more rapid development of symptoms within 1 to 4 days.

Pruritus is secondary to a delayed hypersensitivity reaction to mite feces and eggs, not to the physical presence of the mite itself. Once sensitized, the host reacts much more quickly with an immune response.

SUBJECTIVE

Patient has:

a. Intense itching, most severe at night.
b. Rash.
c. History of known exposure to scabies or of several family/group members having a similar itchy rash.

OBJECTIVE

Physical examination:

a. Observation of burrows and red papular vesicles or pustules, distributed according to age:

1. Infants: palms, soles, neck, face, scalp, legs and buttocks are commonly affected. Burrows are absent and vesicles, pustules, bullae and eczematous lesions are common.

2. Older children, adolescents and adults. The lesions begin in the interdigital spaces and spread to the wrist, elbows, ankles, buttocks, umibilicus, belt line, groin, genitalia, areola, female breast and axillae. The upper back, neck, face, scalp, palms and soles are usually spared.

b. Red, itchy rash, pustules and excoriation.
c. Secondary infection from scratching.

NOTE: Atypical forms of scabies do occur and can be related to such things as personal hygiene, by the presence of another skin disease or in altered immunologic response in patients suffering from malnutrition, or other neurologic or physical disorders/diseases (Norwegian scabies).

ASSESSMENT

Scabies, based on history and suspicious lesions.

With appearance varying, differential diagnosis depends on the type of lesion present. Papulovesicular lesions can appear **like:** papular urticaria, chicken pox, drug eruptions, canine scabies, viral exanthems, dermatitis herpetiform, and folliculitis.

If the lesions are eczematous, atopic dermatitis, and seborrheic dermatitis must be ruled out. Nodular scabies may be misdiagnosed as urticaria pigmentosa, histiocytosis, and insect bite granuloma.

Confirmatory diagnosis can be made microscopically.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Microscopic visualization of the mite.

   a. The suspected lesion is immobilized between the forefinger and the thumb and the top is removed with a Number 15 scalpel blade laid parallel to the skin surface, after a drop of mineral oil is placed on the skin. No anesthesia is required.
   b. The specimen is then placed on a glass slide, with a cover-slip, and examined under low power for the mite, eggs or larvae.

NOTE: A scraping is not necessary when there is an intensely pruritic rash in the typical locations that meets any of the following additional criteria:

2. History of close contact with a known case of scabies.

3. Burrows.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Permethrin 5% Cream (Elimite) single application for children 2 months **and** older.

   a. Do not bathe or shower before applying the cream.
   b. Thoroughly massage into all skin from the neck down to the soles of the feet, avoiding contact with mucous membranes, eyes and mouth. Also, include the head, scalp and neck in infants and toddlers.
   c. Remove by washing after 8-14 hours. Thirty grams or half of a 60-gram tube should be sufficient for a child**.**
   d. Wear gloves when applying.
   e. One application is generally curative; however, the treatment may be repeated once after 7 days. Demonstrable living mites after 7 days indicate that retreatment is necessary.

   Patients often experience pruritus after treatment. This is rarely a sign of treatment failure and is not an indication for retreatment.

   NOTE: Worsening of asthma has been reported.

2. Cool baths with mild soap, nonprescription hydrocortisone cream topically or diphenhydramine (e.g., Benadryl) orally for itching, which may persist for several weeks.

   a. **Topical** Hydrocortisone cream:

      Children greater than 2 years **of age**: Apply **hydrocortisone cream** to affected area**(s)** 2-4 times/day. Apply cream as a thin film and rub in gently. Avoid contact with eyes.

   b. Diphenhydramine

Children 2 years-**5** years of age: Diphenhydramine hydrochloride elixir 12.5 mg/5 mL. May give 6.25 mg every 4 to 6 hours as needed **for itching**; do not exceed 37.5 mg/day.

Children 6-**11** years **of age**: 12.5mg every 4 to 6 hours as needed **for itching.** Maximum: 150mg/day.

Children 12 years and older: 25-50mg every 4 to 6 hours **as needed for itching.** Maximum: **300**mg/day.

NOTE: Dosing should be based on severity of symptoms. Do not use topical diphenhydramine. **Contact physician before administering diphenhydramine to a child under 2 years of age.**

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Keep fingernails clean and well-trimmed.

2. **While receiving pharmacologic** treatment, launder all bedding, towels, wash cloths and clothing that have been in contact with the patient for the **previous** 4 **days** prior to treatment. Laundering should be done in hot water and drying in the hot cycle of the clothes dryer. If washing/drying is not possible, store the items (including shoes) in a plastic bag for 3 days to one week to avoid re-infestation.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Encourage to wash hands often, clean under fingernails, wear clean clothes daily and not to exchange clothes with others.

2. Elimite may temporarily increase itching, edema and redness. Mild and transient stinging and/or burning of the skin may also occur. These reactions are associated with the severity of the infestation.

3. The rash and pruritus of scabies may persist for up to 2 weeks after treatment.

4. Children should be allowed to return to school or child-care 24 hours after treatment has been completed.

5. Disinfecting the environment is unnecessary and unwarranted.

6. All close personal and household contacts within the preceding month need examination and prophylactic treatment at the same time as the **patient.** Manifestations of scabies infestation may not appear for as long as 2 months after exposure, during which time they can be transmitted.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Re-examine in one week. May re-treat once if no improvement, though single application of permethrin 5% cream is usually curative.

2. A patient symptomatic longer than 4 weeks after treatment should be re-evaluated for possible re-exposure.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present. (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. Severe/widespread infection, or secondary bacterial infection.

2. Infection of the scalp (usually infants).

3. Less than 2 months of age.

4. Pregnant or lactating.

5. Failure to respond to 2 rounds of permethrin treatment.

6. Immunocompromised patient.

7. Refer close personal contacts of index case for examination and prophylactic treatment at the same time as the index case.

8. Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for reporting possible sexual or physical abuse of children if encountered through history or physical. All suspected sexual or physical abuse of children must be reported to the county Department of Family and Children Services (DFCS) office per

guidelines for *Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel*. For patients with suspected sexual related transmission, refer to Sexually Transmitted Disease Standard Nurse Protocol for Scabies.

REFERENCES

1. Thomas K. McInerny, et al., *American Academy of Pediatrics Textbook of Pediatric Care,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2009, pp. 2182-2183. (Current)

2. Robert M. Kliegman, et al., *Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics,* 19th ed., Elsevier, Saunders, Philadelphia, PA, 2011, <http://www.mdconsult.com/books/page.do?eid=4-u1.0-B978-1-4377-0755-..00660-6--sc0015&isbn=978-1-4377-0755-7&uniqId=405758945-5#4-u1.0-B978-1-4377-0755-7..00660-6--sc0015>, accessed on March 18, 2013.

3. Committee on Infectious Diseases, American Academy of Pediatrics, Larry K. Pickering, ed., *Red Book®: 2012 Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases* - 29th ed., American Academy of Pediatrics, United States of America, 2012, <http://online.statref.com/document.aspx?fxid=76&docid=66>, accessed on March 18, 2013.

4. Children's Healthcare of Atlanta, et al., *Georgia School Health Resource Manual*, 2013 Edition, Chapter 4, 2013, <http://www.choa.org/Health-Professionals/Nurse-Resources/School-Nurses/School-Health-Consultant-2013> (March 18, 2013).

5. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, *Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2010,* Vol. 59, No. RR-12, December 17, 2010, pp. 89-90. (Current)

6. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, *"Parasites-Scabies,"* November 2, 2010, <http://www.cdc.gov/parasites/scabies/> (March 19, 2013).

7. **LexiComp Online, Wolters Kluwer.** http://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/pdh_f/129731 **accessed August 24, 2017.**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR TEETHING

DEFINITION Inflammation of the gum tissue caused by eruption of primary teeth.

ETIOLOGY In general, an infant's first tooth erupts at 6 months and one each month thereafter until all 20 have erupted. However, this is highly variable from child to child. One child might begin teething as early as 3 months, while another would not begin until age 12 months. The central lower incisors are usually the first to erupt.

SUBJECTIVE **Symptoms:**

a. The infant may be irritable and fretful.
b. The infant may have decreased appetite.
c. The infant may suck his fist, fingers or other objects, more than usual.
d. Some parents report increased drooling.

OBJECTIVE Physical examination:

a. Erupting teeth are sometimes preceded by a bluish discoloration of the proximal gum, a benign process.
b. Gums proximal to erupting tooth may be swollen.
c. Erupting tooth felt with finger or seen.
d. Teething associated with diarrhea, fever, and other illness is likely coincidental and further examination is warranted.

ASSESSMENT Teething

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Systemic analgesia (acetaminophen or ibuprofen) in appropriate doses **as listed in tables below**. Ibuprofen preferred for teething if infant is older than 6 months, due to anti-inflammatory effect. Do not give acetaminophen and ibuprofen in an alternating fashion.

   a. Ibuprofen children's solutions for children ages 6 months and older **due to risk of harmful effects on kidneys. 5 to 10 mg/kg/dose. Dose may be repeated every 6 to 8 hours, not more than 4 doses in 24 hours.**

   NOTE: Treatment for greater than **3** days is not recommended. No more than 4 doses in 24 hours. **Use the lowest effective dose for the shortest period of time to reduce risk of adverse**

cardiovascular and GI effects. Infant drops, use only the dropper provided.

Ibuprofen dosage

Child's weight		Infant's drops	Liquid (suspension*)	Chewable tabs	Junior chewable tabs
Lbs	Kg	50 mg per 1.25 mL	100 mg per 5 mL	50 mg	100 mg
18-23	8.1-10.4	1.875 mL	Do not use	Do not use	Do not use
24-35	10.9-15.9	2.5 mL	5 mL	2 tablets	Do not use
36-47	16.3-21.3	Do not use	7.5 mL	3 tablets	1½ tablets
48-59	21.8-26.8	Do not use	10 mL	4 tablets	2 tablets
60-71	27.2-32.3	Do not use	12.5 mL	5 tablets	2½ tablets
72-95	32.7-43.1	Do not use	15 mL	6 tablets	3 tablets

*You may see the word suspension on your child's medicine bottle. Suspension means the medicine is loose in the liquid. This type of medicine needs to be shaken well before it is given to your child.

*Lbs = pounds; kg=kilograms; mg=milligrams; mL=milliliters

b. Acetaminophen children's liquid suspension 160mg/5mL dosage as listed in table below.

NOTE: Healthcare Professionals should be aware that acetaminophen infant drops products with both the new and old concentrations may be available on pharmacy shelves and in the clinic medication room. Either product may be continued to be used, but the concentration must be verified and used according to labeled dosing directions. Healthcare professionals should verify product concentration prior to providing dosing information.

Dose is 10 to 15 mg/kg/dose every 4 to 6 hours as needed. Do not give more than 5 does in 24 hours. Use of weight to select dose is preferred.

Acetaminophen dosage

Child's weight		Liquid (suspension*)	Meltaways	Junior meltaways
Lbs	Kg	160 mg per 5 mL	80 mg tablet	160 mg tablet
12-17	5.4-7.7	2.5 mL	Do not use	Do not use
18-23	8.1-10.4	3.75 mL	Do not use	Do not use
24-35	10.9-15.9	5 mL	2 tablets	1 tablet
36-47	16.3-21.3	7.5 mL	3 tablets	1½ tablets
48-59	21.8-26.8	10 mL	4 tablets	2 tablets
60-71	27.2-32.3	12.5 mL	5 tablets	2½ tablets
72-95	32.7-43.1	15 mL	6 tablets	3 tablets

*You may see the word suspension on your child's medicine bottle. Suspension means the medicine is loose in the liquid. This type of medicine needs to be shaken well before it is given to your child.

*Lbs = pounds; kg=kilograms; mg=milligrams; mL=milliliters

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Be patient and soothe the infant.

2. Offer infant chilled teething rings of hard rubber or plastic, or a clean, cold, wet washcloth for chewing on.

FOLLOW-UP

As needed.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Counsel parent about the above therapeutic measures.

2. Be sure that the infant/child does not chew on things that would break or splinter in the mouth.

3. Teach parent to read labels and **be aware of** other sources of acetaminophen that are often in over the counter medications **to avoid** toxicity/**overdose.**

4. Teach parent not to give acetaminophen and ibuprofen in alternating fashion to control pain/discomfort.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present. (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. Child under 3 months old.

2. Eruption cysts or hematomas.

REFERENCES

1. William W. Hay et al, *Current Pediatric Diagnosis and Treatment,* 21st ed., McGraw-Hill, United States of America, 2012, <http://www.accessmedicine.com.medlib-proxy.mercer.edu/content.aspx?aID=56817793>, accessed on March 20, 2012.

2. Carol D. Berkowitz, *Pediatrics: A Primary Care Approach,* 3rd ed., W.B. Saunders, United States of America, 2008, p. 82. (Current)

3. Robert Kliegman, et al., *Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics,* 19th ed., Elsevier Saunders, Philadelphia, PA, 2011, <http://www.mdconsult.com/books/linkTo?type=bookPage&isbn=978-1-4377-0755-7&eid=4-u1.0-B978-1-4377-0755-7..00710-7>, accessed on March 20, 2013.

4. Rose W. Boynton, et al., *Manual of Ambulatory Pediatrics,* 6th ed., Wolter Kluwer, Philadelphia, 2009, pp. 59, 62, 65 and 71. (Current)

5. Michael Macknin, et al., "Symptoms Associated with Infant Teething: A Prospective Study," *Pediatrics,* Vol. 105, No. 4, April 2000, pp. 747-752. (Current)

6. Sheri M. Carson, "Alternating Acetaminophen and Ibuprofen in the Febrile Child: Examination of the Evidence Regarding Efficacy and Safety," *Pediatric Nursing*, Vol. 29, No. 5, September 2003, pp. 379-382. (Current)

7. **Lexicomp Online. Wolters Kluwer, <**http://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/7066a>accessed **August 24, 2017.**

8. **Lexicomp Online. Wolters Kluwer,** http://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/6264#f_dosages> accessed **August 24, 2017.**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR THRUSH (ORAL CANDIDIASIS)

DEFINITION Superficial fungal infection of the mouth, frequently occurring in healthy newborns and young infants. Uncommon in children 12 months and older, except those receiving antibiotic therapy or with other underlying conditions and/or immune suppression.

ETIOLOGY The causative organism is usually *Candida albicans*, which is acquired from the following sources:

a. In newborns and infants, from infected mother's vagina during birth and/or from infected mother's breast via breastfeeding.
b. By contamination of caretaker's hands or objects shared by infected infants.
c. Adult with vulvovaginal candidiasis, through contamination of her hands. (See **Women's Health** protocol for vulvovaginal candidiasis).
d. Infants/children with candidal diaper dermatitis, through contamination of hands.

SUBJECTIVE Symptoms:

a. Creamy white patches in the mouth, may be curd-like in nature.
b. **May have** pain during feeding and **difficulty** swallowing.
c. May have history of recent steroid, antibiotic or chemotherapy treatment.
d. Mother may have history of or concurrent candida infection of vaginal area and/or breasts.

OBJECTIVE Physical examination:

a. White filmy coating or patches covering all or part of the tongue, gingiva, buccal mucosa and, occasionally, the lips, that does not remove easily with scraping. Distinguish from milk curds left on the tongue after feeding, which are easily removed. If patches are removed they leave a painful, red bleeding lesion.
b. The patient may have candidal diaper dermatitis that needs treatment. (See Diaper Dermatitis protocol).
c. May have an inadequate oral intake because of mouth pain. **Assess** for dehydration, **which is uncommon (assess intake, urine output and weight loss**).

ASSESSMENT Oral Candidiasis (Thrush)

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

Optional: Potassium hydroxide preparation of scrapings of lesions to detect budding yeast with or without hyphae. This study is usually not needed; **diagnosis can be made based on examination and signs/symptoms listed above**.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Nystatin (Mycostatin) oral suspension 100,000 units/mL.

   For infants greater than 28 days old: Nystatin (Mycostatin) dosage is 200,000 units (2 mL) divided as 1mL in each side of the mouth 4 times a day for up to 14 days. Continue treatment for at least **3 days** after perioral symptoms disappear.

   For infants ages 0-28 days old Nystatin (Mycostatin) dosage is 100,000 units (1mL) divided as ½ mL in each side of the mouth 4 times a day. Continue treatment at least **3 days** after perioral symptoms disappear.

   The suspension should be retained in the mouth as long as possible. One way to accomplish this is to apply a portion of the dose to two Q-tips and gently massage these Q-tips against the plaques. Avoid feeding for 5-10 minutes after the dose.

2. **Gentian Violet 1% (if failure to respond to Nystatin)**

   Infants younger than 1 month of age use 0.5mL Gentian Violet 1% each side of mouth. Apply once a day, after feedings, for a period of 4-7 days.

   Infants 1 month of age and older use 1mL Gentian Violet 1% each side of mouth. Apply once a day, after feedings, for a period of 4-7 days.

   Use a cotton-tipped Q-tip to apply the solution in the baby's mouth (swab inside baby`s cheeks, gums, tongue, roof of the mouth and under the tongue) so that all areas are covered violet. Make sure you use a fresh Q-tip with every application.

OR

The nursing mother can paint both nipples and areola with a Q-tip of gentian violet once a day. Then, let the infant nurse afterwards. The infant's inner mouth will also turn violet.

NOTE: Nursing mother does not have to apply Gentian violet in the baby`s mouth AND on her breasts, one of the above is sufficient.

NOTE: Inform mother that Gentian violet is safe for breastfeeding mothers and babies. However, in rare cases, it can cause some irritation in infant's mouth. Discontinue the treatment immediately if irritation suspected. Also, be careful as Gentian violet can stain infant's lips and clothes.

3. Refer nursing mothers for simultaneous treatment **of** Nystatin (similar to Mycostatin) ointment applied to nipple and areola areas after each feeding

OR

Nystatin oral suspension 100,000 units/mL; swab 1 mL on each nipple **of breasts 4** times daily after feeding, for 2 weeks.

Avoid **nursing** for 5-10 minutes after application, if possible.

4. If diaper rash is present, treat **per** Nurse Protocol for Diaper Dermatitis due to candidiasis.

FOLLOW-UP

In **2** weeks if no improvement or sooner if worsens.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Continue **Nystatin** treatment for **2** weeks, even if mouth appears to have cleared **prior to** the **14th** day.

2. Properly treated, thrush should not be a cause for weaning from the breast.

3. Breast-fed infants and their mothers are to be treated simultaneously.

4. **Do not continue Gentian Violet beyond 7 days. If mother suspects thrush is not resolved after 7 days of treatment, contact clinic.**

5. Household members and caretakers should practice good handwashing, especially when caring for infant.

6. Rubber/plastic nipples and pacifiers should be boiled for 10 minutes or replaced after beginning treatment. Do not allow infants to share pacifiers or nipples.

7. Seek prompt medical evaluation if infant refuses liquids.

8. Contact clinic if any problems obtaining medications.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present. (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. Failure to respond after two weeks of **Nystatin** therapy **or 1 week of Gentian Violet therapy**.

2. Weight loss or suspected dehydration.

3. Recurrent or resistant breast infections.

4. Persons with recurrent infections are to be evaluated for HIV infection.

5. Children 12 months old or **older** with symptoms of thrush.

REFERENCES

1. Robert M. Kliegman, et al., *Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics,* 19th ed., Elsevier, Saunders, Philadelphia, PA, 2011, <http://www.mdconsult.com/books/linkTo?type=bookPage&isbn=978-1-4377-0755-7&eid=4-u1.0-B978-1-4377-0755-7..00226-8--s0040>, accessed on March 20, 2013.

2. Carol D. Berkowitz, *Pediatrics: A Primary Care Approach*, 3rd ed., W.B. Saunders, USA, 2008, pp. 331 and 664. (Current)

3. Thomas K. McInery, et al., *American Academy of Pediatrics Textbook of Pediatric Care,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2009, pp. 123-124, 818-819 and 1696. (Current)

4. Rose W. Boynton, et al., *Manual of Ambulatory Pediatrics,* 6th ed., Wolters Kluwer, Philadelphia, 2009. pp. 34, 253, 391-393. (Current)

5. American Academy of Pediatrics, *Red Book Atlas of Pediatric Infectious Diseases,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2007, pp. 37-38. (Current)

6. William W. Hay et al, *Current Pediatric Diagnosis and Treatment,* 21st ed., McGraw-Hill, United States of America, 2012, <http://www.accessmedicine.com.medlib-proxy.mercer.edu/content.aspx?aID=56817793>, accessed on March 20, 2012.

7. Micromedex Healthcare Series, Thomson Reuters (Healthcare), Inc., 2013, <http://www,thomsonhc.com> (accessed May 13, 2013).

8. **Lexicomp Online. Wolters Kluwer 2017.** http://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/1799543 **accessed August 24, 2017.**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR TINEA PEDIS

DEFINITION Dermatophyte infections of the skin of the feet and toes.

ETIOLOGY *Trichophyton rubrum* is the most common pathogen.
Trichophyton mentagrophytes causes more inflammatory lesions.

The fungus is transmitted by direct contact with contaminated surfaces in moist areas such as swimming pools, community showers or baths and locker rooms. Tinea pedis occurs most frequently in adolescents and adults. Risk factors include sweaty feet and occlusive footwear.

SUBJECTIVE Patient may be/have:

a. Asymptomatic.
b. Mild itching.
c. Burning, stinging, and other sensations.

OBJECTIVE Physical examination:

a. On the sole and heel: usually non-inflammatory scaling, occasionally with thickening and cracking of the skin. May have groups of vesicles or exfoliation of the skin. Foul odor is common.
b. Between the toes: scaling or fissuring, fine vesicles or pustules, maceration.
c. Potassium hydroxide (KOH) skin-scraping: hyphae demonstrated

ASSESSMENT Tinea pedis

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

Order 1 of the following products. Continue treatment for 1-2 weeks after clinically cleared. Apply to normal skin 2 cm beyond affected area.

1. Over-the-counter products, applied twice daily in a thin layer for 4 weeks to the affected **area(s)**:

   a. Miconazole (e.g., Micatin) 2% cream

   OR

   b. Clotrimazole (e.g., Lotrimin) 1% solution, cream or lotion

OR

c. Tolnaftate 1% (e.g., Tinactin),

OR

d. Terbinafine (Lamisil) 1% Cream. Must be 12 years of age or older. Apply once **or twice** daily for 1 week.

OR

2. Prescription products

   a. Ketoconazole 2% cream (e.g., Nizoral). Apply once daily for 6 weeks.

OR

   b. Econazole 1% cream. Apply once daily for 4 weeks.

   c. Burrow's solution may be used as a foot soak, 20-30 minutes twice daily, for lesions between the toes to relieve itching or discomfort.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Wear rubber or wooden sandals in community showers and locker rooms.

2. Carefully dry between the toes after bathing/showering. Dry the groin area before drying feet to avoid inoculating tinea pedis dermatophytes into the groin area. A hair dryer on low setting may be used after toweling dry.

3. Change socks frequently. Avoid occlusive footwear. Remove shoes and socks, when possible, to allow air circulation for feet and toes.

4. Apply dusting or drying powders as necessary. Using antifungal powders may prevent recurrence of infection.

5. Completion of therapy is important. Use the medication for the full treatment time even though the symptoms may have improved.

6. Avoid spreading the infection to others. Good hand-washing, thorough cleaning of bathrooms and avoidance of sharing bath towels and wash clothes may inhibit transmission.

7. Medications are for external use only.

8. Keep out of reach of children. If swallowed, get medical help or contact a poison control center right away.

9. Contact clinic if any problems obtaining medications.

FOLLOW-UP

Recheck in **2** weeks if not improved.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present. (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. No improvement after **2** weeks of treatment.

2. Severe infection or secondary bacterial infection.

3. Extension of the disease to the nails.

4. Pregnant or breastfeeding patient.

5. Under 2 years of age.

REFERENCES

1. Klaus Wolff and Richard Allen Johnson, *Fitzpatrick's Color Atlas and Synopsis of Clinical Dermatology,* 6th ed., McGraw-Hill, United States of America, 2009, <http://www.accessmedicine.com.medlib-proxy.mercer.edu/resourceTOC.aspx?resourceID=45> accessed on March 21, 2013. (Current)

2. Committee on Infectious Diseases, American Academy of Pediatrics, Larry K. Pickering, ed., *Red Book®: 2012 Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases,* 29th ed., American Academy of Pediatrics, United States of America, 2012, < http://online.statref.com/document.aspx?fxid=76&docid=67>, accessed on March 21, 2013.

3. American Academy of Pediatrics, *Red Book Atlas of Pediatric Infectious Diseases,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2007, pp. 308-309. (Current)

4. Rose W. Boynton, et al., *Manual of Ambulatory Pediatrics,* 6th ed., Wolter Kluwer, Philadelphia, 2009, pp. 399-401. (Current)

5. Robert M. Kliegman, et al., *Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics,* 19th ed., Elsevier, Saunders, Philadelphia, PA, 2011, <http://www.mdconsult.com/books/linkTo?type=bookPage&isbn=978-1-4377-0755-7&eid=4-u1.0-B978-1-4377-0755-7.00658-8--s0035>, accessed on March 19, 2013.

6. Sarah Long, *Principles and Practice of Pediatric Infectious Disease*, 4th ed., Elsevier, China, 2012, <http://www.mdconsult.com/books/linkTo?type=bookPage&isbn=978-1-4377-2702-9&eid=4-u1.0-B978-1-4377-2702-9..00256-7--s0055>, accessed on March 19, 2013.

7. **Goldstein, Adam O, MD, MPH, Goldstein, Beth G, MD. *"Dermatophyte (tinea)infections"* UpToDate 2017. Wolters Kluwer.** https://www.uptodate.com/contents/dermatophyte-tinea-infections?source=machineLearning&search=tinea%20pedis%20treatment&selectedTitle=1~97&sectionRank=1&anchor=H300483#H300483>accessed **August 24, 2017.**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR UPPER RESPIRATORY INFECTION (COMMON COLD)

DEFINITION An acute infection of the upper respiratory tract involving the nose, pharynx, sometimes the paranasal sinuses and, perhaps, the middle ears. It lasts several days. Since the activity of the viruses in the upper respiratory tract can impair local defense mechanisms, invasion by bacteria may occur and cause infections of the ears and sinuses.

ETIOLOGY Numerous viruses. In the U.S., peak incidences in children occur in early fall (when schools open), midwinter and early spring. Colds occur most commonly during the second and third years of life, and the average child has from three to eight infections per year. Malnutrition seems to increase susceptibility to colds.

SUBJECTIVE Patient may complain of:

a. General malaise.
b. Nasal stuffiness, nasal discharge, sneezing, cough.
c. Mild sore throat.
d. Watery eyes.
e. Decreased appetite, particularly in infants.

OBJECTIVE Physical examination:

a. Low-grade fever (less than 101°Fahrenheit or less than 38.5° Celsius) occurs more commonly in children under 3 years old and lasts from a few hours to a few days. Older children usually have no fever. If they have a fever, evaluate for other causes, such as strep throat, otitis media, or pneumonia.
b. Erythematous, edematous nasal mucosa, with clear, thick nasal discharge initially. The discharge may become mucoid or purulent as the illness resolves.
c. Mildly erythematous pharynx.
d. Mild conjunctivitis.
e. Erythematous tympanic membranes in infants. (Rule out otitis media).

ASSESSMENT Common cold/upper respiratory infection (URI)

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Infants use saline nose drops if needed for congestion: **1-2** drops in each nostril, followed by gentle aspiration of nasal secretions with rubber suction bulb, particularly before feeding. Caution: may aggravate nasal congestion if nasal mucosa is injured. (Available products: Ayr Baby Saline; Ayr Saline Drops; NaSal Saline Drops; Simply Saline Baby)

2. Children use saline nose drops **for congestion: 2-6** drops in each nostril every 2 hours if needed for sinus congestion. (Available products: Ayr Baby Saline; Ayr Saline Drops; NaSal Saline Drops; Simply Saline Baby).

3. **Children 12 years of age and older: Ipratropium 0.06% solution nasal spray. 2 sprays in each nostril 3 or 4 times daily.**

4. Acetaminophen or Ibuprofen orally - Pediatric (See dosage chart with Nurse Protocol for Fever) if fever is associated with discomfort or decreased fluid intake. Do not use aspirin.

5. Treatment of cough is discouraged because cough is a protective mechanism that helps clear the lung of infectious particles.

   NOTE: The American Academy of Pediatrics position is that over the-counter cough and cold medicines do not work for children younger than 6 years and in some cases, may pose a health risk.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Increase oral fluid intake.

2. **Cool mist humidifiers may be used.**

3. Avoid environmental respiratory irritants (e.g., cigarette smoke in the home).

4. Elevate head of bed slightly, **for infants older than 6 months of age. Elevating head of bed is discouraged for infants younger than 6 months of age due to risk of SIDS**.

5. Nasal dilator strips are adhesive bands placed on the nose that dilate nasal air passages thus relieving nasal congestion. Over the counter strips (e.g., Breathe-Right® Strips) are FDA-approved

for use in children 5 years and older. **Do not use if allergic to latex.**

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Rest and increased fluid intake.

2. Seek prompt medical evaluation if chest pain, dyspnea, signs of dehydration, wheezing, moist frequent cough, persistent abdominal pain or vomiting, persistent lethargy, agitation, behavioral changes, or confusion occur.

3. Seek prompt medical evaluation for child less than 3 months of age with temperature elevation.

4. Stress importance of good hand washing technique and proper disposal of tissues.

5. Caution parent not to use OTC cough and cold medications, including Zicam and Vicks VapoRub® without consulting physician. **If 12 years of age or older, may use OTC decongestant if necessary.**

6. Do not give cough drops to young children. They are a choking hazard.

7. Breathe-Right strips may also present a choking hazard.

FOLLOW-UP

1. No follow-up needed if symptoms resolve within one week.

2. Reevaluate if: symptoms persist beyond 7-10 days, deterioration with return of fever, **or worsening coughing** after apparent improvement after 4-6 days of illness (suspect pneumonia).

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present. (When a patient is REFERRED to the

primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. Any infant or child with suspected secondary infection (e.g., pneumonia, sinusitis) or URI symptoms persisting longer than 2 weeks.

2. Persistent lethargy or irritability for **longer than** 2 hours despite adequate treatment of fever.

3. Any infant/child:

    a. under 3 months of age with a temperature elevation.
    b. 3 to 6 months of age with temperature over 102.2°F.
    c. 6 to 24 months of age with temperature over 102°F and less than 2 pneumococcal immunizations.

4. Pregnant or breastfeeding client.

REFERENCES

1. Robert M. Kliegman, et al., *Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics,* 19th ed., Elsevier Saunders, Philadelphia, PA, 2011, <http://www.mdconsult.com/books/linkTo?type=bookPage&isbn=978-1-4377-0755-7&eid=4-u1.0-B978-1-4377-0755-7.00371-7>, accessed on March 22, 2013.

2. Thomas K. McInerny, et al., *American Academy of Pediatrics Textbook of Pediatric Care,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2009, pp. 1934-1936. (Current)

3. Children's Healthcare of Atlanta, Inc., "The Common Cold," December 2009, < http://www.choa.org/child-health-glossary/c/co/common-cold_kh_parent> (March 23, 2013).

4. U.S. Pharmacist, "Recommendations for the Use of OTC Cough and Cold Medications in Children." March 2009, <http://www.uspharmacist.com/content/d/feature/i/692/c/12698/> (March 23, 2013).

5. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, "Cough and Cold Medicines: Information for Parents," September 2009, <http://www.cdc.gov/features/pediatriccoldmeds/> (March 23, 2013). (Current)

6. FDA, "Public Health Advisory: FDA Recommends that Over-the-Counter (OTC) Cough and Cold Products not be used for Infants and Children under 2 Years of Age," February 2011, <http://www.fda.gov/drugs/drugsafety/postmarketdrugsafetyinformationforpatientsandproviders/drugsafetyinformationforheathcareprofessionals/publichealthadvisories/ucm051137.htm> (March 23, 2013).

7. Juan Carlos Abanses, et al., "Vicks VapoRub Induces Mucin Secretion, Decreases Ciliary Beat Frequency, and Increases Tracheal Mucus Transport in the Ferret Trachea," *Chest,* Vol. 135, January 2009, pp. 143-148. (Current)

8. Ian M. Paul, et al., "Vapor Rub, Petrolatum, and No Treatment for Children with Nocturnal Cough and Cold Symptoms," *Pediatrics,* Vol. 126, No. 6 December 2010, pp. 1092 -1099.

9. FDA, "FDA Statement Following CPHA's Announcement on Nonprescription Over-the-Counter Cough and Cold Medicines in Children," *FDA Statement*, October 2008, <http://www.fda.gov/newsEvents/Newsroom/PressAnnouncements/2008/ucm116964.htm> (March 23, 2013).

10. American Academy of Pediatrics "Withdrawal of Cold Medicines: Addressing Parent Concerns," <http://www.aap.org/en-us/professional-resources/practice-

support/pages/Withdrawal-of-Cold-Medicines-Addressing-Parent-Concerns.aspx?nfstatus=401&nftoken=00000000-0000-0000-0000-000000000000&nfstatusdescription=ERROR%3a+No+local+token> (March 23, 2013).

11. GlaxoSmithKline, "Breathe Right FAQs," 2013, <http://www.breatheright.com/faqs> (March 23, 2013).

12. FDA, "Warnings on Three Zicam Intranasal Zinc Products," June 16, 2009, <http://www.fda.gov/ForConsumers/ConsumerUpdates/ucm166931.htm> (March 24, 2013). (Current)

13. **Pappas, Diane E. *"The common cold in children: Management and prevention."* 2017 UpToDate, Wolters Kluwer.** https://www.uptodate.com/contents/the-common-cold-in-children-management-and-prevention?source=machineLearning&search=common%20cold%20children&selectedTitle=1~150&sectionRank=2&anchor=H199067770#H199067770>accessed **August 24, 2017.**

14. **Lexicomp Online. Wolters Kluwer.** https://www.uptodate.com/contents/ipratropium-nasal-pediatric-drug-information?source=preview&anchor=F10501618#F10501618>accessed **August 24, 2017.**

DIABETES MELLITUS IN ADULTS

Funding Source for Development of this Nurse Protocol: CDC Cooperative Agreement DP13-1305 State Public Health Actions.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

DIABETES MELLITUS IN ADULTS NURSE PROTOCOLS

Review Team:

Shana M. Scott JD, MPH Health System Lead Chronic Disease Prevention Section GA Department of Public Health	**Stephen Goggans MD, MPH** District Health Director East Central Health District Medical Consultant
Angela Y. Bradford, RD, CSR, LD Program Specialist / Nutrition Education Georgia WIC Program Georgia Department of Public Health	**Allison Smith, MPH, CHES** Healthcare Program Consultant 3 Chronic Disease Prevention Section Georgia Department of Public Health
William R. Grow, MD, FACP District Health Director South Health District Medical Consultant	**Tonia Parrott, Ph.D, MT (ASCP)** Clinical Microbiology Services Director Georgia Public Health Laboratory Georgia Department of Public Health
Tammy Burdeaux, RN, BSN, CRNI District Nursing and Clinical Coordinator East Central Health District	**Kelly Knight, RN, APRN** District Nursing Director South Central Health District
Kimberley Hazelwood, Pharm D Director of Pharmacy Georgia Department of Public Health	**Jean O'Connor, JD, DrPH, FACHE** Chronic Disease Prevention Director Georgia Department of Public Health
Donelle Franklin RPh, MBA Assistant Director of Pharmacy Georgia Department of Public Health	**Karishma Patel** Pharmacy Candidate 2018 PCOM School of Pharmacy

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR DIABETES MELLITUS IN ADULTS

DEFINITION

Diabetes mellitus is a group of metabolic diseases characterized by hyperglycemia resulting from defects in insulin secretion, insulin action or both. Diabetes is characterized by fasting plasma glucose (FPG) equal to or greater than126 mg/dL or random plasma glucose equal to or greater than 200 mg/dL (with testing on two separate days) accompanied by symptoms. Symptoms of diabetes mellitus are frequently due to the osmotic diuresis associated with hyperglycemia. Complications of diabetes may be acute and/or chronic. Acute complications include: hyperglycemia, hypoglycemia, diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) and hyperosmolar hyperglycemic syndrome (HHS). The chronic complications of diabetes are most often the result of sustained hyperglycemia and include damage, dysfunction and failure of various organs, such as eyes, kidneys, nerves, heart and vascular system.

ETIOLOGY

Type 1 Diabetes Mellitus

1. Cause: inadequate or absolute lack of insulin production secondary to destruction of the pancreatic Beta cells. Individuals are dependent on exogenous insulin for survival. Type 1 comprises less than 10% of all cases of diabetes.

2. Contributing factors:
    a. Autoimmune mediated response.
    b. Idiopathic (No evidence of autoimmunity is present).

Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus

1. Cause: combination of insulin resistance and/or inadequate insulin production. Increased hepatic glucose production contributes to elevated fasting blood glucose levels. Insulin resistance in the liver and muscle and impaired insulin secretion also contribute to hyperglycemia.

2. Risk factors:
    a. Overweight - BMI equal to or greater than 25 kg/m^2 and BMI equal to or greater than 23 kg/m^2 for Asian Americans.
    b. Waist circumference greater than 102cm (40 inches) for men and greater than 88cm (35 inches) for women.

c. Sedentary lifestyle, such as sitting for more than 90 minutes at a time or little to no moderate to vigorous activity in the past 30 days.

d. Age equal to or greater than 45 years old.
e. First degree relative with diabetes.
f. Race – African-American, Latino, Native American, Asian and Pacific Islander at greater risk.
g. History of large birth-weight babies – greater than 9 pounds or history of diagnosed with gestational diabetes.
h. History of A1C equal to or greater than 5.7%, impaired glucose tolerance - 2 hour plasma glucose in 75g, Oral Glucose Tolerance Test of 140 mg/dL to 199 mg/dL or fasting plasma glucose of 100 mg/dL to125 mg/dL.
i. Hypertensive -blood pressure equal to or greater than 140/90 mmHg or on therapy for hypertension.
j. HDL cholesterol level less than 35mg/dL and/or triglyceride level greater than 250mg/dL.
k. Women with polycystic ovary syndrome.
l. Clinical conditions associated with insulin resistance, such as severe obesity and acanthosis nigricans.
m. History of cardiovascular disease.

Prediabetes

1. Patient's blood glucose levels do not meet criteria for diagnosis of diabetes but blood glucose levels are higher than what is considered normal glucose levels.

2. Patients who should be screened are those at any age who are overweight or obese (BMI equal to or greater than 25 kg/m² or equal to or greater than 23 kg/m² in Asian Americans) or present with the same risk factors for Type 2 diabetes as listed in the preceding section.

3. Patients are asymptomatic but at high risk for developing cardiovascular disease and diabetes.

4. A1C is 5.7-6.4%

5. Impaired fasting glucose is 100-125 mg/dL.

6. Plasma glucose at 2 hour oral glucose tolerance test (75-gram) between 140-199 mg/dL is considered Impaired Glucose Tolerance (IGT).

7. Impaired fasting glucose and IGT are not clinical entities but are risk factors for diabetes and cardiovascular disease and are associated with obesity, especially abdominal or visceral obesity, dyslipidemia, high triglyceride levels and/or low-density lipoprotein cholesterol, and hypertension.

Gestational Diabetes (GDM)

1. Patients who are pregnant, planning to become pregnant, or breast-feeding must be referred to an obstetrician for management of diabetes.
2. In the past, Gestational Diabetes was defined as any degree of glucose intolerance that was first recognized during pregnancy. It did not matter if the condition may have predated the pregnancy or persisted after the pregnancy. If it persisted post-pregnancy, it was re-classified according to the diagnostic criteria.
3. The epidemic of obesity and more type 2 diabetes in women of child-bearing age has resulted in an increase number of pregnant women with undiagnosed type 2 diabetes.
4. It is now recommended that women with risk factors for Type 2 diabetes be tested on the initial prenatal visit using standard diagnostic criteria.
5. Women with diabetes in the first trimester are classified as having type 2 diabetes. GDM remains as diabetes diagnosed during the second or third trimester when it is clear that it is not overt diabetes.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient history may or may not reveal the following:
   a. Symptoms of hyperglycemia-polyuria, polydipsia, polyphagia, blurry vision, extreme fatigue, slow healing, and or tingling, and pain or numbness in feet and hands (primarily type 2)
   b. Unexplained weight loss or gain.
   c. Previously diagnosed with “borderline diabetes” or pre-diabetes, gestational diabetes or impaired glucose tolerance.
   d. Past or current symptoms of coronary heart disease, heart failure, cerebrovascular disease, peripheral vascular disease, renal disease, gout or sexual dysfunction.
2. The patient, primarily those with type 2 diabetes, may be asymptomatic. Elevated glucose levels are often found in routine lab

work, during evaluations for surgery or work-up for other conditions. Patients suspected to have type 1 diabetes may report rapid onset of symptoms.

3. There may or may not be a family history or obvious risk factors.

4. The following should be assessed and documented in chart:

    a. Current diabetes self-management routine, if previously diagnosed, to include:
        1) Duration of diabetes, including age and characteristics of onset, such as diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) or asymptomatic.
        2) Current and prior medications for diabetes.
        3) Eating patterns, weight history, and nutritional status.
        4) Prior self-management education/training.
        5) Self-monitoring of blood glucose (SMBG) pattern and results and A1C results if available.
        6) Current physical activity-type, frequency, duration.
        7) Frequency of usage and indications for OTC medications, prescriptions, and alternative medications, home remedies, nutritional supplements.
    b. Acute complications-severe hyperglycemia, DKA, severe hypoglycemia requiring assistance of another, hypoglycemia unawareness. Prior emergency room visits and hospitalizations related to diabetes.
    c. History of infections-type, treatment, resolution time.
    d. Family history of diabetes, chronic kidney disease, premature cardiovascular disease.
    e. CHD risk factors-hypertension, abnormal lipids, high sodium intake, tobacco use, prior myocardial infarction, coronary revascularization, heart failure, stroke, transient ischemic attacks, peripheral arterial disease, sleep apnea.
    f. History of target organ damage: retinopathy (visual disturbances/changes- loss or fluctuation of visual acuity, blurry vision, floaters or history of cataracts, macular degeneration, or ophthalmic procedures); nephropathy (history of renal disease, ankle edema, fatigue, hypertension); peripheral (stocking and glove pattern of numbness, tingling, pain or weakness) and/or autonomic neuropathy (resting tachycardia, fixed heart rate, postural hypotension, syncope, urinary frequency, urgency, incontinence, male or female sexual dysfunction, gastrointestinal complaints such as

nausea, vomiting, early satiety, abdominal bloating, and weight loss.).

g. History of foot ulcers and deformities.
h. Psychosocial and social situation, including economic factors.
i. Smoking or other tobacco use including e-cigarettes, alcohol and recreational drug use.
j. Female reproductive history: menstrual history, method of
k. contraception, pregnancies and outcomes.
l. Current immunization status.

OBJECTIVE

1. Physical examination

a. Appearance
   1) Type 1 = Thin, ill appearance, dehydrated, may have had significant weight loss.

   2) Type 2 = Frequently overweight or obese.

b. Height, weight and BMI.
c. Routine assessment of blood pressure (standing and sitting or sitting and lying) to assess for dehydration and autonomic neuropathy. Blood pressure may be greater than 140/90 mmHg.
d. Extremities - assess patient extremities for changes in color, deformity, injury, sensation, temperature changes, muscle strength and deep tendon reflexes (use a 128-Hz tuning fork and a monofilament).
e. Mouth - assess for gum problems, tooth decay and oral candidiasis.
f. Visual acuity-assess using Snellen Chart.
g. Arterial Pulses – Palpate and auscultate pulses.
h. Neurological and foot examination including inspection, palpation of dorsalis pedis and posterior tibial pulses, nails for thickening, signs of fungal or bacterial infections, and signs of compromised blood flow. Assess for decreased or absent deep tendon reflexes, numbness or burning sensation or sensory loss may be present.
i. Neck - Palpate the thyroid for an enlarged thyroid. Assess for hoarseness and difficulty swallowing.
j. Skin - Inspect for sites of previous insulin injections, shiny spots over tibial bones, loss of hair over lower legs and toes, ulcerations of feet/legs, carbuncles and ulcers, lipohypertrophy or lipoatrophy at insulin injection sites. In type 2 diabetes early hyperinsulinemia may be evidenced by Acanthosis Nigricans around the neck, waist, inguinal and axillary skin folds (dark velvety hyperpigmentation).

k. Cardiovascular – Auscultate the heart for heart rate, rhythm and sounds. Assess for orthostatic hypotension, hypertension, decreased capillary refill, absent pedal pulses, impaired circulation.
l. Abdomen - Perform abdominal exam. Palpate for an enlarged liver.
m. Inspect the hands for mobility and deformities.

3. Diagnostic laboratory findings (Non-Pregnant Adults)

   a. Confirmed A1C equal to or greater than 6.5%

   OR

   b. Confirmed fasting plasma glucose level equal to or greater than 126 mg/dL on at least two different occasions (on subsequent days).

   OR

   c. Confirmed random plasma glucose level equal to or greater than 200 mg/dL (with classic symptoms of diabetes), on two different occasions.

ASSESSMENT Diabetes Mellitus (Type 1 or Type 2)

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC AND FOLLOW-UP STUDIES**

Inform the patient of the importance of abnormal results and follow-up and referrals. If a service is not available in the clinic, the patient should be given resource/referral information that must be appropriately documented in the patient's record. The patient's follow-through on the recommendations should be documented at the next visit.

1. A1C – Initially and every six months for well controlled patients on diet therapy or oral medication. Every three months for patients poorly controlled or when medications have been changed. A1C target goals should be individualized based on patient desires, values, and willingness to participate in management, potential risks of hypoglycemia and other adverse events, patient's age and duration of diabetes, comorbidities and established vascular complications. Treatment goal is generally <7%, however, any lowering of A1C levels has benefit.
2. Initial lipid profile. Lipid management is an integral part of diabetes management. Lipid management is addressed in Appendix F.
3. Metabolic profile initially and annually.

4. Serum creatinine, potassium, and sodium or more frequently based on medication profile.
5. ECG annually (or as indicated).
6. Annual dilated eye exam.
7. Spot urine for albumin to creatinine ratio.
8. TSH as indicated by findings on physical examination or suggestive history.
9. Annual dental examination.
10. Weight and calculation of BMI on each visit; height annually.
11. Referral to other specialties and services as needed.
12. Urine cultures as indicated. Urinalysis for ketones, protein and sediment.
13. Refer women of reproductive age to Women's Health.

THERAPEUTIC

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC

1. A patient-centered approach is highly recommended in the care of patients with diabetes. It is defined in articles by the American Diabetes Association (see references) as "providing care that is respectful of and responsive to individual patient preferences, needs, and values and ensuring that patient values guide all clinical decisions."
2. Diabetes Self-Management Education/T raining (DSME/DSMT) is considered an essential element for persons with diagnosed diabetes. DSME/T provides the knowledge, skills and support necessary for diabetes self-care. Refer to the Patient Education Counseling Section for specific components of DSME and DSMT. For Medicare reimbursement, DSMT coding must be used.
3. For patients with prediabetes, the goals are to decrease the risk of diabetes and cardiovascular disease through intensive lifestyle interventions through participation in lifestyle change programs to promote and maintain moderate weight loss (7%of body weight).
    a. Promote healthy food choices with consistency in day-to-day carbohydrate intake and the limitation of sucrose-containing and high glycemic index foods. The Dietary Approaches to Stop Hypertension

(DASH) Eating Plan can be used as a basis for meal planning to help manage blood glucose, blood pressure and cholesterol.

b. Increase physical activity to at least 150 minutes per week of moderate-intensity aerobic activity such as walking.
c. Patients with prediabetes should be referred to lifestyle change programs or Diabetes Prevention Programs.

4. Nutrition Therapy - Evidence suggests that there is no ideal percentage of calories from carbohydrate, protein and fat for all persons with diabetes. More emphasis is placed on a pattern approach rather than specific macronutrient and micronutrient recommendations. Macronutrient distribution should be based on individualized assessment of current eating patterns, preferences and metabolic goals. The goals of nutrient therapy are:

    a. Promote and support healthful eating patterns.
    b. Attain glycemic, blood pressure and lipid goals.
    c. Achieve and maintain body weight goals.
    d. Delay or prevent complications of diabetes.
    e. Address individual nutrition needs based on personal and cultural preference, access to healthy food choices, willingness and ability to make behavior changes, and barriers to change.
    f. Maintain pleasure of eating by providing positive messages about food choices while limiting food choices only when indicated by scientific evidence.
    g. Provide patients with practical tools for day-to-day meal planning. A variety of meal planning tools, DASH Eating Plan, Therapeutic Lifestyle Changes Diet, USDA Choose My Plate, Mediterranean style, and vegetarian and vegan eating plans may be used.

5. Physical activity has been shown to improve blood glucose control by decreasing insulin resistance and increasing metabolism, reducing cardiovascular risk factors, contributing to weight loss and improved sense of well-being.

    a. Patients should reduce sedentary time by breaking up extended amounts of time (greater than 90 minutes) sitting.
    b. Adults should be advised to perform at least 150 minutes per week of moderate-intensity aerobic physical activity spread over at least 3 days per week with no more than 2 consecutive days without exercise.
    c. Adults should do muscle strengthening activities that involve all major muscle groups 2 or more days per week.

1) Patients over the age of 65 or those with disabilities should follow the above guidelines to the extent possible, and if not possible, they should be as physically active as possible.
2) Consideration of existing diabetes related health issues identified during the patient's assessment, such as cardiovascular disease, hypertension, peripheral and/or autonomic neuropathy, and microvascular changes, should be considered when recommending a physical activity program.

6. Monitoring

a. Self-Monitoring of Blood Glucose (SMBG):
   1) Used to assess effectiveness of meal plan, exercise and medication.
   2) Patients with Type 2 diabetes being treated with medication should perform SMBG on a regular, consistent basis until blood glucose targets are reached. One example of a testing schedule is performing a fasting and one other test during the day on an alternating routine, such as pre-meal testing on alternate days (pre-lunch one day, pre-evening one day and at bedtime on the third day). If fasting and pre-meal values are within target values but A1C values do not correlate, post-prandial blood glucose values may provide guidance in reviewing composition and portion sizes of meals. Once 50% of blood glucose values are within target blood glucose range, SMBG frequency can be modified to treatment (e.g., meal planning only, 2-3 times per week; oral medications once per day on alternating fasting and pre-meal schedule). Frequency of monitoring may depend on patient's willingness and physical ability to perform SMBG, financial resources, comorbid conditions and ability to take action when abnormal values occur.
   3) Individualized target blood glucose ranges are based on treatment regimen, age, and presence of complications such as hypoglycemia unawareness. The recommended target goals for most patients: pre-meal glucose between 80-130 mg/dL and peak post-prandial glucose less than 180mg/dL. Discuss target glucose levels with the patients and have them write down their target glucose levels in their logbook.
   4) The patient's SMBG records should be reviewed on each visit to identify patterns of blood glucose levels to consider adjustments in the management plan. Provide the patient with feedback to support and encourage continued monitoring as well as behavior and lifestyle changes.
   5) Additional testing may be indicated during times of stress, especially infection/illness.

b. A1C testing, which reflects average blood glucose concentration over the past 90-120 days, should be performed at least two times per year in patients meeting target treatment goals and quarterly in patients whose therapy is changed or who are not meeting treatment goals. Reduction of A1C to 7% or less has been shown to reduce microvascular complications and long-term reduction in macrovascular disease.

c. Weight monitoring - Weight loss has been shown beneficial for persons with diabetes, particularly type 2 diabetes, to reduce insulin resistance. Nutritional inventions and increase physical activity can promote controlled weight loss. Unintentional weight loss may occur as a result of uncontrolled hyperglycemia or other underlying causes. Weight gain should be monitored and possible reasons explored, such as medications and need for additional nutritional counseling.

d. Regularly assess for cardiovascular risk factors and the presence of macrovascular disease.

    1) See Appendix F for lipid management guidelines.
    2) Monitor blood pressure and insure that hypertension is being treated to target goal of systolic blood pressure less than 140 mmHg and diastolic blood pressure less than 90 mmHg.
    3) Assess for symptoms of macrovascular disease:
        a) chest pain
        b) decreased tolerance for physical activity
        c) chronic fatigue
        d) shortness of breath
        e) swelling of feet and ankles
        f) sudden numbness or weakness on one side of the body
        g) inability to walk or weakness, paralysis on one side of the body
        h) pain in the calves when walking or pain in feet when at rest
        i) coolness of lower extremities

e. Smokers, e-cigarette users, or other nicotine users- Utilize Ask, Advise and Refer (AAR) model and provide cessation counseling and referral to the Georgia Quit Line 1-877-270-STOP (7867) using the Quit Line Fax Back Form as appropriate.

f. Foot evaluation and care-Early recognition and appropriate management of patients with insensate feet is important to reduce risk of amputation.
   1) All patients with diabetes should have an annual comprehensive foot examination as described in the Objective Section. Patients with insensate feet, foot deformities, ulcers and complaints of numbness and/or burning, should, at minimum, have a visual inspection of their feet at each visit.
   2) All patients should receive general foot care instructions. Patients with neuropathy, insensate feet, history of foot ulcers, or deformities as well as those with visual impairment, should be given enhanced foot care instructions and/or referral to a specialist or podiatrist. See Patient Education/Counseling Section for additional information.

g. Psychological assessment and care-Depression is not uncommon in persons with diabetes and may affect a patient's ability to perform self-management activities.

   1) Patients should routinely be asked how diabetes and its care is impacting their lives, if they are feeling anxious, down or helpless, changes in sleep patterns, and additional financial burden of diabetes.
   2) The Patient Health Questionnaire (PHQ)-9 is a brief depression self-report scale that is a useful screening tool and can be found at: http://phqscreeners.com/pdfs/02_PHQ-9/English.pdf.
   3) Referral to mental health resources may be appropriate for patients who might benefit from a more comprehensive evaluation and when poor glycemic control persists despite ongoing adjustments in management regimen.

h. Dental patients with diabetes, especially if poorly controlled, are at greater risk for periodontal disease. This can lead to difficulty chewing, pain, possible loss of teeth, and persistent bad breath. Patients should brush and floss daily, regular visits to a dentist, good glucose control, and avoidance of tobacco products.

i. Immunizations are important preventive services for persons with diabetes to reduce diabetes-related hospitalizations and to prevent morbidity and mortality.
   1) Provide routine vaccinations as for the general population
   2) Annual flu vaccinations
   3) Administer pneumococcal poly-saccharide vaccine23 (PPSV23) to all patients with diabetes

4) Adults 65 years of age or greater, if not previously vaccinated should receive pneumococcal conjugate13 (PCV 13) vaccine followed by PPSV23 within 6-12 months after initial vaccination.
5) Adults 65 years of age or greater, if previously vaccinated with PPSV23 should also receive a PCV13 vaccine no sooner than 12 months after receiving PPSV23.
6) Administer hepatitis B vaccine to unvaccinated adults, aged 19-59 years, with diabetes. Consider administering hepatitis B vaccination at the discretion of the treating clinician to unvaccinated persons aged equal to and older than 60 years.

PHARMACOLOGIC

In patients with markedly symptomatic and/or elevated blood glucose levels (≥300-350 mg/dL) or A1c (≥ 10-12 %) consider initiating insulin therapy. If insulin therapy is indicated please refer these patients to an outside provider.

NOTE: Be familiar with local discount drug programs and keep an up-to-date list (may change frequently). To the extent possible, order medications from these lists. Consult with the delegating physician as appropriate.

1. Monotherapy - Metformin is the preferred first agent, unless it is contraindicated or not tolerated.

   a. Biguanides: Metformin (Glucophage)

      Mechanism of action: Inhibits hepatic glycogenolysis and gluconeogenesis. Enhances insulin sensitivity in muscle and fat.

      1) Efficacy: 1-1.5 % ↓ A1c; Greater effect on FPG>PPG
      2) Side effects: Gastrointestinal, Lactic acidosis (rare), Vitamin B12 deficiency
      3) Contraindications: Avoid in renal impairment (Men: SCr ≥ 1.5 mg/dL, Women: SCr ≥ 1.4 mg/dL)
      4) Advantages: No weight gain, No hypoglycemia
      5) Cost: Low
      6) Dosing: Take with meals; Due to GI side effects start once daily and titrate up as tolerated (500 mg per week or 850 mg increases every 2 weeks)
      7) Elderly patients should not be titrated to maximum dose

Drug	Initial Dose	Max Dose	Supplied

Metformin (Glucophage)	500 mg once or twice daily with meals	2000 mg	500, 850, 1000 mg tab ER: 500, 750 mg tab

b. A sulfonylurea or meglitinide (see below) may be used as first line therapy in patients unable to take Metformin.

Considerations: Consider adding additional agents if A1C goal is not reached after 3 months of monotherapy OR if A1C is equal to or greater than 9%. Please see list below for additional agents.

2. Dual therapy: Sulfonylureas, DPP-4 inhibitor, meglitinides may be added as second line therapy. Use appropriate monitoring of FPG and A1C measurements to ensure that the patient is not subjected to excessive drug exposure or increased probability of secondary drug failure. If glucose targets are not achieved after a suitable trial of combination therapy and lifestyle changes, consider discontinuing these drugs and refer to an outside provider for initiation of insulin therapy.

   a. Sulfonylureas (SU):

      Mechanism of action: Stimulates pancreatic insulin secretion.
      1) First generation: Not recommended in current guidelines (Chlorpropamide, Tolbutamide)
      2) Second generation agents: Glimepiride (Amaryl); Glipizide (Glucotrol); Glyburide (DiaBeta, Micronase).
      3) Efficacy: 1-2% ↓ A1c; ↓PPG, reduced efficacy over time.
      4) Side effects: Hypoglycemia, Weight gain
      5) Contraindications: Avoid in poor renal function
         a) Glimepiride: CrCl less than 30 ml/min
         b) Glipizide: CrCl less than 10 ml/min
         c) Glyburide: CrCl less than 50 ml/min
      6) Cost: Low
      7) Dosing: Do not cut/crush/chew Extended Release (ER) formulations;
         a) Glimepiride daily dose may be increased by 1-2 mg at weekly or bi-weekly intervals.
         b) Glipizide doses greater than 15 mg/day should be given in divided doses. Extended Release is dosed once daily. Titration of dose if needed should be no more frequently than every 7 days. Elderly patients initial dosing of 2.5 mg and titrating at 1 to 2 week intervals.
         c) Glyburide should be titrated as needed at 2.5 mg daily at

weekly intervals. Use conservative initial and maintenance doses in elderly patients.

Drug	Initial Dose	Max Dose	Supplied
Glimepiride (Amaryl)	1-2 mg daily give with first main meal	8 mg	1, 2, 4 mg tab
Glipizide (Glucotrol) Glipizide XL	5 mg once or twice daily 30 minutes before meals (once for ER formulation) Extended Release: 5 mg once daily	40 mg (max effective dose = 20 mg) Extended Release: 20 mg/day	5, 10 mg tab ER: 2.5, 5, 10 mg tab Extended Release: 2.5 mg, 5 mg, 10 mg tab
Glyburide (DiaBeta, Micronase)	2.5-5 mg once daily with breakfast or first meal	20 mg	1.25, 2.5, 5 mg tab

Note: Meglitinides (See below under Specific Situation therapy) may be used in place of Sulfonylureas in patients with a sulfa allergy and/or irregular meals schedules or who have late rise in postprandial glucose levels on SU's.

b. Dipeptidyl Peptidase- 4 (DPP-4) inhibitors: Alogliptin (Nesina); Linagliptin (Tradjenta); Sitagliptin (Januvia); Saxagliptin(Onglyza)

   Mechanism of Action: Inhibits degradation of endogenous incretins resulting in increased insulin secretion in response to elevated blood glucose, decreased glucagon secretion, slowed gastric emptying, and increased satiety.

   1) Efficacy: 0.5-0.8% ↓ A1c; ↓FPG and ↓PPG
   2) Side effects: Urticaria, Angioedema, ↑serum ALT, may worsen heart failure (Saxagliptin)
   3) Contraindications: Avoid in patients with a history or those at risk for pancreatitis. Avoid in patients with impaired renal function (see chart below)

Drug	CrCl 30-50 ml/min	CrCl less than 30 ml/min
Alogliptin(Nesina)	12.5 mg daily	6.25 mg daily
Linagliptin(Tradjenta)	None	None
Sitagliptin (Januvia)	50 mg daily	25 mg daily
Saxagliptin(Onglyza)	CrCl less than 50 ml/min = 2.5 mg daily	

4) Advantages: Weight neutral, No hypoglycemia
5) Cost: High
6) Dosing: Take with or without food; Starting dose is usually maintenance dose. Obtaining a liver test panel and assessing the patient before initiating therapy is recommended. Use caution in patients with abnormal liver tests. During therapy, if liver injury is suspected (e.g. fatigue, jaundice, dark urine), interrupt therapy, measure serum liver tests, and investigate possible etiologies and consult with medical consultant.

Drug	Initial Dose	Max Dose	Supplied
Alogliptin (Nesina)	25 mg daily	25 mg daily	6.25, 12.5, 25 mg tab
Linagliptin (Tradjenta)	5 mg daily	5 mg daily	5 mg tab
Sitagliptin (Januvia)	100 mg daily	100 mg daily	25, 50, 100 mg tab
Saxagliptin (Onglyza)	2.5-5 mg daily	5 mg daily	2.5, 5 mg tab

3. Specific Situation therapy

a. Meglitinides - Can be used in patients that are unable to take a SU due to sulfa allergy or in patients with irregular meal schedules or who develop late postprandial hypoglycemia on a sulfonylurea. (Repaglinide (Prandin), Nateglinide (Starlix)

Mechanism of Action: Stimulates pancreatic insulin secretion.

1) Efficacy: 0.5 -1.5% ↓A1c; ↓ PPG; Repaglinide is shown to reduce A1C more than Nateglinide
2) Side effects: GI disturbances, upper respiratory infections or congestion problems, hypoglycemia (risk greater with Repaglinide)
3) Contraindications: Repaglinide should not be given with gemfibrozil.
4) Cost: High
5) Dosing: Repaglinide: Increase in weekly intervals as needed; Skip doses for both medications if meal is skipped

Drug	Initial Dose	Max Dose	Supplied
Repaglinide (Prandin)	Not previously treated or A1C less than 8%, 0.5 mg 15 minutes before meals.	16 mg	0.5, 1, 2 mg tab

	Previously treated of A1C greater than 8%, 1-2 mg 15 minutes before each meal.		
Nateglinide (Starlix)	If A1C is near goal, 60 mg three times a day. If A1C is greater than 8%, 120 mg three times a day (take 1-30 minutes before meals)	120 mg three times a day	60, 120 mg tab

Considerations: Consider initiating triple therapy if A1C is equal to or greater than 10 to 12% or blood glucose is equal to or greater than 300 to 350 mg/dL. Please see list below for triple therapy combinations.

4. Triple therapy combinations within the drug classes covered by this protocol.

    a. Metformin + Sulfonylurea + DPP-4 inhibitor

    OR

    b. Metformin+Meglitinides+DPP4

5. Lipid management is an integral part of diabetes management. See Appendix F.

PATIENT EDUCATION AND COUNSELING

1. Patients with prediabetes should be referred to lifestyle change programs for healthy lifestyle changes (eating habits, weight loss, increase in physical activity)
2. Patients diagnosed diabetes should receive diabetes self-management education/training (DSME/T) according to the National Standards for DSME/T at the time of diagnosis and as needed thereafter.

    a. DSME/T is an ongoing process to facilitate knowledge, skills and ability necessary for diabetes self-care support sustainability of behaviors needed to manage diabetes on an ongoing basis.
    b. DSMT coding must be used when applying for Medicare reimbursement.

3. The overall objectives for DSME/T are:

    a. Support informed decision making, self-care behaviors, and problem solving skills.

b. Active collaboration between the patient and health care team to improve clinical outcomes, health status, and quality of life.
c. Patient centered to be respectful and responsive to individual preferences, needs and values.

4. The components of diabetes self-management education include:

a. Initial assessment to identify the patient's:

1) Needs, priorities, learning potential
2) Beliefs that he/she can make a change in behavior
3) Factors that may help and/or hinder the person in carrying out the management plan
4) Assistance in selecting appropriate educational and behavioral interventions.
5) Assessment should include questions such as:
   a) How is diabetes affecting your life and your family's life?
   b) What questions do you have?
   c) What is the hardest part about your diabetes or what is causing you the most concern?
   d) What would you like to learn about diabetes?
   e) What success have you had in the past making changes in your life?

b. Goal setting defines specific steps to facilitate behavior change. Goal setting is a collaborative effort between the nurse and the patient. The process begins by helping patients determine 1-2 priority areas they wish to change then helping them identify behavior change steps. Goals should be written in measurable terms that can be monitored and measured. A useful acronym is SMART objectives:

a. Specific
b. Measurable
c. Achievable
d. Realistic
e. Time-bound
f. Examples: I will walk 30 minutes every day after dinner, I will eat 3 meals a day at about the same time each day, I will check my blood sugar every morning before breakfast and write it down.

c. The education plan describes the strategies to help the patient reach the desired health outcomes. Strategies may include referral to local DSME/T Programs, Chronic Disease Self-Management Programs,

Diabetes Prevention Programs, local diabetes support groups, Registered/Licensed Dietitian or other resources. The plan needs to include a written commitment (contract) by the patient to work toward accomplishing their goals and follow through with their management plan.

d. Implementation is the execution of the plan to insure that the patient has the knowledge, skills and resources to follow through on the plan. The nurse may provide the self-management education and/or refer the patient to community resources.

e. Evaluation and monitoring includes regular assessment the patient's progress with behavior goals and the impact of behavior changes on health status. Evaluation also includes assessment of knowledge, skills and satisfaction.

5. The American Association of Diabetes Educators (AADE) has defined 7 self-care behaviors (AADE7 Self-Care Behaviors) as a framework for patient-centered diabetes education and care that focuses on the behaviors that are essential for health status and quality of life. This framework provides an organized method for providing education and a tool to track and evaluate progress. The AADE7 Self Care Behaviors are:

a. Healthy Eating

1) Make healthy food choices from all food groups. Use DASH Meal Planning or Dietary Guidelines to discuss food groups and healthy choices. American Diabetes Association also has a handout "Best Foods for You."
2) Discuss portion sizes, using divided plate methods, such as "choose my plate" and visual prompts, such as deck of cards, size of ping pong ball.
3) Evenly spaced meals, particularly if taking medication.
4) Consistent carbohydrate intake, preferably from vegetables, fruits, whole grain products, legumes, and low-fat dairy products.
5) Limit food and beverages high in added sugars.
6) A variety of eating patterns are acceptable for diabetes management. See Therapeutic Section for additional information and Appendix G for education resources.
7) Encourage to limit fast food consumption.
8) Discuss reading food labels to the extent of patient's ability to understand and comprehend.

9) The amount of dietary saturated fat, cholesterol, trans fat recommendations for patients with diabetes is the same as for the general population in reducing the risk for cardiovascular disease.
10) Sodium reduction to less than 2,300 mg/day is appropriate for patients with diabetes. If the patient has hypertension, reduction to 1,500 mg/day is recommended.
11) If adults with diabetes choose to drink alcohol, they should be advised to limit consumption to it should be limited to 1 drink per day for women and up to 2 drinks per day for men. Patients should be advised that alcohol consumption may put them at greater risk for hypoglycemia especially if they are taking glucose lowering medications.

b. Being Active

1) Assess current activity level and discuss ways patient would be willing to increase activity.
2) Encourage patient to identify someone to walk with or do other types of physical activity.
3) An appropriate physical activity plan takes into consideration the need to balance food and medication with the frequency, timing, and intensity of activity level. See Therapeutic Section for specific recommendations and Appendix G for education resources.

c. Taking Medication

1) Patients should be counseled on importance of taking medication as ordered and should be able to verbalize the name of the medication, the reason for taking it, dose, frequency, time of day to take it, action for missed dose, side effects, and action to take if occur, such as recognition and prevention of hypoglycemia.
2) Patients should be counseled to bring all medications, including OTCs and herbal supplements, to all appointments. Recommend that the patient discuss any OTC and/or other nonprescription agent use with the pharmacist prior to purchase.
3) Assess medication adherence on each visit.
4) Discuss barriers, such as cost issues and complexity of regimen (multi-day dosing for diabetes and other health conditions.

5) Patients must be counseled on risks, recognition and treatment of hypoglycemia.

d. Monitoring

1) Self-monitoring of blood glucose (SMBG) provides the patient with diabetes feedback about the effects of food intake, medications, and physical activity.

a) The choice of blood glucose monitor is based on cost of monitor and test strips.
b) Patient's dexterity, number of steps to perform a test, size of the readout, required size of blood sample as well as the size and shape of monitor and test strips are important determinates in the selection of a blood glucose monitor.
c) Patient instruction regarding use of blood glucose monitor should include proper storage of meter and strips, technique for obtaining adequate blood sample, proper disposal of lancets/sharps, times to check blood glucose, how to record the results in a logbook and what the results mean, what to do when the results are outside of target range, and importance of bringing the meter, testing supplies and logbook to each appointment.
d) Establish target blood glucose levels and discuss with the patient. Have patients write down the target ranges in the logbook
e) The frequency of SMBG is outlined in the Therapeutic Section.
f) See Appendix G for education resources.

e. A1C Measurement

1) A1C measurement reflects blood glucose concentration over approximately 90-120 days and is used as a longer term picture of glycemic control. Patients should be aware of the terminology, the target numbers and how this information is used.
2) Patients need to understand that A1C testing does not replace SMBG, which provides more real-time information on the effects of meals/food intake, physical activity and medications.
3) The frequency of A1C measurement and target ranges are outlined in the Therapeutic Section.

f. Problem-Solving

1) Hypoglycemia

a) Patients taking medications for diabetes must be counseled on risks for hypoglycemia: delaying or skipping meals, physical activity, taking too much medication, or drinking alcohol.
b) Symptoms of hypoglycemia include: sweating, palpitations, pallor, tremors, behavior change, confusion, and drowsiness. Severe, untreated hypoglycemia can lead to loss of consciousness or seizure.
c) Treatment of hypoglycemia is 10-15 grams of easily absorbed carbohydrate such as 3-4 glucose tablets or 4 ounces of juice or regular soda.

2) Hyperglycemia

a) Patients must be counseled on risks for hyperglycemia: eating too much, omission of prescribed medications, lack of physical activity, infection or illness, and taking medications that may increase blood glucose levels.
b) Symptoms of hyperglycemia include: increased thirst and urination, fatigue, blurry vision, and headaches.
c) Patients should be counseled to test their blood glucose level when symptoms occur contact the healthcare provider when blood glucose levels are 250 mg/dL or greater on 2 occasions or if experiencing symptoms of illness or infection.

g. Sick Day Management

1) Patients should be counseled to drink 8 oz. of fluid per hour, test their blood glucose at least every 4 hours or more frequently if continues to rise, continue medications as able and to notify health care provider if vomiting occurs on more than one occasion, unable to retain liquids, diarrhea lasting more than 6 hours, and symptoms of hyperglycemia become worse.

2) Patients, especially elderly persons who live alone, should be instructed to have someone check on them on a regular basis when they are not feeling well.

h. Reducing risks

1) Targeted behaviors and therapeutic goals have been established to reduce the risk or slow the progression of diabetes complications, such as cardiovascular and kidney disease, amputations, vision problems, and dental problems.
2) Blood Pressure
    a) Patients should be aware of the importance of regular blood pressure measurement, blood pressure goals, taking blood pressure medications if prescribed, and the importance of blood pressure control in prevention of diabetes complications.
    b) If the patient is doing home blood pressure monitoring, have them bring the equipment to be sure the patient understands how to use it and logbooks for appointments to validate accuracy and provide feedback of the results.
    c) Blood pressure goals are defined in the Therapeutic Section.
3) Weight
    a) Weight goals should be mutually agreed upon.
    b) Encourage patients to weigh themselves once weekly and record in a logbook.
    c) Advise patients to report any significant weight change between appointments, particularly weight loss accompanied by polyuria and polydipsia.
4) Daily Foot Care
    a) Patients or significant other (if patient has impaired vision) should be instructed: to inspect feet daily for cuts, calluses, blisters, thick or ingrown nail, and signs of infection; wash and dry feet thoroughly, especially between the toes, moisturize except between the toes, cut nails straight across and smooth rough edges with an emery board, inspect footwear for foreign objects, and to always wear footwear-never go barefoot.
    b) See Appendix G for education resources.
5) Daily Dental Care
    a) Instructed patient on importance of twice daily brushing and flossing and regular dental visits.

b) Patients should be counseled on importance of blood glucose control and cessation of tobacco products as preventative measures for periodontal disease.
c) See Appendix G for education resources.

6) Smoking Cessation
   a) Smoker, e-cigarette, or nicotine user- Utilize Ask, Advise and Refer (AAR) model and provide cessation counseling and referral to the Georgia Quit Line 1-877-270-STOP (7867) using the Quit Line Fax Back Form as appropriate.
7) Lipids
   a) Briefly counsel all patients on lifestyle behaviors to reduce cardiovascular risk factors focusing on reduction of saturated, trans fat and cholesterol intake (incorporate TLC meal planning messages into Healthy Eating messages), weight loss, increased physical activity, smoking/tobacco cessation, and blood glucose control.
   b) All patients with diabetes are presumptive candidates for statin therapy. See Appendix F for management of lipids in patients with diabetes.
8) Nephropathy
   a) Counsel patients on the importance of glucose and blood pressure control.
   b) Counsel patients to avoid or limit use of certain pain medicine, such as nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (ibuprofen).
9) Immunizations - Refer to Therapeutic section for immunization guidelines.

i. Healthy coping
   1) Identify patients showing signs of coping difficulties and undue stress (unexplained weight changes, poor glycemic control, and changes in cognition, concentration, and ability to focus). Questions that may give insight into a patient's feelings and emotions are:
      a) In the past 2 weeks, have you consistently felt sad or blue?
      b) What drives you crazy about your diabetes?
      c) What is scary for you about having diabetes?
   2) Assist patients with identifying problems they are experiencing, explore options, select one to work on, and then make a plan to address the problem.

3) Identify support systems such as family members or friends to talk with. Encourage the patient to bring someone with them to their appointments.
4) DSME/T and support groups have shown positive impact on improved patient coping skills. Patient-centered care and feedback related to efforts for behavior change have also had positive results.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Frequency of Clinic Appointments

    a. When beginning or adjusting drug therapy, see patients every 2-4 weeks to evaluate response to medications and lifestyle changes based on SMBG results and to assess for signs and symptoms of hypo- and hyperglycemia.

    b. Once blood glucose goals are reached and maintained for 3-4 visits, frequency of appointments may be reduced to 4-6 week intervals to monitor/assess for symptoms of complications, progress with behavioral goals and ongoing self-management education and support.

2. Triage assessment is performed at each visit and includes the information components listed below:

    a. Chief complaint.
    b. Physical examination includes:
        1) Weight, Body Mass Index, and waist circumference. Measure height annually.
        2) Sitting and standing BP (particularly for patient complaints suggestive of orthostatic
        3) Temperature and pulse rate.
        4) Heart and lung sounds, particularly if shows evidence of edema.
        5) Assessment of extremities for edema and change if perfusion.
        6) Foot inspection for lesions, ingrown nails, fungal infections.

    c. Frequency/severity of hypo-hyperglycemia.
    d. Review medications and medication adherence.
    e. Review, discuss and provide feedback on SMBG, weight, and physical activity records.
    f. Review behavior goals and discuss progress.
    g. Assess status of DSME/T participation. Identify learning needs and provide appropriate instructions

h. Discuss adherence difficulties and psychosocial issues.
i. Assess for symptoms of other diabetes complications.
j. ER/Hospital visits or change in medical history since the last visit.

3. Order appropriate laboratory studies:

   a. A1C
      1) Quarterly if treatment changes or patient is not meeting target blood glucose goals.
      2) Every 6 months if stable
   b. Annual fasting lipid profile
   c. Obtain baseline serum creatinine and repeat in 3 months if taking Metformin, a Sulfonylurea and/or a DPP4 agents. If serum creatinine elevates to 1.4 mg/dL or greater for women or 1.5 mg/dL or greater for men, consult with delegating physician. If level remains stable, repeat annually.
   d. Baseline and annual serum liver tests should be obtained on patients taking Sulfonylureas and/or DPP4 agents.
   e. Spot urine for albumin to creatinine ratio.
   f. Baseline ECG. Repeat as indicated if the patient develops new signs and/or symptoms of heart disease (e.g., chest pain or abnormal heartbeats) or evidence of congestive heart failure (e.g., peripheral edema, shortness of breath); otherwise, once every 5 years is acceptable.

REFERRAL/CONSULTATION

1. All patients should have, at minimum, a nutritional evaluation and development of an appropriate meal plan by a Registered Dietitian or Public Health Nutritionist, if available.

2. Refer all patients to a Diabetes Self-Management Education/Training Program and/or Chronic Disease Self-Management Program and local diabetes support groups.

3. Assess, advise and refer tobacco, e-cigarette and nicotine users to cessation programs.

4. Medical Consultation - In addition to periodic review by a physician, special consultation with delegating physician is indicated if:

   a. Patients who do not reach and/or maintain target blood glucose and/or A1C levels with the limited pharmacologic agents and dosing

covered by this Nurse Protocol.

b. Patients present with blood glucose levels equal to or greater than 300 mg/dL and/or A1C levels equal to or greater than 10%.
c. Recurrent episodes of hypoglycemia (glucose level less than 70 mg/dL) or after one episode of severe hypoglycemia [loss of consciousness or glucose level less than 40 mg/dL).
d. Patients presenting with features suggesting possibility of Type 1 diabetes should be discussed with the delegating/ consulting physician.
e. Positive ketonuria.
f. Pregnancy.
g. Systolic pressure is 180 mmHg or greater.
h. Diastolic pressure is 110 mmHg or greater.
i. Abnormal, total cholesterol is 200 mg or higher, LDL is 100 mg/dL or greater, HDL equal to or less than 40 mg/dL in men and less than 50 mg/dL in women, fasting triglyceride is 500 mg/dL or greater , serum creatinine of 1.4 mg/dL or greater for women or 1.5 mg/dL for men or greater, serum potassium of 3.5 mEq or less or 5.5 mEq or greater, or positive urinary albumin creatinine ratio equal to or greater than 30 mg/dL.
j. New onset angina, intermittent claudication, acute vision loss, acute foot injury or ulceration and/or abnormal ECG.

5. Refer all patients for annual dilated eye examination.

6. Refer all patients for dental evaluation and care.

7. Referral to mental health resources may be indicated in patients exhibiting signs of depression, poor coping mechanisms, and/or alcohol and/or substance abuse.

8. Document all referrals and the results, including any communication with the provider regarding actions taken. Also document patient refusal and the reason for the refusal to follow up on referrals. Presence of complications or other medical conditions.

REFERENCES

1. American Diabetes Association, Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes-2015, Diabetes Care 2015; 38(Suppl.1), pp S1-S69.

2. American Diabetes Association, National Standards for Diabetes Self-Management Education and Support, Diabetes Care, 2012:35, November 2012, pp 2393-2401.

3. Inzucchi,SE, Bergenstal, RM, Diamanat, Buse, JB, Diamant, M, Ferrannini, E, Nauck, M, Peters, AL, Tsapas,A, Wender, R, Matthews, DR, Management of Hyperglycemia in Type 2 Diabetes: A Patient-Centered Approach, Diabetes Care, June 2012 vol. 35 no. 6 1364-1379.

4. Powers, MA, Bardsley, J, Cypress, M, Dukeer, P, Funnell, MM, Fischl, AH, Maryniuk, MD, Siminerio, L, Vivian, E., A Joint Position Statement: Diabetes Self-management Education and Support in Type 2 Diabetes, The Diabetes Educator OnlineFirst, Published online before print June 5, 2015, doi: 10.1177/0145721715588904The Diabetes Educator June 5, 2015 0145721715588904.

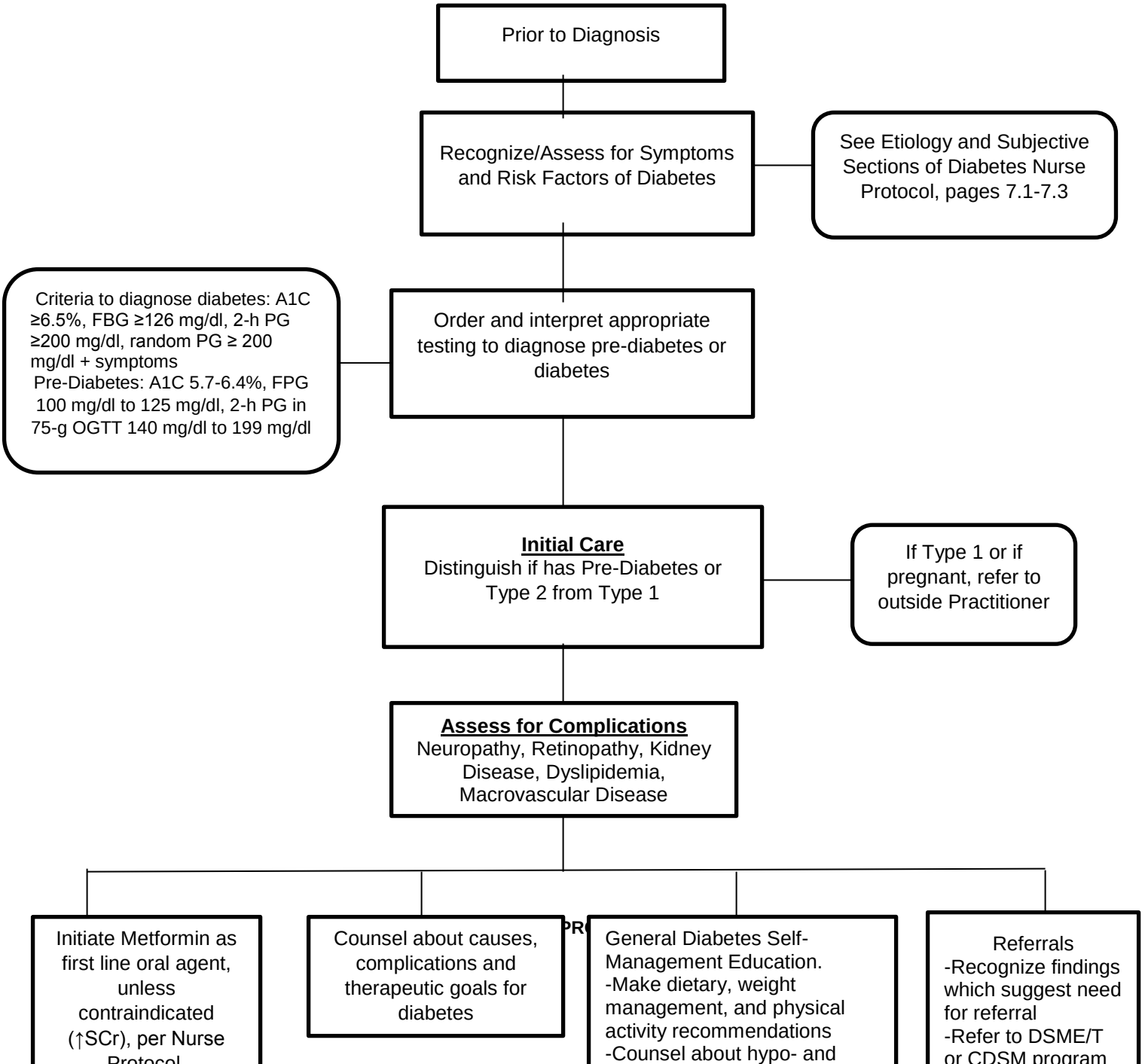
5. Evert. AB, Boucher, JL, Cypress, M, Dunbar, SA, Franz, MJ, Mayer-Davis, EJ, Neumiller, JJ, Nwannkwo,R, Verdi, CL, Urbanski, P, Yancy, WS, Nutrition Therapy Recommendations for the Management of Adults With Diabetes Diabetes Care, January 2014 vol. 37 no. Supplement 1 S120-S143.

6. American Association of Diabetes Educators, AADE 7 Self-Care Behaviors, http://www.diabeteseducator.org/ProfessionalResources/AADE7/, December 2014.

7. “Lexi-Comp Online,” Lexi-Comp,Inc., http://online.lexi.com (May 11, 2015).

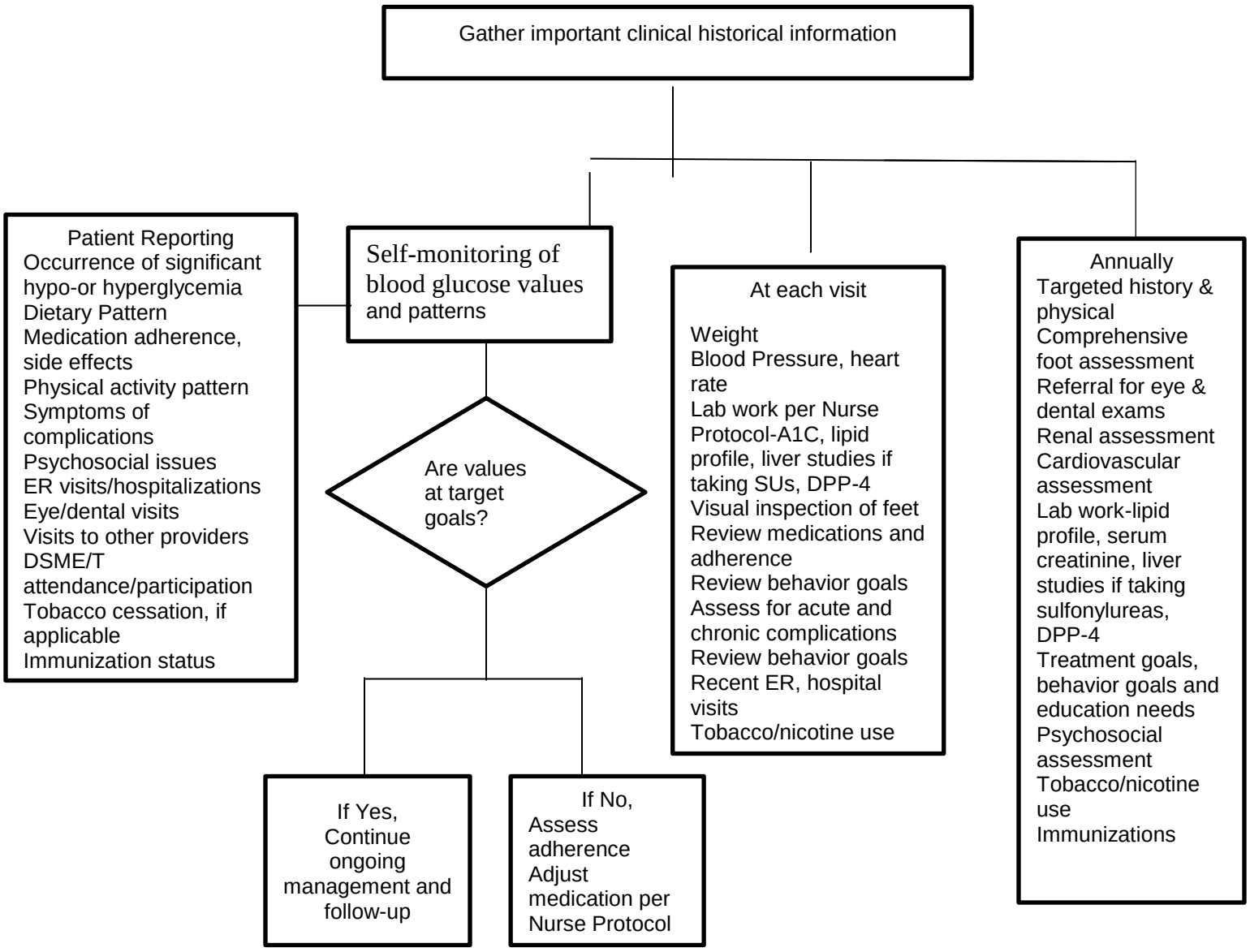
8. PL Detail-Document, Drugs for Type 2 Diabetes, Pharmacist’s Letter/Prescriber’s Letter, June 2015.

APPENDIX A Clinical Tasks in the Care of Patients with Diabetes



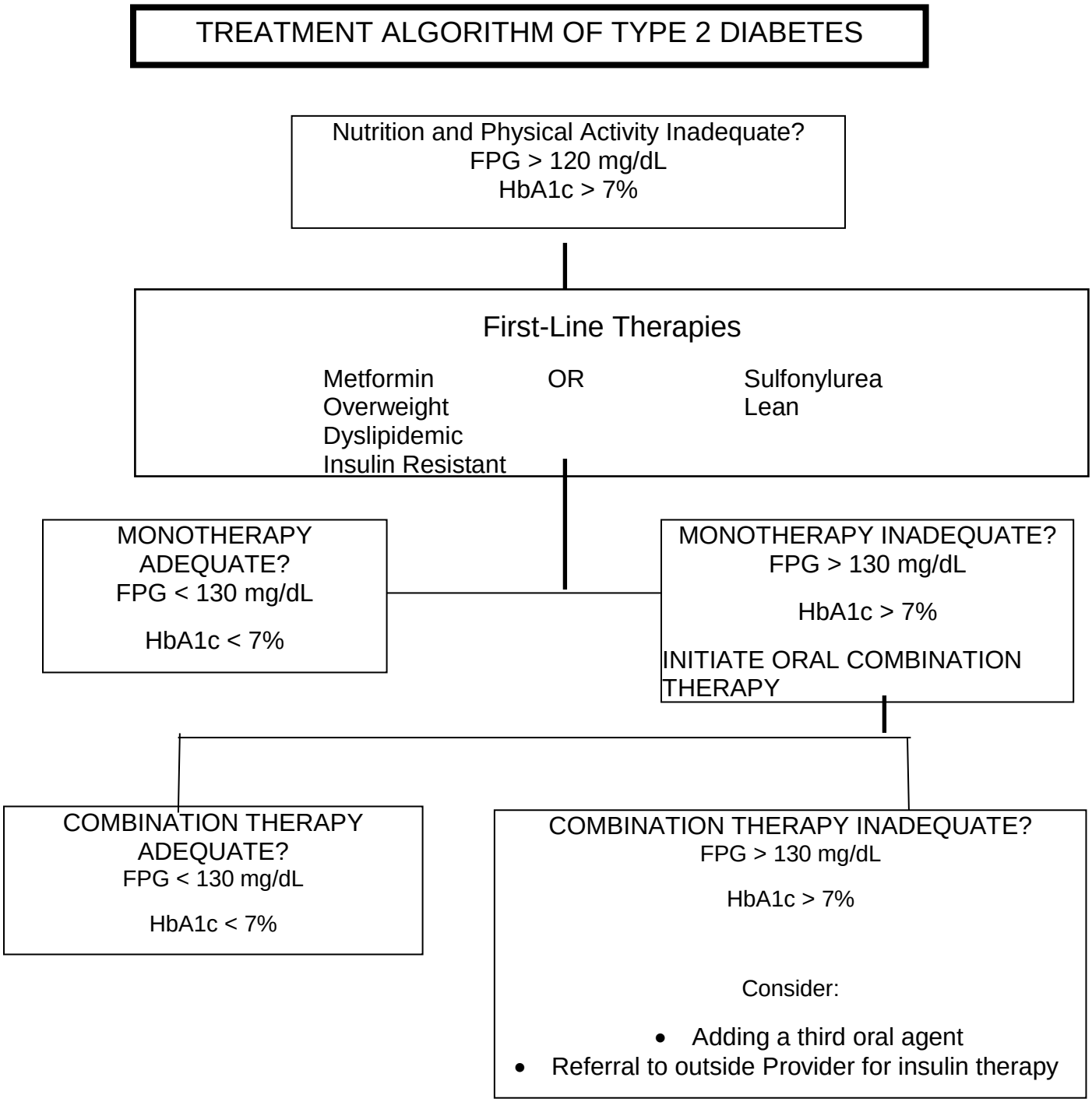
THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

APPENDIX B Clinical Tasks in the Follow-up Care of Patients with Diabetes



THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

APPENDIX C Treatment Algorithm of Type 2 Diabetes



THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

APPENDIX D Summary of Recommendations for Adults with Diabetes

Glycemic control

A1C	<7.0%*
Preprandial capillary plasma glucose	80–130 mg/dL
Peak postprandial capillary plasma glucose†	<180 mg/dL
Blood pressure	<140/90 mmHg

Lipids‡

All patients with diabetes should be considered presumptive candidates for statin therapy.

- For patients between 40-75 years of age
  - If they have known CV disease or any listed risk factor, treat with a high potency statin
  - If they have no known CV disease or listed risk factors, treat with a medium potency statin
- For patients less than 40 years of age
  - If they have known CV disease, treat with a high potency statin
  - If they have any listed CV risk factor, treat with a medium potency statin
  - If they have no listed CV risk factors, continue annual monitoring as below
- For patients older than 75 years
  - If they have known CV disease, treat with a high potency statin
  - Otherwise, treat with a medium potency statin

Key concepts in setting glycemic goals:

• A1C is the primary target for glycemic control

• Goals should be individualized

• Certain populations (children, pregnant women, and elderly) require special considerations

• Less intensive glycemic goals may be indicated in patients with severe or frequent hypoglycemia

- Postprandial glucose may be targeted if A1C goals are not met despite reaching preprandial glucose goals

APPENDIX E Correlation between A1C level and mean plasma glucose levels on multiple testing over 2–3 months

	Mean plasma glucose	
A1C (%)	mg/dL	mmol/L
6	135	7.5
7	170	9.5
8	205	11.5
9	240	13.5
10	275	15.5
11	310	17.5
12	345	19.5

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

APPENDIX F Management of Lipids in Patients with Diabetes

Background

Diabetic patients are at substantial risk of cardiovascular disease (CV). Heart attack is the leading cause of death in persons with diabetes. This risk is due to the effect of diabetes itself as well as the other CV risk factors frequently present in diabetic individuals, such as high blood pressure and elevated lipids. The primary purpose of lipid management in diabetic patients is to lessen their risk of heart attack and stroke. Control of blood sugar and of blood pressure should also be part of a unified strategy to control CV risk in diabetic patients.

Blood lipids are comprised of low density lipoprotein (LDL) cholesterol, high density lipoprotein (HDL) cholesterol and triglycerides. Elevated levels of LDL cholesterol and low levels of HDL cholesterol are risk factors for cardiovascular disease. Statin medications, such simvastatin (Zocor) and atorvastatin (Lipitor), primarily decrease levels of LDL cholesterol and have been shown to substantially lower the incidence of cardiovascular disease in diabetic patients. These medications are the drugs of choice for lowering LDL levels and CV risk in diabetic patients with or without a known history of cardiovascular events. All diabetic patients, regardless of medication use, should be counseled about healthy diet and exercise habits.

The 2013 American Heart Association (AHA) guidelines for management of cholesterol identified 4 groups of patients who should be treated with cholesterol lowering medications. Because of the demonstrated impact of statins on CV risk in diabetics, patients with diabetes were one of those four. Therefore, with limited exceptions described below, patients with diabetes are presumptive candidates for statin therapy.

An important component of the 2013 AHA guidelines was eliminating the use of specific cholesterol level targets (goal-directed therapy). So, those guidelines did not include any particular LDL level to be achieved by treatment. In its place, the aim of therapy was recommended to be treating each patient with a potent enough drug given at the correct dose. Based on clinical trials, using an appropriate dose of a strong enough drug will achieve the maximum reduction of CV risk, while avoiding unnecessary testing and dose titration. This approach was adopted in the 2015 American Diabetes Association (ADA) Standards of Care for Patients with Diabetes.

Evaluation and Management

Every patient diagnosed with diabetes should undergo testing for blood lipids as described in the Objective section of the diabetes nurse protocol. That testing includes a fasting lipid profile, which provides separate LDL, HDL and triglyceride values, and a blood chemistry which includes liver enzymes. A total cholesterol test, which does not separate the lipid components, should not be used.

All patients should also be asked about any prior reaction to cholesterol medications (which drug, what reaction) and any history of liver disease. In addition, all patients should be questioned to assess the presence of, or risk factors for, cardiovascular disease. Evaluate each patient for the following:

- Any previous diagnosis of coronary artery disease, heart attack, ischemic stroke, or peripheral vascular disease
- LDL cholesterol at or above 100 mg/dL
- Diagnosis of hypertension
- Smoking
- Overweight and obesity (BMI at or above 25)

Based on the 2013 AHA and 2015 ADA guidelines, the results of cholesterol tests should be used as follows—

- HDL – Although low HDL is a risk factor for CV disease, trials have not shown benefit from medications which raise HDL. HDL does not form the basis for any medication therapy choices. Low HDL values can benefit from exercise, which will be covered in usual counseling for diabetic patients.
- Triglycerides – The relationship between triglycerides and CV disease is not clear, and triglyceride levels should not be treated in order to lower CV disease rates. Very high triglyceride levels can cause other problems, so patients with such values should be referred for evaluation as below. Modest elevations in triglyceride levels can be improved through a healthy diet, which will be covered in usual counseling for diabetic patients.
- LDL – Elevated LDL cholesterol levels are associated with higher rates of CV disease. As described in the Background section, however, specific LDL cholesterol levels will not be a target for therapy. LDL levels do provide important information about CV risk levels and medication adherence.

Drug management decisions can be made according to the below algorithm.

- For patients between 40-75 years of age—
    - If they have known CV disease or any listed risk factor, treat with a high potency statin
    - If they have no known CV disease or listed risk factors, treat with a medium potency statin
- For patients less than 40 years of age—
    - If they have known CV disease, treat with a high potency statin
    - If they have any listed CV risk factor, treat with a medium potency statin
    - If they have no listed CV risk factors, continue annual monitoring as below
- For patients older than 75 years—
    - If they have known CV disease, treat with a high potency statin
    - Otherwise, treat with a medium potency statin

If a patient has difficulty obtaining a recommended agent due to cost, patient assistance or similar programs, Medicaid eligibility and any community programs should be explored to attempt to get the preferred agent. If no assistance is available, a less potent but more affordable agent can be substituted.

1. Follow-Up and Referral
   - For patients started on statin therapy:
     - Counsel regularly about diet and exercise strategies
     - Repeat a fasting lipid profile annually in order to monitor adherence
     - Repeat a comprehensive metabolic profile (CMP) annually, and with concerns, to look for elevated liver enzymes.
     - Refer for evaluation or discuss with the physician consultant if
       - Liver enzymes are elevated. Stop the drug while awaiting results.
       - The patient experiences unexplained muscle pain. Stop the drug while awaiting results.
       - Triglycerides are greater than 350mg/dL
   - For patients not started on statin therapy:
     - Counsel regularly about diet and exercise strategies
     - Repeat a fasting lipid profile annually to monitor risk
     - Reassess CV risk factors annually
     - If the patient reaches 40 years of age, or develops CV risk factors, then appropriate therapy should be started
     - Refer for evaluation or discuss with the physician consultant if triglycerides are greater than 350mg/dL

Medication - Statins

The primary medication class used to lower LDL cholesterol is statin agents. The statins, HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors, decrease the activity of an enzyme in the liver which is part of the process of manufacturing LDL cholesterol. This class of medications has been shown to reduce CV risk in diabetic and other patient groups.

For purposes of selecting appropriate therapeutic regimens, statins are grouped according to magnitude of LDL reduction into high, medium and low potency levels. Note that some agents can cross potency groups depending on their dose.

High Potency	Medium Potency	Low Potency
Atorvastatin 40-80mg daily	Atorvastatin 10-20mg daily	Simvastatin 10mg daily
Rosuvastatin 20-40mg daily	Rosuvastatin 5-10mg daily	Pravastatin 10-20mg daily
	Simvastatin 20-40mg daily	Lovastatin 20mg
	Pravastatin 40-80mg daily	
	Lovastatin 40mg daily	

When initiating statin, reasonable starting doses are:

- Rosuvastatin 10mg daily,
- Atorvastatin 20mg daily,
- Simvastatin 20mg daily,
- Pravastatin 20mg daily,
- Lovastatin 20mg daily.

- Doses can be doubled every 2-4 weeks until the target dose is achieved.
- If a patient has difficulty tolerating a particular agent, the case should be discussed with the consulting physician.
- Nurses should be familiar with $4 and other discount drug programs available locally.
- Statins are generally safe medications. They rarely cause elevations in liver enzymes or muscle pain; severe muscle damage is possible but very rare. If a patient has known or suspected liver disease, a statin should not be initiated without physician consultation. If a patient on statins develops elevated liver enzymes or muscle pain, the drug should be stopped and physician consultation obtained.
- Statins should not be used in pregnant patients.
- Patients should not breastfeed while taking a statin.
- A review for any drug interactions should occur.

APPENDIX G Referral Sources for DSME/T and DPP/Lifestyle Change Programs

AADE Programs-
http://www.diabeteseducator.org/ProfessionalResources/accred/Programs.html#Georgia

DPP/Lifestyle Change Programs-
https://nccd.cdc.gov/DDT_DPRP/State.aspx?STATE=GA
Not currently reimbursed by Medicare

Stanford programs
http://patienteducation.stanford.edu/organ/cdsitegeorgia.html
Not currently reimbursed by Medicare

EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES

Websites with patient handouts on multiple topics/issues regarding
Diabetes Self-Management:

American Diabetes Association (see Professional tab):
http://professional.diabetes.org/PatientEducationLibrary.aspx

National Diabetes Education Initiative: http://www.ndei.org/patienteducation.aspx

National Institute of Diabetes, Digestive and Kidney Diseases:
http://www.niddk.nih.gov/health-information/health-topics/diabetes/Pages/default.aspx

National Diabetes Education Program: http://ndep.nih.gov/resources/index.aspx

American Association of Diabetes Educators (AADE7 topics)
http://www.diabeteseducator.org/DiabetesEducation/PWD_Web_Pages/Learn_about_AADExs_Seven_Self-Care_Behaviors.html and
http://www.diabeteseducator.org/ProfessionalResources/Library/Holiday_Eating_Patient_Resources.html

Healthy Eating:

Free handouts
U.S. Department of Agriculture: http://www.choosemyplate.gov

DASH Meal Planning
http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/files/docs/public/heart/dash_brief.pdf
http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/health/health-topics/topics/dash/followdash

2010 (most current) Dietary Guidelines
http://www.health.gov/dietaryguidelines/dga2010/dietaryguidelines2010.pdf

Therapeutic Lifestyle Changes (TLC) Diet
https://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/files/docs/public/heart/chol_tlc.pdf

National Diabetes Information Clearinghouse (NDIH) Health Eating Resources:
http://www.diabetes.niddk.nih.gov/dm/pubs/eating_ez/

American Diabetes Association Create Your Plate
http://www.diabetes.org/food-and-fitness/food/planning-meals/create-your-plate/

Charge for Materials
Mediterranean Diet:
http://oldwayspt.org/resources/heritage-pyramids/mediterranean-pyramid/overview
(does have free download of pyramid)

Vegan/Vegetarian:
http://oldwayspt.org/resources/heritage-pyramids/vegetarian-diet-pyramid/overview
(does have free download brochure)

Portion Control:
http://www.webmd.com/diet/printable/wallet-portion-control-size-guide
http://www.webmd.com/diet/printable/portion-control-size guide
http://commonhealth.virginia.gov/documents/wellnotes/PortionControlFactSheet.pdf
http://www.cdc.gov/diabetes/prevention/pdf/handout_session4.pdf

Physical Activity:

American Association of Diabetes Educators
www.diabeteseducator.org/export/sites/aade/_resources/pdf/general/AADE7_being_active.pdf

Activity Pyramid
https://www.wellspan.org/media/3648/activitypyramid-2009.pdf

http://www.cdc.gov/diabetes/prevention/pdf/handout_session5.pdf
http://www.cdc.gov/diabetes/prevention/pdf/posthandout_session8.pdf

Healthy Coping/Problem Solving
http://www.cdc.gov/diabetes/prevention/pdf/handout_session9.pdf
http://www.cdc.gov/diabetes/prevention/pdf/handout_session15.pdf
http://www.cdc.gov/diabetes/prevention/pdf/handout_session11.pdf

Depression and Diabetes
http://www.nimh.nih.gov/health/publications/depression-and-diabetes/depression-and-diabetes_142131.pdf

Kidney Disease
http://nkdep.nih.gov/resources/get-checked-kidney-disease-508.pdf

Foot Care
http://ndep.nih.gov/media/NDEP4_TakeCareOfFeet_4c_508.pdf

Eye Care
https://public.health.oregon.gov/DiseasesConditions/ChronicDisease/Diabetes/resourcebank/Documents/Eye_exam.pdf
https://nei.nih.gov/sites/default/files/health-pdfs/diabeticretino.pdf
www.dshs.state.tx.us/diabetes/patient.shtm

Dental Care
http://www.nidcr.nih.gov/oralhealth/Topics/Diabetes/Documents/DiabetesDentalTipsEN_082714_508C.pdf

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

EMERGENCY GUIDELINES, POLICIES, PROCEDURES AND PROTOCOLS

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

EMERGENCY GUIDELINES, POLICIES, PROCEDURES AND PROTOCOLS

Review Team:

Sara Kroening, RN, MSN, FNP-BC **Deputy Chief Nurse School Health** **Office of Nursing** **Department of Public Health**	**Patrick O'Neal, MD** **Medical Consultant** **Office of Emergency Preparedness and Response**
Zachary Taylor, MD **District 1-2** **District Health Director**	**Debbie York, RN, MSN, APRN** **Clinical Nurse Supervisor** **Medical Access Clinic** **District 1 -2** **Whitfield County Health Department**
Angela Griffin, RN, BSN **County Nurse Manager** **District 9-2** **Appling County Health Department**	**Heather Holloway, RN, BSN** **Public Health Nursing Supervisor** **District 5-2** **Houston County Health Department**
Christi W. Dixon, RN **County Nurse Manager** **Southwest Public Health District (8-2)** **Mitchell County Health Department**	**Tonia Parrott, Ph.D, MT (ASCP)** **Clinical Microbiology Services Director** **Georgia Public Health Laboratory** **Georgia Department of Public Health** **Atlanta, GA**
Karen Schrepple, RPh **District 3-4, Lawrenceville**	**Kim Hazelwood, PharmD** **Pharmacy Director** **Office of Pharmacy** **Georgia Department of Public Health**
Donelle Humphrey-Franklin, RPh, MBA **Assistant Pharmacy Director** **Office of Pharmacy** **Georgia Department of Public Health**	

GUIDELINES FOR EMERGENCY KITS/CARTS IN PUBLIC HEALTH CLINIC SITES

A. GENERAL POLICY

Local factors such as anticipated Emergency Medical System (EMS) response time, the availability of a physician and the ability of trained personnel to initiate an emergency procedure in the event of vasovagal syncope, and/or an acute anaphylaxis/allergic reaction will determine the need for medications and supplies beyond the minimum as identified in these guidelines. Emergency plans and procedures should be coordinated with the local EMS.

All emergency drugs and supplies should be kept together in a secured kit or cart that is easily moveable and readily accessible/visible during clinic service hours. Inventory should be checked monthly with careful attention to medication expiration dates and the working condition of equipment.

B. DEFINITION OF EMERGENCY KIT/CART

Emergency kits/carts are those drugs and supplies which may be required to meet the immediate therapeutic needs of patients and which are not available from other authorized sources in sufficient time to prevent risk or harm to patients. Medications may be provided for use by authorized health care personnel in emergency kits/carts, provided such kits/carts meet the following requirements:

1. Storage
   Emergency kits/carts shall be stored in limited-access areas and sealed with a disposable plastic lock to prevent unauthorized access and to insure a proper environment for preservation of the medications in them.

2. Labeling - Exterior
   The exterior of emergency kits/carts shall be labeled to clearly and unmistakably indicate it is an emergency drug kit/cart and is for use in emergencies only.

3. Labeling – Interior
   All medications contained in emergency kits/carts shall be labeled in accordance with the name of the medication, strength, quantity, lot number and expiration date.

4. Removal of Medications
   Medications shall be removed from emergency kits/carts only pursuant to nurse protocol/procedure, by authorized clinic personnel, a physician or pharmacist.

5. Inspections

Each emergency kit/cart shall be opened and its contents inspected by RN/APRN/Pharmacist/MD monthly, except for oxygen; oxygen should be inspected every 6 months. The monthly inspection shall be documented on an Emergency Check-Off Log sheet which includes:

a. the listing of all emergency supplies and equipment,
b. the name of the medication(s), its strength, quantity, lot number and expiration date,
c. the staff member's name who performed the inspection and the inspection date.

Upon completion of the inspection, the emergency kit/cart shall be locked with the appropriate disposable plastic key.

6. Minimum Medication(s)

a. **Epinephrine vials 1mg/mL AND/OR Epinephrine auto-injectors.**

1) **If cart does not contain 1mg/ml vials, the cart must have both 0.3mg and 0.15mg auto-injectors; 3 doses of each strength.**
2) **Also, recommend including 0.1mg auto-injector on the cart when available on the market.**

b. Diphenhydramine 50mg/mL (2 ampules)
c. Diphenhydramine elixir/solution 12.5mg/5mL (1 bottle)
d. Diphenhydramine HCl 25mg caps (1 bottle)
e. Portable oxygen (by nasal cannula at 5L/ min unless patient has history of emphysema or chronic lung disease then it should be administered at 2L/min).

7. Minimum Supplies

a. Blood pressure cuffs (adult and child)
b. Stethoscope
c. Flashlight/extra batteries
d. Copy of emergency protocols/procedures
e. Allergic Reaction/Acute Anaphylaxis Record
f. Bag-valve-mask (AMBU) for resuscitation (Infant/Child/Adult)
g. Copy of current Monthly Checklist of Drugs and Supplies with appropriate signatures/initials
h. Nasal cannula for oxygen administration
i. Needles and syringes

j. 5-micron filter needles (for use when aspirating medication from glass ampule to reduce contamination)

8. Recommended Additional Supplies and Medications

a. Pulse-oximeter
b. Automated external defibrillator (AED)

References

1. **UpToDate. Prescribing epinephrine for anaphylaxis self-treatment. Accessed August 20, 2018.** https://www.uptodate.com/contents/prescribing-epinephrine-for-anaphylaxis-self-treatment?search=epinephrine%20autoinjector%20obese%20patient&source=search_result&selectedTitle=1~150&usage_type=default&display_rank=1

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR ALTERED LEVEL OF CONSCIOUSNESS, SYNCOPE AND/OR SEIZURE ACTIVITY

DEFINITION Syncope is a transient loss of consciousness accompanied by loss of postural tone due to decreased blood supply to the brain. Syncope is commonly a benign vasovagal event; however, it may represent a serious medical event, particularly in the elderly. Typical vasovagal syncope occurs in a person in an upright position with appropriate stimulus (e.g., fear or pain from blood draw or injection), vasovagal symptoms resolve when recumbent position restores blood flow to the brain. The main goal of evaluation of patients who faint, are dizzy or have altered LOC is to identify those who are at risk for, or are experiencing, acute medical emergencies such as volume depletion, cardiac, metabolic or neurologic event.

ETIOLOGY Vasovagal syncope is usually due to emotional stress related to fear or pain (e.g., having blood drawn or an injection).

SUBJECTIVE
Dizziness
Nausea
Diminished vision

OBJECTIVE
Fall in blood pressure
Diminished vision
Slow pulse
Pallor **and/or** perspiration
Loss of postural tone and consciousness
Seizure Activity which may appear as muscle rigidity, loss of muscle tone, rapid jerking movements, or brief loss of consciousness

ASSESSMENT Altered LOC, syncope and/or seizure activity

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Protect patient from fall injury. Position the patient in the recumbent position with legs elevated. Loosen tight clothing at the neck and waist. If the patient does not immediately regain consciousness, call 911 for EMS support **and transfer to closest appropriate hospital Emergency Department.** Consider lateral decubitus position to prevent aspiration or airway obstruction. Consider initiating oxygen. If sitting, do not lower head by bending at waist (may further compromise venous return to heart).

2. Signs and symptoms of instability requiring hospital evaluation:

    a. Persistent hypotension
    b. Cardiac arrhythmia (including bradycardia or tachycardia)
    c. Persistent altered LOC
    d. Persistent complaints (e.g., dizziness, chest pain, difficulty breathing, abdominal pain)
    e. Any injury sustained during episode
    f. Seizure Activity

3. Monitor blood pressure and pulse. If **vital signs** return to **typical values for** patient **and patient** regains consciousness **with no** persistent complaints or abnormal signs/symptoms, observe the patient for at least 20 minutes.

4. Do not give anything by mouth or allow the patient to resume an upright position until feeling of weakness has passed.

5. Patient may leave the clinic (ideally accompanied) when able to take oral fluids and ambulate (unless non-ambulatory as baseline), and has no complaints or **abnormal signs/**symptoms.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Emphasize the importance of staying well hydrated.

2. Advise patient to resume normal activity.

3. Advise patient to call 911 for any chest or abdominal pain, difficulty breathing, dizziness or weakness or any recurrence of “fainting”.

REFERENCES

1. **Rumm Morag, MD, FACEP; Medscape Reference: "Syncope", updated 1-13-2017. http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/811669-overview (May 1, 2017)**

2. Krohmer, Sahni, Schwartz, Wang: Clinical Aspects of Prehospital Medicine, Kendall-Hunt Publisher, 2009, Chapter 25, "Fainting/Syncope" p. 247

3. Ma, Cline, Tintinalli, Emergency Medicine: Just the Facts, 2nd ed., McGraw-Hill, Companies, Inc. 2009, Chapter 24, "Syncope," p. 97

4. Serrano, L.A., Accuracy and Quality of Clinical Decision Rules for Syncope in the Emergency Department: A Systematic Review and meta-analysis, Annals of Emergency Medicine; 56 (4): 362, October 2010

5. Anthony S. Fauci et al., Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 17th ed., McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc., 2008, Chapter 21, "Syncope," "Syncope," http://accessmedicine.com/content.aspx?aid=9095995 (March 1, 2013)

GUIDELINES FOR ALLERGIC REACTIONS, INCLUDING ACUTE ANAPHYLAXIS IN ADULTS, INFANTS AND CHILDREN

DEFINITION

Allergic reactions that are potentially life-threatening (anaphylactic) reactions, **that occur** after exposure to an antigen which has been injected, ingested or inhaled.

Reactions range from mild, self-limited symptoms to rapid death:

1. Mild to moderate allergic reactions involve signs and symptoms of the gastrointestinal tract and skin. Observing the patient for rapid increase in severity of signs and symptoms is important, as the sequence of itching, cough, dyspnea and cardiopulmonary arrest can lead quickly to death.

2. Severe/anaphylactic reactions involve signs and symptoms of the respiratory and/or cardiovascular systems. These may initially appear minor (i.e., coughing**,** hoarseness, dizziness, mild wheeze) but any involvement of the respiratory tract or circulatory system has the potential to rapidly become severe. Death can occur within minutes. Therefore, prompt and effective treatment is mandatory if the patient's life is to be saved.

ETIOLOGY

Agents commonly associated with allergic reactions/anaphylaxis, include:

1. Medications:

    a. Over the counter, especially non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs.
    b. Prescribed medication, especially antibiotics; may occur with vaccines.
    c. Illicit or illegal drugs.
    d. Herbal or home remedies.

2. Food:

    a. Especially tree nuts, peanuts, shellfish and eggs.

3. Environmental:

    a. Stings (e.g., bee, wasp, yellow jacket, hornet, fire ants).
    b. Pollens, grass, molds, smoke, animal dander.
    c. Iodinated contrast media.

SUBJECTIVE Allergic reactions may affect 1 or more organ systems:

1. Skin (itching, hives, welts, flushing or skin edema, tingling)
2. Gastrointestinal (abdominal pain, nausea, diarrhea)
3. Cardiac (dizziness, fainting, palpitations, chest pain)
4. Respiratory (difficulty breathing, upper airway swelling, including lips and tongue)

OBJECTIVE Allergic reactions may affect 1 or more organ systems:

1. Skin (hives, welts, flushing, skin edema)
2. Gastrointestinal (vomiting, diarrhea)
3. Cardiac (hypotension)
4. Respiratory (wheezing, angioedema)

ASSESSMENT Severe Reactions (anaphylaxis): Reactions involving more than one organ system or causing difficulty breathing or hypotension/shock are severe and may progress rapidly to death. Most severe reactions occur soon after exposure. The faster a reaction develops, the more severe it is likely to be.

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. **For treatment of severe anaphylactic allergic reaction (respiratory and/or circulatory signs/symptoms develop):**

DANGER SIGNS: Rapid progression of symptoms, evidence of respiratory distress (e.g., stridor, wheezing, dyspnea, increased work of breathing, retractions, persistent cough, cyanosis), signs of poor perfusion, abdominal pain, vomiting, dysrhythmia, hypotension, collapse.

NOTE: Early recognition and early treatment with epinephrine is essential in preventing **death**.

a. Call **for someone, preferably 2 people to help you. (Do not leave the patient unattended!)**

b. Have **respondent call** EMS (911) **and delegating physician**

c. Assure open airway; begin CPR if indicated.

d. Assign one person to be timekeeper **and** record **events** in anaphylaxis record.

e. **Assign the other person to continue CPR, if indicated.**

f. Administer epinephrine into thigh (more effective at achieving peak blood levels than into deltoid area).

g. **Infants and small children weighing less than 15 kg should be given an exact weight-based dose (not estimated), whenever possible. However, if obtaining an exact dose causes a significant delay in assisting the patient, using 0.15 mg autoinjector should be considered. It is expected that the side effects would be mild and transient.**

1) Autoinjector Intramuscular (IM) Epinephrine (preferred):

Weighing 10kg to 30kg, epinephrine autoinjector 0.15mg IM into the anterolateral aspect of thigh.

Weighs 30kg or more, epinephrine autoinjector 0.3mg IM into the anterolateral aspect of thigh.

OR

2) Epinephrine for IM injection 1 mg/mL and ampules may be labeled as 1:1000 which is equivalent to 1mg/mL. Can be given subcutaneously if necessary. IM provides a more rapid increase in the plasma and tissue concentrations of epinephrine.

0.01 mg/kg (0.01 mL/kg of 1 mg/mL solution) not to exceed 0.3 to 0.5 mg every 5 to 15 minutes.

Children weighing between 15kg and 29 kg can be given 0.15 mg (0.15 mL of the 1mg/1 mL solution).

Patients weighing between 30 kg and 50 kg can be given 0.3 mg (0.3 mL of the 1 mg/ mL solution).

Patients who weigh more than 50 kg can be 0.5 mg (0.5 mL of the 1mg/mL solution). If the patient is obese, this can be administered using a 1.5-inch needle to penetrate the subcutaneous fat.

NOTE: There are several brands of Epinephrine Auto Injectors available. Please read the package insert prior to administration.

Chart below obtained from: http://www.immunize.org/catg.d/p3082a.pdf

First-Line Treatment: Epinephrine

		Age group	Range of weight (lb)	Range of weight (kg)*	Epinephrine Dose: 1 mg/mL injectable (1:1000 dilution); intramuscular Minimum dose: 0.05 mL	Epinephrine Dose: Epinephrine auto-injector, 0.15 mg or 0.3 mg
Recommended dose is 0.01 mg/kg body weight up to 0.5 mg maximum dose. May be repeated every 5–15 minutes for a total of 3 doses.	Infants and children	1–6 months	9–19 lb	4–8.5 kg	0.05 mL (or mg)	off label
		7–36 months	20–32 lb	9–14.5 kg	0.1 mL (or mg)	off label
		37–59 months	33–39 lb	15–17.5 kg	0.15 mL (or mg)	0.15 mg/dose
		5–7 years	40–56 lb	18–25.5 kg	0.2–0.25 mL (or mg)	0.15 mg/dose
		8–10 years	57–76 lb	26–34.5 kg	0.25–0.3 mL (or mg)	0.15 mg or 0.3 mg/dose
	Teens	11–12 years	77–99 lb	35–45 kg	0.35–0.4 mL (or mg)	0.3 mg/dose
		13 years & older	100+ lb	46+ kg	0.5 mL (or mg) – max. dose	0.3 mg/dose

NOTE: If body weight is known, then dosing by weight is preferred. If weight is not known or not readily available, dosing by age is appropriate.

* *Rounded weight at the 50th percentile for each age range*

h. Apply oxygen at 5 L/minute by nasal cannula or at 2L/min if patient has history of emphysema or chronic lung disease.

i. Place patient in supine position, legs elevated, if tolerated.

j. Begin monitoring Vital Signs with BP every 5 minutes.

NOTE: Any patient who has received epinephrine must be transported by EMS to closest appropriate hospital emergency department; copy of anaphylaxis record must go with patient to hospital.

2. **For treatment of mild allergic reaction (cutaneous symptoms only):**

a. **Children:**

Diphenhydramine PO Dosing [8] (The standard dose is 1 mg/kg body weight, up to 100 mg) May repeat dose every 6 – 8 hours. Adult not to exceed 400 mg/day. Child not to exceed 300 mg/day.	
Weight **lb(kg)**	Diphenhydramine Dose **(Suspension: 12.5mg/5mL)**
22 – 26lb (10-12kg)	**5mL**
27 – 32lb (12-14kg)	**6.25mL**
33-37lb (14-16kg)	**7.5mL**
38-43lb (17-19kg)	**8.75mL**
44-54lb (20-24kg)	**10mL**
55-65lb (25-29kg)	**12.5mL**
66-76lb (30-34kg)	**15mL**
77-87lb (35-40kg)	**17.5mL**
88lb and greater (40kg and greater)	**20mL**

Diphenhydramine IM Dosing [9] The standard dose is 1 mg/kg body weight, up to 100mg. May repeat dose every 6-8 hours; Adult not to exceed 400mg/day. Child not to exceed 300 mg/day.	
Weight lbs (kg)	Diphenhydramine Dose (Injection: 50 mg/mL)
24-37 (11-17)	15 mg / 0.3 mL
37-51 (17-23)	20 mg / 0.4 mL
51-77 (23-35)	30 mg / 0.6 mL
77-99 (35-45)	40 mg / 0.8 mL
99+ (45kg+)	50 mg / 1 mL

NOTE: Children younger than 2 years of age should receive diphenhydramine only after consulting with a physician.

b. **Adults:** Diphenhydramine 25-50 mg **PO or IM every 4-8 hours (max dose 400 mg in 24 hours). After medication administered**, complete Allergic Reaction Record. Then observe patient for 60 minutes. If any respiratory or circulatory signs develop, proceed to **medications for severe reactions as listed below.** If, after 60 minutes, the patient's symptoms

8 As created by Sara Kroening RN, MSN, FNP-BC GA DPH Deputy Chief Nurse School Health
9 As created by Sara Kroening RN, MSN, FNP-BC GA DPH Deputy Chief Nurse School Health

are still limited to the skin and the patient is comfortable, then **provide mild reaction education.**

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. **When diphenhydramine is administered:**

   a. Advise adult patient to take diphenhydramine orally every 4 to 8 hours if symptoms persist**; also, inform primary care provider of symptoms.** Advise that if the patient experiences dizziness, difficulty breathing or chest pain, call 911.

   b. **If symptoms persist, advise parent to give pediatric patient diphenhydramine orally: 6.25mg every 4 to 6 hours to children 2-6 years old (not to exceed 37.5mg daily); 6 to 11 years: 12.5mg to 25 mg every 4 to 6 hours to children 6-12 years old (not to exceed 150 mg daily); children 12 years or older, refer to adult dosing. Also, inform primary care provider of symptoms.** Advise that if the child experiences dizziness, difficulty breathing or chest pain, call 911**.**

   c. Inform the patient that he/she has an apparent allergy to the causative agent and advise that this information should be provided to all healthcare providers in the future.

   d. If the causative agent was a medication being dispensed for additional use at home, then an alternative medication used that is in a different chemical family that is not regarded as having "cross-reactivity" with the causative agent. Consult with physician for alternative treatment(s).

2. When a patient is given an agent (e.g., antibiotic or vaccine) capable of inducing anaphylaxis, he/she should be advised or encouraged to remain in the clinic for at least 15 minutes.

3. Educate the patient/caretaker about **use of** medical alert bracelets for anaphylactic reactions.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Consult with delegating physician for alternative treatment options when allergen is medication that was ordered/dispensed under nurse protocol.

2. Immediately refer patients with wheezing, laryngeal edema, hypotension, shock or cardiovascular collapse to ER via EMS.

3. Refer to primary care provider for further evaluation**.**

FOLLOW-UP

1. Place an allergy label on the front of patient's medical record and/or enter the allergy into the electronic medical record as appropriate.

2. If the allergic reaction is immunization-induced, complete a vaccine adverse event record (VAERS).

ALLERGIC REACTION/ANAPHYLAXIS RECORD – page 1

District/Clinic Site _____ Date _____

Patient Demographic Information:

Name: _____

DOB _____/_____/_____ AGE _____ months / years

Estimated/Actual Weight *(please circle one)* Infant / Child / Adult _____lbs/kg

Event which **precipitated** reaction:

_____ Immunization
_____ Medication administered
_____ Biologicals administered
_____**Food ingested**
_____**Exposure to Environmental Hazard(s)**
_____ Other: (please explain) _____

TIME OF REACTION: _____ TIME EMS CALLED: _____

Signs and Symptoms: (please check)

_____ Apprehension
_____ Flushing and/or skin edema
_____ Palpitations
_____ Numbness and tingling
_____ Itching
_____ Localized or generalized urticaria (rash, welts)
_____ Seizure Activity
_____ Choking sensation
_____ Coughing/hoarseness/wheezing
_____ Difficulty breathing
_____ Nausea and vomiting
_____ Severe hypotension
_____ Vasomotor collapse
_____ Loss of consciousness

Other (e.g., dizziness**)**: _____

OTHER OBSERVATIONS/COMMENTS: _____
_____
_____

SIGNATURE OF RN/APRN: _____

DISPOSITION: _____

REVIEWER: _____

NOTE: *Send copies of both pages of this record with patient* ***when transported to hospital/ER or*** *referred to a physician's office or hospital.*

ALLERGIC REACTION/ANAPHYLAXIS RECORD – page 2

1. Call for HELP
2. Assign timekeeper/recorder
3. Assure AIRWAY
4. Check VITAL SIGNS q 5 minutes
5. CPR if necessary
6. Call EMS if indicated

For cutaneous symptoms only (mild):

Diphenhydramine IM Dosing The standard dose is 1 mg/kg body weight, up to 100mg). May repeat dose every 6-8 hours; Adult **max** 400mg/day. Child **max** 300 mg/day.	
Weight lbs (kg)	Diphenhydramine Dose (Injection: 50 mg/mL)
24-37lb (11-17kg)	15 mg / 0.3 mL
37-51lb (17-23kg)	20 mg / 0.4 mL
51-77lb (23-35kg)	30 mg / 0.6 mL
77-99lb (35-45kg)	40 mg / 0.8 mL
99lb+ (45kg+)	50 mg / 1 mL
***Note: Children younger than 2 years of age should receive diphenhydramine only after consulting with a physician.**	

Diphenhydramine PO Dosing The standard dose is 1 mg/kg body weight, up to 100 mg) May repeat Dose every 6-8 hours. Adult max 400 mg/day. Child max 300mg/day.	
Weight **lb(kg)**	**Diphenhydramine Dose** **(Suspension: 12.5/5mL)**
22 – 26lb (10-12kg)	**5mL**
27 – 32lb (12-14kg)	**6.25mL**
33-37lb (14-16kg)	**7.5mL**
38-43lb (17-19kg)	**8.75mL**
44-54lb (20-24kg)	**10mL**
55-65lb (25-29kg)	**12.5mL**
66-76lb (30-34kg)	**15mL**
77-87lb (35-40kg)	**17.5mL**
88lb and greater (40kg and greater)	**20mL**
***Note: Children younger than 2 years of age should receive diphenhydramine only after consulting with a physician.**	

Severe Reactions (anaphylaxis) involving more than one organ system or causing difficulty breathing or hypotension/shock:

Epinephrine IM Dosing

Epinephrine chart obtained from:
http://www.immunize.org/catg.d/p3082a.pdf

First-Line Treatment: Epinephrine

		Age group	Range of weight (lb)	Range of weight (kg)☆	Epinephrine Dose: 1 mg/mL injectable (1:1000 dilution); intramuscular Minimum dose: 0.05 mL	Epinephrine Dose: Epinephrine auto-injector, 0.15 mg or 0.3 mg
Recommended dose is 0.01 mg/kg body weight up to 0.5 mg maximum dose. May be repeated every 5–15 minutes for a total of 3 doses.	Infants and children	1–6 months	9–19 lb	4–8.5 kg	0.05 mL (or mg)	off label
		7–36 months	20–32 lb	9–14.5 kg	0.1 mL (or mg)	off label
		37–59 months	33–39 lb	15–17.5 kg	0.15 mL (or mg)	0.15 mg/dose
		5–7 years	40–56 lb	18–25.5 kg	0.2–0.25 mL (or mg)	0.15 mg/dose
		8–10 years	57–76 lb	26–34.5 kg	0.25–0.3 mL (or mg)	0.15 mg or 0.3 mg/dose
	Teens	11–12 years	77–99 lb	35–45 kg	0.35–0.4 mL (or mg)	0.3 mg/dose
		13 years & older	100+ lb	46+ kg	0.5 mL (or mg) – max. dose	0.3 mg/dose

NOTE: If body weight is known, then dosing by weight is preferred. If weight is not known or not readily available, dosing by age is appropriate.

☆ *Rounded weight at the 50th percentile for each age range*

1) **Children weighing between 15kg and 29 kg can be given 0.15 mg (0.15 mL of the 1 mg/mL solution).**
2) **Patients weighing between 30kg and 50 kg can be given 0.3 mg (0.3 mL of the 1 mg/mL solution).**
3) **Patients who weigh more than 50 kg can be given 0.5 mg (0.5 mL of the 1 mg/mL solution). If the patient is obese, this can be administered using a 1.5-inch needle to penetrate the subcutaneous fat.**

PATIENT NAME:_____
PATIENT WEIGHT**:**_____
PATIENT DOB/AGE:_____

TIME EMS CALLED:_____
TIME EMS ARRIVED:_____

VITAL SIGNS (monitor every 5 minutes)

Time	B/P	Pulse	Resp
_____	___/___	____	____
_____	___/___	____	____
_____	___/___	____	____
_____	___/___	____	____
_____	___/___	____	____
_____	___/___	____	____
_____	___/___	____	____

CPR Indicated: _____YES _____NO
TIME CPR started:_____AM / PM
TIME CPR ended: _____AM / PM

Oxygen started: _____YES _____NO

TIME	**DOSE**	**ROUTE**
____	_____	_____

Epinephrine 1**mg/1mL** ampule

TIME	DOSE	ROUTE	SITE
_____	_____	IM	____
_____	_____	IM	____
_____	_____	IM	____

Epinephrine Auto-Injector

TIME	DOSE/TYPE	ROUTE	SITE
____	_____	IM	____
____	_____	IM	____
____	_____	IM	____

IM Diphenhydramine 50 mg/mL vial

TIME	DOSE	ROUTE	SITE
_____	_____	IM	____

Oral Diphenhydramine 12.5 mg/5mL (Elixir/Solution) **OR** 25mg, 50 mg (Capsules)

TIME	DOSE	ROUTE
_____	_____	PO

EMS DEPARTED TO HOSPITAL: _____
HOSPITAL NAME: _____
Patient's status when transported to hospital: _____

If not transported, patient's status when leaving clinic: _____
_____

REFERENCES

1. Ludwig Fleisher, *Textbook of Pediatric Emergency Medicine*, 6th ed., 2010, Chapter 82, "Asthma and Allergic Emergencies".

2. *Guidelines for the Diagnosis and Management of Food Allergy in the United States: Report of the NIAID-Sponsored Expert Panel*, Journal of Allergy Clinical Immunology, Vol. 126, 2010, pp. 1105-18.

3. Choo, KLJ, "Glucocorticoids for the Treatment of Anaphylaxis: Cochrane Systematic Review" Allergy Vol. 65 No. 10, October 2010, p 1205.

4. Krohmer,Sahni, Schwartz, Wang: *Clinical Aspects of Prehospital Medicine*, Kendall-Hunt Publisher, 2009, Chapter 21, "Allergies, Stings," p. 205. (Current)

5. The diagnosis and management of anaphylaxis: an updated practice parameter. Journal of Allergy Clinical Immunology 2005 Mar; 115(3 Suppl): S483-523.

6. "Lexi-Drugs Online," *Lexi-Comp Database*, Lexi-Comp, Inc., Hudson, Ohio (November 7, 2017

7. **Campbell, Ronna L, Kelso, John M. Anaphylaxis: Emergency Treatment. In: UpToDate Online, UpToDate, Waltham, MA (Accessed on July 6, 2017.)**

8. **Diphenydramine. Lexi-Drugs. Lexicomp. Wolters Kluwer Health, Inc. Riverwoods, IL. Avaialbe at http://online.lexi.com. Accessed July 6, 2017. S. Shahzad Mustafa, MD, et al. "Anaphylaxis," Department of Emergency Medicine, State University of New York at Buffalo School of Medicine, http://www.emedicine.com/emerg/topic25.htm#target1 (May 18, 2015).**

9. Thibodeau JL. Office management of childhood vaccine related anaphylaxis. Can Fam Phys 1994; 40:1602-10.

10. Gary Fleisher, et al., (eds.), *Textbook of Pediatric Emergency Medicine*, 6th ed., Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2010, Chapter 82, "Asthma and Allergic Emergencies".

11. "Guidelines for the Diagnosis and Management of Food Allergy in the United States: Report of the NIAID-Sponsored Expert Panel," *Journal of Allergy Clinical Immunology*, Vol. 126, No. 6, December 2010, pp. 1105-18.

12. KLJ Choo, "Glucocorticoids for the Treatment of Anaphylaxis: Cochrane Systematic Review," *Allergy*, Vol. 65, No. 10, October 2010, p 1205.

13. John Krohmer, et al., *Clinical Aspects of Prehospital Medicine*, Kendall-Hunt Publisher, 2009, Chapter 21, "Allergies, Stings," p. 205. (Current)
14. Philip Lieberman, et al., "The diagnosis and management of anaphylaxis: an updated practice parameter," *Journal of Allergy Clinical Immunology*, Vol. 115, No. 3, March 2005, pp. S483-523.

15. Brice Labruzzo Mohundro, et al., "Important Considerations When Dispensing Epinephrine Auto-Injector Devices," *Pharmacy Times*, September 23, 2010, **http://www.pharmacytimes.com/p2p/P2PEpinephrine-0910** (May 18, 2015).

16. Hugh Sampson, et al., "Second symposium on the definition and management of anaphylaxis: Summary report – Second National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Disease/Food Allergy and Anaphylaxis Network symposium," *Journal of Clinical Immunology*, Vol. 117, February 2006, pp. 391-397. (Current)

17. William W. Hay et al., *Current Pediatric Diagnosis and Treatment, 20th* ed., McGraw-Hill, United States of America, 2011.

18. Judith Tintinalli, et al., *Tintinalli's Emergency Medicine: A Comprehensive Study Guide,* 7th ed., McGraw-Hill, United States of America, 2011.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

POLICY FOR REVIEWING EMERGENCY PROTOCOLS/PROCEDURES IN PUBLIC HEALTH CLINIC SITES

A review of emergency protocol/procedures shall be completed at least once annually at each clinic site. The Nursing Supervisor shall arrange for the annual review and completion of the attached checklist.

Staff member(s) listed below participated in training updates for all age ranges and performed in a mock emergency drill on _____.
(Date)

District Health Director Name _____

District Health Director Signature_____ Date_____

District Nursing and Clinical Director Name _____

District Nursing and Clinical Director Signature_____ Date____

Name(s) of Staff Member(s)

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

EMERGENCY CHECKLIST FOR PUBLIC HEALTH CLINIC SITES

To assure that each site is equipped and prepared to handle emergencies that may occur.

The Nursing Supervisor and District Public Health Nursing & Clinical Director will assure that this checklist is completed annually for each site and that follow-up occurs for any inadequacies/incomplete areas.

#	EMERGENCY ITEM	Complete/ Adequate	Incomplete/ Inadequate	Comments
1.	Emergency numbers posted on each phone.			
2.	Exits clear.			
3.	Hallways clear.			
4.	Staff able to describe action to take in case of emergency.			
5.	Staff demonstrates use of anaphylaxis equipment.			
6.	Emergency kit/cart stored in secured area except during clinic hours.			
7.	Emergency kit/cart stocked according to district protocol for anaphylaxis **and has been checked monthly, as required.**			
8.	All staff trained in emergency procedures and certified in CPR (every 2 years).			
9.	Practice emergency drill(s) conducted and documented at least annually. **NOTE:** Drills should include age-group variations (i.e., adults, infants and children).			

County_____

Nursing Supervisor Printed Name _____

Nursing Supervisor Signature _____

Date of Review: _____ Date Corrected: _____

District Nursing & Clinical Director Printed Name _____

District Nursing & Clinical Director Signature _____

EVALUATION TOOL FOR PRACTICE DRILL

		Yes	No
A.	Response Team		
1.	Team effort utilized and well-coordinated.	_____	_____
2.	Response team timely.	_____	_____
3.	Patient assessment complete.	_____	_____
4.	Code Blue* called.	_____	_____
5.	Emergency Medical Services/ Physician notified.	_____	_____
6.	Emotional support provided to significant others, if applicable.	_____	_____
B.	Patient Outcome		
1.	Level of consciousness assessed.	_____	_____
2.	Vital signs monitored.	_____	_____
3.	Appropriate drugs given.	_____	_____
4.	CPR instituted, if applicable.	_____	_____
5.	EMS/physician responded.	_____	_____
6.	Documentation complete.	_____	_____

C. Recommendations/Comments:

_____
_____
_____

Site_____ Date_____

Evaluator Printed Name_____

Evaluator Signature _____

*****_Although Code Blue is not specified in the anaphylaxis protocol/procedures, it should be used to signal the emergency._

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SHOCK/HEMORRHAGE

DEFINITION Shock is a critical condition brought on by a sudden drop in blood flow (and thus oxygen delivery) through the body. Shock that is unrecognized and untreated can lead to permanent organ damage or death.

ETIOLOGY Shock may result from blood loss, dehydration, allergic reaction, infection, pulmonary embolism, or myocardial infarction/heart failure. Common causes of shock in females with reproductive capacity include:

1. Ruptured ectopic pregnancy
2. Pulmonary embolism (especially smokers on birth control pills)
3. Ruptured ovarian cyst
4. Placental abruption
5. Severe, chronic untreated dysfunctional bleeding
6. Severe PID.

SUBJECTIVE
Dizziness
Nausea
Weakness
Sweating
Agitation and/or confusion

OBJECTIVE
Cardiac: Rapid weak pulse, low blood pressure.
Skin: Pale or ashen, cool **to touch**, sweat**ing.**
Neuro**logical**: altered level of consciousness (agitated, confused, or somnolent).

ASSESSMENT Shock, etiology to be determined, requiring urgent evaluation and treatment

PROCEDURE

1. Call 911 or your local emergency number.
2. If patient is unresponsive, not breathing and/or has no pulse, begin CPR.
3. Stop visible bleeding by applying direct pressure to bleeding site, **if possible**.
4. Administer oxygen. If only nasal cannula is available, administer oxygen at 5 L/ minute unless patient has history of emphysema or chronic lung disease when the administration rate should be limited to 2L/minute.
5. Monitor **oxygen saturation and pulse** with pulse-oximeter, if available.
6. **Assist the patient to** lie down on his**/** her back with feet higher than the head, **if able**. Some patients with respiratory distress cannot

tolerate supine position.

7. Keep the **patient** warm and comfortable. Loosen belt and tightly fitted clothing and cover the patient with a blanket. Even if the patient complains of thirst, give nothing by mouth.
8. If the **patient** vomits or bleeds from the mouth, turn **onto** his**/**her side **in recovery position** to prevent choking.
9. Patient should be transported by EMS to closest appropriate **ER**.

REFERENCES

1. "Hypovolemic Shock"; Kolecki, P; updated February 27, 2014. http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/760145-overview **(accessed May 19, 2015)**

2. "Shock"; National Library of Medicine, National Institute of Health; updated May 12, 2015. http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/shock.html **(accessed May 19, 2015)**

3. "Shock"; American College of Emergency Physicians; accessed May 19, 2015. http://www.emergencycareforyou.org/EmergencyManual/WhatToDoInMedicalEmergency/Default.aspx?id=270

4. "Shock"; National Library of Medicine, National Institute of Health; updated February 27, 2013. http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/000039.htm

Clinical Review Team:

Zachary Taylor, MD **District 1-2** **District Health Director**	**Debbie York, RN, MSN, APRN** **Clinical Nurse Supervisor** **Medical Access Clinic** **District 1 -2** **Whitfield County Health Department**
Angela Griffin, RN, BSN **County Nurse Manager** **District 9-2** **Appling County Health Department**	**Heather Holloway, RN, BSN** **Public Health Nursing Supervisor** **District 5-2** **Houston County Health Department**
Christi W. Dixon, RN **County Nurse Manager** **Southwest Public Health District (8-2)** **Mitchell County Health Department**	**Risë Wood, RPh, EMHP** ***District Pharmacist*** **Northwest Georgia Health District**
Donelle Humphrey-Franklin, RPh, MBA **Assistant Pharmacy Director** **Office of Pharmacy** **Georgia Department of Public Health**	**Kim Hazelwood, PharmD** **Pharmacy Director** **Office of Pharmacy** **Georgia Department of Public Health**
Kortney Floyd, APRN CPNP **Deputy Chief Nurse, Nurse Protocols** **Georgia Department of Public Health**	

GUIDELINES FOR SUSPECTED OPIOID OVERDOSE

DO NOT USE THIS PROTOCOL FOR A PERSON THAT HAS A KNOWN HYPERSENSITIVITY TO NALOXONE HYDROCHLORIDE.

DEFINITION

Overdose is defined as the accidental or intentional administration of a drug at a quantity substantially greater than normally used or recommended resulting in serious harmful symptoms or death. The most frequent drug overdose is due to opioid misuse. In 2016, Georgia had a case rate of 13.3 per 100,000 deaths due to opioidoverdose. The case rate for the entire United States was 19.9 per 100,000 deaths. Due to the ongoing opioid crisis in the United States and globally, it is necessary for all persons who are likely to witness an opioid overdose to have access to Naloxone.

Overdose is a medical emergency in which response time is of the essence to save the person who is usually unconscious, hypoxic, and in the more severe cases, apneic. Initiating treatment for an opioid overdose as early as possible, even before the arrival of emergency medical services (EMS) at the scene, is a medical imperative and a critical determinant of outcome in opioid overdose.

ETIOLOGY

Heroin and prescription opioids such as oxycodone, hydrocodone, codeine, fentanyl, and morphine are opioid receptor agonists. With larger doses, respiratory depression can occur, limiting adequate oxygenation of blood, which reduces oxygen availability to the brain and heart, leading to unresponsiveness, anoxia, cyanosis, and death. Respiratory depression, which is reversible until death occurs, can take 1 to 3 hours and can be reversed with the pharmacological antidote naloxone, which displaces opioids from the opioid receptor and blocks the binding of additional opioids for 20 to 90 minutes.

NOTE: It is important to prevent first responders' exposure to fentanyl-based substances. Be sure to assess the area for your safety. Always wear nitrile gloves when caring for a person you suspect is experiencing an opioid overdose. If a powdery substance is found, do not touch it without wearing nitrile gloves, face mask (preferably N-95), and eye shields. Also, be sure to remove gloves properly after caring for patient and wash hands. DO NOT use alcohol-based hand sanitizers since these do not get rid of the presence of fentanyl-based substances.

OBJECTIVE

Face extremely pale and/or clammy
Limp body
Fingernails or lips have a purple or blue color
Vomiting or making gurgling noises
Cannot be awakened or unable to speak
Pinpoint pupils
Low blood pressure
Breathing or heartbeat slows or stops

NOTE: If a person displays any or all of these symptoms, CALL 911 IMMEDIATELY.

ASSESSMENT

SUSPECTED OPIOID OVERDOSE

NOTE: The auto-injector and intranasal naloxone may be administered to infants and neonates. However, in neonates with known or suspected exposure to maternal opioid use, consider using another form of naloxone (IM) to allow dosing according to weight and titration to effect.

DO NOT USE THIS PROTOCOL FOR A PERSON THAT HAS A KNOWN HYPERSENSITIVITY TO NALOXONE HYDROCHLORIDE.

PLAN

THERAPEUTIC

1. **Have someone CALL 911 IMMEDIATELY if you suspect a person is experiencing an opioid overdose. If at any time the person has stopped breathing, begin to administer 2-person rescue breathing or CPR with a bag-valve mask device to prevent the first responder from being exposed to fentanyl-substances.**
   - **Also have someone notify Delegating Physician.**
2. **Use PPE to prevent absorption of fentanyl-related substances.**
   - **These substances are designed to be absorbed into the body by all means, including injection, oral ingestion,**

contact with mucous membranes, inhalation, and via transdermal transmission.

- **Always wear nitrile gloves when caring for a person you suspect is experiencing an opioid overdose.**
- **If a powdery substance is found, do not touch it without wearing nitrile gloves, face mask (preferably N-95), and eye shields.**
- **Also, be sure to remove gloves properly after caring for patient and wash hands with soap and water. DO NOT use alcohol-based hand sanitizers since these do not get rid of the presence of fentanyl-based substances.**

3. **Administer naloxone hydrochloride either intramuscularly or intranasally, every 2-3 minutes until person responds. If a total of 10 mg has been administered and no improvement do not give more, opioid overdose may not be the cause of symptoms. Continue monitoring vital signs, administer rescue breathing or CPR if necessary, until paramedics arrive.**

   If patient responds to naloxone administration, after reversal, may need to re-administer dose(s) at a later interval (i.e., 20 to 60 minutes) depending on type/duration of opioid.

   a. **Intramuscularly**

      Naloxone hydrochloride solution:

      i. **Adults: Naloxone hydrochloride injection 0.4 mg or 2 mg IM every 2-3 minutes until person is spontaneously breathing and/or condition improves.**

         Infants, children and adolescents: Initial dose is 0.01 mg/kg/dose; if no response, a subsequent dose of 0.1 mg/kg may be given. Depending on the volume of the dose, the dose may need to be given in divided doses.

OR

ii. **Autoinjector (for neonates, infants, adolescents and adults)**
   - **Naloxone hydrochloride auto-injector 0.4 mg or 2 mg IM every 2-3 minutes until person is spontaneously breathing and/or condition improves.**

NOTE: Ezvio Autoinjector (naloxone hydrochloride) for IM use should be placed against the outer thigh, through clothing if needed. Press firmly and hold in place for 5 seconds.

OR

b. **Intranasally (for neonates, infants, adolescents, and adults)**
   i. **Narcan (naloxone hydrochloride) intranasal 2 mg or 4 mg one-time use dispensers. Do not prime or test the device prior to administration.**

   ii. **Place the patient in the supine position and administer contents of one nasal spray as a single dose =1 squirt in one nostril. Provide support to the back of the neck to allow the head to tilt back.**

   iii. **Following administration, turn the patient on their side. May repeat dose every 2-3 minutes in alternating nostrils until spontaneously breathing and/or condition improves.**

NOTE: A new unit of intranasal naloxone spray must be used with each administration as each unit of naloxone Nasal Spray contains a single dose. Do not prime or test the device prior to administration.

4. **Stay with person until EMS arrives.**

   - **The administration of naloxone hydrochloride can cause sudden opioid withdrawal symptoms, including**

agitation or combativeness; ensure the safety of patient and staff.

- **Some other symptoms include body aches, diarrhea, tachycardia, fever, runny nose, sneezing, piloerection, sweating, yawning, nausea or vomiting, nervousness, restlessness or irritability, shivering or trembling, abdominal cramps, weakness, and increased blood pressure.**

5. **Place patient in recovery position if spontaneously breathing.**

6. **Monitor vital signs every 5 minutes until EMS arrives.**

REFERENCES

1. **Narcan for the U.S. Healthcare Professional. Accessed May 18, 2018.** https://www.narcan.com/healthcare-professional

2. **Opioid overdose death rates in Georgia. Accessed May 18, 2018.** https://www.cdc.gov/nchs/pressroom/states/georgia/georgia.htm

3. **SAMHSA overdose opioid prevention toolkit. Accessed May 18, 2018.** https://store.samhsa.gov/shin/content//SMA16-4742/SMA16-4742.pdf

4. **Naloxone hydrochloride information. Accessed May 18, 2018.** https://dailymed.nlm.nih.gov/dailymed/drugInfo.cfm?setid=8535cc84-ad4a-4d67-8480-fb5a2e3406f8

5. **Naloxone hydrochloride information. Accessed June 11, 2018.** https://fco.factsandcomparisons.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/fc_dfc/5548711#admin-nested

6. **Naloxone hydrochloride information. Accessed June 11, 2018.** http://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/7338

7. **Evzio Product Information. Accessed June 11, 2018. https://www.Evzio.com**

8. **ACMT and AACT Position Statement: Preventing Occupational Fentanyl and Fentanyl Analog Exposure to Emergency Responders (July 12, 2017). Accessed August 2, 2018. https://www.acmt.net/cgi/page.cgi/_zine.html/The_ACMT_Connection/ACMT_Statement_on_Fentanyl_Exposure**

9. Lexicomp Online. 2018 Wolters Kluwer Clinical Drug Information, Inc. Accessed November 5, 2018. http://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/7338#

OPIOID OVERDOSE RECORD

1. Call 911 and notify delegating physician.
2. Administer naloxone hydrochloride every 2-3 minutes until spontaneous respirations/conditions improves.
3. Place person in recovery position. Check vital signs every 5 minutes until EMS arrives.
4. If necessary, administer 2-person rescue breathing or CPR with bag-valve mask device.

Patient name _____
Patient DOB/age _____

Time 911 called _____
Rescue breaths needed Yes No
Time initiated _____
CPR needed: Yes No
Time initiated _____
CPR discontinued (time) _____
Oxygen started YES NO

Naloxone Dosage Info

If a total of 10 mg has been administered and no improvement do not give more. Administer naloxone hydrochloride every 2-3 minutes until spontaneous respirations/ conditions improve.

Naloxone HCl Solution:
-Infants, children, adolescents: Initial dose is 0.01 mg/kg/dose; if no response, a subsequent dose of 0.1 mg/kg may be given.
- Adults: Naloxone hydrochloride 0.4 mg or 2 mg IM

OR

Naloxone HCl Autoinjector:
0.4 mg or 2mg IM

OR

Intranasal: 2 mg or 4 mg one-time use dispenser. Administer 1 squirt of naloxone in one nostril. Do not prime or test the device prior to administration.

Naloxone Administration

Dose _____ Route ☐ Nasal ☐ IM/Auto
If IM, indicate site _____

Time Dose 1 given _____
Time Dose 2 given _____
Time Dose 3 given _____
Time Dose 4 given _____
Time Dose 5 given _____

* * If a total of 10 mg has been administered and no improvement, opioid overdose may not be the cause of symptoms. Continue to monitor vitals, administer rescue breathing or CPR, if necessary, until paramedics arrive. **

Vital Signs every 5 minutes

Time	B/P	Pulse	Respirations	Pulse Oximetry	Comments

EMS arrival _____ EMS departure _____ Hospital name _____
Patient condition when transported to hospital: _____
_____

Signature of LPN/ RN/APRN _____

HIV

HIV

Review Team:

Sandra Metcalf, MPH, BSN, RN **HIV Office Nurse Consultant** **GA Department of Public Health**	**Gregory Felzien, MD, AAHIVS** **Diplomat: Internal Medicine and Infectious Disease** ***Medical Advisor*** **HIV Office** **GA Department of Public Health**
Gay Campbell, RPh HIV Office GA Department of Public Health	**Yvonne Carter, MD, MPH, AAHIVS** **Cobb/Douglas Health District 3-1**
Cecily Kannapell, RD, LD North Health District 2	**Tonia Parrott, PhD** **GA Public Health Laboratory**
Susan Alt, BSN, RN, ACRN Coastal Health District 9-1	Michael Coker, MSN, RN, ACRN HIV Office Nurse Consultant GA Department of Public Health
Jennifer Jeffers-Smith, RN, APRN Cobb/Douglas District 3-1	Wendy Leonard, FNP BC Columbus Health District 7
Beverly Robertson, BSN, RN, ACRN North Health District 2	

RECOMMENDATIONS FOR USE OF THE HIV/AIDS-RELATED STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOLS

The HIV Nurse Protocol Committee recommends the following HIV-related nurse protocols for use by public health nurses. Use of standard nurse protocols from other areas is strongly encouraged in order to provide comprehensive care. The use of these protocols, such as the STD Nurse Protocols, Women's Health Nurse Protocols and/or other HIV-related protocols by public health nurses should be based on the nurse's experience, training, and competency. In the following HIV/AIDS-Related Standard Nurse Protocols, the term "provider" refers to an APRN or physician.

Due to the rapidly evolving management of HIV disease, the HIV Nurse Protocol Committee recommends that individual protocols be locally updated as Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS) HIV-related guidelines are revised. Compliance with **all** DHHS HIV/AIDS-related guidelines is a requirement of the Health Resources and Service Administration (HRSA) for sites receiving Ryan White Comprehensive AIDS Resources Emergency (CARE) Act funding. These guidelines are considered "living" documents and are available online at the AIDSinfo website http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/; therefore, changes in these guidelines supersede information in the following HIV/AIDS-related nurse protocols.

The HIV Nurse Protocol Committee supports the use of the AIDS Education and Training Centers (AETC) **publication**, "**Guide for HIV/AIDS Clinical Care**," (current edition), as a reference guide for midlevel provider practice available online at http://www.aidsetc.org/. The Committee further recommends use of **this publication** in conjunction with more frequently updated HIV-related guidelines **and references from sources** such as, DHHS, **http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/**, HRSA **https://hab.hrsa.gov/clinical-quality-management/clinical-care-guidelines-and-resources**, **AETC http://www.aidsetc.org, Stanford University, HIV Drug Resistance Database https://hivdb.stanford.edu/, the Georgia CAPUS Resource Hub https://www.gacapus.com/r/ and the Georgia Department of Public Health (DPH) Hepatitis C Testing Toolkit for Primary Care Providers http://dph.georgia.gov/hepatitis-c.**

Advance Practice Registered Nurses (APRNs) should list these documents in the "Reference Guidelines for Practice" section of the APRN protocol agreement and add HIV/AIDS-related medications to the APRN formulary. If the APRN is working under the Nurse Protocol Statute (O.C.G.A. §43-34-23), please note that the APRN agreement must exclude controlled substances. If the APRN is working under prescriptive authority (O.C.G.A. §43-34-25), the APRN agreement may include controlled substances.

HIV infected patients are at higher risk of acquiring many types of infections compared with immunocompetent people. Nurses should ensure that HIV-infected patients receive recommended immunizations. For the latest recommendations see http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/schedules/index.html.
Recommended immunization schedules by medical condition are available at

https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/schedules/easy-to-read/adult.html.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR CONTINUATION OF ANTIRETROVIRAL THERAPY IN HIV-INFECTED ADULT

DEFINITION

Antiretroviral therapy refers to a combination of medications used to treat HIV infection. These drug combinations are commonly called antiretroviral therapy (ART). Currently, there are six classes of these drugs approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA): nucleoside and nucleotide reverse transcriptase inhibitors, non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors, protease inhibitors, fusion inhibitors, Chemokine receptor 5 antagonists, and integrase strand transfer inhibitors. Since the mid-1990s, when studies demonstrated the superiority of three-drug regimens over single or dual drug regimens, national guidelines have mandated the use of three or more drugs in combination to treat HIV infection.

Once an ART regimen is initiated, it is generally continued indefinitely unless the patient experiences medication intolerance, severe side effects, adverse reactions, or treatment failure.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Currently taking an appropriate ART regimen.

2. Reports medication adherence and a desire to continue current ART regimen. **If a release of information is available, contacting the pharmacy for a refill history is recommended, as part of the adherence assessment.**

3. Absence of adverse reactions or significant side effects to antiretroviral medications.

4. Absence of allergies to antiretroviral medications.

5. Obtain a complete medication profile to determine whether or not there are any clinically significant drug-drug interactions, **especially to new medications initiated since the previous assessment.**

NOTE: Medication profiles should include**:** over-the-counter (OTC) medications, herbals, vitamins, and prescription medications**, (including prescribed medications from outside providers). If a release of information is available, then contact the pharmacy, if necessary, in obtaining an up to date medication list.**

OBJECTIVE

1. CD4 count and HIV viral load history.

2. Resistance testing history, **e.g., Genotype, Phenotype, and/or Tropism**.

3. No evidence of virologic or immunologic failure as defined in the Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS) antiretroviral guidelines.

4. Recent **(within 3 months)** complete blood count (CBC) with differential, **comprehensive metabolic panel (assessing** renal and **hepatic function**), and, if indicated, fasting lipid profile are within acceptable values.

5. No evidence of past or current resistance to **any medication contained in the current** ART regimen.

NOTE: **Drug resistance is cumulative; thus, all prior treatment history and resistance test results should be considered when evaluating resistance.** Interpretation of resistance testing is often complex and requires consultation with specialists in HIV drug resistance. Consult the physician regarding results of resistance testing (**e.g., genotypes, phenotypes, and/or tropism**).

6. If ordering abacavir, no evidence of Human Leukocyte Antigen – B*5701 (HLA-B*5701) positive test result.

7. If ordering a CCR5 antagonist (e.g., maraviroc), no evidence of Chemokine receptor 4 (CXCR4) or dual/mixed coreceptor tropism.

NOTE: Maraviroc should only be considered a fully active antiretroviral agent in treatment-experienced patients who have only CCR5 virus and who are naïve to CCR5 inhibitors. A tropism assay must be obtained before a CCR5 inhibitor is used **and maraviroc not initiated if CXCR4 or Dual virus (CCR5/CXCR4) is present**.

ASSESSMENT

No contraindications for continuation of antiretroviral regimen.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Repeat CD4 count and HIV viral load, (if **most recent tests are greater than 3 months old).**

2. Repeat CBC with differential, **comprehensive metabolic panel** (assessing **hepatic** and renal function) **and,** if indicated, **fasting** lipid profile.

3. **Check** pregnancy test **for women of child-bearing age,** if indicated.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Order one-month supply of each antiretroviral medication the patient is currently taking. See the latest DHHS antiretroviral guidelines, "Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in HIV-1 Infected Adults and Adolescents," for recommendations including antiretroviral regimens, agent formulations and dosing, adverse events, and drug-drug interactions. http://www.aidsinfo.nih.gov/. Review the patient's current medication list for possible drug-drug interactions. Includ**ing over-the-counter medications, herbals, vitamins, and** prescription medications**, (including prescribed medications from** outside **providers).**

NOTE: Antiretroviral medications frequently have drug-drug interactions that require dose modifications. Check with the physician, a pharmacist, drug and HIV references, and/or the latest DHHS antiretroviral guidelines for appropriate dose modifications **including for individuals with acute/chronic kidney failure**. Other online references **may be referenced as needed and available, such as:**

a. HIV Insite, *Database of Antiretroviral Drug Interactions*, http://www.hivinsite.org/InSite?page=ar-00-02

b. University of Liverpool, *HIV Drug Interactions,* http://www.hiv-druginteractions.org/

c. University of Maryland Medical Center, *Drug Interaction Tool,* http://umm.edu/health/medical/drug-interaction-tool

d. Lexicomp, http://www.wolterskluwercdi.com/lexicomp-online/

e. Drugs.com, *Drug Interactions Checker,* https://www.drugs.com/drug_interactions.php

PATIENT EDUCATION AND COUNSELING

1. Review current drug regimen including drug storage, dose **(including dose adjustments in kidney failure)**, route of administration, schedule, food requirements or restrictions, side effects, potential drug-drug interactions, and follow-up monitoring.

2. Provide measures to promote adherence such as written medication schedules, pillboxes, **phone apps, alarms, etc.**

3. Discourage patient from stopping ART regimen without consulting provider first.

NOTE: Simultaneously discontinuing all drugs in an ART regimen may lead to "functional" monotherapy of one drug due to the drug's longer half-life compared with the other drugs (e.g., data have shown that efavirenz or nevirapine drug levels may persist for 21 days or longer). Currently there are no guidelines for optimal discontinuation intervals between drugs. Check with the physician concerning discontinuation instructions. Patients with hepatitis B coinfection receiving one or a combination of NRTIs (i.e., emtricitabine, lamivudine, or tenofovir) may experience an exacerbation of hepatitis upon drug discontinuation.

4. Instruct patient to return for scheduled appointment**s**. Stress that failure to keep appointments may result in **gaps in services with possible** discontinuation of medications.

5. Ask patient to immediately report adverse drug reactions, side effects or other changes in health that he/she feels are important to his/her care provider.

NOTE: If patient experiences hypersensitivity reactions to abacavir, it should be discontinued immediately.

If abacavir is stopped due to hypersensitivity reaction, then contact the designated provider immediately and advise the patient to hold all ART until further recommendations are available. If the patient's symptoms are severe, advise the patient to present to the closest ER for an assessment. Patients who have a HLA-B*5701-positive screen should not be prescribed abacavir, and positive status should be recorded **in the client records** as an abacavir allergy. Patients**,** including those with negative screening tests**,** should be warned to consult their provider immediately if they note two or more of the hallmark symptoms, including

fever, skin rash, GI symptoms (nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, abdominal pain), respiratory symptoms (cough, dyspnea, pharyngitis) and/or constitutional symptoms (malaise, fatigue, myalgia) especially during the first month of therapy. If the patient stops taking abacavir because of adverse reactions, it should not be re-started. Abacavir hypersensitivity reactions can be fatal.

6. Instruct patient that HIV medications, especially protease inhibitors and non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors, have a high potential for significant drug interactions.

7. Ask patient to check with his/her pharmacist or provider about interactions before taking a new medication, nutritional or herbal supplement, or OTC drug/product.

8. Request that the patient not “borrow” medications from friends or family or obtain prescription drugs outside the care of his/her physician (e.g., erectile dysfunction agents).

9. Instruct patient to bring all medications, nutritional or herbal supplements, and OTC drugs/products to his/her medical appointments.

FOLLOW-UP

1. **Check patient needs, e.g., AIDS Drug Assistance Program (ADAP), immunizations, labs, etc. If needs are identified, schedule the patient with the provider, case manager, lab, etc., as soon as possible.**

2. **Check for any upcoming provider appointments:**

   a. If no appointment scheduled, schedule with the provider as soon as possible (ideally within 30 days).
   b. If appointment scheduled, consider rescheduling if beyond 30 days.

3. **Review barriers to care and stress the importance of keeping scheduled appointments to minimize gaps in services and potential discontinuation of medications.**

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Refer the following to the **delegating** physician:

    a. Non-adherent patients.
    b. ART regimens that do not follow the latest DHHS treatment guidelines.
    c. Suspected treatment failure.
    d. Adverse reactions to ART or severe/significant side effects.
    e. Results of drug resistance testing.
    f. Patients desiring pregnancy or pregnant.

2. Consult **delegating** physician of the following:

    a. Abnormal lab values.
    b. Medication side effects and/or adverse events.

3. Consult **delegating** physician concerning instructions for discontinuing ART regimens.

4. Consult **delegating** physician concerning antiretroviral therapy in patients with **acute or progressive** renal or hepatic insufficiency.

5. Consult **delegating** physician if a patient on an abacavir-containing regimen is HLA-B*5701 positive.

6. Consult **delegating** physician if a patient on a CCR5 antagonist has CXCR4 or dual/mixed coreceptor tropism.

7. **Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed and HIV/AIDS nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.**

REFERENCES

1. **AETC AIDS Education and Training Center Program, "National Coordinating Center," <https://www.aidsetc.org/> (March 2, 2017).**

2. **Department of Health and Human Services Panel on Antiretroviral Guidelines for Adults and Adolescents, "Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in HIV-1-Infected Adults and Adolescents," July 14, 2016, <http://www.aidsinfo.nih.gov/contentfiles/adultandadolescentgl.pdf> (March 1, 2017).**

3. **Drugs.com, "Drug Interactions Checker," March 2017, <https://www.drugs.com/drug_interactions.php> (March 2, 2017).**

4. **Facts and Comparisons, "Facts and Comparisons," *Clinical Drug Information, LLC*, 2017, <http://online.factsandcomparisons.com/index.aspx> (March 13, 2017).**

5. **Lexi-Comp, Inc., "Lexi-Comp Online," *Wolters Kluwer Health, Inc.*, 2017, <http://online.lexi.com> (March 13, 2017).**

6. **Stanford University, "HIV Drug Resistance Database," *HIVdb Program,* December 9, 2016, <https://hivdb.stanford.edu/hivdb/by-mutations/> (March 2, 2017).**

7. **University of California, San Francisco, UCSF Center for HIV Information,** "HIV InSite," *Database of Antiretroviral Drug Interactions,* **2017, <http://hivinsite.ucsf.edu/InSite?page=ar-00-02> (March 1, 2017).**

8. **University of Liverpool, "HIV Drug Interactions," March 1, 2017, <http://www.hiv-druginteractions.org/> (March 1, 2017).**

9. **University of Maryland Medical Center, "Drug Interaction Tool," 2017, <http://umm.edu/health/medical/drug-interaction-tool> (March 3, 2017).**

10. **U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, "Table 3. Laboratory Testing Schedule for Monitoring HIV-Infected Patients Before and After Initiation of Antiretroviral Therapy," AIDSinfo Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in HIV-1-Infected Adults and Adolescents Laboratory Testing for Initial Assessment and Monitoring of HIV-Infected Patients on Antiretroviral Therapy, (July 14, 2016), <https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/1/adult-and-adolescent-arv-guidelines/3/tests-for-initial-assessment-and-follow-up> (June 1, 2017).**

11. **U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Health Resources and Services**

Administration, HIV/AIDS Bureau, "Guide for HIV/AIDS Clinical Care," April 2014, <https://aidsetc.org/guide/contents> (March 1, 2017).

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR DISSEMINATED MYCOBACTERIUM AVIUM COMPLEX PROPHYLAXIS IN HIV-INFECTED ADULT

DEFINITION

HIV-infected persons with CD4 counts less than 50 **cells**/mm^3 should receive primary prophylaxis to prevent a first episode of disseminated *Mycobacterium avium* complex (DMAC) disease. **In the absence of antibiotic prophylaxis, DMAC occurs in up to 40% of HIV-infected patients with CD4 counts of less than 50 cells/mm^3.**

Persons with DMAC should receive lifelong therapy (**e.g**., secondary prophylaxis or maintenance therapy), unless immune reconstitution occurs due to antiretroviral therapy (ART).

ETIOLOGY

***Mycobacterium avium* is the etiologic agent in greater than 95% of HIV-infected patients who acquire DMAC. *Mycobacterium avium* complex (MAC)** organisms **are common** in the environment, **and have been isolated in sources, e.g.,** food, water, soil and animals. MAC organisms **usually** enter the body via the gastrointestinal or respiratory tracts, **and person-to-person transmission is unlikely. Of note, an estimated 7% to 12% of adults have been previously infected with MAC, therefore DMAC typically results from new infection instead of reactivation of latent infection.**

SUBJECTIVE

1. May or may not have a history of DMAC and/or treatment for DMAC.

2. No history of active tuberculosis (TB).

3. No symptoms suggestive of DMAC (e.g., fevers, chills, night sweats, weight loss, abdominal pain or diarrhea).

4. Absence of allergies to macrolide antibiotics (e.g.**,** azithromycin**,** clarithromycin, erythromycin) or ethambutol.

5. **No history of cholestatic jaundice/hepatic dysfunction associated with prior use of azithromycin.**

6. Obtain a **complete** medication profile to determine whether there are any clinically significant drug-drug interactions with treatment.

NOTE: Medication profiles should include: over-the-counter medications,

herbals, vitamins, and prescription medications **(including prescribed medications from outside providers). If a release of information is available, then contact the pharmacy, if necessary, in obtaining an up to date medication list.**

OBJECTIVE

1. CD4 count less than 50 **cells**/mm^3, unless history of DMAC disease with treatment.

2. Absence of signs of current DMAC infection (e.g., weight loss, fever, enlarged spleen or liver, abdominal tenderness).

3. If blood culture for MAC performed, is negative for MAC.

4. **Recent (within 3 months)** complete blood count (CBC) with differential, comprehensive metabolic panel (assessing renal and hepatic function) **and, if indicated, fasting lipid profile** are within acceptable values.

5. No signs of active TB.

ASSESSMENT

Candidate for DMAC prophylaxis (primary or secondary), at risk of DMAC disease**.**

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. If recent (within 3 months) MAC blood culture results not available, order blood culture for MAC.

2. If recent results not available, order CBC with differential, comprehensive metabolic panel (assessing renal and hepatic function), and, if indicated, fasting lipid profile.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Primary Prophylaxis (Prevention of First Episode of DMAC Disease)

If no history of DMAC, and CD4 count less than 50 **cells**/mm^3, order:

a. Azithromycin 1,200mg by mouth once per week

OR

b. **Azithromycin 600mg by mouth twice weekly**

OR

c. Clarithromycin 500mg by mouth two times/day.

2. Secondary Prophylaxis (Chronic Maintenance Therapy)

If history of DMAC disease with treatment, order:

a. Preferred Therapy: Clarithromycin 500mg by mouth two times/day

PLUS

Ethambutol 15mg/kg by mouth daily
.

OR

b. Azithromycin 600mg by mouth daily **(when drug interactions or intolerance precludes the use of clarithromycin**):

PLUS

Ethambutol 15mg/kg by mouth daily

NOTE: Testing of susceptibility to clarithromycin or azithromycin is recommended. Ethambutol and Macrolides may require dosage adjustment in patient with renal and or hepatic impairment. Consult with physician regarding appropriate dosing.

NOTE: Aluminum- and magnesium-containing antacids decrease serum levels of azithromycin. Avoid concurrent administration of aluminum or magnesium containing antacids with azithromycin. **Azithromycin should be administered at least 1 hour before or 2 hours after aluminum or magnesium containing antacids.** Aluminum-containing antacids decrease absorption of ethambutol. Avoid concurrent administration of aluminum-containing antacids for at least 4 hours following ethambutol. Clarithromycin has many drug-drug interactions and doses may need to be adjusted. If break-through DMAC occurs, there is a chance it may be macrolide resistant. Rifabutin is an alternative prophylactic agent for DMAC disease but, because of associated drug interactions, physicians should make the decision about ordering this medication.

If ethambutol ordered, conduct baseline vision assessment, which includes subjective symptoms (e.g., blurred vision, blind spots), visual acuity screening and red-green color discrimination.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Explain reason for regimen. Review current drug regimen, including: drug storage, dose, route of administration, schedule, side effects, **clinically significant drug interactions** and follow-up monitoring.

2. Instruct patient to stop the medications and immediately report adverse drug reactions, side effects (e.g., rash, vomiting, severe diarrhea, fever, chills, numbness or tingling in arms or legs, persistent loss of appetite, vision changes) or other changes in health that he/she feels are important to his/her provider.

3. If patient is taking ethambutol**,** instruct to report vision changes immediately.

NOTE: Ethambutol-related visual impairment has been estimated to occur in 2.25% receiving ethambutol at standard doses. Risk-benefits should be assessed especially in young children, unconscious patients, or any other patient who may be unable to discern and report visual changes. The onset of optic neuritis is usually greater than 1 month after treatment initiation but can occur within days. A baseline visual acuity (Snellen test) and color discrimination tests followed by monthly color discrimination tests are performed during ethambutol use. To avoid permanent deficits, ethambutol is promptly discontinued if visual abnormalities are found as effects are normally reversible, but reversal may require up to a year.

4. Instruct that taking medications as ordered and keeping appointments is very important to prevent this life-threatening illness.

5. Explain that prophylaxis may be discontinued due to sustained rise in CD4 count while on ART, but may need to be re-started in the event of stopping ART, CD4 counts dropping **to less than 100 cells/mm^3** or if health condition worsens.

6. Instruct patient to report any signs and symptoms of DMAC to his/her provider.

7. Ask female patient to inform her provider if she is, or is planning to become, pregnant.

8. Educate patients who receive Azithromycin about adverse effects (QT Prolongation, torsades de pointes, etc.) and document the patient's understanding.

9. **Ask patient to check with his/her pharmacist or provider about interactions before taking a new medication, nutritional or herbal supplement, or OTC drug/product.**

FOLLOW-UP

1. Check for any upcoming provider appointments:

   a. If no appointment scheduled, schedule with the provider as soon as possible (ideally within 30 days).
   b. If appointment scheduled, consider rescheduling if beyond 30 days.

2. Monitor for medication adherence, adverse drug events and medication side effects.

3. Monitor vision in patients taking ethambutol by providing vision checks monthly, which include **asking patient about subjective vision changes (e.g., blurred vision, blind spots),** visual acuity **screening** and red/green color discrimination.

4. **Obtain a complete medication profile to determine whether there are any clinically significant drug-drug interactions, especially to new medication initiated since the previous assessment.**

5. Obtain and monitor **lab values for** CBC with differential and **comprehensive metabolic panel (assessing renal and hepatic function) within** 4 to 6 weeks **after** initiation of regimen and then as indicated.

6. Monitor for signs/symptoms of DMAC.

7. Obtain and monitor CD4 counts and percentage at least every 3 to 6 months:

   a. Discontinue primary prophylaxis in patients who have responded to ART and have sustained CD4 counts greater than 100 cells/mm^3 for 3 months or more. Primary prophylaxis should be reintroduced if the CD4 count decreases to less than 50 cells/mm^3.
   b. Discontinue secondary prophylaxis in patients who have completed at least 12 months treatment for DMAC, are asymptomatic for DMAC, and have sustained CD4 counts greater than 100 cells/mm^3 for 6 months or more in response to ART. Secondary prophylaxis should be reintroduced if the CD4 count decreases to less than 100 cells/mm^3.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Notify the **delegating** physician of the following:

   a. Abnormal lab values.
   b. Medication side effects and/or adverse events.
   c. Signs/symptoms of DMAC.
   d. Changes in **vision (e.g., blurred vision, blind spots),** visual acuity **screening and** red/green color discrimination.

2. Refer pregnant patients to **delegating** physician.

3. Defer the decision to initiate rifabutin as an alternative prophylactic agent for DMAC disease to the **delegating** physician.

4. **Consult with the delegating physician concerning dosage adjustments for patient with abnormal renal or hepatic function tests.**

5. **Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed and HIV/AIDS nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.**

REFERENCES

1. **CredibleMeds, "Combined List of Drugs that Prolong QT and/or Cause Torsades De Pointes (TDP)", May 31, 2014, <https://www.crediblemeds.org/pdftemp/pdf/CompositeList.pdf> (May 31, 2017).**

2. **Facts and Comparisons, "Facts and Comparisons," *Clinical Drug Information, LLC*, 2017, <http://online.factsandcomparisons.com/index.aspx> (April 11, 2017).**

3. **Lexi-Comp, Inc., "Lexi-Comp Online," *Wolters Kluwer Health, Inc.,* 2017, <http://online.lexi.com> (April 11, 2017).**

4. **Payam Nahid, et al., "Official American Thoracic Society/Centers for Disease Control and Prevention/Infectious Diseases Society of America Clinical Practice Guidelines: Treatment of Drug-Susceptible Tuberculosis," *Clinical Infectious Diseases,* Vol. 63, October 2016, p. e169.**

5. **Panel on Opportunistic Infections in HIV-Infected Adults and Adolescents. "Guidelines for the prevention and treatment of opportunistic infections in HIV-infected adults and adolescents: recommendations from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, the National Institutes of Health, and the HIV Medicine Association of the Infectious Diseases Society of America," May 7, 2013, <http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/contentfiles/lvguidelines/adult_oi.pdf> (April 11, 2017).**

6. **SADS Foundation, "Acquired, Drug-Induced Long QT Syndrome," *Acquired, Drug-Induced Long QT Syndrome, A Guide for Patients and Health Care Providers,* April 2006, <http://www.nhs.uk/conditions/long-QT-syndrome/Documents/Acquired-LQT-Brochure06.pdf> (May 31, 2017). (Current)**

7. **UpToDate, "Ethambutol: Drug Information Lexicomp," 2017, <https://www.uptodate.com/contents/Ethambutol-drug-information?source=preview&search=Ethambutol&anchor=F168094%20-%20F168094> (March 27, 2017).**

8. **UpToDate, "Ethambutol an Overview," August 23, 2016, <https://www.uptodate.com/contents/Ethambutol-an-overview> (March 27, 2017).**

9. **U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, "Table 3. Laboratory Testing Schedule for Monitoring HIV-Infected Patients Before and After Initiation of Antiretroviral Therapy," *AIDSinfo Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in HIV-1-Infected Adults and Adolescents Laboratory Testing for Initial Assessment and Monitoring of HIV-Infected Patients on Antiretroviral Therapy*, July 14, 2016, <https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/1/adult-and-adolescent-arv-guidelines/3/tests-for-initial-assessment-and-follow-up> June 1, 2017.**

10. **U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Health Resources and Services Administration, HIV/AIDS Bureau, "Guide for HIV/AIDS Clinical Care," April 2014, <https://aidsetc.org/guide/contents> (April 11, 2017).**

11. **U.S. Food and Drug Administration, "FDA Drug Safety Communication: Azithromycin (Zithromax or Zmax) and the risk of potentially fatal heart rhythms," March 12, 2013 <www.fda.gov/Drugs/DrugSafety/ucm341822.htm> (March 27, 2017**).

12. U.S. National Library of Medicine, DailyMed, "Ethambutol Hydrochloride," February 1, 2017, <https://dailymed.nlm.nih.gov/dailymed/drugInfo.cfm?setid=c732b415-e1f9-478f-896d-1dc8b6362da4> (March 28, 2017).

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR HERPES ZOSTER (SHINGLES) IN HIV-INFECTED ADULT

DEFINITION

Herpes zoster is a viral illness that usually presents as a vesicular rash, with pain and itching, in a unilateral dermatomal distribution. The duration of vesicles and crusts, as well as significant pain, is usually 2-3 weeks. Thoracic dermatomes are most frequently involved, followed by cranial nerve, cervical, lumbar, and sacral dermatomes. Involvement of the trigeminal nerve can cause infection of the eye, which may lead to blindness.

Herpes zoster is seen throughout the course of HIV infection and is particularly common in healthy-appearing individuals before the onset of other HIV-related symptoms, but frequency of disease is highest with CD4 counts less than 200 cells/mm^3 and is not reduced by antiretroviral therapy. It may be particularly painful, necrotic and hemorrhagic in HIV-infected persons. Necrotic lesions may last for up to six weeks and cause severe scarring. Secondary bacterial infections of the skin may occur, which may be severe (e.g., necrotizing fasciitis) and require hospitalization.

Most herpes zoster-related complications in HIV-infected patients, including disseminated herpes zoster, occur in patients with CD4 counts less than 200 cells/mm^3. Viral dissemination may occur to the visceral organs (e.g., lungs) and the CNS. The CNS is the primary target for herpes zoster dissemination in patients co-infected with HIV. **Various VZV-related neurologic syndromes may occur (e.g., CNS vasculitis, multifocal leukoencephalitis, ventriculitis, myelitis, myeloradiculitis, optic neuritis, cranial nerve palsies, focal brain-stem lesions, and aseptic meningitis).**

Patients with advanced HIV infection may present with prolonged lesion formation and viral dissemination. Cutaneous dissemination can result in hundreds of vesicles outside the primary dermatome and may be difficult to distinguish from primary varicella **(e.g.,** chickenpox)**. Disseminated VZV infection may appear as widespread blisters with or without an associated dermatomal eruption, or may present as widespread ecthymatous ulcers or hyperkeratotic verrucous lesions. Although HIV-infected patients may have a severely impaired immune system response, the majority of HIV-infected patients with zoster do not develop life-threatening complications, and most patients have an uncomplicated clinical course.**

NOTE: VZV is contagious and contact or airborne-spread from vesicle fluid may cause chickenpox in non-immune persons *(*e.**g**., no history of chickenpox or shingles and/or varicella seronegative). Non-immune healthcare workers, **especially if pregnant or planning to become pregnant**, should not take care of patients with VZV infection until all of the patient's lesions are dry and crusted. **Immune reconstitution following initiation of ART appears to be associated with an increased frequency of VZV reactivation (e.g., 2- to 4-fold increased risk between 4 and 16 weeks after initiating ART). The clinical presentation and natural history of VZV in the setting of immune reconstitution do not differ from those observed in other HIV-infected patients.**

ETIOLOGY

Herpes zoster is caused by reactivation of VZV (e.**g**., reactivation of chickenpox).

SUBJECTIVE

1. May report numbness, itching or pain in a dermatomal distribution that precedes the appearance of lesions by many days (prodrome).

2. Complains of painful and/or itching skin blisters or ulcerations along one side of the face or body.

3. May complain of:

   a. Severe pain in area after rash has healed.
   b. Disseminated skin lesions.
   c. Loss of or change in vision.
   d. Respiratory symptoms.
   e. Symptoms of encephalitis (e.g., headaches, vomiting, lethargy, ataxia, tremor and dizziness).

4. Conduct pain assessment using pain tool/scale (e.g., faces of pain or 0-10 numerical scale).

5. May report a history of:

   a. Shingles.
   b. Chickenpox.

6. Obtain a **complete** medication profile to determine whether there are any clinically significant drug-drug interactions with treatment.

NOTE: Medication profiles should include: over-the-counter

medications, herbals, vitamins, and prescription medications **(including prescribed medications from outside providers). If a release of information is available, then contact the pharmacy, if necessary, in obtaining an up to date medication list.**

7. Absence of drug allergies to acyclovir, valacyclovir or famciclovir.

OBJECTIVE

1. Vesicular lesions with erythematous bases following dermatomes; may be bullous, hemorrhagic and/or necrotic.

NOTE: Lesions in the eye area or tip of nose, along the trigeminal nerve, represent a therapeutic emergency **and the patient should be evaluated immediately in the Emergency Room.**

2. May have allodynia (e.**g.**, pain provoked by normally innocuous stimuli) and/or sensory deficits.

3. May have dermatomal scarring and/or hypopigmentation.

4. May or may not have signs of disseminated skin or visceral disease (e.g., respiratory signs, altered mental status).

5. Review previous lab results for evidence of renal impairment.

6. **Recent CD4 count (within the last 3 months).**

ASSESSMENT

Herpes Zoster

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Swabs collected from the base of a fresh lesion can be submitted for viral culture, direct fluorescent antigen testing, or polymerase chain reaction (PCR). **In addition, scabs are very good specimens for PCR testing. When submitting specimens for PCR, please consult the laboratory performing the test for sample requirements, i.e., samples sent to the CDC should be collected as advised at https://www.cdc.gov/chickenpox/hcp/lab-tests.html.**

   Swabs being collected for PCR testing at Georgia Public Health Laboratory, http://dph.georgia.gov/sites/dph.georgia.gov/files/related_files/site_page/LSM2013_June.docx%207.3.13.pdf should be placed in a separate empty container. Unlike swabs collected

for viral culture, the swab should remain dry and should not be placed into transport media. If only one specimen can be collected, PCR is more sensitive and should be the primary method of testing.

2. **If recent results not available, order CBC with differential, complete metabolic panel (assessing hepatic and renal function), and, if indicated, fasting lipid panel.**

3. **If recent (within 3 months) CD4 count not available, order CD4 count.**

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. If patient does not have clinical features of disseminated or visceral infection, and if lesions are not near the eye, begin treatment:

PREFERRED:

a. Valacyclovir 1 **gram** by mouth three times/day for 7 to 10 days.

OR

b. Famciclovir 500mg by mouth three times/day for 7 to 10 days,

OR

c. Acyclovir by mouth 800mg 5 times/day for 7 to 10 days.

NOTE: Longer duration of therapy should be considered if lesions resolve slowly.

NOTE: Treatment should begin within 72 hours of outbreak. Prompt treatment should be instituted in all immunosuppressed patients with herpes zoster if presentation occurs within 1 week of rash onset or any time before full crusting of lesions. Famciclovir or valacyclovir are the recommended treatment for localized dermatomal herpes zoster. Dose reductions are required for patients with renal impairment. **Exercise caution when treating elderly patients who are more likely to have renal or CNS adverse reactions.** Acyclovir resistant zoster has been reported in AIDS patients previously treated with acyclovir. If the patient

does not respond to therapy or acyclovir resistance is known or suspected, contact the provider for other options.

2. For pain management: May instruct patient to try over-the-counter analgesics but to avoid aspirin because of the risk of Reye syndrome.

NOTE: Postherpetic neuralgia is the most common complication of herpes zoster causing persistent pain in the area of where the previous rash resolved. Postherpetic neuralgia can last for weeks or months and occasionally, for many years. Risk of postherpetic neuralgia increases with age and older adults are more likely to have longer lasting and more severe pain. Postherpetic neuralgia is rare in individuals younger than 40 years old, but approximately 13% (and possibly more) of people 60 years of age and older with herpes zoster will get postherpetic neuralgia. Other predictors of postherpetic neuralgia include the level of pain a person has when they have the rash and the size of their rash. Patients diagnosed with postherpetic neuralgia may require prescription medications (e.g., Nortriptyline, Gabapentin, Pregabalin, Lidocaine 5% patches, Capsaicin cream or Sustained-release opiates), and should be referred to the prescribing provider if additional pain management is indicated.

For patients with uncomplicated zoster, there is no role for adjuvant agents, such as gabapentin, tricyclic antidepressants, or glucocorticoids, in the acute setting. As an example, there are no definitive data to suggest that tricyclic antidepressants in patients with herpes zoster prevent postherpetic neuralgia from developing, and the risk of adverse events with tricyclic antidepressants is increased in elderly patients.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Bathe skin lesions in mild soap and water. Avoid deodorant astringent soaps. Use a separate cloth for bathing affected area to avoid dissemination. Pat skin dry without rubbing it.

2. **Warm** saline wet-to-dry dressing can be applied 2-3 times/day to necrotic tissue **and lesions gently debrided. Lesions should be kept clean and dry as much as possible.**

3. Antibiotic ointments **may be applied to** aid in the prevention of

secondary infection **and to keep dressings from sticking**.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Inform patient that VZV is contagious, and contact or airborne spread from vesicle fluid may cause chickenpox in non-immune persons *(*e.**g**., no history of chickenpox or shingles). Patient should avoid exposing non-immune persons to VZV. If a non-immune person, **especially a pregnant woman, some infants or immunocompromised individual**, has been exposed, he/she should seek medical care as soon as possible (within 96 hours after exposure) to receive prophylactic **assessment and** treatment **(e.g., VariZIG, vaccine, etc.). Refer to the GA-DPH STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR CHILDHOOD AND ADULT IMMUNIZATIONS.**

2. Review current drug regimen, including: drug storage, dose, route of administration, schedule, side effects, **drug interactions** and follow-up monitoring.

3. Instruct patient to report adverse drug reactions or side effects to his/her provider.

4. Instruct patient to report: signs/symptoms of disseminated disease, secondary infections (e.g., fever, worsening skin lesions), and facial lesions, especially near eye or on tip of nose or recurrence of lesions to provider. **Delays in assessment should be minimized and the patient should be instructed to present to the local Emergency Room for any severe symptoms or inability in reaching the clinic for recommendations.**

5. Explain that pain may continue even after skin lesions heal and patient should inform provider of continued pain.

6. Explain that recurrences may occur, and to notify his/her provider.

7. Ask female patient to inform her provider if she is, or is planning to become pregnant.

FOLLOW-UP

As needed, until lesions heal.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. **Patients presenting with** lesions on the face, **tip of nose,** near the eye, **or complaints of visual disturbances should be evaluated immediately in the Emergency Room, as this represents a therapeutic emergency. Delays in evaluation should be minimized and the client should be assessed the same day.**

2. Refer all patients with severe, disseminated or visceral infection, or renal impairment/failure to **delegating** physician. **Delays in evaluation should be minimized in clients with severe disease and the client should be assessed the same day with referral to the Emergency Room if necessary.**

3. Consult **delegating** physician regarding appropriate pain management.

4. Consult **delegating** physician if signs/symptoms of secondary infection are present.

5. Refer pregnant patients to **delegating** physician.

6. **Consult delegating physician for:**

    a. Abnormal lab results.
    b. Medication side effects and/or adverse events.

7. Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed and HIV/AIDS nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

REFERENCES

1. **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, "Shingles (Herpes Zoster)," August 19, 2016, <https://www.cdc.gov/shingles/hcp/clinical-overview.html> (March 29, 2017).**

2. **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, "Interpreting Laboratory Tests," *Chickenpox (Varicella)*, July 1, 2016, <https://www.cdc.gov/chickenpox/hcp/lab-tests.html> (April 10, 2017).**

3. **Columbia University Department of Neurological Surgery, "Postherpetic Neuralgia," *Columbia Neurosurgeons, Department of Neurosurgery, 2017*, <http://www.columbianeurosurgery.org/conditions/postherpetic-neuralgia/> (April 10, 2017).**

4. **Facts and Comparisons, "Facts and Comparisons," *Clinical Drug Information, LLC,* 2017, <http://online.factsandcomparisons.com/index.aspx> (April 10, 2017).**

5. **Georgia Department of Public Health, "Georgia Public Health Laboratory Service Manual," *Georgia Public Health Laboratory,* 2013 <http://dph.georgia.gov/sites/dph.georgia.gov/files/related_files/site_page/LSM2013_June.docx%207.3.13.pdf> (April 20, 2017).**

6. **Lexi-Comp, Inc., "Lexi-Comp Online," *Wolters Kluwer Health, Inc.*, 2017, <http://online.lexi.com> (April 10, 2017).**

7. **Medscape, "Pain Assessment," WebMD, LLC, June 13, 2016, <http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/1948069-overview> (March 26, 2017).**

8. **Panel on Opportunistic Infections in HIV-Infected Adults and Adolescents. "Guidelines for the prevention and treatment of opportunistic infections in HIV-infected adults and adolescents: recommendations from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, the National Institutes of Health, and the HIV Medicine Association of the Infectious Diseases Society of America," July 8, 2013, <http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/contentfiles/lvguidelines/adult_oi.pdf> (April 10, 2017).**

9. **University of California San Francisco, "Varicella Zoster Virus and HIV," *HIVInSite*, November 2011, <http://hivinsite.ucsf.edu/InSite?page=kb-05-03-01#S1X> (March 26, 2017).**

10. **U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, "Table 3. Laboratory Testing Schedule for Monitoring HIV-Infected Patients Before and After Initiation of Antiretroviral Therapy," *AIDSinfo Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in HIV-1-Infected Adults and Adolescents Laboratory Testing for Initial***

***Assessment and Monitoring of HIV-Infected Patients on Antiretroviral Therapy*, July 14, 2016, <https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/1/adult-and-adolescent-arv-guidelines/3/tests-for-initial-assessment-and-follow-up> June 1, 2017.**

11. **U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Health Resources and Services Administration, HIV/AIDS Bureau, "Guide for HIV/AIDS Clinical Care," April 2014, <https://aidsetc.org/guide/contents> (April 10, 2017).**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR NEW ONSET (ACUTE) DIARRHEA IN HIV-INFECTED ADULT

DEFINITION Acute diarrhea is a change in normal bowel movements characterized by abrupt or gradual onset of frequent (more than 3-4 per day) **loose** stools for more than 3 days and less than 14 days. Large volume of stools with periumbilical pain usually indicates small bowel disease. Small volume, frequent stools, which may be associated with urgency, tenesmus, lower abdominal cramps or perianal pain, are usually associated with colonic and/or anorectal disease.

ETIOLOGY There are many possible causes of acute diarrhea ranging from medication side effects to infections **and non-infectious etiologies**.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Assess pattern of diarrhea: onset, duration amount, frequency, and appearance (e.g., foul-smelling, frothy, black, watery, visible blood, pus, mucus).

2. Assess whether diarrhea is interfering with activities of daily living.

3. May or may not be accompanied by one or more of the following:

    a. Fever.
    b. Abdominal pain/cramping.
    c. Nausea and/or vomiting.
    d. Bloating.
    e. Urgency.
    f. Tenesmus (i.e., anal pain and spasms that may include the urge to defecate without being able to pass stool).
    g. Perianal pain and/or sores.
    h. Recent involuntary weight loss.
    i. Difficulty urinating.

4. May or may not have symptoms of dehydration (e.g., thirst, decrease in urine output, dark-colored urine, dry skin and mucous membranes, fatigue, light-headedness, and rapid heartbeat).

5. May or may not report a history of the following:

    a. Taking medications, which may cause diarrhea (e.g., protease inhibitors**, cobicistat, laxative use/abuse**).
    b. Antibiotics taken within the last 6-8 weeks.
    c. Recent hospitalization.
    d. Recent travel to a foreign and/or developing country or

camping trip.

e. Exposure to potentially contaminated food or water (e.g., ingestion of raw meat, eggs**,** or shellfish, lake or stream or well water, or recalled food products).
f. Recent herbal or alternative therapies.
g. Exposure to a pet or another animal with diarrhea.
h. Exposure to a coworker or family member with similar illness.
i. Recent receptive anal sex and/or oral-anal sexual contact and/or sexually transmitted disease.
j. Working in daycare, healthcare, or food industry.
k. Food intolerance (e.g., lactose intolerance).
l. Irritable bowel syndrome or inflammatory bowel disease.
m. Anxiety disorders, panic attacks, or new emotional stress.
n. Eating disorder.
o. Alcohol or other recreational drug use.

6. Obtain a complete medication profile to determine whether there are any clinically significant drug-drug interactions with treatment.

NOTE: Medication profiles should include: over-the-counter medications, herbals, vitamins, and prescription medications (including prescribed medications from outside providers). If a release of information is available, then contact the pharmacy, if necessary, in obtaining an up to date medication list.

OBJECTIVE

1. May or may not have fever and/or recent weight loss.

2. May or may not have signs of dehydration (e.g., **orthostatic hypotension (a decline in systolic BP greater than 20 mm Hg with supine to standing and/or increase in heart rate greater than 20 beats/min.),** tachycardia, dry mucous membranes, poor skin turgor, and lethargy).

3. May or may not have hyperactive or hypoactive bowel sounds, abdominal tenderness or distention, organomegaly, perianal lesions or tissue breakdown, or heme-positive stools.

4. Recent CD4 count **(within last 3 months).**

5. If stool samples previously collected during current symptoms, are negative for *C. difficile, Salmonella, Shigella* or *Campylobacter*.

ASSESSMENT New onset (acute) diarrhea

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

1. **If results of recent CD4 count not available, order CD4 count.**

2. **If recent results not available, order CBC with differential, comprehensive metabolic panel (assessing renal and hepatic function), and, if indicated, fasting lipid profile.**

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

If patient is afebrile and without bloody stools and/or abdominal pain, and diarrhea is concomitant with starting of antiretroviral agents (e.g., **protease inhibitors or cobicistat**), may order:

1. Calcium 500mg tablets by mouth two times/day for 7 days,

AND/OR

2. Loperamide **hydrochloride** (HCL) 4mg by mouth initially, followed by 2mg by mouth after each **loose** stool **until symptoms are controlled;** to a maximum of 16mg/day for 7 days.

NOTE: Antidiarrheal agents should not be used in cases of bloody diarrhea or **in patient's that are highly suspect for** suspect *C. difficile*-related, ***Salmonella, Shigella* or *Campylobacter*** diarrhea. In patients taking atazanavir or tipranavir, avoid simultaneous administration of antacids (e.g., Tums **(calcium carbonate)**); give atazanavir or tipranavir 2 hours before or 1 hour after these medications.

NOTE: Loperamide HCL is not a controlled substance. Potential abuse and dependence is possible, primarily being misused for relief from opioid withdrawal, and abused by a few users who obtain some (reportedly mild-moderate) level of euphoria. Cases of Torsades de Pointes, cardiac arrest, and death have been reported with the use of a higher than recommended dosages.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Adjust diet and fluid intake to decrease diarrhea and maintain adequate hydration and electrolyte levels (see below in client education/counseling).

2. If history of lactose intolerance, avoid dairy products or take lactaid pills before ingesting dairy products.

NOTE: Diarrheal disease can produce temporary malabsorption or lactose intolerance.

NOTE: If allergic to milk or dairy products or sensitive to lactose, avoid using Lactobacillus products. Cases of severe infections with Lactobacillus have been reported in patients with late stage AIDS.

3. If diarrhea is associated with recent antibiotic therapy the normal bacterial flora of the intestinal tract may be **disrupted, and may self-resolve after discontinuation of antibiotics. The effectiveness and safety of probiotics in HIV-infected patients with diarrheal illness has not been adequately studied. Current HIV/AIDS care guidelines recommend a bland diet, with avoidance of fat, dairy and complex carbohydrates.**

4. **Discontinue any newly started herbal or alternative therapy**.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Instruct patient to maintain hydration and electrolyte levels by ingesting ½-strength Gatorade, broth, soups, ½-strength fruit juices.

NOTE: Formula**s** for inexpensive oral rehydration solution**s include:**

- **a. Combine ½ teaspoon of salt, 1 teaspoon of baking soda, 8 teaspoons of sugar, and 8 ounces of orange juice; add water to make 1 liter and drink.**
- **b. Drink 1 glass containing 8 ounces of apple, orange, or other juice, ½ teaspoon of corn syrup or honey; and a pinch of salt; then drink 1 glass containing 8 ounces of water and ¼ teaspoon of baking soda.**
- **c. Mix ½ cup of dry, precooked baby rice cereal with 2 cups of water (boil first in areas of poor water quality); add ¼ teaspoon of salt and drink.**

2. Instruct patient to avoid foods that tend to aggravate diarrhea, including milk/dairy products, and foods that are greasy, high-fiber or very sweet. Also, avoid products that contain alcohol or caffeine.

3. Encourage client to eat small meals every 2-3 hours. Gradually add soft, bland foods to diet, including bananas, plain rice, boiled potatoes, toast, crackers, cooked carrots, and skinless baked chicken.

4. Instruct patient to keep perianal area clean and dry. May use sitz baths and perineal hygiene cleaners and skin-protection ointments to maintain skin integrity.

5. Inform patient given calcium or loperamide HCL that he/she should experience improvement of symptoms within a few days. If symptoms do not improve within 2-3 days or if symptoms worsen, contact provider **immediately**. If constipation occurs, reduce doses or discontinue calcium and/or loperamide.

NOTE: Instruct patients taking atazanavir or tipranavir to avoid simultaneous administration of antacids (e.g., Tums **(calcium carbonate)**); take atazanavir or tipranavir 2 hours before or 1 hour after antacids.

6. Stress the importance of not stopping antiretroviral therapy or other medications unless he/she has consulted with his/her provider first.

7. If suspect infectious diarrhea, instruct patient to not work as a food handler or return to work, i.e. daycare center, healthcare worker, until diarrhea is controlled. Stress importance of hand washing. **Patient should contact, if available, their occupational health department concerning work policy on diarrheal illnesses.**

8. Instruct patient on ways to prevent diarrhea in the future, including: drinking bottled or purified water, using proper food handling and cooking techniques, avoiding recalled food products, and performing proper hand-washing techniques.

FOLLOW-UP

Return appointment as needed with provider if symptoms have not

improved/resolved.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Refer patient immediately to the **delegating** physician or direct to the closest emergency room for severe symptoms for any of the following (patient may require hospitalization):

    a. Fever over 101 degrees Fahrenheit.
    b. Blood in the stool.
    c. Signs and symptoms of dehydration.
    d. Profuse diarrhea.
    e. CD4 counts less than100 cells/mm^3.
    f. Abdominal pain and/or distention.
    g. Perianal pain and/or lesions.
    h. Recent involuntary weight loss of 3-5 lbs. or more.
    i. Difficulty urinating.
    j. Suspect infectious agent causing diarrhea.
    k. Suspect laxative abuse.

2. **Refer patient to delegating physician for immediate consultation, if patient's CD4 count is between 100 and 200 cells/mm^3.**

3. Consult with **delegating** physician to discontinue and/or change medications that may be causing diarrhea.

4. Refer to mental health provider if patient has new emotional stress, history of eating disorder/laxative abuse, anxiety disorder or panic attacks.

5. May refer to dietitian/nutritionist for further dietary recommendations.

6. Consult **delegating** physician concerning patients who have persistent diarrhea for greater than 7 days **despite** taking antidiarrheal agents.

7. **Consult delegating physician for:**

    a. Abnormal lab results.
    b. Medication side effects and/or adverse events.

8. **Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed and HIV/AIDS nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.**

REFERENCES

1. **Oskar Adolfsson, et al., "Yogurt and Gut Function," *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition,* Vol. 80, 2004, pp. 245-256. (Current).**

2. **Department of Health and Human Services Panel on Antiretroviral Guidelines for Adults and Adolescents, "Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in HIV-1-Infected Adults and Adolescents," July 14, 2016, <http://www.aidsinfo.nih.gov/contentfiles/adultandadolescentgl.pdf> (March 1, 2017).**

3. **Drugs.com, "Drug Index A to Z," March 2, 2017, <https://www.drugs.com/drug_information.html> (March 6, 2017).**

4. **Facts and Comparisons, "Facts and Comparisons," *Clinical Drug Information, LLC,* 2017, <http://online.factsandcomparisons.com/index.aspx> (March 13, 2017).**

5. Louise Gagnon, "Medscape Medical News," *Community-Associated Clostridium difficile Increasing, Often Not Linked to Antimicrobial Use*, October 17, 2006, <http://www.medscape.com/viewarticle/546189> (**March 6, 2017**).

6. **Richard L. Guerrant, et al.**, "Practice Guidelines for the Management of Infectious Diarrhea," *Clinical Infectious Diseases*, Vol. 32, **No. 3, February 1**, 2001, pp. 331-351, (**Current**).

7. C**arrie** A. Horwitch, et al., "Lactobacillemia in Three Patients with AIDS," *Clinical Infectious Diseases*, Vol. 21, No. 6, December 1, 1995, pp. 1460-1462. (**Current**).

8. **Johnson & Johnson Consumer Inc., McNeil Consumer Healthcare Division, IMODIUM CAPSULES Rx, October 2016, <https://www.accessdata.fda.gov/drugsatfda_docs/label/2016/017694s052lbl.pdf > (April 20, 2017).**

9. Ed **J**. Kuijper and Jaap **T.** van Dissel, "Commentary: Spectrum of *Clostridium difficile* Infections Outside Health Care Facilities," *Canadian Medical Association Journal*, Vol. 179, **No.** 8, October **7,** 2008, **pp. 747-748. (Current).**

10. **Jeffrey B. Lanier, et al., "Evaluation and Management of Orthostatic Hypotension," *American Family Physician*, Vol. 84, No. 5, September 1, 2011, pp. 528-536. (Current).**

11. D. Ledoux, et al., "Lactobacillus acidophilus Bacteraemia After Use of a Probiotic in a Patient with AIDS and Hodgkin's Disease," *International Journal of STD and AIDS*,

Vol. 17, No. 4, April 17, 2006, pp. 280-282. (**Current**).

12. **Lexi-Comp, Inc., "Lexi-Comp Online," *Wolters Kluwer Health, Inc.,* 2017, <http://online.lexi.com> (March 13, 2017).**

13. **Panel on Opportunistic Infections in HIV-Infected Adults and Adolescents. "Guidelines for the prevention and treatment of opportunistic infections in HIV-infected adults and adolescents: recommendations from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, the National Institutes of Health, and the HIV Medicine Association of the Infectious Diseases Society of America," <http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/contentfiles/lvguidelines/adult_oi.pdf> (March 3, 2017).Fabrizio Ricci, et al., "Orthostatic Hypotension," *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, Vol. 66, No. 7, August 18, 2015, pp. 848-860.**

14. **Mark S. Riddle, et al., "ACG Clinical Guidelines: Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention of Acute Diarrheal Infections in Adults," *American Journal of Gastroenterology*, Vol. 111, May 2016, pp. 602-622.**

15. B**arbara** Swanson (ed.), *ANAC's Core Curriculum for HIV/AIDS Nursing,* 3rd ed., Jones and Bartlett Publishers, Sudbury, Massachusetts, 2010, "Diarrhea," pp. 170-172. (**Current**).

16. **U.S. Department of Agriculture, Food and Drug Administration, "Food Safety for People with HIV/AIDS," December 2, 2015, <https://www.fda.gov/Food/FoodborneIllnessContaminants/PeopleAtRisk/ucm312669.htm> (March 6, 2017).**

17. **U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, "Table 3. Laboratory Testing Schedule for Monitoring HIV-Infected Patients Before and After Initiation of Antiretroviral Therapy," AIDSinfo Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in HIV-1-Infected Adults and Adolescents Laboratory Testing for Initial Assessment and Monitoring of HIV-Infected Patients on Antiretroviral Therapy, (July 14, 2016), <https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/1/adult-and-adolescent-arv-guidelines/3/tests-for-initial-assessment-and-follow-up> (June 1, 2017).**

18. **U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Health Resources and Services Administration, HIV/AIDS Bureau, "Guide for HIV/AIDS Clinical Care," April 2014, <https://aidsetc.org/guide/contents> (March 1, 2017).**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR ORAL CANDIDIASIS IN HIV-INFECTED ADULT

DEFINITION Oral candidiasis is the most common superficial fungal infection in HIV-infected persons. There are four clinical presentations in people with HIV: pseudomembranous, erythematous (atrophic), hyperplastic and angular cheilitis.

ETIOLOGY Primarily caused by an overgrowth of *Candida albicans*, and less often by other *Candida* species, **e.g.,** *C. tropicalis*, *C. krusei*, *C. glabrata* and/or *C. parapsilosis*.

SUBJECTIVE

1. May or may not be symptomatic.

2. May or may not complain of: white patches on tongue and oral mucosa, smooth red areas on dorsal tongue, burning or painful mouth areas, changes in taste sensation, sensitivity to spicy foods and/or decreased appetite.

3. May or may not have a history of oral or esophageal candidiasis.

4. Absence of signs/symptoms of esophageal candidiasis (e.g., patient does not report painful swallowing, retrosternal pain, and nausea).

5. Absence of allergies to antifungal agents.

7. Obtain a **complete** medication profile to determine whether there are any clinically significant drug-drug interactions with treatment.

NOTE: Medication profiles should include: over-the-counter medications, herbals, vitamins, and prescription medications **(including prescribed medications from outside providers). If a release of information is available, then contact the pharmacy, if necessary, in obtaining an up to date medication list.**

OBJECTIVE May have patches/lesions anywhere on the hard and soft palates, under the tongue, on the buccal mucosa or gums or extending back into the posterior pharynx. These lesions or forms of oral candidiasis can be further classified as follows:

1. Pseudomembranous candidiasis (thrush) appears as white plaques, which can be scraped off with a tongue depressor, (unlike oral hairy leukoplakia) revealing a bleeding, macerated surface below them. Lesions may be as small as 1-2mm in size,

or extensive plaques covering the entire hard palate.

2. Erythematous candidiasis (atrophic candidiasis) is a red, flat lesion or lesions on the palate and/or dorsal tongue surface. The tongue may have depapillated red mucosal areas on its dorsal surface.

3. Angular cheilitis (not exclusively due to *Candida*) presents with fissuring and redness at either one or both corners of the mouth, and may appear alone or in conjunction with another form of oral Candida infection.

4. Hyperplastic candidiasis (*Candida* leukoplakia) presents as firm, adherent white lesions often found bilaterally on the tongue. May be more resistant to therapy than other forms of candidiasis.

5. **Recent CD4 count (within 3 months).**

ASSESSMENT Oral Candidiasis

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

1. If recent results not available, order CBC with differential, comprehensive metabolic panel (assessing renal and hepatic function), and, if indicated, fasting lipid profile.

2. If recent results not available, order CD4 count.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Mild to Moderate Cases

   a. Clotrimazole one troche (10mg) dissolved in mouth 5 times/day for **7 to** 14 days.

NOTE: Allow troche to dissolve slowly in the mouth. Dissolution is complete in approximately 30 minutes. The patient should not take anything else orally for 30 minutes after using the above topical agent. Adherence to these regimens is often poor because of time requirements.

2. Severe Cases

   Fluconazole **100**mg PO **once** daily for **7 to** 14 days.

NOTE: Treatment with fluconazole can result in selective growth of non-*Candida* species, and should only be implemented when necessitated by more severe disease. Oral candidiasis can develop resistance to fluconazole. Fluconazole may interact with other medications. Review the patient's current medication list, including OTC drugs/products and nutritional or herbal supplements, and check for drug-drug interactions.

3. Maintenance Therapy (Frequent or Severe Recurrences)
   Oral Treatment:

   a. Clotrimazole one troche 10mg dissolved in mouth 3 times/day,

   OR

   b. Fluconazole 100mg tablet by mouth daily,

   OR

   c. Fluconazole 100mg by mouth three times/week.

NOTE: Use fluconazole with caution when considering chronic maintenance therapy because it has been associated with refractory and azole-resistant candidiasis. **Chronic suppressive therapy is usually not recommended unless patients have frequent or severe recurrences. Chemoprophylaxis, either chronic maintenance therapy or secondary prophylaxis, against oral candidiasis using systemically absorbed azoles <u>should not be initiated</u> during pregnancy. Furthermore, prophylaxis with systemic azoles <u>should be discontinued</u> in HIV-infected women who become pregnant.**

4**.** Angular cheilitis

   Topical Treatment:

   a. 2% ketoconazole cream applied to affected angles on the mouth two times/day for 14 days,

   OR

b. 1% clotrimazole cream applied to affected angles on the mouth two times/day for 14 days.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Instruct patient to maintain good oral hygiene and to avoid mouth trauma (e.g., use a soft toothbrush, don't eat food or drink liquids that are too hot in temperature or too spicy).

2. Rinse mouth of all food before using topical agents and take nothing by mouth for 30 minutes after using agents.

3. Explain reason for regimen. Review current drug regimen, including: drug storage, dose, route of administration, schedule, side effects and follow-up monitoring.

4. Explain that he/she may need maintenance therapy because frequent relapse is common, and to notify his/her provider if condition worsens, does not improve or if relapse occurs.

5. For patients with oral candidiasis and dentures or partial denture plates, instruct to:

   a. **Disinfect the denture, when outside the mouth by soaking in a 50/50 mix of 0.125 chlorhexidine mouthrinse and water. In addition, antifungal therapy is recommended (see antifungal treatment options above).**
   b. **Dentures should be cleaned daily by soaking and brushing with an effective, nonabrasive denture cleanser. Toothpaste should not be used to clean complete or partial dentures.**
   c. **Denture cleansers should ONLY be used to clean dentures outside of the mouth.**
   d. **Dentures should always be thoroughly rinsed after soaking and brushing with denture-cleansing solutions prior to reinsertion into the oral cavity. <u>Always follow the product usage instructions.</u>**
   e. **It is <u>not recommended</u> that dentures be worn continuously (24 hours per day) in an effort to reduce or minimize denture stomatitis.**
   f. **Dentures should be stored immersed in a 50/50 mix of 0.125 chlorhexidine mouthrinse and water or a water**

based solution, when not replaced in the oral cavity, to avoid warping.

6. **Counsel tobacco users on cessation and refer to Georgia Tobacco Quit Line.**

7. **Instruct patient to avoid high sugar content foods when candidiasis is present.**

8. Ask female patient to inform her provider if she is, or is planning to become, pregnant. If taking fluconazole, instruct to stop taking this medication and notify provider.

9. If the patient is taking fluconazole, ask patient to check with his/her pharmacist or provider about interactions before taking a new medication, nutritional or herbal supplement or OTC drug/product.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Routine appointments with provider, as indicated, at least every 3-6 months.

2. For patients taking fluconazole maintenance therapy, monitor **hepatic** and renal function **(e.g, comprehensive metabolic panel)** every 6-12 weeks.

3. Assess need for continued maintenance therapy during each visit with discontinuation of maintenance therapy if the client is asymptomatic and the CD4 count is greater than 200 cells/mm³, following initiation of ART.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Notify **delegating** physician of the following:

   a. Severe or unresponsive candidiasis.
   b. Abnormal lab results, as indicated.
   c. Suspect esophageal candidiasis (e.g., patient reports painful swallowing, retrosternal pain, and nausea).
   d. **Medication side effects and/or adverse events.**

2. Refer pregnant patients to **delegating** physician.

3. **Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed and HIV/AIDS nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.**

REFERENCES

1. Facts and Comparisons, "Facts and Comparisons,*" Clinical Drug Information, LLC,* 2017, <http://online.factsandcomparisons.com/index.aspx> (March 31, 2017).

2. David Felton, et al., "Evidence-Based Guidelines for the Care and Maintenance of Complete Dentures: A Publication of the American College of Prosthodontists," *Journal of Prosthodontics,* 2011, Vol. 20, pp. S1-S12. (Current).

3. Lexi-Comp, Inc., "Lexi-Comp Online," *Wolters Kluwer Health, Inc.,* 2017, <http://online.lexi.com> (March 31, 2017).

4. Medscape, "Mucosal Candidiasis," February 12, 2016, <http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/1075227-overview> (March 31, 2017).

5. National Institutes of Health, U.S. National Library of Medicine, "DailyMed*"*, <https://dailymed.nlm.nih.gov/dailymed/ > (March 21, 2017).

6. Panel on Opportunistic Infections in HIV-Infected Adults and Adolescents. "Guidelines for the prevention and treatment of opportunistic infections in HIV-infected adults and adolescents: recommendations from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, the National Institutes of Health, and the HIV Medicine Association of the Infectious Diseases Society of America," December 8, 2015, <http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/contentfiles/lvguidelines/adult_oi.pdf> (March 21, 2017).

7. Peter G. Pappas, et al., "Clinical Practice Guideline for the Management of Candidiasis: 2016 Update by the Infectious Diseases Society of America," *Clinical Infectious Diseases,* Vol. 62, No. 4, February 2016, pp. e1-50.

8. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, "Table 3. Laboratory Testing Schedule for Monitoring HIV-Infected Patients Before and After Initiation of Antiretroviral Therapy," *AIDSinfo Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in HIV-1-Infected Adults and Adolescents Laboratory Testing for Initial Assessment and Monitoring of HIV-Infected Patients on Antiretroviral Therapy*, July 14, 2016, <https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/1/adult-and-adolescent-arv-guidelines/3/tests-for-initial-assessment-and-follow-up> (June 1, 2017).

9. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Health Resources and Services Administration, HIV/AIDS Bureau, "Guide for HIV/AIDS Clinical Care," April 2014, <https://aidsetc.org/guide/contents> (March 21, 2017).

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR OROLABIAL HERPES SIMPLEX IN HIV-INFECTED ADULT

DEFINITION

Herpes simplex virus (HSV) primarily infects the orolabia (**e.g**., mouth and lips), genitals, and anorectal area. In addition, HSV can infect the esophagus, brain, and retina.

Infections with HSV type 1 (HSV-1) and type 2 (HSV-2) are common**.** Initial infection with HSV-1 usually occurs in childhood. Approximately 95% of HIV-infected persons are seropositive for either HSV-1 or HSV-2 and 70% are seropositive for HSV-2. Severity and frequency of HSV recurrence may increase with advancing immunosuppression. **HSV-2 infection increases the risk of HIV acquisition and HSV-2 reactivation results in increases in HIV RNA levels.**

Primary infection of the orolabial area with HSV in the immunocompetent patient is usually asymptomatic. HIV-infected patients with immunosuppression may present with painful vesicular eruptions of the lip, tongue, pharynx, and buccal mucosa. These vesicles quickly rupture and become ulcers. Associated signs and symptoms include fever, malaise, cervical lymphadenopathy, and pharyngitis.

Recurrent HSV infection usually presents as small vesicles that ulcerate and may coalesce to form large ulcers. In immunocompetent HIV-infected patients, ulcers usually resolve within **5** to10 days **if left untreated**. In immunosuppressed HIV-infected patients, HSV infection may be persistent, painful and/or expand to form large, crusted erosions. It also may not respond to routine therapy in HIV-infected patients.

ETIOLOGY

Primary infection, or recurrent disease from latent infection, with herpes simplex virus, type-1 (HSV-1) or type-2 (HSV-2).

SUBJECTIVE

1. Painful blisters followed by ulcers on lips and/or in mouth.

2. May or may not have:

    a. Prodrome of tingling and numbness at the site 12-24 hours before blisters occurred.
    b. Fever.
    c. Uneasiness.
    d. Swollen lymph nodes in neck.
    e. Sore throat.
    f. Persistent ulcers or large crusted erosion.
    g. Severe pain.

h. Symptoms of encephalitis (e.g., headaches, vomiting, lethargy, ataxia, tremor and dizziness).

NOTE: In profoundly immunocompromised patients, extensive, deep, nonhealing ulcerations can occur.

3. May have a history of:

   a. Cold sores/fever blisters or genital herpes/ulcers.
   b. Partner with cold sores/fever blisters or genital herpes/ulcers.

4. Obtain a **complete** medication profile to determine whether there are any clinically significant drug-drug interactions with treatment.

NOTE: Medication profiles should include: over-the-counter medications, herbals, vitamins, and prescription medications **(including prescribed medications from outside providers). If a release of information is available, then contact the pharmacy, if necessary, in obtaining an up to date medication list.**

5. Absence of allergies to acyclovir, valacyclovir or famciclovir.

OBJECTIVE

1. Grouped vesicles and/or large ulcer(s) with scalloped border covered by whitish-yellow film over the oral mucosa and/or perioral area or may have atypical presentation in late stage HIV disease. **In profoundly immunocompromised patients, extensive, deep, nonhealing ulcerations can occur.**

2. May have:

   a. Cervical lymphadenopathy.
   b. Swelling and/or erythema of oral mucosa and/or pharynx.
   c. Large, crusted erosion.
   d. Altered mental status.

3. Recent CD4 count **(within the last 3 months)**.

4. Review previous lab results for evidence of renal impairment.

ASSESSMENT Orolabial herpes simplex

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

1. May order HSV viral culture, serology, or polymerase chain reaction (PCR) assay.

NOTE: Mucosal HSV infections cannot be diagnosed accurately by clinical examination, especially in persons with HIV infection, a laboratory diagnosis should be pursued in all cases, but negative results do not rule out the possibility of HSV infection.

2. May order syphilis serology testing.

NOTE: Any patient who presents with genital, anal, or oral ulceration, even if the suspicion of HSV is high, syphilis serologic testing should be done. Refer to the GA-DPH STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOLS FOR SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED DISEASES.

3. If recent results not available, order CBC with differential, comprehensive metabolic panel (assessing renal and hepatic function), and, if indicated, fasting lipid profile.

4. If recent results not available, order CD4 count.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. **Episodic treatment** (Duration 5 to 10 days)**:**

   a. Acyclovir 400mg by mouth three times/day,

   OR

   b. Valacyclovir 1 **gram** by mouth two times/day,

   OR

   c. Famciclovir 500mg by mouth two times/day.

   NOTE: Dose reductions of these medications are required for patients with renal impairment. Acyclovir resistance may occur. **Cross resistance with Valacyclovir and Famciclovir may also occur.**

2. For suppressive therapy of frequent or severe recurrences **and patient's renal function lab tests are within normal values:**

a. Acyclovir 400mg by mouth two times/day,

OR

b. Famciclovir 500mg by mouth two times/day,

OR

c. Valacyclovir 500mg by mouth two times/day.

NOTE: Dose reductions of these medications are required for patients with renal impairment. Acyclovir resistance may occur. **Cross resistance with Valacyclovir and Famciclovir may also occur. Evaluate ongoing need for suppressive therapy annually.**

3. May use **over the counter oral pain relief medications, per manufacturer's recommendations.**

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. **Counsel on preventing exposure and transmission of HSV.** Inform patient that HSV can be transmitted to other persons **and asymptomatic shedding/transmission of the virus often occurs. HSV shedding is increased in HIV infected persons.** Persons should **specifically** avoid contact with **symptomatic herpetic** lesions **and during prodromal periods** (e.g., no kissing and no oral-genital sex).

2. **Counsel patients to inform partners about herpes and to encourage them to obtain evaluation and counseling.**

3. Review current drug regimen including: drug storage, dose, route of administration, schedule, side effects and follow-up monitoring.

4. Instruct patient to report adverse drug reactions or side effects to his/her provider.

5. Instruct patient to report persistent ulcers, secondary infections and/or continued pain to his/her provider. Instruct patient to return in 2 weeks if ulcers do not resolve.

6. Explain to patient that **HSV is not curable,** recurrences may occur and to notify his/her provider.

7. Ask female patient to inform her provider if she is or is planning to become pregnant.

FOLLOW-UP

1. As needed, if lesions do not heal.

2. For patient on suppressive therapy, order renal function lab tests (e.g., comprehensive metabolic panel) every 6 months and as needed based on medical history and concomitant use of additional nephrotoxic drugs.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Patients reporting symptoms of encephalitis (e.g., headaches, vomiting, lethargy, ataxia, tremor, and dizziness) and/or exhibiting altered mental status should be immediately referred to **delegating** physician or direct them to the closest Emergency Room to minimize any delays in treatment **(**patient may require hospitalization).

2. Refer severe or persistent cases to **delegating** physician.

3. Consult delegating physician for:

   a. Abnormal lab results.
   b. Medication side effects and/or adverse events.

4. Consult **delegating** physician concerning **the continued** need for suppressive therapy. **Suppressive therapy for HSV may be continued indefinitely, without regard for improved CD4 cell count, although need for continuation should be addressed on an annual basis, particularly if immune reconstitution has occurred.**

5. Refer pregnant patients to **delegating** physician.

6. Pain management beyond OTC therapy should be referred to the delegating physician.

7. **Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed and HIV/AIDS nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.**

REFERENCES

1. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, "Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines, 2015," MMWR, Vol. 64, No. 3, June 5, 2015.

2. Facts and Comparisons, "Facts and Comparisons," *Clinical Drug Information, LLC,* 2017, <http://online.factsandcomparisons.com/index.aspx> (March 31, 2017).

3. Lexi-Comp, Inc., "Lexi-Comp Online," *Wolters Kluwer Health, Inc.,* 2017, <http://online.lexi.com> (March 31, 2017).

4. Panel on Opportunistic Infections in HIV-Infected Adults and Adolescents. "Guidelines for the prevention and treatment of opportunistic infections in HIV-infected adults and adolescents: recommendations from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, the National Institutes of Health, and the HIV Medicine Association of the Infectious Diseases Society of America," September 17, 2015, <http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/contentfiles/lvguidelines/adult_oi.pdf> (March 22, 2017).

5. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, "Table 3. Laboratory Testing Schedule for Monitoring HIV-Infected Patients Before and After Initiation of Antiretroviral Therapy," *AIDSinfo Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in HIV-1-Infected Adults and Adolescents Laboratory Testing for Initial Assessment and Monitoring of HIV-Infected Patients on Antiretroviral Therapy*, July 14, 2016, <https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/1/adult-and-adolescent-arv-guidelines/3/tests-for-initial-assessment-and-follow-up> June 1, 2017.

6. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Health Resources and Services Administration, HIV/AIDS Bureau, "Guide for HIV/AIDS Clinical Care," April 2014, <https://aidsetc.org/guide/contents> (March 1, 2017).

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PCP PROPHYLAXIS IN HIV-INFECTED ADULT

DEFINITION

Pneumocystis jiroveci pneumonia (PCP) prophylaxis is treatment given to HIV-infected individuals to prevent either a primary episode or recurrence of PCP. According to the CDC, *P. carinii* is now exclusive to the pneumocystis that infects rodents and *P. jiroveci* refers to the species that infects humans. However, the abbreviation remains PCP.

Primary prophylaxis (prevention of first episode) should be administered to all HIV-infected persons with a CD4 count of less than 200 **cells**/mm^3. PCP prophylaxis should be considered in HIV-infected persons with a CD4 percentage of less than 14%.

Secondary prophylaxis (prevention of recurrence) should be administered to HIV-infected patients who have a history of a previous PCP episode for life unless immune reconstitution occurs because of antiretroviral therapy (ART).

ETIOLOGY

Pneumocystis jiroveci is a fungal organism**, but also shares biologic characteristics with protozoa,** acquired through inhalation. **Initial infection with *Pneumocystis jiroveci* usually occurs in early childhood; two-thirds of healthy children have antibodies to *Pneumocystis jiroveci* by ages 2 to 4 years. Disease probably occurs by new acquisition of infection and by reactivation of latent infection with most cases occurring in patients who are unaware of their HIV infection or are not receiving ongoing care for HIV, and in those with advanced immunosuppression, e.g. CD4 counts <100 cells/mm^3.**

SUBJECTIVE

1. May or may not have a history of:
   a. Previous PCP episode.
   b. Oropharyngeal candidiasis.
   c. An AIDS-defining illness.
2. No history of active tuberculosis (TB).
3. No complaints of symptoms suggestive of **active** PCP (e.g., non-productive cough, fever, shortness of breath).
4. Absence of allergies to sulfa drugs, dapsone, pyrimethamine and/or atovaquone.
5. Obtain a **complete** medication profile to determine whether there

are any clinically significant drug-drug interactions with treatment.

NOTE: Medication profiles should include: over-the-counter **medications**, herbals, vitamins, and prescription medications **(including prescribed medications from outside providers). If a release of information is available, then contact the pharmacy, if necessary, in obtaining an up to date medication list.**

OBJECTIVE

1. **May have recent (within 3 months)** CD4 count less than 200 **cells**/mm^3 or CD4 percent less than 14%.

2. Absence of pulmonary signs and symptoms (e.g., tachypnea).

3. **Recent (within 3 months)** CBC **with differential, comprehensive metabolic panel (assessing** renal and **hepatic** function), **and, if indicated, fasting lipid profile are** within acceptable values.

4. Absence of Glucose-6-Phosphate Dehydrogenase (G6-PD) deficiency. (If patient has G6-PD deficiency, **and dapsone is being considered,** refer to **delegating** physician for prophylaxis medication).

NOTE: Whenever possible, patients should be tested for G6-PD deficiency before administration of dapsone. Alternative agent should be used if the patient is found to have G6-PD deficiency. Additionally, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole should be used with caution in patients with G6-PD deficiency.

ASSESSMENT

Candidate for PCP Prophylaxis (primary or secondary); at risk for PCP.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. If recent results not available, order CD4 count.

2. If previous results not available, test for G6-PD deficiency.

3. If recent results not available, order CBC with differential, comprehensive metabolic panel (assessing renal and hepatic function), and, if indicated, fasting lipid profile.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. First Choice

   a. Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole* (TMP-SMZ) one double-strength (DS) tablet by mouth daily†

OR

   b. TMP-SMZ* one single-strength (SS) tab by mouth daily†

2. Alternative

   a. TMP-SMZ* one DS tablet by mouth 3 times per week† (e.g., Monday, Wednesday, Friday)

OR

3. Alternative in individuals intolerant to TMP-SMX

   a. Dapsone Regimens
      1) Dapsone 50mg by mouth two times/day or 100 mg by mouth daily‡

OR

      2) Dapsone 200mg by mouth once per week

PLUS

Pyrimethamine 75mg by mouth once per week

PLUS

Leucovorin 25mg by mouth once per week†

NOTE: As of June 2015, pyrimethamine is no longer available in retail pharmacies in the United States. It is only available through a special pharmacy program (http://www.daraprimdirect.com/). If there is a delay in procuring pyrimethamine for a patient in whom it is needed, consult physician for guidance.

OR

b. Atovaquone suspension 1500mg by mouth daily **with food**[†¶]

LEGEND
* Many patients become intolerant of sulfa medications. Severe reactions may include: persistent neutropenia, fever, renal failure, severe erythroderma and Stevens-Johnson syndrome (bullae & desquamation of the skin). Some patients with milder reactions can be desensitized.
[†]Regimen is also effective against toxoplasmosis.
[‡]This regimen is not recommended for prevention of toxoplasmosis.
[¶]Very expensive and should not be used if other alternatives are available.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Explain reason for regimen. Review current drug regimen including: drug storage, dose, route of administration, schedule, side effects and follow-up monitoring.

2. Instruct patient to stop medications immediately and report adverse drug reactions or side effects (e.g., unusual bleeding or bruising, changes in skin color, sore throat, rash, high fever) to his/her care provider. Also report other changes in health that he/she feels are important.

3. Instruct that taking medications as ordered, or keeping appointments for pentamidine treatments, is very important to prevent this life-threatening form of pneumonia.

4. Explain that prophylaxis may be discontinued due to sustained rise in CD4 **cell** count while on ART, but may need to be re-started in the event of stopping ART, CD4 **cell** counts dropping or if health condition worsens.

5. Inform the patient that PCP can occur or recur **despite** prophylaxis and to call his/her provider if **patient** develop**s symptoms, (e.g.,** cough, fever, shortness of breath, **chest pain**).

6. Ask female patient to inform her provider if she is, or is planning to become pregnant.

7. Inform patient that regular blood tests are necessary during therapy.

8. Explain that TMP-SMZ may cause increased sensitivity to sunlight and instruct to wear sunblock, protective clothing and dark glasses or avoid direct exposure to sunlight.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Check for any upcoming provider appointments.

   a. If no appointment scheduled, schedule with the provider as soon as possible (ideally within 30 days).
   b. If appointment scheduled, consider rescheduling if beyond 30 days.

2. **Obtain a complete medication profile to determine whether there are any clinically significant drug-drug interactions, especially to new medications initiated since the previous assessment.**

3. Monitor for medication adherence, adverse drug events and medication side effects.

4. Obtain and monitor **lab values for** CBC **with differential and comprehensive metabolic panel (assessing** renal and **hepatic** function) within 4 to 6 weeks **after** initiation of regimen and then as indicated.

5. Monitor for signs/symptoms of PCP.

6. Obtain and monitor CD4 **cell** counts and percentage at least every 3-6 months.

   a. Discontinue primary and secondary prophylaxis in patients whose CD4 counts have increased from less than 200 cells/mm^3 to 200 cells/mm^3 or greater for at least 3 months in response to ART.
   b. Restart primary prophylaxis if the CD4 count decreases to less than 100 cells/mm^3, regardless of HIV RNA or if CD4 count is 100 to 200 cells/mm^3 and HIV RNA is above detection limit of assay.
   c. Restart secondary prophylaxis if CD4 count is less than 200 cells/mm^3.
   d. If PCP occurs at a CD4 count of greater than 200 cells/mm^3 while on ART, then it would be prudent to

continue PCP prophylaxis for life, regardless of how high the CD4 count rises because of ART.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Notify the **delegating** physician of the following:

   a. Abnormal lab values.
   b. Medication side effects and/or adverse events.
   c. Signs/symptoms of PCP. Defer prophylaxis medication decision for G6-PD deficient patients to physician, **if dapsone is being considered.**

2. Refer pregnant patients to **delegating** physician.

3. **Consult delegating physician concerning dosage adjustments for patient with abnormal renal or hepatic function tests.**

4. **Primary and secondary PCP prophylaxis may be discontinued in select patients with CD4 counts of 100 to 200 cells/mm^3 and HIV RNA levels below limits of detection for at least 3 to 6 months. Consult delegating physician for guidance in selected patients.**

5. **If PCP occurred at a CD4 count of greater than 200 cells/mm^3 while patient not on ART, discontinuation of prophylaxis can be considered when HIV RNA levels are below limits detection for at least 3 to 6 months. Consult delegating physician for guidance in selected patients.**

6. **Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed and HIV/AIDS nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.**

REFERENCES

1. Facts and Comparisons, "Facts and Comparisons," *Clinical Drug Information, LLC,* 2017, <http://online.factsandcomparisons.com/index.aspx> (March 29, 2017).

2. Lexi-Comp, Inc., "Lexi-Comp Online," *Wolters Kluwer Health, Inc.*, 2017, <http://online.lexi.com> (March 29, 2017).

3. Panel on Opportunistic Infections in HIV-Infected Adults and Adolescents. "Guidelines for the prevention and treatment of opportunistic infections in HIV-infected adults and adolescents: recommendations from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, the National Institutes of Health, and the HIV Medicine Association of the Infectious Diseases Society of America," July 25, 2017, <http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/contentfiles/lvguidelines/adult_oi.pdf> (August 25, 2017).

4. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, "Table 3. Laboratory Testing Schedule for Monitoring HIV-Infected Patients Before and After Initiation of Antiretroviral Therapy," *AIDSinfo Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in HIV-1-Infected Adults and Adolescents Laboratory Testing for Initial Assessment and Monitoring of HIV-Infected Patients on Antiretroviral Therapy*, July 14, 2016, <https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/1/adult-and-adolescent-arv-guidelines/3/tests-for-initial-assessment-and-follow-up> (June 1, 2017).

5. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Health Resources and Services Administration, HIV/AIDS Bureau, "Guide for HIV/AIDS Clinical Care," April 2014, <https://aidsetc.org/guide/contents> (March 1, 2017).

6. U.S. National Library of Medicine, Genetics Home Reference, *"glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency,"* March 28, 2017, <https://ghr.nlm.nih.gov/condition/glucose-6-phosphate-dehydrogenase-deficiency> (March 29, 2017).

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PERSISTENT (CHRONIC) DIARRHEA IN HIV-INFECTED ADULT

DEFINITION Chronic diarrhea is a change in normal bowel movements characterized by frequent (more than 3-4 per day) **loose** stools for more than 2 weeks. Large volume of stools with periumblical pain usually indicates small bowel disease. Small volume, frequent stools, which may be associated with urgency, tenesmus, lower abdominal cramps or perianal pain, are usually associated with colonic and/or anorectal disease.

ETIOLOGY Chronic diarrhea in HIV-infected adults is often related to an enteric pathogen or medications. However, in some patients no cause is identified.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Assess pattern of diarrhea: onset, duration amount, frequency, appearance (e.g., foul-smelling, frothy, black, watery, visible blood, pus, mucus).

2. Assess whether diarrhea is interfering with activities of daily living.

3. May or may not be accompanied by one or more of the following:

   a. Fever.
   b. Abdominal pain/cramping.
   c. Nausea and/or vomiting.
   d. Bloating.
   e. Urgency.
   f. Tenesmus (i.e., anal pain and spasms that may include the urge to defecate without being able to pass stool).
   g. Perianal pain and/or sores.
   h. Involuntary weight loss.
   i. Difficulty urinating.

4. May or may not have symptoms of dehydration (e.g., thirst, decrease in urine output, dark-colored urine, dry skin and mucous membranes, fatigue, light-headedness, and rapid heartbeat).

5. May or may not report a history of the following:

   a. Taking medications which **may** cause diarrhea (e.g., protease inhibitors, **cobicistat, laxative use/abuse**).
   b. Antibiotics taken within the last 6-8 weeks.
   c. Recent hospitalization.
   d. Recent travel to a foreign and/or developing country or

camping trip.

e. Exposure to potentially-contaminated food or water (e.g., ingestion of raw meat, eggs, or shellfish, lake or stream or well water, or recalled food products).
f. Recent herbal or alternative therapies.
g. Exposure to a pet or another animal with diarrhea.
h. Exposure to a coworker or family member with similar illness.
i. Recent receptive anal sex and/or oral-anal sexual contact and/or sexually transmitted disease.
j. Working in daycare, healthcare, or food industry.
k. Food intolerance (e.g., lactose intolerance).
l. Irritable bowel syndrome or inflammatory bowel disease.
m. Anxiety disorders, panic attacks, or new emotional stress.
n. Eating disorder.
o. Alcohol or other recreational drug use.

6. Obtain a complete medication profile to determine whether there are any clinically significant drug-drug interactions with treatment.

NOTE: Medication profiles should include: over-the-counter medications, herbals, vitamins, and prescription medications (including prescribed medications from outside providers). If a release of information is available, then contact the pharmacy, if necessary, in obtaining an up to date medication list.

OBJECTIVE

1. May or may not have fever and/or weight loss.

2. May or may not have signs of dehydration, (e.g., **orthostatic hypotension (a decline in systolic BP greater than 20 mm Hg with supine to standing and/or increase in heart rate greater than 20 beats/min.)**, tachycardia, dry mucous membranes, poor skin turgor, and lethargy).

3. May or may not have hyperactive or hypoactive bowel sounds, abdominal tenderness or distention, organomegaly, perianal lesions or tissue breakdown, heme-positive stools.

4. **Recent** CD4 count **(within last 3 months)**.

5. **If stool samples previously collected during current symptoms, are negative for *Clostridium difficile (C. difficile), Salmonella, Shigella* or *Campylobacter*.**

ASSESSMENT Persistent (chronic) diarrhea

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

1. **If recent results not available, order** CBC **with differential, comprehensive metabolic panel (assessing renal and hepatic function), and, if indicated, fasting lipid profile.**

2. Stool for *C. difficile* toxin assay. Repeat up to two additional assays for *C. diff**icile*** toxin if the first is negative.

NOTE: Recent studies indicate that community-associated *Clostridium difficile* is increasing and may not be linked to recent antibiotic use. Some studies identified a possible link with proton pump inhibitor therapy.

3. Stool for:

   a. Bacterial culture (if negative repeat x 1-2).
   b. Mycobacterial culture if CD4 count less than 100/mm^3.
   c. AFB smear (if negative repeat x 1-2) if CD4 count less than 100/mm^3.
   d. Ova and Parasites (O&P) examination for intestinal parasites (repeat specimen collection for 3 consecutive days) PLUS:
      1) Modified acid-fast stain for *Cryptosporidia*, *Cyclospora*, *Isospora.*
      2) Chromotrope or other stains for Microsporidia.

   e. *Giardia* antigen detection by direct Immunofluorescence or by enzyme-linked immunoassay (EIA).

4. May order direct Immunofluorescence or enzyme-linked immunoassay (EIA) for detection of *Cryptosporidia* antigens.

5. **If recent results not available, order CD4 count.**

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

If patient is afebrile and without bloody stools and/or abdominal pain; and/or patient is taking antiretroviral agents **(e.g., protease inhibitors,**

cobicistat) or other medications (e.g., laxative use/abuse), which may cause diarrhea, may order:

1. Calcium 500mg tablets by mouth two times/day **for 10 days,**

AND/OR

2. Loperamide **hydrochloride** (HCL) 4mg by mouth initially, **followed by** 2mg by mouth after each **loose** stool **until symptoms are controlled;** to a maximum of 16mg/day **for 10 days**,

AND/OR

3. Stool Bulking Agents

   a. Psyllium powder, 1 teaspoon (e.g.,Metamucil®) mixed in 2/3 of fluid required on package instructions by mouth daily or two times/day **for 10 days**,

   OR

   b. Psyllium fiber wafers, 2 wafers by mouth daily or two times/day **for 10 days**,

   OR

   c. Oat bran tablets 1500mg by mouth two times/day **for 10 days**.

NOTE: Antidiarrheal agents should not be used in cases of bloody diarrhea or **in client's that are highly suspect** for *C. difficile*-related, ***Salmonella, Shigella* or *Campylobacter*** diarrhea.

Psyllium should be taken at least 2-3 hours before or after other drugs because it can decrease effects of certain drugs. In patients taking atazanavir or tipranavir, avoid simultaneous administration of antacids (e.g., Tums **(calcium carbonate)**); give atazanavir or tipranavir 2 hours before or 1 hour after these medications.

NOTE: Loperamide HCL is not a controlled substance. Potential abuse and dependence is possible, primarily being misused for relief from opioid withdrawal, and abused by a few users who obtain some (reportedly mild-moderate) level

of euphoria. Cases of Torsades de Pointes, cardiac arrest, and death have been reported with the use of a higher than recommended dosages.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Adjust diet and fluid intake to decrease diarrhea and maintain adequate hydration and electrolyte levels (see below in patient education/counseling).

2. If history of lactose intolerance, avoid dairy products or take lactaid pills before ingesting dairy products.

NOTE: Diarrheal disease can produce temporary malabsorption or lactose intolerance.

NOTE: If allergic to milk or dairy products or sensitive to lactose, avoid using Lactobacillus products. Cases of severe infections with Lactobacillus have been reported in patients with late stage AIDS.

3. Discontinue any newly started herbal or alternative therapy.

4. If diarrhea is associated with recent antibiotic therapy, the normal bacterial flora of the intestinal tract may be **disrupted, and may self-resolve after discontinuation of antibiotics. The effectiveness and safety of probiotics in HIV-infected patients with diarrheal illness has not been adequately studied. Current HIV/AIDS care guidelines recommend a bland diet, with avoidance of fat, dairy and complex carbohydrates.**

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Instruct patient to maintain hydration and electrolyte levels by ingesting ½-strength Gatorade, broth, soups, ½-strength fruit juices.

NOTE: Formula**s** for inexpensive oral rehydration solution**s include:**

a. Combine ½ teaspoon of salt, 1 teaspoon of baking soda, 8 teaspoons of sugar, and 8 ounces of orange juice; add water to make 1 liter and drink.
b. Drink 1 glass containing 8 ounces of apple, orange, or

other juice, ½ teaspoon of corn syrup or honey; and a pinch of salt; then drink 1 glass containing 8 ounces of water and ¼ teaspoon of baking soda.

c. Mix ½ cup of dry, precooked baby rice cereal with 2 cups of water (boil first in areas of poor water quality); add ¼ teaspoon of salt and drink.

2. Instruct patient to avoid foods that tend to aggravate diarrhea, including milk/dairy products, and foods that are greasy, high-fiber or very sweet. Also, avoid products that contain alcohol or caffeine.

3. Encourage patient to eat small meals every two-three hours. Gradually add soft, bland foods to diet, including bananas, plain rice, boiled potatoes, toast, crackers, cooked carrots, and skinless baked chicken.

4. Instruct patient to keep perianal area clean and dry. Patient may use sitz baths, perineal hygiene cleaners, and skin-protection ointments to maintain skin integrity.

5. Inform patient given calcium or loperamide HCL that he/she should experience improvement of symptoms within a few days. If symptoms do not improve within 2-3 days or if symptoms worsen, contact provider. Upon resolution of symptoms or if constipation occurs, discontinue calcium and/or loperamide. Stool bulking agents may be continued or discontinued per manufacturer's recommendations.

NOTE: Instruct patients taking atazanavir or tipranavir to avoid simultaneous administration of antacids (e.g., Tums **(calcium carbonate)**); take atazanavir or tipranavir 2 hours before or 1 hour after antacids.

6. Instruct patient to notify provider if symptoms worsen or do not improve.

7. Stress the importance of not stopping antiretroviral or other medications unless he/she has consulted with his/her provider first.

8. If suspect infectious diarrhea, instruct patient to not work as a food handler or return to work, i.e. daycare center, healthcare worker**,** until diarrhea is controlled. Stress importance of hand washing.

Patient should contact, if available, their occupational health department concerning work policy on diarrheal illnesses.

9. Instruct patient on ways to prevent diarrhea in the future, including: drinking bottled or purified water, using proper food handling and cooking techniques, avoiding recalled food products, and performing proper hand-washing techniques.

10. Inform patients who have well water or private water sources to consider testing water source by obtaining test kit and instructions from local Environmental Health office

FOLLOW-UP

Return appointment with provider as needed, if symptoms have not improved or do not resolve.

CONSULTATION/REFFERAL

1. Refer patient immediately to the **delegating** physician or direct them to the closest emergency room for severe symptoms for the following (patient may require hospitalization):

    a. Fever over 101 degrees Fahrenheit.
    b. Blood in the stool.
    c. Signs and symptoms of dehydration.
    d. CD4 counts less than100 cells/mm^3.
    e. Abdominal pain and/or distention.
    f. Perianal pain and/or lesions.
    g. Involuntary weight loss of over 5 lbs.
    h. Difficulty urinating.
    i. Suspect infectious agent causing diarrhea.
    j. Suspect laxative abuse.

2. Refer patient to delegating physician for immediate consultation, if patient's CD4 count is between 100 and 200 cells/mm^3.

3. Consult with **delegating** physician to discontinue and/or change medications that may be causing diarrhea.

4. Notify **delegating physician** of stool studies and lab results. If specific etiology revealed, refer to provider for treatment.

5. If stool studies are negative and symptoms continue, consult with **delegating** physician for further testing (e.g., endoscopy, sigmoidoscopy, or colonoscopy).

6. Refer to mental health provider if patient has new emotional stress, history of eating disorder/laxative abuse, anxiety disorder or panic attacks.

7. May refer to dietitian/nutritionist for further dietary recommendations.

8. If antidiarrheal treatment was ordered and did not improve or resolve diarrhea, consult **delegating** physician.

9. Consult delegating physician for:

   a. Abnormal lab results.
   b. Medication side effects and/or adverse events.

10. Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed and HIV/AIDS nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

REFERENCES

1. **Oskar Adolfsson, et al., "Yogurt and Gut Function," *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition,* Vol. 80, 2004, pp. 245-256. (Current).**

2. R. Cunningham, "Is Over-use of Proton Pump Inhibitors Fue**l**ling the Current Epidemic of *Clostridium difficile*-associated Diarrh**o**ea?" *Journal of Hospital Infection*, Vol. 70, No. 1, September 1, 2008, pp. 1-6. (**Current**).

3. **Department of Health and Human Services Panel on Antiretroviral Guidelines for Adults and Adolescents, "Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in HIV-1-Infected Adults and Adolescents," July 14, 2016, <http://www.aidsinfo.nih.gov/contentfiles/adultandadolescentgl.pdf> (March 1, 2017).**

4. **Drugs.com, "Drug Index A to Z," March 2, 2017, <https://www.drugs.com/drug_information.html> (March 6, 2017).**

5. **Facts and Comparisons, "Facts and Comparisons," *Clinical Drug Information, LLC,* 2017, <http://online.factsandcomparisons.com/index.aspx> (March 13, 2017).**

6. Louise Gagnon, "Medscape Medical News," *Community-Associated Clostridium difficile Increasing, Often Not Linked to Antimicrobial Use*, October 17, 2006, <http://www.medscape.com/viewarticle/546189> (**March 6, 2017**).

7. **Richard L. Guerrant, et al.**, "Practice Guidelines for the Management of Infectious Diarrhea," *Clinical Infectious Diseases*, Vol. 32, **No. 3, February 1**, 2001, pp. 331-351, (**Current**).

8. C**arrie** A. Horwitch, et al., "Lactobacillemia in Three Patients with AIDS," *Clinical Infectious Diseases*, Vol. 21, No. 6, December 1, 1995, pp. 1460-1462. (**Current**).

9. **Johnson & Johnson Consumer Inc., McNeil Consumer Healthcare Division, IMODIUM CAPSULES Rx, October 2016, <https://www.accessdata.fda.gov/drugsatfda_docs/label/2016/017694s052lbl.pdf > (April 20, 2017).**

10. Ed **J**. Kuijper and Jaap **T.** van Dissel, "Commentary: Spectrum of *Clostridium difficile* Infections Outside Health Care Facilities," *Canadian Medical Association Journal*, Vol. 179, **No.** 8, October **7,** 2008, **pp. 747-748. (Current).**

11. **Jeffrey B. Lanier, et al., "Evaluation and Management of Orthostatic Hypotension," *American Family Physician*, Vol. 84, No. 5, September 1, 2011, pp.**

528-536. (Current).

12. D. Ledoux, et al., "Lactobacillus acidophilus Bacteraemia After Use of a Probiotic in a Patient with AIDS and Hodgkin's Disease," *International Journal of STD and AIDS*, Vol. 17, No. 4, April 17, 2006, pp. 280-282. (**Current**).

13. **Lexi-Comp, Inc., "Lexi-Comp Online," *Wolters Kluwer Health, Inc.,* 2017, <http://online.lexi.com> (March 13, 2017).**

14. **Emily G. McDonald, et al., "Continuous Proton Pump Inhibitor Therapy and the Associated Risk of Recurrent Clostridium difficile Infection," *JAMA Internal Medicine,* Vol. 172, No. 5, May 2015, pp. 784-791.**

15. **Panel on Opportunistic Infections in HIV-Infected Adults and Adolescents. "Guidelines for the prevention and treatment of opportunistic infections in HIV-infected adults and adolescents: recommendations from the Centers for Disease**

16. **Control and Prevention, the National Institutes of Health, and the HIV Medicine Association of the Infectious Diseases Society of America," <http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/contentfiles/lvguidelines/adult_oi.pdf> (March 3, 2017).**

17. **Fabrizio Ricci, et al., "Orthostatic Hypotension," *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, Vol. 66, No. 7, August 18, 2015, pp. 848-860.**

18. **Mark S. Riddle, et al., "ACG Clinical Guidelines: Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention of Acute Diarrheal Infections in Adults," *American Journal of Gastroenterology*, Vol. 111, May 2016, pp. 602-622.**

19. B**arbara** Swanson (ed.), *ANAC's Core Curriculum for HIV/AIDS Nursing,* 3rd ed., Jones and Bartlett Publishers, Sudbury, Massachusetts, 2010, "Diarrhea," pp. 170-172. (**Current**).

20. **U.S. Department of Agriculture, Food and Drug Administration, "Food Safety for People with HIV/AIDS," December 2, 2015, <https://www.fda.gov/Food/FoodborneIllnessContaminants/PeopleAtRisk/ucm312669.htm> (March 6, 2017).**

21. **U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, "Table 3. Laboratory Testing Schedule for Monitoring HIV-Infected Patients Before and After Initiation of Antiretroviral Therapy," *AIDSinfo Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in HIV-1-Infected Adults and Adolescents Laboratory Testing for Initial Assessment and Monitoring of HIV-Infected Patients on Antiretroviral Therapy*, July 14, 2016, <https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/1/adult-and-adolescent-arv-guidelines/3/tests-for-initial-assessment-and-follow-up> June 1, 2017.**

22. **U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Health Resources and Services Administration, HIV/AIDS Bureau, "Guide for HIV/AIDS Clinical Care," April 2014, <https://aidsetc.org/guide/contents> (March 1, 2017).**

23. K. A. Yearsley, et al., "Proton Pump Inhibitor Therapy is a Risk Factor for Clostridium difficile-Associated Diarrhea," ***Alimentary Pharmacology and Therapeutics***, **Vol. 24, No. 4,** August **15,** 2006, **pp. 613-619**. (**Current**).

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PRE-EXPOSURE PROPHYLAXIS (PrEP) USE IN THE PREVENTION OF HIV

DEFINITION

Pre-exposure prophylaxis (PrEP) is a course of HIV drugs taken by HIV-negative individuals to reduce their risk of acquiring HIV infection. PrEP can virtually eliminate the risk of getting HIV if taken consistently and correctly. PrEP is not taken for life; it is only taken for short periods when a person may be at risk of HIV infection.

ETIOLOGY

The anti-HIV drugs in PrEP stop the virus from replicating in the human body. If a person is exposed to HIV but has been taking PrEP correctly, there will be high enough levels of the drugs in the body to prevent the person from becoming HIV-infected.

ELIGIBILITY

This PrEP protocol may only be offered to eligible persons who meet the following requirements:

1. **Adults aged 18 years and older.**

   NOTE: Any individual younger than 18 would require referral to the Delegating Physician or Medical Director for assessment, including obtaining consent.

2. **Individuals with HIV uninfected documentation within 7 days of initiating or re-initiating PrEP (Appendix A). Documentation may include:**

   a. **Blood draw, such as routine HIV enzyme-linked immunoassay (EIA) OR**

   b. **Rapid, point-of-care, FDA-approved, fingerstick blood test.**

      NOTE: Oral rapid tests should not be used to screen for HIV infection when considering PrEP use because they can be less sensitive than blood tests. Also, DO NOT accept patient-reported test results or documented anonymous test results.

   c. **A preliminary positive HIV antibody test must be confirmed by 4th generation testing.**

      NOTE: Immediately link all positive clients to care https://www.gacapus.com/r/resource-directory-2/

3. **Individuals at risk for HIV infection include:**

   a. **Men who have sex with men (MSM) or transgender (male to female (MTF)) individuals who have sex with men who are at ongoing, high risk for acquisition of HIV, as indicated by:**

      i. **Any male sex partners in the past 6 months who are not in a monogamous partnership with a recently tested, HIV negative man;**

      AND at least one of the following:

      ii. **Any anal sex without condoms (receptive or insertive) in the past 6 months.**
      iii. **Any STI diagnosed or reported in the past 6 months (syphilis, gonorrhea, chlamydia, etc.).**
      iv. **Is in an ongoing sexual relationship with an HIV positive male partner.**
      v. **Exchanges sex for money, gifts, or resources.**
      vi. **High-risk sex practices.**
      Appendix B (table 1 and 2).

   b. **Heterosexual women and men who report any sex with opposite sex partners in the last 6 months who are not in a monogamous partnership with a recently tested HIV negative partner**

      AND meet at least one of the following criteria:

      i. **Is a man who has sex with both women and men (evaluate MSM PrEP indications above).**
      ii. **Either does not use or infrequently uses condoms during sex with 1 or more partners of unknown HIV status who are known to be at high risk of HIV infection (injection drug use (IDU) or MSM).**
      iii. **Is in an ongoing sexual relationship with an HIV positive partner.**
      iv. **Any STI diagnosed or reported in the past 6 months (syphilis, gonorrhea, chlamydia, etc.).**
      v. **Exchanges sex for money, gifts, or resources.**
      vi. **High-risk sex practices.**
      Appendix B (table 3).
      vii. **Lives in a high-HIV-prevalence area or network.**

NOTE: A high-HIV-prevalence area can be defined as a setting with a high burden of HIV as evidenced by adult HIV prevalence at 1% or greater. For more information, please refer to http://www.who.int/hiv/pub/guidelines/arv2013/intro/keyterms/en/

c. Individuals who inject substances

AND meet at least one of the following criteria:

i. Any sharing of injection or drug preparation equipment in the past 6 months.
ii. In a methadone, buprenorphine, or suboxone treatment program in the past 6 months.
iii. Has an HIV-positive, injecting partner.
iv. Risk of sexual acquisition (assess 3a. and 3b. above).
v. Risk assessment. Appendix B (table 4).

INELIGIBILITY **Persons are NOT eligible to receive PrEP if they:**

1. **Have evidence of confirmed HIV infection by laboratory testing.**
2. **Have clinical signs and symptoms consistent with possible acute HIV infection, such as: fever, chills, rash, night sweats, muscle aches, sore throat, fatigue, swollen lymph nodes, and/or mouth ulcers.**
3. **Have underlying renal disease (eGFR less than 60 ml/min, significant proteinuria) (see CONSULTATION/REFERRAL section below)**
4. **Have underlying bone disease (osteopenia/osteoporosis).**
5. **Are unwilling to adhere to daily Truvada™ AND attend follow up visits every 3 months.**
6. **Have known chronic, active Hepatitis B infection.**
7. **Are pregnant or breastfeeding.**

8. **Will require further provider evaluation prior to initiating PrEP due to unstable comorbidities.**

SUBJECTIVE

1. **Patient is eligible to receive PrEP according to the eligibility criteria listed above in the DEFINITION section.**

2. **Patient denies having flu-like symptoms within the past 2-4 weeks which resolved over a few days to several weeks.**

3. **Patient denies having fever, chills, rash, night sweats, muscle aches, sore throat, fatigue, swollen lymph nodes, and/or mouth ulcers.**

4. **Medical history negative for any medical, relative, or absolute contraindications to PrEP which may include complicated medical conditions or potential drug-drug interactions. Consult with Delegating Physician or Medical Director or visit www.gacapus.com for potential referral to PrEP clinic when assessing the safety of starting PrEP.**

OBJECTIVE

1. **Physical exam within normal limits.**

ASSESSMENT

Patient eligible to receive PrEP.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

NOTE: All diagnostic studies should be obtained 7 days prior to date of the initial PrEP evaluation visit. Consult with Delegating Physician or Medical Director regarding any abnormal lab results. Do not initiate PrEP if patient has abnormal lab results without express approval of Delegating Physician or Medical Director.

1. **HIV test. Routine HIV enzyme-linked immunoassay (EIA) or rapid, point-of-care, FDA-approved, fingerstick blood test. Nonreactive test result must be within 7 days of initiating and dispensing Truvada™ (TDF/FTC).**

2. **Serum creatinine for creatinine clearance calculation (eGFR must be 60 ml/min or greater). Test result must be within 60 days of initiating and dispensing Truvada ™ (TDF/FTC).**

NOTE: Patients with an eGFR less than 60 mL/min should have the test repeated. Assess for use of potential nephrotoxic medications (e.g. NSAIDS, acyclovir, valacyclovir) and body building substances (e.g. creatinine, protein drinks). If repeated eGFR is 60 mL/min or greater, the patient may initiate PrEP. If the repeated eGFR is less than 60 mL/min, the patient may not begin PrEP. Patient will need to be referred to his/her primary care provider for assessment. Nephrology referral should also be considered.

3. **Hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg), Hepatitis B surface antibody (HBsAb), and Hepatitis B total core antibody (HBcAb) if not currently documented. Hepatitis B vaccination should be offered, if indicated based on HBV laboratory studies. Please refer to the Immunization manual for further guidance.**
   NOTE: All persons who test positive for hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg) may not be treated with PrEP under this protocol; they should be evaluated by an infectious disease or hepatic disease specialist.

4. **Hepatitis C antibody, if not previously documented. Appropriate referral to gastrointestinal, infectious disease, or a provider with HCV treatment experience for assessment should be made for individuals who are Hepatitis C virus positive.**

5. **Hepatitis A total antibody (HAV Ab), if not previously documented. Hepatitis A vaccination should be offered, if indicated based on HAV laboratory studies. Please refer to the Immunization manual for further guidance.**

   NOTE: The diagnosis of hepatitis A cannot be made on a clinical basis alone, but rather requires serologic testing. <u>The presence of IgM antibody to HAV is diagnostic of acute HAV infection</u>. A positive test for total anti-HAV indicates immunity to HAV infection but does not differentiate current from previous HAV infection.

6. **STI screening, if not conducted within the prior 3 months, the individual has signs or symptoms of an active STI, or the individual has risk factors for an acute STI (see STD Nurse Protocols). This screening should include gonorrhea/chlamydia**

(urine, rectal, and pharyngeal (GC only)) and syphilis (RPR or VDRL or reverse algorithm testing).

7. **Pregnancy test for women of reproductive age, as appropriate. Women who are pregnant, planning to become pregnant, and/or breastfeeding may not begin PrEP under this protocol. Please refer them to the Delegating Physician, Medical Director, or Primary Care Provider for evaluation.**

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. **Initial medication order: Tenofovir 300mg + Emtricitabine 200mg (Truvada™) 1 tablet PO daily for 30 days.**

   In renally impaired HIV-uninfected individuals, Truvada™ is not recommended if eGFR is below 60 mL/min. http://www.gilead.com/~/media/Files/pdfs/medicines/hiv/truvada/truvada_pi.pdf

   NOTE: As of March 15, 2018, the FDA approved Truvada™ as PrEP for adolescents at-risk for HIV, based on the ATN113 study. Recommended dosage in HIV-1 uninfected adults and adolescents weighing at least 35 kg (77 lbs) is one Truvada™ tablet once daily taken orally, with or without food.

   Within Georgia, prescribing PrEP to a minor (age less than 18 years) requires parental consent. If PrEP is requested by the patient, see CONSULTATION/REFERRAL section below.

2. **1 month follow up for patients initiated or re-initiated on PrEP and dispensed an initial 30-day supply of Truvada™. Only following documentation of adherence and no contraindications in continuing Truvada™: Provide Tenofovir 300mg + Emtricitabine 200mg (Truvada™) 1 tablet PO daily for up to 60 days.**

3. **Following the initial dispense of Truvada™ and 1 month follow up, schedule follow up every 3 months for patients only following documentation of adherence and no**

contraindications in continuing Truvada™: Provide Tenofovir 300mg + Emtricitabine 200mg (Truvada™) 1 tablet PO daily for up to 90 days.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. **Counsel patient regarding the basics of PrEP.**

2. **Patients taking PrEP should be informed of side effects among HIV-uninfected participants in clinical trials. In these trials, side effects were uncommon and usually resolved within the first month of taking PrEP ("start-up syndrome"). Discuss the use of over-the-counter medications for headache, nausea, and flatulence should they occur. Patients should also be counseled about signs or symptoms that indicate a need for urgent evaluation (e.g. those suggesting possible acute renal injury or acute HIV infection).**

3. **Provide client centered risk reduction counseling, (e.g. partner(s) testing and referral to HIV care if at risk or HIV positive, serosorting, seropositioning, decreasing the number of partners, etc.), condoms, and medication adherence counseling.**

4. **Refer to package insert and U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (HHS) guidelines for details on possible changes to bone mineral density (BMD) on Truvada™ as appropriate.**

   For more information, see: http://www.gilead.com/~/media/Files/pdfs/medicines/hiv/truvada/truvada_pi.pdf and https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/understanding-hiv-aids/fact-sheets/22/62/hiv-and-osteoporosis

5. **The safety of PrEP with Truvada™ or Tenofovir disoproxil fumerate (TDF) alone for infants exposed during lactation has not been adequately studied. Therefore, women who choose to breastfeed may not be treated under this protocol.**

FOLLOW-UP

1. **Patient follow up:**
    a. **1 month after initial PrEP initiation or re-initiation visit for adherence counseling and any required additional assessment (e.g. clinical and/or laboratory tests). During this visit confirm HIV-negative test status, assess for early side effects of medications, discuss any difficulties with medication adherence, and answer questions.**

2. **At least every 3 months the following diagnostic tests should be performed:**

    a. **HIV screening assay in assessing HIV status and verifying an HIV negative status prior to authorizing additional Truvada™ refills. (Appendix A)**

    b. **Conduct STI screening for sexually active persons with signs or symptoms of infection and screening for asymptomatic MSM at high risk for recurrent bacterial STIs (e.g. those with syphilis, gonorrhea, or chlamydia at prior visits or multiple sex partners).**

    c. **Repeat pregnancy testing for women who may become pregnant, at least every 3 months.**

3. **At least every 6 months the following diagnostic tests should be performed:**

    a. **Serum creatinine for creatinine clearance calculation for eGFR. If other threats to renal safety are present (e.g. hypertension, diabetes, etc.), renal function may require more frequent monitoring or may need to include additional tests (e.g. urinalysis for proteinuria). A decrease in serum creatinine is not a reason to withhold treatment if eGFR remains 60 mL/min or greater. If eGFR is declining steadily (but still 60 mL/min or greater), consult with a Delegating Physician or Medical Director.**

    b. **Conduct STI testing (e.g. syphilis, gonorrhea, chlamydia). Testing may be indicated more often,**

e.g. every 3 months based on risk factors and exposures.

4. **At least every 12 months evaluate the need to continue PrEP as a component of HIV prevention.**

5. **If a patient discontinues PrEP secondary to concern for possible acute retroviral syndrome, HIV viral load and HIV antibody testing should be conducted within 7 days prior to reinitiating PrEP.**

6. **If a patient discontinues PrEP by personal choice, non-adherence to laboratory follow-up, intolerance to Truvada ™ (TDF/FTC), or reduction in HIV risk they should receive counseling on HIV risk reduction strategies, as well as education on safely restarting PrEP. If the patient has not yet stopped PrEP, yet is considering or wanting to stop PrEP, then discuss continuing PrEP for 28 days after the last high-risk exposure.**

Recommended Laboratory Testing/Screening for Individuals Taking PrEP					
Test/Screening	**Baseline**	**Every 3 months**	**At least every 6 months**	**At least every 12 months**	**Notes**
Provider assessment	✓	✓			- Discuss adherence, side effects, barriers, etc.
Risk assessment	✓			✓	- Consider discussing continued risk and need of PrEP at each appointment
HIV screening assay	✓	✓			- Consider need for HIV RNA PCR for acute HIV
HAV, HBV, HCV screening	✓				- Offer HAV & HBV vaccination if not immune
Serum creatinine (eGFR)	✓		✓		- Avoid PrEP if eGFR less than 60 ml/min
STI screening		✓			- STI testing for those who are symptomatic or at risk for an STI
STI testing	✓		✓		- Include oral/rectal screen for MSM at risk
Pregnancy test for women of childbearing age	✓	✓			- Safety of PrEP in pregnancy has not been established

Adapted from: https://www.hiv.uw.edu/go/prevention/preexposure-prophylaxis-prep/core-concept/all

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. **Refer to Delegating Physician, Medical Director and/or Primary Care Provider;**

    a. **If at any time patient's lab results are abnormal.**

    b. **If patient is experiencing side effects from PrEP.**

    c. **If a patient discontinues PrEP due to HIV seroconversion, they should be offered immediate linkage to care and antiretroviral therapy through the RAPID program. Linkage to care can be assisted through www.gacapus.com.**

    d. **Are HIV positive; also refer to infectious disease/HIV specialist. Linkage to care can be assisted through www.gacapus.com.**

    e. **Have signs and symptoms of acute HIV infection.**

    f. **Have renal impairment (eGFR less than 60 mL/min). Also refer to nephrologist, if able.**

g. **Are pregnant or breastfeeding.**

h. **Have comorbidities and/or drug-drug interactions where PrEP is contraindicated.**

i. **Have underlying bone disease, e.g. osteopenia or osteoporosis.**

j. **Have chronic Hepatitis B or Hepatitis C infection. Also refer to infectious disease, hepatic disease specialist, or provider experienced in Hepatitis C treatment, if able.**

k. **Are repeatedly non-adherent despite intensive counseling.**

l. **Are under the age of 18 and requesting PrEP.**

REFERENCES

1. Grant RM, Lama JR, Anderson PL, et al. Preexposure chemoprophylaxis for HIV prevention in men who have sex with men. *N Engl J Med.* 2010;363(27):2587-2599.

2. Thigpen MC, Kebaabetswe PM, Paxton LA, et al. Antiretroviral preexposure prophylaxis for heterosexual HIV transmission in Botswana. *N Engl J Med.* 2012;367(5):423-434.

3. Baeten JM, Donnell D, Ndase P, et al. Antiretroviral prophylaxis for HIV prevention in heterosexual men and women. *N Engl J Med.* 2012;367(5):399-410.

4. Choopanya K, Martin M, Suntharasamai P, et al. Antiretroviral prophylaxis for HIV infection in injecting drug users in Bangkok, Thailand (the Bangkok Tenofovir Study): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled phase 3 trial. *Lancet.* 2013;381(9883):2083-2090.

5. Molina J-M, Capitant C, Charreau I, et al. On Demand PrEP with Oral TDF-FTC in MSM: Results of the ANRS Ipergay Trial. Conference on Retroviruses and Opportunistic Infections (CROI) 2015. Abstract 23LB.

6. McCormack S, Dunn D. Pragmatic Open-Label Randomised Trial of Preexposure Prophylaxis: The PROUD Study. Conference on Retroviruses and Opportunistic Infections (CROI) 2015. Abstract 22LB.

7. Grant RM, Anderson PL, McMahan V, et al. Uptake of pre-exposure prophylaxis, sexual practices, and HIV incidence in men and transgender women who have sex with men: a cohort study. *Lancet Infect Dis.* 2014.

8. Centers for Disease Control (CDC). New HIV Pre-Exposure Prophylaxis Guidelines. Press Release issued May 15, 2014. http://www.empr.com/cdc-new-hiv-pre-exposure-prophylaxis-guidelines/article/347053/ (Accessed August 25, 2014).

9. Liu A, Cohen S, Follansbee S, et al. Early experiences implementing pre-exposure prophylaxis (PrEP) for HIV prevention in San Francisco. *PLoS Med.* 2014;11(3): e1001613.

10. US Public Health Service. Pre-exposure Prophylaxis for the Prevention of HIV Infection in the United States – 2017 Update Clinical Practice Guideline. (page 41). Accessed August 2, 2018. https://www.cdc.gov/hiv/pdf/risk/prep/cdc-hiv-prep-guidelines-2017.pdf

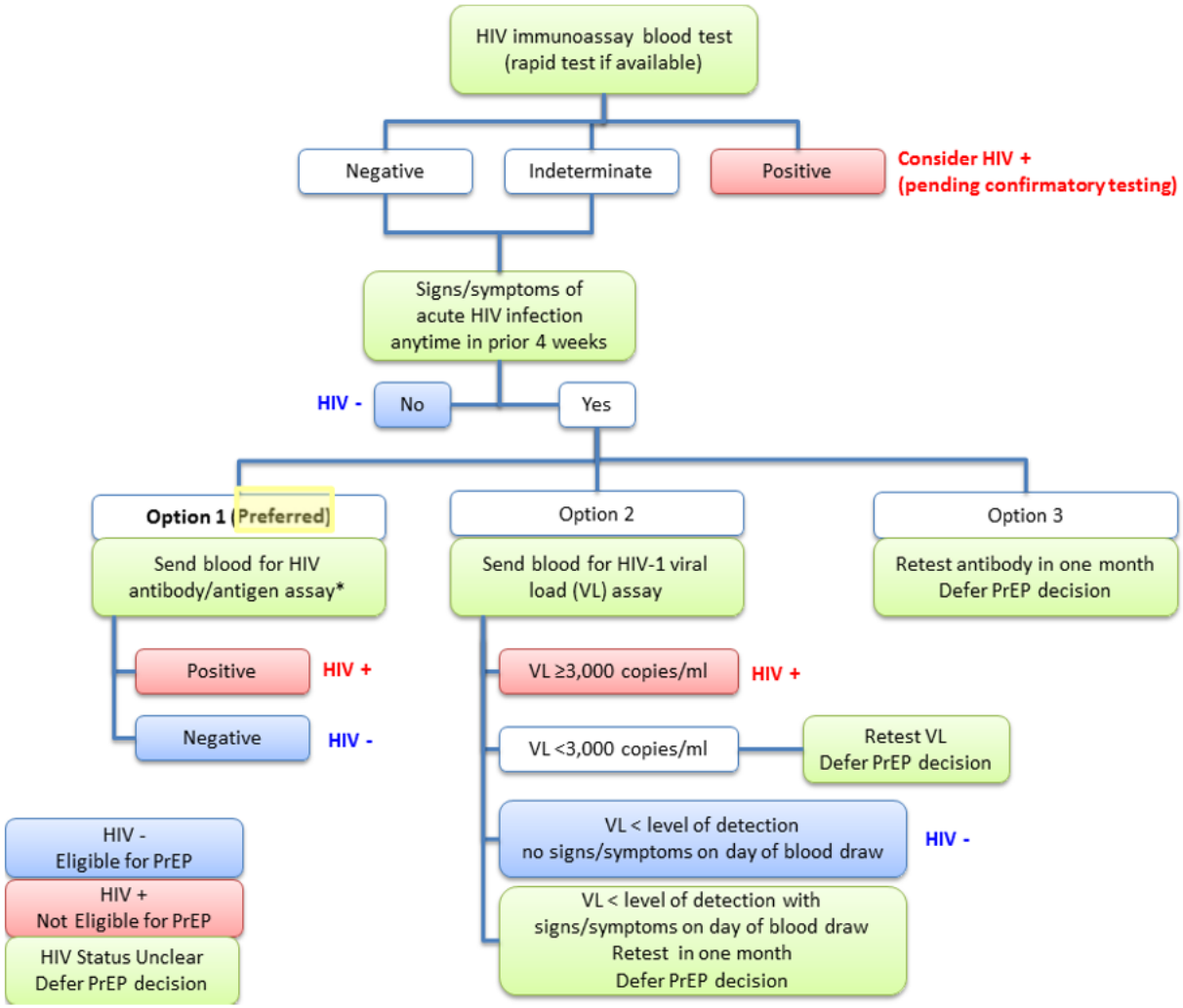
11. US Public Health Service. Pre-exposure Prophylaxis for the Prevention of HIV Infection in the United States – 2017 Update Clinical Providers' Supplement.

Accessed August 2, 2018. https://www.cdc.gov/hiv/pdf/risk/prep/cdc-hiv-prep-provider-supplement-2017.pdf

12. Clinician Consultation Center. University of California, San Francisco. Accessed August 13, 2018. http://nccc.ucsf.edu/.

Appendix A: Clinician Determination of HIV Status for PrEP Provision

Figure Clinician Determination of HIV Status for PrEP Provision



US Public Health Service. Pre-exposure Prophylaxis for the Prevention of HIV Infection in the United States – 2017 Update Clinical Practice Guideline. (page 41). Accessed August 2, 2018. https://www.cdc.gov/hiv/pdf/risk/prep/cdc-hiv-prep-guidelines-2017.pdf

Appendix B Risk Behavior Assessment Tables

Table 1: Risk Behavior Assessment for MSM or MTF transgender individuals

In the past 6 months:

1. Have you had sex with men, women, or both?
2. (if men or both sexes) How many men have you had sex with?
3. How many times did you have receptive anal sex (you were the bottom) with a man who was not wearing a condom?
4. How many of your male sex partners were HIV-positive?
5. (if any positive) With these HIV-positive male partners, how many times did you have insertive anal sex (you were the top) without you wearing a condom?
6. Have you used methamphetamines (such as crystal or speed)?

https://www.cdc.gov/hiv/pdf/risk/prep/cdc-hiv-prep-guidelines-2017.pdf **(pg. 34)**

Table 2

MSM/MTF Transgender Individual Risk Index		
1. How old are you today?	If <18 years, score 0 If 18-28 years, score 8 If 29-40 years, score 5 If 41-48 years, score 2 If 49 years or more, score 0	Score:
2. In the last 6 months, how many men have you had sex with?	If >10 male partners, score 7 If 6-10 male partners, score 4 If 0-5 male partners, score 0	Score:
3. In the last 6 months, how many times did you have receptive anal sex (you were the bottom) with a man, when he did not use a condom?	If 1 or more times, score 10 If 0 times, score 0	Score:
4. In the last 6 months, how many of your male sex partners were HIV-positive?	If >1 positive partner, score 8 If 1 positive partner, score 4 If <1 positive partner, score 0	Score:
5. In the last 6 months, how many times did you have insertive anal sex (you were the top) with a man who was HIV-positive when you did not use a condom?	If 5 or more times, score 6 If 0-4 times, score 0	Score:
6. In the last 6 months, have you used methamphetamines such as crystal or speed?	If yes, score 6 If no, score 0	Score:
	Add down entries in right column to calculate total score	Total:

If score is 10 or greater, evaluate for intensive HIV prevention services including PrEP.
If score is below 10, provide indicated standard HIV prevention services.
https://www.cdc.gov/hiv/pdf/risk/prep-cdc-hiv-prep-provider-supplement-2017.pdf pg.22

Table 3: Risk Behavior Assessment for Heterosexual Men and Women

In the past 6 months:

1. Have you had sex with men, women, or both?
2. (if opposite sex or both sexes) How many men/women have you had sex with?
3. How many times did you have vaginal or anal sex when neither you nor your partner wore a condom?
4. How many of your sex partners were HIV-positive?
5. (if any positive) With these HIV-positive partners, how many times did you have

https://www.cdc.gov/hiv/pdf/risk/prep/cdc-hiv-prep-guidelines-2017.pdf **(pg. 34)**

Table 4

People who Inject Drugs (PWID) / Injection Drug Users (IDU) Risk Index					
1	How old are you today (in years)?	If <30 years, score 38 If 30-39 years, score 24 If 40-49 years, score 7 If ≥50 years, score 0			Score:
2	In the last 6 months, were you in a methadone maintenance program?	If yes, score 0 If no, score 31			Score:
3	In the last 6 months, how often did you inject heroin?	If 1 or more times, If 0 times,	Injection sub-score 1 Injection sub-score 0	Score:	
	In the last 6 months, how often did you inject cocaine?	If 1 or more times, If 0 times,	Injection sub-score 1 Injection sub-score 0	Score:	
	In the last 6 months, how often did you share a cooker?	If 1 or more times, If 0 times,	Injection sub-score 1 Injection sub-score 0	Score:	
	In the last 6 months, how often did you share needles?	If 1 or more times, If 0 times,	Injection sub-score 1 Injection sub-score 0	Score:	
	In the last 6 months, how often did you visit a shooting gallery?	If 1 or more times, If 0 times,	Injection sub-score 1 Injection sub-score 0	Score:	
Add the five injection subscores (section 3) to obtain a Composite Injection Score		If sum of 5 injection subscores is; then Composite Score is: 0 — 0 1 — 7 2 — 21 3 — 24 4 — 24 5 — 31			Score:
Add the scores for age (1) and methadone use (2) to the Composite Injection Subscore (3) to yield a Total Score					Total:

If the total score is 46 or greater, evaluate for PrEP or other intensive HIV prevention services for PWID. If score is 45 or less, provide indicated standard HIV prevention services for PWID. To identify active PWID in a clinician's practice, we recommend asking all their patients a routine question: "Have you ever injected drugs that were not prescribed for you by a physician?" If yes, ask, "When was the last time you injected any drugs?" Only complete PWID risk index if they have injected any nonprescription drug during the past 6 months.
https://www.cdc.gov/hiv/pdf/risk/prep-cdc-hiv-prep-provider-supplement-2017.pdf pg.29

Appendix C: Paying for PrEP Patient Insurance

Paying for PrEP Patient Insurance	PrEP Access
Uninsured and less than 500% Federal Poverty Level (FPL)	Gilead will provide PrEP through patient assistance (see below). May need to pay for office visit and labs.
Uninsured and more than 500% FPL	$1250/month for PrEP alone, without office visits and lab costs. Gilead offers $300/month co-pay assistance (see below).
Medicare	Most plans cover, some require prior authorization Plans tend to have higher co-pays; can't use Gilead co-pay card. Contact specific plan for more information May use Patient Access Network if less than 500% FPL (see below).
Employer-sponsored health insurance	Most cover, some require prior authorization, cost sharing varies. Gilead offers $300/month co-pay assistance (see below). May use Patient Access Network if less than 500% FPL (see below).

- **Gilead patient assistance (for patients without insurance):**
  - **The Gilead PrEP patient assistance program will provide (Truvada™ (TDF/FTC) at no cost for those who are uninsured and meet income guidelines**
  - **Fax application and proof of income to the program:**
    - **Application: https://start.truvada.com/Content/pdf/Medication_Assistance_Program.pdf**
    - **Fax number: 1-855-330-5478**
    - **Phone number: 1-855-330-5479**
  - **One bottle (30-day supply) shipped to providers office**
  - **Patients must re-apply (resubmit proof of eligibility) every 3-6 months**

- **Gilead co-pay assistance (for patients with non-government insurance):**
  - **Patients sign up through website: http://www.gileadcopay.com/**
  - **Website generates co-pay card and patients take card to pharmacy when picking up PrEP**
  - **Phone number: 1-877-505-6986**

- **Patient Access Network Foundation (for patients with insurance and less than 500% FPL)**
  - **Patients sign up through website: www.panfoundation.org/hiv-treatment-and-prevention**
  - **Phone number: 1-866-316-7263**
  - **Patients can sign up on their own or be enrolled by a healthcare provider**

- **Prior Authorization Language to Justify PrEP**

  - **Patient is high risk because [LIST PATIENT SPECIFIC RISK FACTORS]. Truvada™ for HIV pre-exposure prophylaxis is indicated. Lab evaluation shows a negative HIV test from [DATE] and normal kidney function from [DATE]. The patient is regularly followed at [NAME OF CLINIC] clinic and will be scheduled for counseling visits and ongoing monitoring of HIV status, kidney function, and STI screening every 3 months.**

- **Other resources for patients to access PrEP**

  - **My Prep Experience: http://myprepexperience.blogspot.com/p/truvada-track.html. Patients can e-mail problems in gaining access to myprepexperience@gmail.com. They have an online community that can work to help patient gain access to PrEP and report it on the website.**
  - **Clinical Trials: http://www.avac.org/trial-summary-table/prep. Patients can enroll in ongoing clinical trials and access PrEP for free**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SEBORRHEIC DERMATITIS IN HIV-INFECTED ADULT

DEFINITION

Seborrheic dermatitis is a skin condition commonly seen in HIV-infected persons **(3-5% in the general HIV-uninfected population and up to 85-95% of patients with advanced HIV infection)**. It is chronic and usually undergoes periods of exacerbation and remission. The condition occurs in areas where sebaceous glands are concentrated, including the scalp, eyebrows, nasolabial folds, forehead, cheekbones, ears, hairline, chest, axilla and groin.

ETIOLOGY

The probable cause of seborrhea is a yeast, ***Malassezia*** **(formerly called *Pityrosporum ovale*)**. **Overgrowth of the Malassezia yeast in the oily skin environment, failure of the immune system to regulate the fungus, and the skin's inflammatory reaction to the yeast overgrowth appear to be the chief factors that cause the dermatitis.**

SUBJECTIVE

1. May or may not report rash, sometimes itchy, or "dry skin" that will not go away **despite** of the application of topical moisturizers.

2. May or may not have a history of dandruff and/or seborrheic dermatitis.

3. **Obtain a complete medication profile to determine whether there are any clinically significant drug-drug interactions with treatment.**

NOTE: Medication profiles should include: over-the-counter medications, herbals, vitamins, and prescription medications (including prescribed medications from outside providers). If a release of information is available, then contact the pharmacy, if necessary, in obtaining an up to date medication list.

OBJECTIVE

1. Fine white scaling, without erythema, affecting the scalp (dandruff),

AND/OR

2. Scaly/crusty patches and plaques of erythema with indistinct margins and yellowish, greasy scale affecting one or more of the following areas: scalp, eyebrows, nose, nasolabial folds, forehead, cheekbones, ears, hairline, chest, breast folds, axilla, back and/or groin.

3. **Absence of symptoms suggestive of secondary syphilis, (e.g., palmoplantar and mucosal lesions, peripheral adenopathy, condylomata lata, patchy alopecia) see STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SYPHILIS, EARLY SYMPTOMATIC (PRIMARY and SECONDARY)**.

ASSESSMENT Probable Seborrheic Dermatitis

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

1. May perform a potassium hydroxide (KOH) preparation to rule out *Candida albicans* and other superficial yeast infections.

2. **If recent results not available, order CBC with differential, comprehensive metabolic panel (assessing renal and hepatic function) and, if indicated, fasting lipid profile.**

3. **If recent results not available, order CD4 count.**

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. For scalp conditions:

NOTE: Consult physician if patient has experienced a history of severe allergic reaction (e.g., severe rash, hives, difficulty breathing, dizziness) to sulfur, aspirin, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID) (e.g., ibuprofen, naproxen, celecoxib); and/or if patient is taking anticoagulants, (e.g., heparin, warfarin, apixaban, enoxaparin, rivaroxaban), aspirin, methotrexate, or sulfonylureas (e.g., glipizide) because the risk of side effects may be increased by Sebex shampoo.

a. Regular use of an over-the-counter dandruff shampoo that contains sulfur and salicylic acid (e.g., Sebex), selenium sulfide (e.g., Selsun Blue, **Dandrex**), ketoconazole (e.g., Nizoral**-AD**), coal tar, or zinc pyrithione (e.g., Head and Shoulders, Zincon). Instruct patient to shampoo **per manufacturer's recommendations** until condition resolves (**2 to 4** weeks).

Rotation of different classes of shampoos may improve and maintain efficacy of these formulations in clinical practice. Irritation and/or burning sensation have been reported in 1 to 3 percent of patients.

OR

b. **Ketoconazole** 2% shampoo (prescription strength) **used daily or at least two or three times per week until condition resolves (2 to 4 weeks).** Instruct patient to wet hair, massage well into scalp and leave **on for 5 to 10** minutes and then rinse thoroughly.

OR

c. If shampoo alone is not adequate, a medium-potency topical corticosteroid solution (e.g., triamcinolone 0.1% applied **once daily** to the scalp **for 2 to 4 weeks**) may be used. **Instruct patient to part hair, apply a small amount of the solution on the affected area, and rub it in gently. Protect the area from washing and rubbing until the solution dries. Hair may be washed as usual but not right after applying the medicine.**

NOTE: Avoid application of medium potency topical steroids to the face.

d. **For individuals requiring maintenance therapy in preventing relapses: Use an over-the-counter dandruff shampoo listed above or ketoconazole 2% shampoo once per week.**

2. For face conditions:

a. **First Choice:**
Apply ketoconazole 2% cream to affected areas once or twice daily until condition resolves (2 to 4 weeks).

OR

b. **Second Choice: Apply hydrocortisone 1% cream to affected areas once or twice daily until condition resolves (2 to 4 weeks).**

Least potent topical corticosteroid creams should be used because of the potential adverse effects with prolonged use (e.g., permanent telangiectasia and atrophy). Long-term (months to years) continuous use of even mild topical corticosteroids can result in permanent telangiectasia and atrophy and should be avoided.

c. For individuals requiring maintenance therapy in preventing relapses: Use an over-the-counter dandruff shampoo listed above or ketoconazole shampoo 2% as a facial wash once a week.

OR

Apply ketoconazole 2% cream to affected areas once a week.

d. For patients with mustaches and/or beards:
Apply over-the-counter dandruff shampoo listed above or ketoconazole 2% shampoo to facial hair daily until condition resolves (2-4 weeks) and then once per week if needed for maintenance therapy in preventing relapses.

3. For **conditions on trunk and intertriginous areas**:

a. **Apply** topical 2% ketoconazole cream to affected area**(s) 1 to 2** times **per** day until condition resolves **(2 to 4 weeks)**.

AND/OR

Apply topical **0.1% triamcinolone** cream to affected area**(s)** 1 to 2 times per day until condition resolves **(2 to 4 weeks).**

b. To prevent relapses:

Apply ketoconazole 2% cream to the involved area(s) once a week.

OR

Use ketoconazole 2% shampoo as a body wash once

weekly.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Explain reason for regimen. Review current drug regimen including: drug storage, dose, route of administration, schedule, side effects, drug interactions and follow-up monitoring. Include

   the following:

   a. Treatment is for external use only. Avoid contact with eyes, **inside nose and mouth**. If contact occurs, rinse thoroughly with **cool** water.
   b. If using **over-the-counter dandruff** shampoo, follow **manufacturer** directions and leave **shampoo** on for the recommended amount of time. Allow shampoo suds onto affected facial areas when possible.
   c. Do not apply topical therapy to open wounds or weeping areas.
   d. Wash and dry area before applying topical creams.
   e. If using topical corticosteroid (e.g., hydrocortisone); avoid exposing treated area to direct sunlight, as it may become sunburned.
   f. Review patient's current allergies. Consult **delegating** physician if patient **has experienced a severe allergic reaction (e.g., severe rash, hives, difficulty breathing, dizziness)** to any ingredient in the topical preparations (OTC or prescription).
   g. Use products as ordered, and do not overuse. **Counsel about potential adverse effects with prolonged corticosteroid cream use especially to the face (e.g., permanent telangiectasia and atrophy) and not to use corticosteroid creams ordered for conditions on trunk and intertriginous areas on the face.**

2. Explain that seborrheic dermatitis is a chronic condition, which often recurs. Patients should keep their skin as clean and dry as possible, and watch for recurrences, particularly in winter due to dry heat.

3. At the earliest sign of recurrence, instruct patient to restart shampoo and/or topical therapy to prevent progression and secondary infection.

4. Instruct patient to inform provider if condition worsens or does not improve, or if he/she has signs of secondary infection.

5. Ask female patient to inform her provider if she is, or is planning to become, pregnant.

FOLLOW-UP

Routine appointments with provider as indicated, at least every 3-6 months.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Notify **delegating** physician of the following:

    a. Severe or recalcitrant episodes.
    b. Secondary infection is suspected.
    c. **Abnormal lab values.**
    d. Medication side effects and/or adverse events.

2. Refer pregnant patients to **delegating** physician.

3. **Refer for uncontrolled HIV: Effective antiretroviral therapy should be considered to control the effects of HIV on the immune system and thereby decrease exacerbations and the severity of seborrheic dermatitis associated with immunosuppression.**

4. **Refer to delegating physician if symptoms persist beyond 4 weeks with therapy for reassessment and recommendations.**

5. **Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed and HIV/AIDS nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.**

REFERENCES

1. **American Society of Health-System Pharmacists, Inc., "Triamcinolone Topical," *MedlinePlus*, December 15, 2015, <https://medlineplus.gov/druginfo/meds/a601124.html> (April 21, 2017).**

2. **Facts and Comparisons, "Facts and Comparisons," *Clinical Drug Information, LLC*, 2017, <http://online.factsandcomparisons.com/index.aspx> (April 7, 2017).**

3. **Lexi-Comp, Inc., "Lexi-Comp Online," *Wolters Kluwer Health, Inc.,* 2017, <http://online.lexi.com> (April 7, 2017).**

4. **Medscape, "Seborrheic Dermatitis," *Drugs and Diseases, Dermatology,* February 2, 2017, <http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/1108312-overview> (April 3, 2017).**

5. **UpToDate, "Seborrheic dermatitis in adolescents and adults," *Wolters Kluwer*, December 30, 2015, <www.uptodate.com> (April 13, 2017).**

6. **U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, "Table 3. Laboratory Testing Schedule for Monitoring HIV-Infected Patients Before and After Initiation of Antiretroviral Therapy," *AIDSinfo Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in HIV-1-Infected Adults and Adolescents Laboratory Testing for Initial Assessment and Monitoring of HIV-Infected Patients on Antiretroviral Therapy*, July 14, 2016, <https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/1/adult-and-adolescent-arv-guidelines/3/tests-for-initial-assessment-and-follow-up> June 1, 2017.**

7. **U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Health Resources and Services Administration, HIV/AIDS Bureau, "Guide for HIV/AIDS Clinical Care," April 2014, <https://aidsetc.org/guide/contents> (March 1, 2017).**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR TOXOPLASMOSIS PROPHYLAXIS IN HIV-INFECTED ADULT

DEFINITION

All HIV-infected persons should be tested for IgG antibody to *Toxoplasma* soon after HIV diagnosis. Persons found to be *Toxoplasma*-seropositive and have CD4 counts less than 100 **cells**/mm^3 should be administered primary prophylaxis to prevent toxoplasmic encephalitis (TE).

HIV-infected persons who have completed initial treatment for TE should be administered secondary prophylaxis (chronic maintenance therapy) for life, unless immune reconstitution occurs due to antiretroviral therapy (ART).

Eating raw shellfish has been identified as a novel risk factor for infection, yet up to 50% of individuals with documented primary infection do not have an identifiable risk factor. The organism is not transmitted through person-to-person contact. Toxoplasma IgG-negative patients should be counseled to avoid sources of infection, e.g., avoid eating raw or undercooked meat, especially pork, lamb, game, and venison, wash hands after handling raw meat and after gardening or contact with soil, and encourage patients not to adopt or handle stray cats, and, if they own cats, to wash hands thoroughly after cleaning litter boxes. In addition, Toxoplasma IgG-negative patients who are not taking a PCP prophylactic regimen known to be active against TE, such Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, should be retested for IgG antibody to Toxoplasma when their CD4 counts decline to less than 100 cells/mm^3 to determine whether they have seroconverted and therefore are at risk for TE.

ETIOLOGY

Toxoplasma gondii is a protozoan organism, **with an infection rate of approximately 22.5% of individuals 12 years and older in the United States,** commonly found in cats, mammals and birds. **In the era before antiretroviral therapy (ART), the 12-month incidence of TE was approximately 33% in patients with advanced immunosuppression who were seropositive for *T. gondii* and not receiving prophylaxis with drugs against the disease. A low incidence of toxoplasmosis is seen in patients who are seronegative for *T. gondii*. If patients are truly seronegative, their toxoplasmosis presumably represents primary infection (typically occurring after eating undercooked meat containing tissue cysts or ingesting oocysts that have been shed in cat feces and sporulated in the environment, a process that takes at least 24 hours), re-activation of latent disease (most**

commonly due to immunodeficiency) in individuals who cannot produce detectable antibodies, *or* testing with insensitive assays. *T. gondii* can infect any tissue, but the most common sites are the brain, lungs and eyes. **In persons with AIDS the most common presentation is focal encephalitis.** In immunocompetent persons, the infection is usually controlled, but a small number of organisms survive. **Clinical disease is rare among patients with CD4 T lymphocyte (CD4) counts greater than 200 cells/mm³ with the greatest risk in those patients with CD4 counts lesser than 50 cells/mm³.**

SUBJECTIVE

1. May or may not have a history of TE and treatment for TE.

2. No history/complaints of neurological symptoms suggestive of TE (e.g., seizures, altered mental status, motor weakness, headaches, and/or cognitive impairment).

3. Absence of allergies to sulfa drugs, dapsone, pyrimethamine, atovaquone, **folate derivatives** and/or clindamycin.

4. Obtain a **complete** medication profile to determine whether there are any clinically significant drug-drug interactions with treatment.

NOTE: Medication profiles should include: over-the-counter medications, herbals, vitamins, and prescription medications **(including prescribed medications from outside providers). If a release of information is available, then contact the pharmacy, if necessary, in obtaining an up to date medication list.**

OBJECTIVE

1. *Toxoplasma* **IgG** seropositive.

2. **Recent (within last 3 months)** CD4 count less than 100 **cells**/mm^3.

3. Absence of neurological signs of TE (e.g., altered mental status, aphasia, ataxia, hemiparesis and cranial nerve palsies).

4. **Recent (within last 3 months)** CBC **with differential, complete metabolic panel (assessing** renal **and hepatic** function), and, if indicated, fasting lipid profile are within acceptable values.

5. Absence of Glucose-6-Phosphate Dehydrogenase (G6-PD) deficiency. (If **patient has** G6-PD-**deficiency and dapsone is being considered**, refer to **delegating** physician for prophylaxis medication.)

NOTE: Whenever possible, patients should be tested for G6-PD deficiency before administration of dapsone. Alternative agent should be used if the patient is found to have G6-PD deficiency. Additionally, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole and sulfadiazine should be used with caution in patients with G6-PD deficiency.

ASSESSMENT Candidate for toxoplasmosis prophylaxis (primary or secondary); at risk for activation of latent toxoplasmosis infection.

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

1. **If previous positive results or recent IgG antibody testing for *Toxoplasma* not available, test for IgG antibody to *Toxoplasma*.**

2. **If previous results not available, test for G6-PD deficiency.**

3. **If recent results not available, order CBC with differential, comprehensive metabolic panel (assessing renal and hepatic function), and, if indicated, fasting lipid profile.**

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Primary Prophylaxis (Prevention of TE)

   a. **Preferred Regimen**
   Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole* (TMP-SMZ) one double strength (DS) tablet by mouth daily†

   OR

   b. Alternative **Regimen**
      1) TMP-SMZ* one single strength (SS) tab**let** by mouth daily†

      OR

      2) TMP-SMZ* one (DS) tab**let** by mouth 3 times per week† (e.g., Monday, Wednesday, Friday)

NOTE: TMP/SMZ may require dosage adjustment in patients with renal impairment. Consult with delegating physician regarding appropriate dosing.

OR

If patient cannot tolerate TMP-SMZ:

3) Dapsone Regimens†
   a) Dapsone 200mg by mouth once per week
   PLUS
   Pyrimethamine 75mg by mouth once per week
   PLUS
   Leucovorin 25mg by mouth once per week.

   NOTE: As of June 2015, pyrimethamine is no longer available in retail pharmacies in the United States. It is only available through a special pharmacy program (http://www.daraprimdirect.com/). If there is a delay in procuring pyrimethamine for a patient in whom it is needed, consult physician for guidance

   OR

4) Atovaquone 1500mg by mouth daily with food†‡

2. Secondary Prophylaxis (Chronic Maintenance Therapy)

   a. **Preferred Regimen**

   Sulfadiazine* 500**mg or** 1000mg by mouth 4 times/day

   PLUS
   Pyrimethamine 25**mg or** 50mg by mouth daily

   PLUS
   Leucovorin 10**mg or** 25mg by mouth daily†

   OR

   b. Alternative **(if patient cannot tolerate sulfa drugs)**
   Clindamycin§ 600mg by mouth every 8 hours

   PLUS
   Pyrimethamine 25**mg or** 50mg by mouth daily

PLUS

Leucovorin 10**mg or** 25mg by mouth daily[¶]

NOTE: As of June 2015, pyrimethamine is no longer available in retail pharmacies in the United States. It is only available through a special pharmacy program (http://www.daraprimdirect.com/). If there is a delay in procuring pyrimethamine for a patient in whom it is needed, consult physician for guidance.

OR

1) TMP-SMZ* one DS tablet by mouth **daily or** every 12 hours[†‖]

OR

3) Atovaquone 750**mg or** 1500mg by mouth every 12 hours with food[†‡]

LEGEND
***Many patients become intolerant of sulfa medications. Severe reactions may include persistent neutropenia, fever, renal failure, severe erythroderma and Stevens-Johnson syndrome (bullae & desquamation of the skin). Some patients with milder reactions can be desensitized.
[†]Regimen is also effective against PCP. (**Atovaquone dosed at 750mg every 12 hours is an alternative regimen for secondary TE prophylaxis, but not for PCP).**
[‡]Very expensive and should not be used if other alternatives are available.
[§]Clindamycin **has been associated with severe** colitis, **which may end fatally, reserve it for serious infections for which less toxic antimicrobial agents are inappropriate.**
[¶]This regimen is not recommended for the prevention of PCP. **Additional agent must be added for PCP prophylaxis. Avoid concurrent use of leucovorin with trimethoprim (plus sulfamethoxazole) for PCP prophylaxis.**
[‖]**To reduce pill burden, TMP-SMX can be used, but use of the lower dose may be associated with an increased risk of relapse, and if the once daily dosing is used, a gradual transition may be beneficial (e.g., follow acute therapy with 4–6 weeks of 1 double-strength tablet twice daily before lowering to 1 double-strength tablet once daily).**

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Explain reason for regimen. Review current drug regimen including: dose, drug storage, route of administration, schedule, side effects, and follow-up monitoring.

2. Instruct patient to stop medications immediately and report adverse drug reactions or side effects (e.g., unusual bleeding or bruising, changes in skin color, sore throat, rash, high fever) to his/her provider. Also, report other changes in health that he/she feels are important.

3. Instruct that taking medications as ordered is very important to prevent this life-threatening illness.

4. Explain that prophylaxis may be discontinued due to sustained rise in CD4 **cell** count while on ART, but may need to be re-started in the event of stopping ART or if CD4 **cell** counts drop.

5. Instruct patient to report any neurological signs/symptoms to provider.

6. Ask female patient to inform her provider if she is, or is planning to become, pregnant.

7. Inform patient that regular blood tests are necessary during therapy.

8. If taking TMP-SMZ or sulfadiazine, explain that these medications may cause increased sensitivity to sunlight and instruct to wear sunblock, protective clothing and dark glasses, or avoid direct exposure to sunlight.

9. **Ask patient to check with his/her pharmacist or provider about interactions before taking a new medication, nutritional or herbal supplement, or over-the-counter drug/product.**

10. **Toxoplasma IgG-negative patients should be counseled to avoid sources of infection, e.g., avoid eating raw or undercooked meat, especially pork, lamb, game, and venison, wash hands after handling raw meat and after gardening or contact with soil, and encourage patients not to adopt or handle stray cats, and, if they own cats, to wash hands thoroughly after cleaning litter boxes.**

FOLLOW-UP

1. **Check for any upcoming provider appointments:**

a. If no appointment scheduled, schedule with the provider as soon as possible (ideally within 30 days).
b. If appointment scheduled, consider rescheduling if beyond 30 days.

2. **Obtain a complete medication profile to determine whether there are any clinically significant drug-drug interactions, especially to new medications initiated since the previous assessment.**

3. **Monitor for medication adherence, adverse drug events, and medication side effects.**

4. **Obtain and** monitor **lab values for** CBC **with differential and comprehensive metabolic panel (assessing** renal and **hepatic** function) within 4-6 weeks **after** initiation of regimen and then as indicated.

5. Monitor for signs/symptoms of TE.

6. Monitor CD4 counts and percentage at least every 3-6 months:

   a. Discontinue primary prophylaxis in patients who have responded to ART and have sustained CD4 counts greater than 200 cells/mm^3 for 3 months or more. Primary prophylaxis should be restarted if the CD4 count decreases to less than 100-200 cells/mm^3.
   b. Discontinue secondary prophylaxis in patients who completed initial therapy for TE, have responded to ART and have sustained CD4 counts greater than 200 cells/mm^3 for 6 months or more, and are asymptomatic for TE. Secondary prophylaxis should be restarted if the CD4 count decreases to less than 200 cells/mm^3.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Notify **delegating** physician of the following:

   a. Abnormal lab values.
   b. Medication side effects and/or adverse events.
   c. Signs/symptoms of TE, **e.g., seizures, altered mental status, motor weakness, headaches, and/or cognitive**

impairment.

d. **If G6-PD deficient and dapsone is being considered.**

2. Refer pregnant patients to **delegating** physician.

3. Consult **delegating** physician concerning dosage adjustments **for** patient with **abnormal renal or hepatic function tests.**

4. Primary prophylaxis may be discontinued in select patients with CD4 counts of 100 to 200 cells/mm^3 and HIV RNA levels below limits of detection for at least 3 to 6 months. Consult delegating physician for guidance in selected patients.

5. **Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed and HIV/AIDS nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.**

REFERENCES

1. **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, "Parasites - Toxoplasmosis (Toxoplasma infection)," March 1, 2017, <https://www.cdc.gov/parasites/toxoplasmosis/> (March 31, 2017).**

2. **Facts and Comparisons, "Facts and Comparisons," *Clinical Drug Information, LLC,* 2017, <http://online.factsandcomparisons.com/index.aspx> (April 12, 2017).**

3. **Lexi-Comp, Inc., "Lexi-Comp Online," *Wolters Kluwer Health, Inc.*, 2017, <http://online.lexi.com> (April 12, 2017).**

4. **Panel on Opportunistic Infections in HIV-Infected Adults and Adolescents. "Guidelines for the prevention and treatment of opportunistic infections in HIV-infected adults and adolescents: recommendations from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, the National Institutes of Health, and the HIV Medicine Association of the Infectious Diseases Society of America," July 25, 2017, <http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/contentfiles/lvguidelines/adult_oi.pdf> (August 25 , 2017).**

5. **U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, "Table 3. Laboratory Testing Schedule for Monitoring HIV-Infected Patients Before and After Initiation of Antiretroviral Therapy," *AIDSinfo Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in HIV-1-Infected Adults and Adolescents Laboratory Testing for Initial Assessment and Monitoring of HIV-Infected Patients on Antiretroviral Therapy*, July 14, 2016, <https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/1/adult-and-adolescent-arv-guidelines/3/tests-for-initial-assessment-and-follow-up> June 1, 2017.**

6. **U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Health Resources and Services Administration, HIV/AIDS Bureau, "Guide for HIV/AIDS Clinical Care," April 2014, <https://aidsetc.org/guide/contents> (April 12, 2017).**

7. **U.S. National Library of Medicine, Genetics Home Reference, *"glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency,"* March 28, 2017, <https://ghr.nlm.nih.gov/condition/glucose-6-phosphate-dehydrogenase-deficiency> (March 29, 2017).**

IMMUNIZATION

Childhood and Adult Immunization Program

All Public Health locations that provide vaccine services will utilize the current edition of the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program (GIP) Manual, which is developed based on the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices Recommendations and the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention's (CDC) Epidemiology and Prevention of Vaccine Preventable Diseases' (Pink Book), for administering vaccines to children and adults. The GIP Manual contains detailed standards for vaccine administration, mandatory use of Vaccine Information Statements (VIS), recommendations and forms specific to the childhood and adult immunization schedules, recommended screening questionnaires for identifying possible contraindications and precautions to vaccines, and requirements for entering all vaccines into the Georgia Registry for Immunization Transactions and Services (GRITS). Go to https://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-publications for the GIP Manual.

Registered Professional Nurses (RNs) and Advanced Practice Registered Nurses (APRNs) will administer vaccines in accordance with the current edition of the GIP Manual and in accordance with the Nurse Protocol statute (O.C.G.A. § 43-34-23). Licensed Practical Nurses (LPNs) will administer immunizations under the supervision of either an RN, APRN or physician, in accordance with the Georgia Practical Nurses Practice Act [O.C.G.A. § 43-26-32(7)].

Training: All RNs and APRNs must complete the required training for administration of vaccines, as delineated in the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual, Quality Assurance and Quality Improvement for Public Health Nursing Practice Manual, which may be found at http://dph.georgia.gov/resourcesformsmanuals before they may administer vaccines.

All LPNs must complete the required training for administration of vaccines, as delineated in Chapter 13 of the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program (GIP) Manual. Go to https://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-publications for the GIP Manual.

All RNs, APRNs, and LPNs who administer vaccines will hold current certification in Basic Cardiac Life Support (BCLS).

All RNs, APRNs and LPNs who administer vaccines should also follow the GIP Manual guidelines regarding asking the patient to wait at least 15 minutes in a designated area post-vaccination before they leave the clinic site.

All RNs, APRNs, and LPNs who administer vaccines will provide the patient with written confirmation of all vaccines administered. This may be in the form of a print-out of vaccines administered or an immunization card.

Planning Mass Vaccinations:

Nursing staff will work with district Public Health Emergency Preparedness and Strategic National Stockpile staff to develop campaigns within the framework of functional and/or full-scale exercises that test current Medical Countermeasure (MCM) Dispensing Plans within the district. Exercises must include predetermined objectives, documented evaluation, and an After-Action Report with an Improvement Plan.

OTHER INFECTIOUS DISEASES

OTHER INFECTIOUS DISEASES

Review Team:

Gregory S. Felzien, MD, AAHIVS Medical Advisor Division of Health Protection, IDI-HIV Georgia Department of Public Health	**Melissa Tobin D'Angelo, MD** Physician Consultant Acute Disease Epidemiology Section Georgia Department of Public Health
Jessica Tuttle, MD Physician Consultant Acute Disease Epidemiology Section Georgia Department of Public Health	**Olugbenga O. Obasanjo, MD, Ph.D.** District Health Director District 4 Public Health (LaGrange)
Kitty Brogdon, RN Nursing Supervisor District 3-2, Atlanta - Fulton	**Jina Adams, RN, MSN** Nurse Manager District 5-1
Tori Endres, RN, MSN District Nursing and Clinical Director West Central Health District District 7	**Kortney Floyd, APRN CPNP** Deputy Chief Nurse Office of Nursing Division of District and County Operations Georgia Department of Public Health
Donelle Humphrey-Franklin, RPh, MBA Assistant Pharmacy Director Office of Pharmacy Division of Health Protection Georgia Department of Health	**Constance Martin, RN, BS** Immunization and Infectious Disease Coordinator District 2 – Gainesville
Tonia Parrott, PhD, MT (ASCP) Clinical Microbiology Services Director Georgia Public Health Laboratory Georgia Department of Public Health	**Kimberley Hazelwood, PharmD** Pharmacy Director Office of Pharmacy Division of Health Protection Georgia Department of Health

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR AMEBIASIS, UNCOMPLICATED (Amebic Colitis)

DEFINITION

Infection of the intestinal tract by certain species of the genus *Entamoeba*. Extraintestinal disease occasionally occurs, with the liver as the most common site.

More severe disease is associated with immunosuppression, malnutrition, young and old age, pregnancy and residence in or travel to tropical countries with poor sanitary conditions. Complications may include toxic megacolon, colon or perianal ulceration, and perforation. Progression may occur if other causes of colitis are suspected and infected persons are inappropriately treated with corticosteroids and/or antimotility drugs.

ETIOLOGY

Entamoeba histolytica causes invasive disease. *Entamoeba dispar,* ***Entamoeba hartmanni*** and *Entamoeba moshkovskii* are noninvasive parasites and do not cause disease and do not require treatment. The organisms are excreted as cysts or trophozoites in the feces of infected persons.

Transmission occurs when cysts are ingested. Transmission has occasionally been associated with contaminated surfaces, food or water, and may occur sexually by oral-anal contact. In addition, men who have sex with men are at increased risk for amebiasis. The incubation period is usually **2**-4 weeks, **though in some instances it can take longer.** If untreated, an infected person can excrete cysts intermittently and transmit infection for years. Most cyst passers are asymptomatic, **with approximately 10-20% of people who are infected with E. histolytica becoming sick from the infection.**

SUBJECTIVE

1. May be asymptomatic.

2. If history of mild, chronic symptoms (abdominal discomfort with loose stools containing blood or mucus alternating with periods of constipation or no symptoms), refer patient to a physician.

3. If history of acute symptoms that have progressively increased over 1-3 weeks (grossly bloody or mucoid stools accompanied by lower abdominal pain, tenesmus, fever, chills and weight loss), refer patient to a physician.

OBJECTIVE

1. Patient does not appear acutely ill; no extensive weight loss or fever.

ASSESSMENT Amebiasis, asymptomatic.

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

1. Obtain serial stool samples for microscopic identification of trophozoites or cysts in feces, if necessary.

NOTE: Trophozoites containing red blood cells are more likely to be Entamoeba histolytica than E. *dispar*, E. *hartmanni* and *Entamoeba moshkovskii*.

2. Assess whether patient has a history of liver and/or kidney disease. Also, attempt to review previous (within past 3 months) Comprehensive Metabolic Panel results. If results are abnormal or patient reports history of liver/kidney disease, consult with delegating physician before beginning treatment.

3. Assess last menstrual period if woman is of child bearing age (approximately 15-45 years of age) or with menstrual cycle and not using contraceptives. If possibly pregnant, refer to physician for care.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Discuss the importance of compliance with the medication regimen and of completing the full course of treatment. Assist the patient/caretaker to develop a written plan for taking, or administering, the medication so coverage is as close to around-the-clock as possible.

1. For asymptomatic (cyst-passing) patients who are not pregnant or breastfeeding:

   a. For paromomycin therapy, have no history of renal and/or liver disease or hypersensitivity to paromomycin or components.

      1) Adults (18 years and older): Paromomycin sulfate 25-35mg/kg PO, divided into 3 equal doses; give single dose with each meal, for 7 days.

2) Children and adolescents (2 years old through 17 years old) preferred regimen: Paromomycin sulfate 25-35mg/kg PO, divided into 3 equal doses; give single dose with each meal, for 7 days.

NOTE: When paromomycin therapy is being considered, adverse reactions may include (1% to 10%): Gastrointestinal (abdominal cramps, diarrhea, heartburn, nausea, and vomiting). Post marketing, and/or case reports occurring in less than 1% include secondary enterocolitis, eosinophilia, headache, ototoxicity, pruritus, steatorrhea, vertigo. Consult with delegating physician regarding any abnormal results or concerns of hearing impairment.

NOTE: Long term use of paromomycin may cause secondary infection.

b. For iodoquinol therapy, have no history of thyroid disease, no evidence of liver damage, renal disease or pre-existing optic neuropathy, and no hypersensitivity to iodine or 8-hydroxy-quinolones (which are present in cosmetic products).

1) Adults **(18 years and older):** Iodoquinol 650mg, 1 tablet PO three times a day after meals for 20 days, not to exceed 2 grams/day.
2) Children and Adolescents **(2 years through 17 years):** Iodoquinol 30-40mg/kg PO **divided into 3 equal** doses; **1 dose given every 8 hours** (max of 650mg/dose, not to exceed 1.95 gm in 24 hours) for 20 days**.**

NOTE: Use with caution in patients with thyroid abnormalities. Therefore, a TSH screening (or panel if cheaper) should be obtained. To minimize any delays, any history of thyroid disease should either be referred to the delegating physician or trigger the need for further thyroid testing and if abnormal, patient should be referred to the delegating physician.

NOTE: Additional courses of iodoquinol therapy should not be repeated before an interval of 2 –3 weeks.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Discuss the importance of compliance with the medication regimen and of completing the full course of treatment. (Assist the patient/caretaker to develop a written plan for taking, or administering, the medication so coverage is as close to around-the-clock as possible.) Immediately report if a rash occurs.

2. If taking paromomycin, promptly report any ringing in the ears, hearing loss or dizziness.

3. Careful hand-washing with soap and water following defecation, sanitary disposal of feces, and avoidance of nail biting.

4. Treatment of drinking water or use of sealed bottled water or carbonated drinks if traveling in areas without chlorination.

5. If traveling to an endemic area, avoidance of food or drinks sold by street vendors, fountain drinks or any drinks with ice cubes, unpasteurized milk, cheese, or dairy products, or fresh fruit or vegetables not peeled by the traveler.

6. Avoidance of oral-anal sexual practices or use of barrier protection during oral-anal sexual practices.

7. Thyroid function tests might be unreliable for up to six months after finishing iodoquinol.

8. **Advise patient to discuss any concerns regarding ability to return to work with their occupational health representative. The GA DPH manual can also be used as a reference.** https://dph.georgia.gov/sites/dph.georgia.gov/files/EnvHealth/Food/Misc/EnvHealthFoodDPHEmployeeRedBook2016.pdf

9. **Advise patient to report any signs/symptoms of foodborne illness (vomiting, diarrhea, jaundice, sore throat with fever and/or infected wounds).**

FOLLOW-UP

1. Repeat stool **microscopic** exam x3, collected on separate days starting three to four weeks following completion of treatment.

2. Household **contacts** and other contacts should have stool **microscopic** studies x3, within a few days up to four weeks. If **household contacts** and/or other contacts present with symptoms of the disease, stool studies should be done immediately.

REFERRAL/CONSULTATION

1. **If history of mild, chronic symptoms (abdominal discomfort with loose stools containing blood or mucus alternating with periods of constipation or no symptoms), refer patient to a physician.**

2. **If history of acute symptoms that have progressively increased over 1-3 weeks (grossly bloody or mucoid stools accompanied by lower abdominal pain, tenesmus, fever, chills and weight loss), refer patient to a physician.**

3. **Refer** patients with contraindications to listed treatments **or who are pregnant or breastfeeding to physician.**

4. **Refer** any patient who develops worsening abdominal symptoms on treatment, or who experiences any liver, eye, thyroid, or peripheral neuropathy symptoms while on iodoquinol **to physician**.

5. **Refer** any patient whose follow-up stool exams show persistent infection **to physician**.

6. **Consult with delegating physician regarding any abnormal lab/hearing screen results prior to treatment initiation.**

7. **Consult with physician prior to beginning treatment for patients with history of kidney/liver disease or abnormal lab results.**

REFERENCES

1. David Kimberlin (ed.), *Red Book 2015, Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases*, 30th ed., American Academy of Pediatrics, Elk Grove Village, IL, 2015, pp. 353-355 (Current)

2. David L. Heymann, *Control of Communicable Diseases Manual*, 19th ed., American Public Health Association, Washington, DC, 2008. (Current)

3. **"Lexi-Drugs Online," *Lexi-Comp Database™*, Lexi-Comp, Inc., Hudson, Ohio (July 24, 2017).**

4. Patrick Ayeh-Kumi, M. Phil, William Petri, Jr., "*Diagnosis and Management of Amebiasis*," *Medscape*, October 11, 2002. (Current).

5. https://wwwnc.cdc.gov/travel/yellowbook/2016/the-pre-travel-consultation/food-water-precautions (July 10,2015)

6. **http://hcvguidelines.org/full-report/hcv-testing-and-linkage-care**

7. **https://www.hhs.gov/sites/default/files/National%20Viral%20Hepatitis%20Action%20Plan%202017-2020.pdf**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PREVENTIVE TREATMENT OF *HAEMOPHILUS INFLUENZAE* TYPE b (Hib) DISEASE CONTACTS

NOTE: Public health nurses must work closely with the local communicable or infectious disease coordinator (or other designated official) who is monitoring and investigating reported *Haemophilus influenzae* and *Haemophilus influenzae* type b cases and contacts, to ensure that complete vaccination and medical history is obtained for the index case, that household and childcare contacts have been identified, and eligible contacts have been treated when appropriate. In addition, this protocol emphasizes the need for prompt serotyping of *H. influenzae* isolates. Public health personnel should ensure the isolate is serotyped and forwarded to the Georgia Public Health Laboratory **(GPHL)** for confirmation.

DEFINITION

Haemophilus influenzae type b (Hib) is a particularly virulent strain of the bacterium *H. influenzae*. *H. influenzae* can cause invasive infections including meningitis (an inflammation of the membranes and fluid that surround the brain and spinal cord), bacteremia, pneumonia, cellulitis, epiglottitis, septic arthritis and other invasive infections.

Although there are many strains of *H. influenzae*, including typeable and non-typeable strains, and any strain may cause invasive disease, guidelines for preventive treatment are written only for infections caused by Hib. When an index case of Hib disease is identified, post-exposure prophylaxis should be offered to close contacts (defined below) as soon as possible (preferably within 24 hours). Studies have shown that prophylaxis with rifampin eradicates greater than 95% of Hib carriage in contacts of primary Hib cases. **In Georgia, from 2000-2015, 40 Hib cases were confirmed; 13 occurred among children**.

<u>Empirical vs. Delayed Prophylaxis of *H. influenzae* cases not known to be Hib</u>: Widespread use of the Hib vaccine has made Hib a rare cause of disease, and offering prophylaxis to all patients with invasive *H. influenzae* could result in significant overtreatment. However, a delay in prophylaxis while waiting for serotype information to determine if *H. influenzae* isolates are serotype b may result in unnecessary spread of disease. A proposed approach to optimize early decision-making regarding prophylaxis is based on epidemiologic findings below, and includes:

1. Promptly obtaining immunization records and medical history for any child with invasive *H. influenzae* disease.

   Empirical, early prophylaxis of contacts (without waiting for serotype information) if the child with invasive *H. influenzae* disease is unimmunized OR incompletely immunized against Hib

(defined below in 1a), OR is immunologically compromised (i.e. HIV, asplenia) regardless of vaccination status.

2. Delaying prophylaxis of contacts until after the isolate is serotyped as Hib is appropriate **when** the index case is a fully immunized, immunologically normal child or an adult.

3. Consultation is available at 404-657-2588 (Acute Disease Epidemiology Section, GA Department of Public Health), if needed.

Serotyping of *H. influenzae* isolates is available at the Georgia Public Health Laboratory and some hospital and reference laboratories. All invasive *H. influenzae* isolates should be promptly sent to the GPHL for confirmatory serotyping.

Indications and guidelines for preventive treatment (chemoprophylaxis) of Hib disease contacts are:

1. Chemoprophylaxis recommended for:

   a. All household contacts (except pregnant women), irrespective of age, **when** at least 1 **of the** contact**s is** younger than 4 years **old and** unimmunized or incompletely immunized.

   NOTE: Household contacts are persons residing with the index case, or **persons** who spent 4 **hours or longer** with the index case for at least 5 of the 7 days preceding the day of hospital admission.

   NOTE: Complete immunization means having had at least 1 dose of conjugate vaccine at 15 months of age or older; 2 doses between 12 and 14 months of age; or a 2- or 3-dose primary series when younger than 12 months with a booster dose at 12 months of age or older. See the Georgia Immunization Program Manual, Recommended Schedules and Guidelines, for vaccine information and vaccine administration guidelines at **http://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-schedules**

   b. All household **contacts** with a child younger than 12 months of age who has not completed the primary Hib series.
   c. All household **contacts** with an immuno-compromised child, irrespective of the child's Hib immunization status.

d. Nursery and child care center contacts (all attendees and child care providers)**,** irrespective of age or immunization status, when 2 or more cases of invasive disease have occurred within 60 days.

e. Index case, if treated with regimens other than cefotaxime or ceftriaxone. Chemoprophylaxis usually is provided just before hospital discharge.

2. Chemoprophylaxis not recommended for:

a. Household **contacts** with no children younger than 4 years of age other than the index patient and no one who is immunocompromised.
b. **Household contacts** when all household contacts younger than 48 months of age have completed their Hib immunization series. See the previous page for definition of complete immunization.
c. Pregnant women.

ETIOLOGY The bacteria *Haemophilus influenzae*, type b (Hib).

SUBJECTIVE

1. History of household or day-care contact as defined above under "Chemoprophylaxis recommended."

2. History of incomplete or no Hib immunization/vaccination.

3. Absence of prodromal meningitis symptoms, i.e., respiratory illness or sore throat. Absence of meningitis disease symptoms, i.e., fever, headache, stiff neck or vomiting.

4. No history of hypersensitivity to any of the rifamycins or of liver function impairment.

OBJECTIVE No signs of respiratory illness or meningitis.

ASSESSMENT Candidate for preventive treatment for *H. influenzae* type b disease exposure.

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

1. Assess whether patient has a history of liver and/or kidney disease. Also, attempt to review previous (within past 3 months) Comprehensive Metabolic Panel results. If results are abnormal

or patient reports history of liver/kidney disease, consult with delegating physician before beginning treatment.

2. **Assess last menstrual period if woman is of child bearing age (approximately 15-45 years of age) or with menstrual cycle and not using contraceptives. If possibly pregnant, refer to physician for care.**

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Discuss the importance of compliance with the medication regimen and of completing the full course of treatment. Assist the patient/caretaker to develop a written plan for taking, or administering, the medication so coverage is as close to around-the-clock as possible.

1. Rifampin prophylaxis

(Pediatric Drug Chart – see Appendix A)

Begin preventive treatment as soon as possible. If more than 14 days have passed since the last contact with the index case, the benefit of preventive treatment is likely to be decreased.

a. Infants less than 1 month old: Rifampin 10mg/kg/day PO once a day for 4 days **(max 600mg/24 hours).**

b. Infants over 1 month old and children/**adolescents younger than 18 years old**: Rifampin 20mg/kg (max **6**00mg) PO once a day for 4 days.

c. Nonpregnant adults: Rifampin 600mg PO once a day for 4 days.

NOTE: Rifampin as a dry powder may be mixed with applesauce. Rifampin oral suspension, compounded 10 mg/mL with simple or wild cherry syrup, is stable for 4 weeks at room temperature, or in refrigerator, when stored in an amber glass prescription bottle.

2. Evaluate status of all vaccinations and bring up-to-date by administration of the currently recommended doses for each

disease. Children who have had Hib disease still need vaccination against Hib. See the Georgia Immunization Program Manual at **http://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-schedules**

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Discuss the importance of compliance with the medication regimen and of completing the full course of treatment. (Assist the patient/caretaker to develop a written plan for taking, or administering, the medication so coverage is as close to around-the-clock as possible).

2. Avoid drinking alcohol while taking Rifampin **due to increased risk of hepatotoxicity**.

3. **Rifampin is present in breast milk. Due to the potential for serious adverse reactions in the breastfeeding infant, the manufacturer recommends discontinuing breastfeeding while taking Rifampin.**

4. Rifampin may cause the urine, feces, saliva, sputum, sweat and tears to temporarily turn red-orange.

5. Do not use soft contact lenses when on Rifampin; permanent discoloration may occur.

6. Since Rifampin has been reported to cross the placental barrier and appear in cord blood and in maternal milk, neonates and newborns of rifampin-treated mothers should be carefully observed for any evidence of side effects.

7. **Rifampin may decrease the effectiveness of** oral contraceptives. Consideration should be given to using alternative contraceptive measures during, and immediately following, Rifampin therapy, until the next cycle. **The rationale for using an alternative or back-up method of birth control (e.g., copper-bearing IUD such as ParaGard, condoms, diaphragm) is that when Rifampin is prescribed, it reduces effectiveness (degree depending on method) of combined oral contraceptives, progestin-only oral contraceptives, Levonorgestrel implants, Depo-Provera, patch and ring. Advise condom back-up.**

   Most people can take Rifampin without difficulty. However, any of

the following signs or symptoms should be reported, as soon as possible: fever, nausea, vomiting, loss of appetite, dark coffee or tea-colored urine, white/gray/light tan bowel movement, tiredness, weakness, yellow skin or sclera, bruising easily, rash/itching, and/or painful menstruation.

8. Rifampin interacts with many drugs. Check the Rifampin product package insert for a complete list of drug interactions.

9. It is important to have all children receive Hib vaccine, starting at 2 months of age.

REFERRAL/CONSULTATION

1. Patients with adverse reactions to treatment **should be referred to the physician**.

2. Patients with signs/symptoms of meningitis should be referred immediately to the nearest emergency room.

3. Refer pregnant patients to OB health care provider.

4. **Consult with physician prior to beginning treatment for patients with history of kidney/liver disease or abnormal lab results.**

5. If there is an absolute contraindication to use of rifampin, consult physician regarding use of an alternative **treatment**.

REFERENCES

1. David W. Kimberlin (ed.), *Red Book 2015, Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases*, 30th ed., American Academy of Pediatrics, Elk Grove Village, IL, 2015, pp.368-376. (Current)

2. David L. Heymann, *Control of Communicable Diseases Manual*, 19th ed., American Public Health Association, Washington, DC, 2008. (Current)

3. Georgia Immunization Program, Department of Public Health, "Surveillance and Reporting: *Haemophilus influenzae* Invasive Disease Fact Sheet," *Immunization Program Manual*, 2012 **(Current)**

4. **Lexi-Drugs Online," *Lexi-Comp Database™*, Lexi-Comp, Inc., Hudson, Ohio (July 24, 2017).**

5. Prevention and control of haemophilus influenzae type b disease: recommendations of the advisory committee on immunization practices (ACIP) MMWR Recomm Rep. 2014 Feb 28;63(RR-01):1-14

6. **Thomas W. Hale, Medications & Mother's Milk, 2017. Springer Publishing Company, LLC. New York, NY 10036, pp 839-840.**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PREVENTIVE TREATMENT OF INVASIVE MENINGOCOCCAL DISEASE CONTACTS, INCLUDING MENINGITIS

NOTE: Public health nurses must work closely with the local communicable or infectious disease coordinator (or other designated **o**fficial) who is monitoring reported meningococcal disease cases and contacts, to ensure that all eligible contacts have been identified and treated.

DEFINITION

Invasive meningococcal disease includes meningitis (an inflammation of the membranes and fluid that surround the brain and spinal cord), bloodstream infections, or sepsis (often associated with a petechial or purpuric rash or pneumonia). Rarely, other sterile sites (such as joint fluid) may be infected.

When an index case of invasive meningococcal disease is identified, preventive treatment should be offered to high-risk household, day-care, and preschool contacts as soon as possible (preferably within 24 hours). Chemoprophylaxis administered more than 14 days after onset of illness in the index patient is probably of limited or no value. Persons in some institutional settings also may require prophylaxis.

Indications and guidelines for preventive treatment (chemo-prophylaxis) of contacts are:

1. High risk - chemoprophylaxis recommended (close contact)

    a. All household contacts: especially children less than 2 years **old**.
    b. Childcare or preschool contact**(s)** during the 7 days prior to **index case's** onset of illness.
    c. Direct exposure to the index case's **oral** secretions through kissing, mouth-to-mouth resuscitation **or** unprotected contact during endotracheal intubation during **the** 7 days **prior to index case's onset of** illness.
    d. Frequently slept or ate in the same dwelling as the index case during **the** 7 days **prior to index case's** onset of illness.
    e. Passengers seated directly next to index case during flight lasting more than 8 hours.

2. Low risk - chemoprophylaxis not recommended

a. Casual contact: no history of direct exposure to index case's oral secretions, e.g., schoolmate or workmate.
b. Indirect contact: only contact is with a high-risk contact, no direct contact with the index case.
c. Health care personnel without direct exposure to the case's oral secretions.

3. In outbreak or cluster:

   Chemoprophylaxis for persons other than those at high risk should be given only after consultation with local public health authorities.

4. Non-invasive (i.e. respiratory cultures positive for *N. meningitidis*)

   Chemoprophylaxis is NOT recommended for close contacts of patients with *N. meningitidis* cultured from non-sterile sites.

ETIOLOGY

Meningococcal disease is caused by *Neisseria meningitidis,* a Gram-negative diplococcus (bacteria) with 13 serogroups. Strains belonging to groups A, B, C, Y, and W-135 are implicated most frequently in systemic disease. Asymptomatic colonization of the upper respiratory tract provides the focus from which the organism is spread.

SUBJECTIVE

1. History of contact as defined above under "High risk: chemoprophylaxis recommended."

2. Absence of prodromal meningitis symptoms (respiratory illness or sore throat.) Absence of meningitis disease symptoms (fever, headache, stiff neck or vomiting).

OBJECTIVE

No signs of respiratory illness or meningitis.

ASSESSMENT

Candidate for preventive treatment for meningococcal meningitis.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Assess whether patient has a history of liver and/or kidney disease. Also, attempt to review previous (within past 3 months) Comprehensive Metabolic Panel results. If results are abnormal or patient reports history of liver/kidney disease, consult with delegating physician before beginning treatment.

2. Assess last menstrual period if woman is of child bearing age (approximately 15-45 years of age) or with menstrual cycle and not using contraceptives. If possibly pregnant, refer to physician for care.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Discuss the importance of compliance with the medication regimen and of completing the full course of treatment. Assist the patient/caretaker to develop a written plan for taking, or administering, the medication so coverage is as close to around-the-clock as possible.

1. Chemoprophylaxis

Rifampin, Ciprofloxacin, and Ceftriaxone are 90-95% effective in reducing nasopharyngeal carriage of *N. meningitidis* and are all acceptable for chemoprophylaxis.

a. Rifampin

1) Infants 1 month and younger: Rifampin 5mg/kg PO every 12 hours for 4 doses. (Pediatric Drug Chart – See Appendix A)

2) Infants over 1 month old and children**/adolescents** (**younger than 18 years old)**: Rifampin 10mg/kg (maximum 600mg/dose) PO every 12 hours for 4 doses. (Pediatric Drug Chart – see Appendix A)

3) Nonpregnant adults: Rifampin 600mg PO every 12 hours for 4 doses.

NOTE: Rifampin interacts with many drugs. Check the Rifampin product package insert for a complete list of drugs interactions.

OR

b. Ceftriaxone

NOTE: Give only if the patient cannot take Rifampin due to previous history of liver impairment, elevated liver function tests, or adverse/allergic reaction to Rifampin **AND consult with physician prior to ordering**.

1) Children under 15 years old: Ceftriaxone 125mg IM once.
2) **Adolescents** (15 **years** and older**)** and Adults (including those with liver disease and/or, abnormal liver function tests): Ceftriaxone 250mg IM once.

NOTE: If the patient is diabetic **while** receiving Ceftriaxone therapy, **the ACCU-CHEK Compact Plus system may provide incorrect (low) glucose results. Therefore, patients should** stop using the ACCU-CHEK Compact Plus system and begin using an alternate blood glucose monitoring system for the duration of **Ceftriaxone** therapy and two full days **(48 hours) after the last Ceftriaxone injection.**

OR

3) **Non-pregnant adults (18 years old and older)**: Ciprofloxacin 500mg PO once.

NOTE: Do not give **Ciprofloxacin** to **children or** pregnant women. Ciprofloxacin has been associated with an increased rate of adverse reactions involving the joints and surrounding tissue structures (like tendons) in children/**adolescents** (younger than 18 years **old**). Ciprofloxacin can be given to adults with elevated liver function tests or history of chronic liver disease.

2. Immunoprophylaxis: Since secondary cases can occur several weeks or more after onset of disease, meningococcal vaccine is a possible adjunct to chemoprophylaxis during an outbreak caused by a serogroup covered by the vaccine. **Adults at risk because of a meningococcal disease outbreak should receive 1 dose of MenACWY if the outbreak is attributable to serogroup A, C, W, or Y, or either a 2-dose series of MenB-4C at least 1 month apart or a 3-dose series of MenB-FHbp at 0, 1–2, and 6 months if the outbreak is attributable to serogroup B.**

   See the Georgia Immunization Program Manual, Recommended Schedule and Guidelines, for vaccine information and

administration guidelines at http://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-schedules

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Meningococcal meningitis is not highly contagious. Even close family members of a patient **with meningitis** have only a 1 in 250 chance of developing disease from the infected person.

2. The bacteria that causes meningococcal meningitis is spread through intimate, prolonged contact, such as "deep" kissing with exchange of saliva, or exposure to oral secretions with mouth-to-mouth resuscitation or by day-care contacts. The bacteria cannot live outside the human body, and animals do not carry the bacteria.

3. **Review** Rifampin product package insert for complete listing of interactions. If taking Rifampin:

    a. Avoid drinking alcohol while taking rifampin **due to increased risk of hepatotoxicity**.

    b. Rifampin is present in breast milk. Due to the potential for serious adverse reactions in the breastfeeding infant, the manufacturer recommends discontinuing breastfeeding while taking Rifampin.

    c. **Rifampin may cause the** urine, feces, saliva, sputum, sweat and tears to temporarily turn red-orange.

    d. **Do not use** soft contact lenses when **taking R**ifampin because permanent discoloration may occur.

    e. **Rifampin may decrease the effectiveness of** oral contraceptives. Consideration should be given to using alternative contraceptive measures during, and immediately following, rifampin therapy, until the next cycle. **The rationale for using an alternative or back-up method of birth control (e.g., copper-bearing IUD such as ParaGard, condoms, diaphragm) is that when Rifampin is prescribed, it reduces effectiveness (degree depending on method) of combined oral contraceptives, progestin-only oral contraceptives, Levonorgestrel implants, Depo-Provera, patch and**

ring. Advise condom back-up.

f. Most people can take Rifampin without difficulty. However, any of the following signs or symptoms should be reported, as soon as possible: fever, nausea, vomiting, loss of appetite, dark coffee or tea-colored urine, white/gray/light tan bowel movement, tiredness, weakness, yellow skin or sclera, bruising easily, rash/itching, and/or painful menstruation.

4. The effect of Ciprofloxacin can be decreased by calcium-rich foods such as dairy products, antacids, or calcium supplements. Ciprofloxacin should be taken 2 hours before or 6 hours after eating calcium-rich foods unless they are part of a larger meal that contains other non-calcium rich foods.

5. **The manufacturer does not recommend use of Ciprofloxacin in breastfeeding women due to concerns of potential articular damage; however, this risk is considered low even in children in receiving high therapeutic doses.**

6. Ceftriaxone can cause a false-positive reaction for urine glucose with Benedict's solution, Fehling's solution or with Clinitest tablets, but not with enzyme-based tests such as Clinistix and Tes-Tape.

7. **In general, antibiotics that are present in breast milk may cause non-dose related modification of bowel flora. Infants should be monitored for gastrointestinal disturbances. Ceftriaxone is considered compatible with breastfeeding when used in recommended doses. The manufacturer recommends that caution be exercised when administered Ceftriaxone to nursing women.**

8. Routine immunization of adolescents and persons at risk for meningococcal disease is recommended. Immunization of college students is recommended by the American College Health Association, and is an actual requirement for admission to **public** schools. See the Georgia Immunization Program Manual, "Recommended Schedule and Guidelines," for vaccine information and administration guidelines at **http://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-schedules**

9. Discuss the importance of compliance with the medication regimen and of completing the full course of treatment. (Assist the

patient/caretaker to develop a written plan for taking, or administering, the medication so coverage is as close to around-the-clock as possible.)

REFERRAL/CONSULTATION

1. **Patients with adverse reactions to treatment should be referred to the physician**.

2. Patients with signs/symptoms of meningitis should be referred immediately to the nearest emergency room.

3. **Refer pregnant patients to OB health care provider**.

4. Consult with physician prior to beginning treatment for patients with history of kidney/liver disease or abnormal lab results.

5. **If there is an absolute contraindication to use any of the above listed medications, such as allergy, warnings on the package insert, etc. consult the physician for alternative recommendations.**

.

REFERENCES

1. David Kimberlin (ed.), *Red Book 2015, Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases*, 30th ed., American Academy of Pediatrics, Elk Grove Village, IL, 2015, pp 547-557.

2. David L. Heymann, *Control of Communicable Diseases Manual*, 19th ed., American Public Health Association, Washington, DC, 2008. (Current)

3. American Society of Health-Systems Pharmacists, American Hospital Formulary Services, 2011, pp. 150-168, 357-381, 232-249.

4. **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Epidemiology and Prevention of Vaccine-Preventable Diseases. Hamborsky J, Kroger A, Wolfe S, eds. 13th ed. Washington D.C. Public Health Foundation, 2015., pp. 231-244.**

5. Interim Guidance for Control of Serogroup B Meningococcal Disease Outbreaks in Organizational Settings http://www.cdc.gov/meningococcal/downloads/interim-guidance.pdf.

6. **Lexi-Drugs Online, *Lexi-Comp Database™*, Lexi-Comp, Inc., Hudson, Ohio (July 24, 2017) http://www.accessdata.fda.gov/drugsatfda_docs/label/2005/019537s057,020780s019lbl.pdf.**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PREVENTATIVE TREATMENT OF PERTUSSIS CONTACTS

NOTE: Public health nurses must work closely with the District Epidemiologists/ Communicable/Infectious Disease Coordinator (or other designated official) who is monitoring reported pertussis cases and contacts to ensure that all contacts have been identified and prophylaxed.

DEFINITION

Pertussis is a bacterial infection of the upper respiratory tract that can progress to severe paroxysms of coughing, with or without an inspiratory whoop, followed by vomiting. Fever is absent or minimal.

Transmission of pertussis is by close contact with respiratory tract secretions of an infected person, who is most contagious before onset of the paroxysmal cough. Macrolide (a type of antibiotic) therapy for cases decreases infectivity and may limit spread.

Up to 90% of non-immune household contacts acquire the disease. Immunity wanes over time and adolescents and adults become an important reservoir of infectious organisms. They are often the source of infection for infants, who are at the greatest risk of complications, including death.

ETIOLOGY

The bacillus *Bordetella pertussis*. A whooping cough syndrome may also be caused by other Bordetella species, with *Bordetella parapertussis* occasionally the cause of milder cases. In some cases, both organisms may be present.

SUBJECTIVE

1. **States** history of recent close contact (e.g., household, day care) with:

    a. A probable case of pertussis i.e., a person with cough illness lasting 2 weeks or more, with at least one of the following symptoms: paroxysms of coughing, inspiratory “whoop”, post-tussive vomiting; AND absence of lab confirmation

    OR

    b. An infant less than 1 year old with a cough illness of any duration, with at least one of the following symptoms: paroxysms of coughing, inspiratory “whoop”, post-tussive vomiting, or apnea, with or without cyanosis; AND absence of lab confirmation.

    OR

2. A confirmed case of pertussis defined by a positive culture; or a

positive PCR test in association with clinical symptoms as outlined in "a" **above**. May or may not have a history of adequate immunization against pertussis.

3. **Denies** upper respiratory symptoms.

4. **Denies** history of allergy or other contraindications to taking the prophylactic medications. (See Drug Interaction Chart)

OBJECTIVE

1. No signs of upper respiratory illness.

NOTE: If patient with upper respiratory signs**/symptoms, care for patient using** the Standard Nurse Protocol for Identification and Treatment of Probable Pertussis

2. **Denies having liver disease or hepatic dysfunction.**

ASSESSMENT **Candidate for preventative treatment of pertussis**

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

1. Assess whether patient has a history of liver and/or kidney disease. Also, attempt to review previous (within past 3 months) Comprehensive Metabolic Panel results. If results are abnormal or patient reports history of liver/kidney disease, consult with delegating physician before beginning treatment.

2. Assess last menstrual period if woman is of child bearing age (approximately 15-45 years of age) or with menstrual cycle and not using contraceptives. If possibly pregnant, refer to physician for care.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Discuss the importance of compliance with the medication regimen and of completing the full course of treatment. Assist the patient/caretaker to develop a written plan for taking, or administering, the medication so coverage is as close to around-the-clock as possible.

1. **Chemoprophylaxis**

a. Azithromycin

1) Children less than 6 months of age: Azithromycin 10mg/kg PO **once daily** for 5 days.

2) Child**ren** 6 months **– 12 years old**: Azithromycin 10mg/kg (maximum of 500mg) PO **once** on day 1, then 5 mg/kg (maximum 250mg/day) PO **once** on days 2 through 5.

3) Adolescents **(at least 13 years old)** and Adult**s** (including patients who are pregnant): Azithromycin 500mg PO **once** on day 1, then 250mg PO **once** on days 2 through 5.

b. Erythromycin (preferably the estolate form):

NOTE: Do not give in hepatic dysfunction or pre-existing liver disease.

1) **Infants (at least 1 month old) and** child**ren (younger than 13 years old)**: Erythromycin **estolate** 40mg/kg **divided in 4 equal doses**; **give 1 dose** every 6 hours PO for 14 days (maximum of 2 grams **total** daily).

NOTE: Erythromycin estolate not preferred agent for infants less than 1 month due to **increased risk of** infantile hypertrophic pyloric stenosis).

2) Adolescents **(at least 13 years old)** and Adults: Erythromycin 500mg PO every six hours for 14 days.

OR

c. Trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole (TMP/SMZ)

NOTE: Give only if patient cannot take other medication listed. Do not give if pregnant, breastfeeding, pre-existing liver disease, allergic to sulfa drugs **or infant less than 2 months old.**

1) **Infants** 2 months of age and older **children (younger than 13 years old)**: TMP/SMZ (8mg/40mg)/kg, **divided**

into 2 equal doses; give 1 dose every 12 hours for 14 days.

2) Adolescents **(at least 13 years old)** and Adults: TMP/SMZ 160mg/800mg PO **every 12 hours** for 14 days.

2. Immunoprophylaxis

Initiate or continue the pertussis immunization schedule for contacts. See the *ACIP Recommended Immunization Schedules* for vaccine information and vaccine administration guidelines at **http://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-schedules**

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. All close contacts need to take the medication, regardless of age or immunization status, because pertussis immunity is not absolute and may not prevent infection.

2. Discuss the importance of compliance with the medication regimen and of completing the full course of treatment. (Assist the patient/caretaker to develop a written plan for taking, or administering, the medication so coverage is as close to around-the-clock as possible).

3. **Report as soon as possible** if apparent side effects to the medication develop (e.g., if nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, severe abdominal pain, or symptoms of hepatitis occur during erythromycin therapy).

4. Seek medical care if the contact develops symptoms of respiratory illness within 21 days (maximum incubation period) of the last exposure to the infected person.

5. Assure that unimmunized or incompletely immunized children under age 7 complete the vaccine series. Review current recommendations for individuals over age 7 years. See ACIP Recommended Immunization Schedules for vaccine information and vaccine administration guidelines at http://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-schedules

6. Avoid aluminum or magnesium containing antacids 2 hours before and up to 2 hours after taking azithromycin.

7. Educate patients who receive Azithromycin about adverse effects (QT prolongation, torsades de pointes, etc.) and document patient's understanding. http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/DrugSafety/ UCM343347.pdf

8. **Because of the high risk of transmission, children who develop symptoms consistent with pertussis should be excluded from school or day care until they have completed five days of effective antimicrobial therapy, or, if they are not treated, 21 days after the onset of symptoms.**

REFERRAL/CONSULTATION

1. Refer all exposed infants less than 6 months of age to a physician.

2. **Manage care of** all contacts with respiratory signs/symptoms **using** the Standard Nurse Protocol for Identification and Treatment of Probable Pertussis Cases **on page 13.31**.

3. **Ensure all pregnant women have an OB providing prenatal care. Notify her OB that patient is receiving preventative treatment for pertussis.**

4. **Ensure all children have a Primary Care Provider. Notify the child's provider that patient is receiving preventative treatment for pertussis.**

5. Consult with a physician or refer patients **who are immunocompromised,** unable to take any of the above medications, or who have **experience** serious **adverse medication** effects.

6. **Consult with physician prior to beginning treatment for patients with history of kidney/liver disease or abnormal lab results.**

REFERENCES

1. David W. Kimberlin (ed.), *Red Book 2015, Report of the Committee Infectious Diseases*, 30th ed., American Academy of Pediatrics, Elk Grove Village, IL, 2015, pp. 608-621. (Current)

2. CDC*, Epidemiology & Prevention of Vaccine-Preventable Diseases*, Hamborsky J, Kroger A, Wolfe S (eds) 13th ed. Washington D.C. Public Health Foundation, 2015, pp. 261-278. (Current)

3. David L. Heymann, *Control of Communicable Diseases Manual*, 19th ed., American Public Health Association, Washington, DC, 2008. (Current)

4. Sarah Long, "Pertussis," Kliegman: *Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics*, 19th ed., Chapter 194, W. B. Saunders Company, 2011, <www.mdconsult.com> .

5. Epidemiology Unit, Georgia Department of Public Health, *Notifiable Disease Manual*.

6. CDC, "Recommended Antimicrobial Agents for the Treatment and Postexposure Prophylaxis of Pertussis," *MMWR*, December 2005. (Current)

7. "Lexi-Drugs Online," *Lexi-Comp Database*, Lexi-Comp, Inc., Hudson, Ohio (**July 24, 2017).**

8. **Council of State and Territorial Epidemiologists. CSTE Position Statement 2013+-ID-15: Revision of the pertussis surveillance case definition to more accurately capture the burden of disease among infants less than 1 year of age. Available at http://c.ymcd.com/sites/www.cste.org/resource/resmgr/PS-13-ID-15.pdf**

9. **American Academy of Pediatrics. Pertussis (whooping cough). In: Red Book: 2015 Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases, 30th ed, Kimberlin DW, Brady MT, Jackson MA, Long SS (Eds), American Academy of Pediatrics, Elk Grove Village, IL 2015. p.609**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR IDENTIFICATION AND TREATMENT OF PROBABLE PERTUSSIS CASES

NOTE: Public health nurses must work closely with the District Epidemiologists/ Communicable/ Infectious Disease Coordinator (or another designated official) who is monitoring reported pertussis cases and contacts to ensure that all contacts have been identified and prophylaxed.

DEFINITION

Pertussis is a bacterial infection of the upper respiratory tract that can progress to severe paroxysms of coughing, with or without an inspiratory whoop, followed by vomiting. Fever is absent or minimal.

Transmission of pertussis is by close contact with respiratory tract secretions of an infected person, who is most contagious before onset of the paroxysmal cough, although infectivity continues through the first 3 weeks of cough onset. Appropriate antibiotic therapy for cases decreases infectivity and may limit spread.

Up to 90% of non-immune household contacts acquire the disease. Immunity wanes over time and adolescents and adults become an important reservoir of infectious organisms. They are often the source of infection for infants, who are at the greatest risk of complications with permanent sequelae.

ETIOLOGY

The bacillus *Bordetella pertussis*. A whooping cough syndrome may also be caused by other Bordetella species, with *Bordetella parapertussis* occasionally the cause of milder cases. In some cases, both organisms may be present.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Cough illness of 2 weeks or more with one of the following: paroxysms of coughing, inspiratory “whoop,” or post-tussive vomiting, without other apparent cause. A high degree of suspicion should apply to infants (less than 1 year old) who may have atypical symptoms including gagging, difficulty feeding and/or apnea instead of or in addition to cough. Infant cough can be less than 2 weeks in duration.

2. Upper respiratory symptoms of coryza (runny nose)**,** sneezing, low-grade fever, and a mild, occasional cough that preceded the prolonged cough.

3. May or may not have a history of adequate immunization against pertussis.

4. No history of allergy or other contraindications to the medications recommended for treatment. (See Drug Interaction Chart).

OBJECTIVE A cough illness with at least one of the following:

1. coughing fits (paroxysms)
2. inspiratory whoop
3. post-tussive vomiting
4. apnea, with or without cyanosis (infants less than 1 year old)

LABORATORY FINDINGS May or may not have positive culture results. **Serology is not a valid test for the identification of pertussis.** If the case meets the clinical definition, PCR can be used to confirm a diagnosis. Consult with the District Epidemiologist or State Vaccine-Preventable Disease Epidemiology Unit (404-657-2588) for questions about case confirmation, lab testing, and results.

ASSESSMENT Candidate for pertussis treatment.

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

1. Assess whether patient has a history of liver and/or kidney disease. Also, attempt to review previous (within past 3 months) Comprehensive Metabolic Panel results. If results are abnormal or patient reports history of liver/kidney disease, consult with delegating physician before beginning treatment.

2. Collect a nasopharyngeal swab specimen for polymerase chain reaction (PCR) testing and/or culture for B. pertussis. PCR testing has a more rapid turnaround time than culture. Both tests are available through the Georgia Public Health Laboratory. Contact the State Vaccine-Preventable Diseases Unit at (404-657-2588) for further information.

NOTE: All suspect pertussis cases should be laboratory tested for

confirmation. Consult with the District Epidemiologist or State Vaccine-Preventable Disease Unit (404-657-2588) to report a suspect case of pertussis and for further guidance. All specimens should be submitted to the Georgia Public Health Laboratory and approval is required through the epidemiologist. Information regarding the collection and transport of specimens can be found at http://dph.georgia.gov/sites/dph.georgia.gov/files/related_files/site_page/ADES_Pertussis_Specimen_Collection_Submission-Guidelines.pdf.

To view how to collect a nasopharyngeal swab refer to https://www.cdc.gov/pertussis/materials/hcp.html.

Culture media and nasopharyngeal swabs are available from the District Epidemiology Office. Specimen collection is of limited usefulness if done more than 3 weeks after symptom onset.

THERAPEUTIC

NOTE: Due to the lengthy turnaround time for laboratory results and because studies have shown that treatment is most effective when administered in the early stages of disease, patients should begin treatment for pertussis immediately after presumptive diagnosis.

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Discuss the importance of compliance with the medication regimen and of completing the full course of treatment. Assist the patient/caretaker to develop a written plan for taking, or administering, the medication so coverage is as close to around-the-clock as possible.

1. Azithromycin:

    a. **Infants** less than 6 months **old**: Azithromycin 10mg/kg **PO daily** for 5 days

    b. Child**ren** 6 months of age **through 12 years old**: Azithromycin 10mg/kg (maximum of 500mg) PO **once** on day 1, then 5mg/kg (maximum 250mg/day) PO **once** on days 2 through 5.

    c. **Adolescents (at least 13 years old) and adults (including patients who are pregnant)**: Azithromycin 500mg PO **once on** day 1, then 250mg PO **once** on days 2 through 5.

OR

2. Erythromycin (preferably the estolate form):

NOTE: Do not give in hepatic dysfunction or pre-existing liver disease. **Also, do not give to infants less than 1 month old due to infantile hypertrophic pyloric stenosis**.

   a. Children 1 month of age **through 12 years old**: Erythromycin 40mg/kg (maximum of 2 grams) PO **divided into 4 equal doses; give 1 dose** every six hours for 14 days.

   b. Adolescents **(at least 13 years old)** and adults: Erythromycin 500mg PO every six hours for 14 days.

OR, if cannot take others listed,

3. Trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole (TMP/SMZ)

NOTE: Give only if patient cannot take others listed. Do not give if **patient is** pregnant, breastfeeding, has pre-existing liver disease, allergic to sulfa drugs **or younger than 2 months old.**

   a. Child**ren** 2 months of age through **12 years of age**: TMP/SMZ (8mg/40mg)/kg **divided in 2 equal doses;** give **1 dose** PO every 12 hours for 14 days.

   b. Adolescents **(at least 13 years old)** and adults: TMP/SMZ (160mg/800mg) PO **every 12 hours** for 14 days.

4. **I**mmunoprophylaxis:

Initiate or continue the pertussis immunization schedule for cases. See the ACIP Recommended Immunization Schedules, for vaccine information and vaccine administration guidelines at http://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-schedules

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Identify all close contacts (household contacts and possibly others – particularly persons who are pregnant or caring for an infant, immunocompromised, or have an underlying medical condition that

would be exacerbated by pertussis such as severe asthma or cystic fibrosis) and advise them to seek medical care for prophylaxis regardless of age or immunization status, because pertussis immunity is not absolute and may not prevent infection.

2. Counsel patient about the importance of compliance with the medication regimen and completing the full course of treatment. A minimum of five days of treatment must be completed before returning to school or work.

3. Assist the patient/caretaker to develop a written plan for taking, or administering, the medication so coverage is as close to around-the-clock as possible. Report as soon as possible if side effects of the medication develop (e.g., if nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, severe abdominal pain, or symptoms of hepatitis occur during erythromycin therapy).

4. Assure that unimmunized or incompletely immunized children under age 7 complete the vaccine series. Review current recommendations for individuals over age 7 years. See the Georgia Immunization Program Manual, Recommended Schedules and Guidelines, for vaccine information and vaccine administration guidelines at http://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-schedules

5. Avoid aluminum or magnesium containing antacids 2 hours before and up to 2 hours after taking Erythromycin.

6. Erythromycin enteric-coated tablets or an ester derivative (e.g., estolate, ethylsuccinate) may be taken with food to minimize gastrointestinal irritation.

7. If patient is presumptively diagnosed and treated in third trimester of pregnancy, instruct patient to inform primary care and/or obstetrical provider of presumptive diagnosis (possible risk of transmission to newborn infant). Patient should be counseled to have family members and others who will be in close contact with the newborn vaccinated with Tdap as a protective measure. **Go to** https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/schedules/index.html **for more information.**

8. All close contacts of newborns should be advised to update their pertussis immunization status with Tdap per CDC guidelines. All pregnant women should receive a Tdap booster in the late second or third trimester of EACH pregnancy. **Go to**

https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/schedules/index.html **for more information.**

9. Educate patients who receive Azithromycin about adverse effects (QT prolongation, torsades de pointes, etc.) and document patient's understanding. http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/DrugSafety/UCM343347.pdf

REFERRAL/CONSULTATION

1. Refer all infants less than 6 months of age with respiratory signs/symptoms to a physician. **Ensure all children have a Primary Care Provider. Notify the child's provider that patient is receiving treatment for pertussis.**

2. **Ensure all pregnant women have an OB providing prenatal care. Notify her OB that patient is receiving treatment for pertussis.**

3. Consult with a physician or refer patients **who are immunocompromised,** unable to take any of the above medications or who **experience adverse** effects **from medication**.

4. If patient is presumptively diagnosed and treated in third trimester of pregnancy, inform primary care **provider** and/or obstetrical provider of presumptive diagnosis **due to** possible risk of transmission to newborn infant.

5. **Consult with physician regarding any patient that may have a history of liver/kidney disease or abnormal lab results.**

DRUG INTERACTIONS

(Not all inclusive: **refer to package inserts for additional information**)

Drug for Pertussis Prophylaxis or Treatment	Reacts With	Effect
Erythromycin or Azithromycin	Pimozide (Orap®)	Cardiotoxicity; sudden death
Erythromycin	Rifabutin or Rifampin	May increase levels of rifabutin or rifampin
Erythromycin or Azithromycin	Alfentanil	Decreased alfentanil clearance
Erythromycin or TMP-SMZ Caution with Azithromycin	Warfarin (Coumadin®)	Increased effect of warfarin
Erythromycin Azithromycin with triazolam	Alprazolam Diazepam Midazolam Triazolam	Increase CNS depressant effect of benzodiazepines
Erythromycin or Azithromycin	Bromocriptine	Increased bromocriptine levels
Erythromycin	Buspirone (BuSpar®)	Increased buspirone levels
Erythromycin Caution with Azithromycin	Carbamzepine (Carbatrol® or Tegretol®)	Increased levels of carbamazepine
Erythromycin or Azithromycin TMP-SMZ	Cyclosporine (Neoral® or Sandimmune®)	Increased cyclosporine levels (toxicity)
Erythromycin or Azithromycin	Digoxin	Increased digoxin levels in some patients
Erythromycin or Azithromycin	Diospyramide	Cardiac arrhythmias
Erythromycin or Azithromycin	Ergot alkaloids	Ergot toxicity
Erythromycin	Felodipine (Lexxel ® or Plendil ®) and other dihydropyridine calcium antagonists	Increased levels of felodipine (toxicity)
Erythromycin	Grepafloxacin or Sparfloxacin	Cardiac arrhythmias
Erythromycin or Azithromycin	HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors (lovastatin, simvastatin)	Rhabdomyolysis
Erythromycin	Methylprednisolone	May need to decrease prednisolone dose
Erythromycin or Azithroymcin	Tacrolimus (Prograf®)	Nephrotoxicity
Erythromycin Caution with azithromycin	Theophylline	Increased levels of theophylline
Erythromycin	Vinblastine	Vinblastine toxicity
Erythromycin	Valproic acid (Depakene®)	Increased levels of valproic acid
Erythromycin or Azithromycin	Aluminum and magnesium antacids	Decreased peak serum levels but not total absorption of macrolides
Erythromycin or Azithromycin	Antiretroviral agents	Varies; check package insert
Azithromycin or TMP-SMZ Caution with Erythromycin	Phenytoin (Dilantin®)	Increased levels of phenytoin
TMP-SMZ	Dapsone	Increased levels of both drugs
TMP-SMZ	Rifampin	May increase rifampin levels
TMP-SMZ	Sulfonylureas	Increased hypoglycemic response

TMP-SMZ	Methotrexate	Increased levels of methotrexate

REFERENCES

1. David Kimberlin (ed.), *Red Book 2015, Report of the Committee Infectious Diseases*, 30th ed., American Academy of Pediatrics, Elk Grove Village, IL, 2015, pp.608-621. (Current)

2. CDC*, Epidemiology & Prevention of Vaccine-Preventable Diseases*, Hamborsky J., Kroger A, Wolfe S. eds. 13th ed., Washington DC: Public Health Foundation, 2015, pp.261-278. (Current)

3. David L. Heymann, *Control of Communicable Diseases Manual*, 19th ed., American Public Health Association, Washington, DC, 2008. (Current)

4. **"Lexi-Drugs Online," *Lexi-Comp Database*, Lexi-Comp, Inc., Hudson, Ohio (July 24, 2017).**

5. CDC, Updated Recommendations for Use of Tetanus Toxoid, Reduced Diptheria Toxoid and Acellular Pertussis (Tdap) Vaccine from the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices, 2010 MMWR 2011, 60 (01);13-15.

6. CDC. Updated Recommendations for Use of Tetanus Toxoid, Reduced Diphtheria, and Acellular Pertussis Vaccine (Tdap) in Pregnant Women – Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP), 2012. *MMWR*. 2013;62(07):131-5.

7. **Council of State and Territorial Epidemiologists. CSTE Position Statement 2013-ID-15: Revision of the pertussis surveillance case definition to more accurately capture the burden of disease among infants less than 1 year of age. Available at http://c.ymcdn.com/sites/www.cste.org/resource/remgr/PS/13-ID-15.pdf**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR RHEUMATIC FEVER - PROPHYLACTIC ANTIBIOTIC THERAPY

DEFINITION

Patients with history of acute rheumatic fever are at high risk for recurrence if they develop a streptococcal group A upper respiratory tract infection. Because both asymptomatic and symptomatic infections can trigger a recurrence, the most effective protection from recurrences is continuous antibiotic prophylaxis, perhaps for life.

Acute Rheumatic Fever is an inflammatory, multisystem disease that occurs 1-5 weeks to 6 months after infection with group A hemolytic streptococci. It is characterized by focal inflammatory lesions of the connective tissue structures (especially of the heart, blood vessels, and joints) and by the presence of Aschoff bodies in the myocardium and skin. Typically, the onset is signaled by the sudden occurrence of fever and **major manifestations such as** joint pain **(arthritis),** possibly followed by heart and pericardial disease **(carditis may be clinical or subclinical)**, skin changes (erythema marginatum, subcutaneous nodules), and**/or** chorea. Minor manifestations **can** include clinical **findings** (fever **and** arthralgias), laboratory **findings** (elevated erythrocyte sedimentation rate, abnormal C-reactive protein) **and/or electrocardiographic (prolonged PR interval)** alterations. **Diagnosis requires 2 major criteria or 1 major and 2 minor criteria with supporting evidence of antecedent group A streptococcal infection.**

ETIOLOGY

Certain M Serotypes of Group A Beta hemolytic *Streptococcus pyogenes*

SUBJECTIVE

1. Documented history of acute rheumatic fever.

2. No history of allergic reaction to any prophylactic medication being considered.

OBJECTIVE

Assess need for continuous prophylaxis in consultation with primary care provider:

1. Patient has had Acute Rheumatic Fever without carditis and has been receiving treatment for 5 years or until age 21, whichever is longer.

2. Patient has had Acute Rheumatic Fever with carditis but without evidence of residual heart disease (no valvular disease) and has been receiving treatment for 10 years or until age 21, whichever is longer.

3. Patient has had Acute Rheumatic Fever with carditis and has residual heart disease (persistent valvular disease); last episode was over 10 years ago and patient is at least 40 years old – consider lifelong prophylaxis if valvular disease is severe or exposure to group A streptococcal infection is ongoing (i.e. around school-age children).

ASSESSMENT Candidate for secondary prophylaxis of acute rheumatic fever and no contraindication to medication selected.

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

1. Assess whether patient has a history of liver and/or kidney disease. Also, attempt to review previous (within past 3 months) Comprehensive Metabolic Panel results. If results are abnormal or patient reports history of liver/kidney disease, consult with delegating physician before beginning treatment.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Discuss the importance of compliance with the medication regimen and of completing the full course of treatment. Assist the patient/caretaker to develop a written plan for taking, or administering, the medication so coverage is as close to around-the-clock as possible.

1. Penicillin G benzathine (Bicillin L-A)

   a. **Adults and children (greater than 60lbs [27 kg]): Bicillin L-A 1.2 million units IM every 3-4 weeks. Administration every 3 weeks is recommended in certain high-risk situations. High risk situations are listed at http://www.aafp.org/afp/2010/0201/p346.html**

   b. **Patients weighing 60 lbs. (27 kg) or less: Bicillin L-A 600,000 units/kg IM every 3-4 weeks, not to exceed 1.2**

million units/dose. Administration every 3 weeks is recommended in certain high-risk situations. High risk situations are listed at http://www.aafp.org/afp/2010/0201/p346.html

NOTE: IM injections are recommended until late adolescence or young adulthood AND free of rheumatic attacks for at least 5 years; if there is risk of noncompliance with injections, then a change to oral prophylaxis is recommended.

OR

2. Penicillin V tablets

    a. Children less than 5 years old: **Penicillin V** 250mg PO **every 12 hours**.

    b. Children **(at least 6 years old) and** Adults**: Penicillin V** 250mg PO **every 12 hours**.

    c. **Children 2-3 years old that have sickle cell disease or anatomically asplenic: Penicillin V 125mg PO every 12 hours**

NOTE: There are alternative regiments for patients with penicillin allergy (listed below). However, skin testing and penicillin desensitization for immediate hypersensitivity type reaction may also be an option.

3. Sulfadiazine or sulfisoxazole

NOTE: Sulfadiazine and Sulfisoxazole and Glucose 6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD) deficiency. Use with caution in patients with G6PD deficiency; hemolysis may occur. Blood dyscrasias, fatalities associated with severe reactions including agranulocytosis, aplastic anemia and other blood dyscrasias have occurred. Discontinue use at first sign of rash or signs of serious adverse reactions and refer patient to the physician or ER (for serious/life threatening reactions) immediately.

    a. Children weighing 60 pounds (27 kg) or less: Sulfisoxazole/Sulfadiazine 500mg PO once daily

b. Adults and children (greater than 60 pounds [27 kg]): Sulfisoxazole/Sulfadiazine 1-gram PO once daily

OR

If allergic to penicillin and **sulfonamide drugs, give Erythromycin, although susceptibility testing should be pursued prior to use of this drug class (macrolides). Erythromycin is an acceptable and less expensive alternative to azithromycin, although Azithromycin has fewer adverse effects and permits once daily dosing.**

a. Children: Erythromycin 20mg/kg (maximum 500mg/day) PO divided **into 2 equal doses**, **1 dose given every 12 hours.**

b. Adults: Erythromycin 250mg PO every 12 hours.

OR

c. Children **(weighing less than** or **equal to** 27kg): **Erythromycin** 5mg/kg (**maximum** 250mg) PO once daily.

d. **Adults (**weighing more than **27kg):** Erythromycin **250mg PO once daily.**

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Patient is under medical supervision.

2. Monitoring of medication compliance is jointly managed by public health and primary care providers. Efforts will be made to ensure access to care and medications.

3. An annual consultative report **from the primary physician** is to be kept on record. The report **will specify the treatment regimen** for each patient.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Review importance of preventing recurrences of Acute Rheumatic Fever.

2. Counsel patient on medications, directions for taking them, potential side effects and management.

FOLLOW UP

Patient should return for reassessment and medication pickup every 3 months or for injections as directed.

REFERRAL/CONSULTATION

Consult with primary care provider for any signs or symptoms of recurrence of Acute Rheumatic Fever or if **patient is non-adherent** with treatment.

REFERENCES

1. A. Gibofsky and John Zabriskie, "Poststreptococcal Arthritis and Rheumatic Fever," Firestein: *Kelley's Textbook of Rheumatology*, 8th ed., Chapter 105, W. B. Saunders Company, 2008. (Current).

2. Constance Uphold and Mary Graham, *Clinical Guidelines in Family Practice*, 4th ed., Barmarrae Books, Inc., Gainesville, Florida, 2003, pp. 380-381. (Current)

3. *Rheumatic Fever*, updated October 21, 2016 by Mark R Wallace, MD, FACP, FIDSA; Chief Editor: Michael Stuart Bronze, MD. http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/236582-overview (October 21, 2016)

4. American Academy of Pediatrics, *Red Book 2015, Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases,* 30th ed., 2015, pp.732-744. (Current)

5. David L. Heymann, *Control of Communicable Diseases Manua*l, 19th ed., American Public Health Association, Washington, DC, 2008. (Current).

6. C. Armstrong, "AHA Guidelines on Prevention of Rheumatic Fever and Diagnosis and Treatment of Acute Streptococcal Pharyngitis," *Am Fam Fam Physician.* February 2010, 81(3), 346-359.

7. **"Lexi-Drugs Online," *Lexi-Comp Database™*, Lexi-Comp, Inc., Hudson, Ohio (July 24, 2017).**

8. **Gewitz, M, et al. Revision of the Jones Criteria for the Diagnosis of Acute Rheumatic Fever in the Era of Doppler Echocardiography. *Circulation*. March 28, 2017, Volume 135, Issue 13.**

9. **Johns Hopkins Medicine. Acute Rheumatic Fever. https://www.hopkinsguides.com/hopkins/view/Johns_Hopkins_ABX_Guide/540006/all/Acute_Rheumatic_Fever**

10. **Revision of the Jones Criteria for the Diagnosis of Acute Rheumatic Fever in the Era of Doppler Echocardiography. A Scientific Statement from the American Heart Association. April 23, 2015. http://circ.ahajournals.org/content/early/2015/04/23/CIR.0000000000000205**

11. **Revised Jones Criteria for Acute Rheumatic Fever: Ten Points to Remember. David Bach. May 8, 2015. http://www.acc.org/latest-in-cardiology/ten-points-to-remember/2015/05/08/15/22/revision-of-the-jones-criteria-for-the-diagnosis-of-acute-rheumatic-fever**

PREVENTION OF ZIKA RELATED INFECTION

Review Team:

Patrick O'Neal, MD Director of Health Protection Georgia Department of Public Health	**Amanda Feldpausch, MPH** Zika Epidemiology Team Lead Zoonotic and Vectorborne Disease Epidemiologist Georgia Department of Public Health
Karen Wu, MPH Zika Epidemiologist Georgia Department of Public Health	**Jennifer Burkholder, RN, MSN, MPH** Deputy Director of Emergent Health Threats Zika Project Coordinator Office of Emergency Preparedness Georgia Department of Public Health
Paula Brown Senior Project Officer Office of the Chief of Staff Georgia Department of Public Health	

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PREVENTION OF MOSQUITO RELATED ZIKA INFECTION

DEFINITION

Zika virus was first discovered in 1947 and is named after the Zika Forest in Uganda. The first human cases of Zika were detected in 1952 and since then, outbreaks of Zika have been reported in tropical Africa, Southeast Asia, **the Americas**, and the Pacific Islands.

ETIOLOGY

Zika is spread **primarily** by the bite of an infected *Aedes* species mosquito (*Ae. Aegypti*, **while** *Ae. Albopictus* **is also a competent vector**). The species are aggressive daytime biters and can also bite at night.

Zika can also be transmitted during sexual contact from a person who has **been infected with** Zika to his or her partners, even if **the infected person** is asymptomatic. **In this case, sexual contact includes vaginal sex, anal sex, oral sex, and the sharing of sex toys.** Zika can remain in semen up to 6 months, longer than in other body fluids including vaginal fluids, urine and blood.

Zika can be passed from a pregnant woman to her fetus during pregnancy. Infection with Zika during pregnancy can cause a **pattern of** birth defects **called "Congenital Zika syndrome". Congenital Zika syndrome can include severe microcephaly with partially collapsed skull, thin cerebral cortices with subcortical calcifications, ocular abnormalities, and congenital contractures (arthrogryposis).**

There is no vaccine or medicine **currently** available **specifically** to prevent or treat Zika. **Therefore, the focus for persons traveling to Zika affected areas is prevention of mosquito bites.**

SUBJECTIVE

1. **Patient asymptomatic and states intent to travel to area known to have ongoing Zika transmission. See** https://wwwnc.cdc.gov/travel/page/world-map-areas-with-zika **for a living list of affected areas.**

2. **Patient states he/she has traveled to area known to have ongoing Zika transmission or had sexual contact with a person exposed to Zika and complaining of fever, maculopapular rash, joint pain, and conjunctivitis. Symptoms can last for several days to a week. Current CDC research suggests that Guillain-Barre syndrome (GBS) is strongly associated with Zika, although only a small proportion of**

people with recent Zika virus infection get GBS. See https://wwwnc.cdc.gov/travel/page/world-map-areas-with-zika **for a living list of affected areas.**

NOTE: If patient is symptomatic for Zika infection but not pregnant, refer to their medical provider for evaluation and follow-up.

NOTE: If patient is pregnant with potential Zika exposure either through travel or sexual contact with someone with Zika exposure she should be referred to her medical provider regardless of symptoms.

OBJECTIVE

1. **Asymptomatic**
2. **Fever for several days to a week**
3. **Maculopapular rash for several days to a week**
4. **Conjunctivitis for several days to a week.**
5. **Patient verbalizes pain in joints for several days to a week.**
6. **Guillain-Barre syndrome (GBS)**

ASSESSMENT **Candidate for Preventive therapy of Zika infection**

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Mosquito repellent product that is 20-30% **N, N-Diethyl-3-methylbenzamide** (DEET). **See Appendix B (page 13.53) for list of mosquito repellent covered by Medicaid.**

NOTE: Using DEET containing products **per** manufacturer's direction has been proven safe and effective for pregnant and breastfeeding women.

NOTE: DEET is approved for use on children older than two months of age.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Take steps to control mosquitoes inside and outside.

2. When spending time indoors, patients should ensure that doors and windows are kept closed and that there are no holes in door and window screens.

3. When spending time outdoors patients should wear long-sleeved shirts and pants in addition to using EPA-approved mosquito repellent containing **20-30% DEET** on exposed skin.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. **Practice mosquito avoidance by wearing long sleeves and long pants, using 20-30% DEET insect repellent and staying indoors when possible.**

2. **If both sunscreen and DEET repellant are being applied, sunscreen should be applied first and repellant should be applied after.**

3. **Men and women with possible Zika exposure should use condoms consistently and correctly or abstain from sex for at least 6 months after symptom onset or last possible exposure to prevent Zika virus infection through sexual transmission. Condom usage applies to vaginal, anal, oral sex, as well as the sharing of sex toys.**

4. **Men with partners who are pregnant should use condoms or abstain from sex for the duration of pregnancy, whichever is longer. The World Health Organization (WHO) recommends women with possible Zika exposure should use condoms consistently and correctly or abstain from sex for at least 6 months after symptom onset or last possible exposure; Centers for Disease Control & Prevention (CDC) recommends 8 weeks. DPH Epidemiology follows WHO guidelines with consistent recommendations of 6 months or the duration of pregnancy for both men and women to prevent Zika virus infection through sexual transmission. Condom usage applies to vaginal, anal, oral sex, as well as the sharing of sex toys.**

5. **Pregnant women should avoid travel to areas with ongoing Zika transmission (https://wwwnc.cdc.gov/travel/page/world-map-areas-with-zika) and use condoms consistently and correctly if**

their partner has traveled to those areas to prevent Zika virus infection through sexual transmission. Condom usage applies to vaginal, anal, oral sex, as well as the sharing of sex toys.

6. **If a pregnant woman must travel, advise her to talk to her prenatal provider or other healthcare provider before traveling and take appropriate precautions including checking Zika related travel notices and mosquito avoidance.**

7. **Women planning to become pregnant and their partners should avoid travel to Zika affected areas. If either have traveled to an area with ongoing Zika transmission, they should discuss plans for pregnancy with a health care provider including guidance to delay pregnancy for at least 6 months after travel regardless of symptoms or Zika test results. During those 6 months, they should use condoms consistently and correctly or abstain from sex to prevent Zika virus infection through sexual transmission. Condom usage applies to vaginal, anal, oral sex, as well as the sharing of sex toys.**

REFERRAL/CONSULTATION

1. Refer non-pregnant patients who are symptomatic for Zika infection to their medical provider for evaluation and follow-up.

2. Refer pregnant patients with potential Zika exposure, either through travel or sexual contact should be referred to their medical provider regardless of symptoms.

NOTE: Triage for testing is done through DPH Epidemiology, the patient should be given contact information to share with their physician: DPH Epidemiology Zika Team 404-657-2588 **Monday through Friday, 8am until 5pm. A medical epidemiologist can be reached for emergencies after hours at 1-866-PUB-HLTH (782-4584).**

REFERENCES

1. **CDC. About Zika.** http://www.cdc.gov/zika/index.html

2. **CDC. Zika Virus and Pregnancy. http://www.cdc.gov/zika/pregnancy/index.html**

3. **CDC. Prevent Mosquito Bites. http://www.cdc.gov/zika/prevention-prevent-mosquito-bites.html**

4. **CDC. Traveler's Health. http://www.cdc.gov/travel/page/zika-information**

5. **EPA. Using Insect Repellants Safely and Effectively. https://www.epa.gov/insect-repellents/using-insect-repellents-safely-and-effectively**

6. **"Lexi-Drugs Online", Lexi-Comp Database, Lexi-Comp, Inc., Hudson, Ohio (July 24, 2017).**

7. Prevention of sexual transmission of Zika virus, World Health Organization, Interim guidance update, September 6, 2016. http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/204421/1/WHO_ZIKV_MOC_16.1_eng.pdf?ua=1

APPENDIX A RIFAMPIN PEDIATRIC DRUG CHART

Rifampin 5mg/kg (do not exceed 600 mg/dose)

Weight (kg)	Rifampin Dose (mg)
1kg	5mg
2kg	10mg
3kg	15mg
4kg	20mg
5kg	25mg
6kg	30mg
7kg	35mg
8kg	40mg
9kg	45mg

Rifampin 10mg/kg (do not exceed 600mg/dose)

Weight (kg)	Rifampin Dose (mg)
1kg	10mg
2kg	20mg
3kg	30mg
4kg	40mg
5kg	50mg
6kg	60mg
7kg	70mg
8kg	80mg
9kg	90mg

Rifampin 20mg/kg (do not exceed 600mg/dose)

Weight (kg)	Rifampin Dose (mg)
1kg	20mg
2kg	40mg
3kg	60mg
4kg	80mg
5kg	100mg
6kg	120mg
7kg	140mg
8kg	160mg
9kg	180mg
10kg	200mg
11kg	220mg
12kg	240mg
13kg	260mg
14kg	280mg
15kg	300mg
16kg	320mg
17kg	340mg
18kg	360mg
19kg	380mg
20kg	400mg
21kg	420mg
22kg	440mg
23kg	460mg
24kg	480mg
25kg	500mg
26kg	520mg
27kg	540mg
28kg	560mg
29kg	580mg
30kg and above	600mg

APPENDIX B DEET CONTAINING REPELLENTS COVERED BY MEDICAID

Amerigroup
1-800-600-4441
1-800-855-2880(TTY)

One bottle of insect repellent at no cost **with a prescription** once every 30 days, purchased at a pharmacy.

Product	Ounces
Cutter Backwoods 25% DEET Spray	6.0 oz.
OFF! Deep Woods Dry 25% DEET Spray	4.0 oz.
OFF! Deep Woods 25% DEET Spray	6.0 oz.
Repel Sportsmen 25% DEET Spray	6.5 oz.
Repel Sportsmen Max 40% DEET Spray	6.5 oz.
Natrapel 20% Picaridin	5.0 oz.
Sawyer Insect Repellent 20% Picaridin	4.0 oz.

Peach State Health Plan
770-543-8791

One bottle of insect repellent per transaction, up to twice a month **with a prescription, purchased at a pharmacy.** The pharmacy fills the prescription under the retail pharmacy benefit and member pays applicable copay.

Product	Ounces
Ultrathon 23.75% DEET Aerosol	6.0 oz.
Ultrathon 34% DEET Lotion	2.0 oz.
OFF! Deep Woods 25% DEET Spray	4.0 oz.
OFF! Deep Woods Dry 25% DEET	4.0 oz.

WellCare
1-866-231-1821
1-877-247-6272 (TTY)

OTC items are available as part of member's $12 monthly benefit. (**No prescription necessary.**)

Order online or by phone

Product	Ounces	Value
Cutter Backwoods 25% DEET	6.0 oz	$11
Bug X Repellent 30% DEET	2.0 oz.	$5
Bug X Repellent 30% DEET	4.0 oz.	$8
Bug X Repellent 30% DEET	6.0 oz.	$12

FFS Medicaid
(404) 656-4044

One prescription for insect repellent per month, **purchased at a pharmacy.**

OFF Deep Woods 98% DEET Spray	REPEL Sport 40% DEET Liquid Assorted Sizes	Coleman 100 Max 98.11% DEET Liquid Assorted Sizes	Coleman Skinsmart IR3535 Liquid
OFF Deep Woods 25% DEET Spray Assorted Sizes	REPEL Sport 25% DEET Aerosol Assorted Sizes	Coleman Dry Insect Repellent 25% DEET	Coleman Skinsmart IR3535 Spray
OFF Deep Woods 25% DEET Aerosol Assorted Sizes	REPEL 100 98.11% DEET Liquid Assorted Sizes	Coleman Sport Insect Repellent 40% DEET Spray	Coleman Botanicals Oil of Lemon Eucalyptus Liquid
OFF Deep Woods 30% DEET Aerosol	REPEL Hunter 25% DEET Aerosol	Ultrathon Insect Repellent 34.34% DEET Spray	NATRAPEL 12H 20% Picaridin Liquid
Maxi DEET Spray 98.11% DEET Assorted Sizes	REPEL Insect Repellent 20% DEET Spray	Ultrathon Insect Repellent 34.34% DEET Lotion	NATRAPEL 12H 20% Picaridin Spray
Cutter Backwoods 25% DEET Liquid	REPEL Insect Repellent 30% DEET Aerosol	OFF Deep Woods 25% DEET Wipes	Cutter Oil of Lemon Eucalyptus Liquid
Cutter Backwoods 25% DEET Aerosol Assorted Sizes	REPEL Insect Repellent 20% DEET Lotion	REPEL Insect Repellent 30% DEET Wipes	

PERINATAL HEPATITIS B PREVENTION

Perinatal Hepatitis B Prevention

Public Health staff will utilize the current edition of the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program (GIP) Manual's Perinatal Hepatitis B Prevention Program Guidelines as their policy to provide required management of infants born to hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg)-positive women.

The goals of the Georgia Perinatal Hepatitis B Prevention Program are to:

1. Ensure that all pregnant women are screened for HBsAg as part of the initial prenatal screening panel.

2. Assure that all local health departments perform case investigations on all positive HBsAg-positive pregnant women reported to their jurisdiction.

3. Confirm that infants born to HBsAg-positive women receive HBIG and the first dose of hepatitis B vaccine within twelve (12) hours of birth.

4. Ensure that infants born to HBsAg-positive women receive the second dose of vaccine at 1-2 months of age and the third dose of vaccine at six (6) months of age.

5. Ensure that infants born to HBsAg-positive women in the U.S. and residing in Georgia are tested at nine (9) months to twelve (12) months of age for HBsAg and hepatitis B surface antibody (anti-HBs) after completing the hepatitis B vaccination series. **It is the responsibility of each health district to establish a process to ensure that required lab tests are available to infants born to HBsAg-positive women.**

Go to https://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-publications for the GIP Manual.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

PRIMARY HYPERTENSION IN ADULTS

2015 HYPERTENSION CLINICAL REVIEW TEAM

Patricia Jones, RN Chronic Disease Prevention Section Department of Public Health	William R. Grow, MD, FACP District Health Director South Health District Medical Consultant
Natalie Keadle, RN, MSN Adult Health Coordinator Northeast Health District	Kelly Knight, RN, BSN Clinical Nursing Coordinator South Central Health District
Gina Richardson, RN County Nurse Manager Burke County Health Department	Kimberley Hazelwood, Pharm D Director of Pharmacy Georgia Department of Public Health
Tammy Burdeaux, RN, BSN, CRNI District Nursing and Clinical Coordinator East Central Health District	Lawton C. Davis, MD District Health Director South Central Health District
Stephen Goggans, MD, MPH District Health Director East Central Health District	Greg French, RD, LD, CPT DeKalb County Board of Health
Gayathri Kumar, MD Medical Officer/Epidemiologist Georgia Department of Public Health	

This protocol update was developed with funding through the Association of State and Territorial Health Officials Million Hearts Learning Collaborative from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. The clinical review team acknowledges the contributions to the protocol of Department of Public Health staff Jean O'Connor, JD, DrPH, Brittany Taylor, MPH, Kenneth Ray, MPH, Yvette Daniels, JD, and J. Patrick O'Neal, MD, MPH.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PRIMARY HYPERTENSION IN ADULTS

DEFINITION

Primary (Essential) Hypertension is defined as systolic blood pressure equal to or greater than 140 mmHg or diastolic blood pressure equal to or greater than 90 mmHg on at least two subsequent occasions, or taking antihypertensive medication with goal of maintaining a normal blood pressure. Secondary hypertension is a type of hypertension with an underlying, potentially correctable cause. This protocol is for Primary Hypertension and does not include treatment for patients with impaired kidney function or Chronic Kidney Disease, heart failure or other complicated factors.

The three objectives for evaluation of patients with documented hypertension are to:

1. Assess lifestyle and identify other cardiovascular risk factors or concomitant disorders that may contribute to hypertension and may affect prognosis and can guide treatment.

2. Assess for the presence or absence of target organ damage and cardiovascular disease, the extent of disease, and the response to therapy.

3. Identify known underlying causes of secondary hypertension, such as chronic kidney disease, coarctation of the aorta, Cushing's syndrome, drug-induced drug-related, obstructive uropathy, pheochromocytoma, primary aldosteronism, renovascular hypertension, sleep apnea, or thyroid or parathyroid disease.

ETIOLOGY

1. Primary hypertension/high blood pressure (HBP) appears to be a multi-factorial disease/disorder in which several genes interact with each other and with the environment.

2. Contributing Risk Factors for Hypertension include:

   a. Family history of premature cardiovascular disease (men aged less than 55 and women aged less than 65)
   b. Age
   c. Race or ethnicity (African American)
   d. Overweight/obesity - BMI greater than 24.5
   e. Habitual high salt intake
   f. Sedentary lifestyle - little to no moderate to vigorous activity in the past 30 days
   g. Alcohol intake greater than moderate drinking (more than one drink per day for women and more than 2 drinks per day for men)
   h. Any tobacco or nicotine use

i. Diabetes mellitus
j. Microalbuminuria
k. Renal disease

3. Contributing Risk Factors for Cardiovascular Disease include:

a. Hypertension
b. Abnormal lipids (Total cholesterol 200 mg/dl or greater; HDL less than 40 mg/dl; LDL greater than 100 mg/dl; triglyceride greater than 150 mg/dl)
c. Diabetes and prediabetes
d. Any tobacco or nicotine use
e. Obesity or overweight-Body Mass Index greater than 24.5
f. Physical inactivity-little to no moderate to vigorous activity in the past 30 days
g. Family history of premature cardiovascular disease (men aged less than 55 and women aged less than 65)
h. History of preeclampsia during pregnancy
i. Age
j. Alcohol intake Alcohol intake greater than moderate drinking (more than one drink per day for women and more than 2 drinks per day for men)

SUBJECTIVE

1. Normally no symptoms. (Headaches, dizziness, or nosebleeds do not occur any more often in persons with hypertension.)

2. May or may not have personal or family history of hypertension.

3. The following medical history should be elicited:

a. Known duration/levels of elevated blood pressure.
b. Past or current symptoms of coronary heart disease, heart failure, cerebrovascular disease, peripheral vascular disease, renal disease, diabetes mellitus, dyslipidemia, sleep apnea or sexual dysfunction.
c. History of symptoms of gout.
d. Recent changes in weight, leisure-time activity, smoking or other tobacco use, or recreational drug use.
e. Results and adverse effects of:
    1) Previous antihypertensive therapy.
    2) Other prescription and/or OTC medications.
    3) Alternative therapies (e.g., herbal).
    4) Homeopathies.
f. Family history of hypertension, cardiovascular disease, diabetes

and/or dyslipidemia or causes of secondary hypertension.

g. Results of previous medical assessments of possible causes of hypertension (e.g., labile hypertension or paroxysms of hypertension accompanied by headache, palpitations, pallor and perspiration; abdominal bruits or abdominal or flank masses; delayed or absent femoral artery pulses or decreased blood pressure in the lower extremities; hypokalemia; hypercalcemia; elevated creatinine).
h. Diet history, including intake of sodium chloride, alcohol, saturated fat and caffeine.
i. Psychosocial and environmental factors (e.g., family situation, employment status, working conditions, educational level).

4. May have one or more of the following symptoms suggestive of target organ damage and/or clinical cardiovascular disease (e.g., left ventricular hypertrophy [LVH], angina, prior myocardial infarction [MI] or coronary revascularization, heart failure, stroke or transient ischemic attack [TIA], neuropathy, peripheral arterial disease, chronic kidney disease, retinopathy):

   a. Visual disturbances.
   b. Chest pain.
   c. Shortness of breath.
   d. Edema.
   e. Dizziness.
   f. Headache.
   g. Confusion or other neurological symptoms (e.g., difficulty with speech or movement, facial or one-sided numbness).
   h. Nocturia, urinary frequency, urinary incontinence.

OBJECTIVE

1. Systolic BP (SBP) equal to or greater than 140 mmHg AND/OR diastolic BP (DBP) equal to or greater than 90 mmHg (based on the average of at least two measurements (separated by 2 minutes).

   Have patient sit quietly for at least 5 minutes before checking the blood pressure and should have avoided caffeinated beverages and smoking for at least 30 minutes before obtaining measurement. With the patient seated, feet flat on the floor and the arm supported at heart level, measure the blood pressure (BP) in each arm, unless contraindicated in one arm, using the correct blood pressure cuff size. The length of the cuff bladder should encircle at least 80% of the arm and wide enough to encircle 40% of the arm at midpoint. Cuffs that are too large may

result in readings that are too low, if cuff is too small, may result in readings that are too high. See Appendix B for Proper Blood Pressure Measurement.

Recommended cuff sizes:

Arm Circumference	Adult Cuff Size
22 to 26 cm	Small adult (12x22 cm)
27 to 34 cm	Adult (16x30 cm)
35 to 44 cm	Large adult (16x30 cm)
45 to 52 cm	Adult thigh (16x42 cm)

Indicate in the patient's record the arm with the higher reading. The arm with the higher reading is to be used for ongoing evaluation on subsequent visits.

2. Systolic BP (SBP) 120-139 mmHg or diastolic BP (DBP) 80-89 mmHg is classified as Prehypertension. Pharmacologic treatment should be initiated in the general population aged 60 years and older to lower blood pressure at SBP equal to or greater than 150 mmHg or DBP equal to or greater than 90 mmHg and treat to goal SBP less than 150 mmHg and DBP less than 90 mmHg. In the general population less than 60 years of age, initiate pharmacologic therapy to lower BP to a DBP goal less than 90 mmHg and to lower BP to a SBP goal less than 140 mmHg. In the population aged 18 years or older with CKD spell out chronic kidney/renal disease and/or diabetes, initiate pharmacologic treatment to lower BP at SBP greater than 140 mmHg or DBP greater than 90 mmHg and treat to goal of SBP less than 140 mmHg and goal DBP less than 90 mmHg. See Figure 1 – Elevated Blood Pressure Chart.

3. When HBP is identified early before target organ damage occurs, the physical examination usually is normal for the patient's age and sex.

4. If the BP has been elevated long enough, or if the elevation has been high enough to cause damage or complications, physical examination findings may include:

   a. Optic Fundi - Narrowing, copper-wiring, or A.V. nicking; hemorrhages, exudates or papilledema.

   b. Chest & Lungs - Rales or congestion.
   c. Heart - Left ventricular hypertrophy (LVH), premature ventricular contractions (PVCs), a gallop, unequal blood pressure in both

arms, and/or a displaced point of maximal impulse.

d. Arterial Pulses – Bruits auscultated over the carotid arteries or abdominal aorta; distended neck veins, femoral arteries and/or renal arteries.

e. Extremities – Edema and/or venous pooling, abnormal peripheral arterial pulsations, intermittent claudication.

f. Neurologic - One-sided weakness, cranial nerve weakness, or hyperactive reflexes on the side of an old stroke.

ASSESSMENT

Primary (Essential) Hypertension
(Subjective and objective findings do not indicate a cause of the hypertension.)

1. If secondary hypertension is suspected because subjective and/or objective findings indicate target organ damage (heart, brain, renal disease, peripheral artery disease or retinopathy), coarctation, Cushing's syndrome, or pheochromocytoma, refer the patient to a physician for further evaluation. Symptoms and findings that might suggest a need for further study or referral include:

   a. Bruits in the carotid, abdominal, or femoral areas
   b. Palpable kidneys
   c. Episodes of sweating, tachycardia, and headache
   d. Absence of femoral pulses
   e. Unequal blood pressure in right and left arms
   f. Palpitations and paroxysmal symptoms
   g. Cushingoid-like appearance (i.e., moon face, buffalo hump, truncal obesity, striae)
   h. Hypokalemia/hyperkalemia
   i. Sleep apnea, such as excessive daytime sleepiness

2. Consult with Delegating Physician or his/her designee if patient presents with systolic blood pressure equal to or greater than 200 mmHg and/or diastolic blood pressure is equal to or greater than 110 mmHg.

3. Call 911 if patient presents with complaints of chest pain, shortness of breath, severe headache, sudden numbness or weakness of face, arm, or leg on one side, visual disturbances, trouble speaking or understanding, dizziness, loss of balance or coordination.

4. Document all referrals, consultations, and actions taken.

PLAN DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

If the hypertension is identified early, diagnostic studies should be within normal limits. They may be abnormal if the BP has been elevated for a long time or is high to the point that it can cause target organ damage.

For baseline evaluation:

1. Complete Blood Count (CBC)
2. Serum Potassium
3. Serum Creatinine
4. Fasting Blood Glucose or Hemoglobin A1c (if diabetes mellitus is known or suspected)
5. Serum Sodium
6. Fasting Total Cholesterol and Lipid Profile
7. Calcium
8. Urinalysis-initial screen may be by dipstick; full urinalysis by laboratory for any positive results
9. ECG
10. Microalbumin by dipstick

THERAPEUTIC

The goal of therapy for hypertension is to minimize end-organ damage by lowering blood pressure. This may be accomplished with only lifestyle modification, or a combination of lifestyle changes and medications.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

Review the following lifestyle modifications with all patients, as applicable:

1. Counsel regarding the Dietary Approaches to Stop Hypertension (DASH), Reduced Sodium Diet. For specific recommendations: http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/health/public/heart/hbp/dash/index.htm

2. Achieve/maintain desirable body weight or Body Mass Index of 18.5-24.9 Kg/m^2.

3. Reduce daily sodium intake to less than 2,300 milligrams (mg). Reduce intake to 1,500 mg among persons who are 51 or older, African American or have hypertension, diabetes, or chronic kidney disease.

4. Reduction of dietary fats and cholesterol to meet DASH recommendations.

5. Moderation of alcohol intake (less than one ounce [30mL] ethanol/day for men and less than 0.5 oz. [15mL] for women). One ounce of ethanol equals 24 oz. beer, 10 oz. wine, or 3 oz. 80-proof whiskey.

6. Adequate dietary potassium intake (if renal function is normal and not taking drugs known to raise potassium, such as ACE Inhibitors) of 4700 mg/day. Foods that are high in potassium include bananas, potatoes, beans and yogurt.

7. Adequate intake of calcium, 1000-1500 mg/day based on age.

8. Choose foods that provide more potassium for patients who are not hyperkalemic, dietary fiber, calcium, and vitamin D. These foods include vegetables, fruits, whole grains, and skim or low-fat milk and milk products.

9. Regular aerobic physical activity at least 30 minutes per day, most days of the week.

10. Smokers and tobacco users should receive cessation counseling and be referred to the Georgia Quit Line 1-877-270-STOP (7867).

NOTE: Refer to the latest Dietary Guidelines for Americans 2010, Appendices 12 and 14 for foods rich in potassium and calcium at http://www.cnpp.usda.gov/DGAs2010-PolicyDocument.htm until the Dietary Guidelines for Americans 2015 are released.

NOTE: Refer to Appendix A for Definitions and Recommendations for Lifestyle Modifications

PHARMACOLOGIC

The general principles of drug therapy in the treatment of primary hypertension are based on 2014 Joint National Committee Recommendations.

- Initiate drug therapy for hypertensive persons aged 60 years or older to a blood pressure goal of less than 150/90 mmHg and hypertensive persons 30-59 years of age to a systolic goal of less than 140 mmHg and diastolic goal of less than 90 mmHg. The same thresholds and goals (less than 140/90) are recommended for hypertensive adults with diabetes or nondiabetic chronic kidney disease as for the general hypertensive population younger than 60 years.

- Start one drug, titrate to a maximum dose. If BP goal is not achieved with the initial drug at maximum dose, add a second drug from another class (thiazide-type diuretic, CCB, ACEI, or ARB) and titrate to maximum dose. If BP goal is not achieved with maximum dose of 2 drugs, select a third drug from the list (thiazide-type diuretic, CCB, ACEI, or ARB), avoiding the combined use of ACEI and ARB. Titrate the third drug up to maximum recommended dose to achieve goal BP. If goal BP cannot be reached using the drugs included in this protocol or due to any contraindication or the need to use more than 3 drugs to reach goal BP, referral to a physician may be indicated.

- In the general nonblack population, including those with diabetes, initial antihypertensive treatment should include a thiazide-type diuretic, calcium channel blocker (CCB), angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor (ACEI), or angiotensin receptor blocker (ARB).

- In the general black population, including those with diabetes, initial antihypertensive treatment should include a thiazide-type diuretic or calcium channel blocker (CCB).

- Patients with diabetes mellitus most likely will require a 2 drug regimen.

- Be familiar with local discount drug programs and keep an up-to-date list. To the extent possible, order medications from these lists. Consult with the delegating physician as appropriate.

- It is essential to assess patient medication adherence and lifestyle modifications.

- To improve medication adherence, order once per day dosing as appropriate.

- This protocol is for Primary Hypertension and does not include treatment for patients with impaired kidney function or Chronic Kidney Disease, heart failure or other complicated factors.

- Patients who are pregnant, planning to become pregnant, or breast-feeding must be referred to an obstetrician for management of hypertension.

1. Thiazide-type Diuretics

NOTES:
- Do not give to patients with a known sensitivity to the drug, any component of the formulation or sulfonamide-derived drugs or anuria.

- Thiazide-type Diuretics may cause (not all-inclusive list, refer to package insert):

  - A change in glucose control in patients with prediabetes or diabetes mellitus.
  - In patients with a history of gout, may precipitate gout event.
  - In patients with moderate or high cholesterol concentrations, may increase cholesterol concentrations.
  - Patients may experience fluid or electrolyte imbalances.

a. Hydrochlorothiazide (HCTZ) tablets

   Initial dose: 12.5 mg - 25 mg PO once daily. For older patients, consider starting with a lower initial dose of 12.5 mg and titrating to response.

   Usual dose: 25 mg to 50 mg PO once daily in 1-2 divided doses.

OR

b. Indapamide

   Initial dose 1.25 mg PO once daily but if inadequate, dosage may increase to 2.5 mg PO daily.

   Usual dose: 1.25 mg to 2.5 mg PO daily

Note: Indapamide has not been shown to adversely affect lipids.

If patient does not gain control of BP, or BP does not steadily decrease after 3-4 weeks, increase dosage.

If BP is still uncontrolled, add a second drug from another appropriate class.

Thiazide-type diuretics are often available in combination products.

NOTE: If a diuretic is the initial drug, the second drug may be from any other drug class that fits with the patient assessment. However, if a drug from another class besides a diuretic was chosen initially, then the second drug should almost always be a diuretic.

AND/OR

(up to a total of 3 drugs, each from a different class)

2. Angiotensin Converting Enzyme Inhibitor (ACEI) and Angiotensin Receptor Blockers (ARBs):

Notes: Do not give the following ACEI or ARB to patients with a known hypersensitivity to the drug or any component of the formulation.

- For patients who are diabetic and are also taking an ACEI or ARB, they should not take aliskiren if GFR is estimated to be below 60 mL/min (mild loss of kidney function) because the combination may enhance the nephrotoxic effect of the ACEI or ARB. Other patients should be monitored for serum potassium, serum creatinine, and blood pressure periodically.
- Do not use an ACEI and ARB as concomitant therapy in a patient.
- Black patients have a smaller response to monotherapy of ACEI and ARBs.
- Angiotensin Converting Enzyme Inhibitor (ACEI) and Angiotensin Receptor Blockers (ARBs) may cause (not all inclusive list, refer to package insert):
    - Angioedema, with the highest frequency within the first 3 months of therapy but may occur with the first dose (less likely with ARB)
    - Dry, hacking, nonproductive cough, usually occurs within the first few months of treatment and generally resolves within 1-4 weeks after discontinuation (less likely with ARB).
    - Hyperkalemia, potassium should be monitored appropriately.

For those drugs listed with once or twice daily dosing, the antihypertensive effect may diminish toward the end of the dosing interval especially with the lower dosing. An increased dosing may aid in extending the duration of antihypertensive effect or the need to divide the dose for twice-daily dosing should be assessed by monitoring peak and trough responses.

a. Lisinopril tablet 10-40 mg PO daily

Initial Dose: 10 mg PO once daily, not maintained on a diuretic or 5 mg PO once daily, maintained on a diuretic or volume depleted. For older patients, consider starting with a lower initial dose and titrating to response.

Usual dose: 10 mg to 40 mg PO once daily.

OR

b. Enalapril Maleate

Initial Dose: 5 mg PO once daily, not maintained on a diuretic or 2.5 mg PO once daily, maintained on a diuretic or volume depleted. For older patients, consider starting with a lower initial dose and titrating to response.

Usual dose: 10-20 mg PO daily in 1 or 2 divided doses

OR

c. Benazepril HCL

Initial Dose: 5 mg PO once daily, if maintained on a diuretic or volume depleted and 10 mg PO once daily if not maintained on a diuretic. For older patients, consider starting with a lower initial dose and titrating to response.

Usual dose: 10 mg to 40 mg PO daily in 1 or 2 divided doses

If patient is compliant after 2-3 weeks but BP is not decreasing, increase dosage until control is gained, side effects become intolerable, or maximum dosage is reached.

OR

3. Angiotensin Receptor Blockers (ARBs)

a. Losartan Potassium

Initial dose: 25 mg PO once daily, if maintained on a diuretic or volume depleted or 50 mg PO daily if not maintained on a diuretic.

Usual dose: 50-100 mg PO daily in 1 or 2 divided doses

OR

b. Valsartan

Initial dose: 40 mg PO once daily, if maintained on a diuretic or volume depleted or 80 mg PO daily in patients who are not

maintained on a diuretic or used as monotherapy. Dose may be increased to achieve desired effect.

Usual dose: 80-320 mg PO daily

OR

c. Irbesartan

Initial dose: 75 mg PO once daily, if maintained on a diuretic or volume depleted and 150 mg PO once daily, if not maintained on a diuretic.

Usual dose: 150 mg-300 mg PO daily

If patient is compliant after 2-3 weeks but BP is not decreasing, increase dosage until control is gained, side effects become intolerable, or maximum dosage is reached.

AND/OR
(up to a total of 3 drugs, each from a different class)

4. Calcium Channel Blocker

Notes: Non-dihydropyridine calcium channel blockers (e.g., diltiazem, verapamil) offer a small protective effect on proteinuria in diabetic nephropathy beyond their antihypertensive action. There is a small additional benefit on proteinuria from addition of non-dihyropyridine CCBs to angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors.

Calcium Channel Blockers may cause (not all-inclusive list, refer to package insert):

- Constipation
- Interaction with grapefruit products
- Swelling in the feet or hands
- Gingival hyperplasia

Concomitant use of nondihydropyridine calcium channel agents (e.g., verapamil, diltiazem) and β-adrenergic blocking agents can have additive negative effects on myocardium contractility, heart rate, and AV conduction and they may inhibit the metabolism of certain beta-blockers.

a. Dihydropyridine: Amlodipine Besylate

Initial Dose: 2.5 mg PO once daily may be used when adding amlodipine to other antihypertensive therapy. If used as monotherapy, can initiate at 5 mg PO once daily. Older patients should be initiated at 2.5 mg. In general, titrate in 2.5 mg increments, wait 7 to 14 days between titration steps.

Usual dose: range 5 mg to 10 mg PO once daily

OR

b. Non-dihydropyridines: Diltiazem Extended Release

Initial Dose: 120 mg to 180 mg PO once daily.For older patients, consider starting with 120 mg as an initial dose and titrating to response.

Usual dose: 240 mg to 360 mg PO once daily.

Antihypertensive effects usually are evident within the first week. If patient is compliant after 2 weeks but BP is not decreasing, increase dosage until control is gained, side effects become intolerable, or maximum dose is reached (360 mg/day).

OR

c. Verapamil HCL Sustained-Release (SR)

Note: Please see individual manufacturer insert to determine if the sustained-release form can be safely broken in half. Base on therapeutic efficacy and safety, evaluate weekly and approximately 24 hours after the previous dose. Usually the first antihypertensive effects are evident within the first week of therapy.

Initial Dose: 180 mg PO given in the morning. Lower initial dosages of 120 mg/day may be warranted in patients who may have an increased response (e.g., elderly patients, patients of small stature.)

If adequate response is not obtained with 180 mg, the dosage may be titrated upward in the following manner at weekly intervals to appropriate response: 240 mg each morning

THEN if needed, titrate up with either 180 mg each morning, plus 180 mg each evening OR 240 mg each morning plus 120 mg each evening.

Usual dose: 240 mg to 360 mg daily. 120 mg sustained-release (SR) up to 360 mg/day

Dosage should be adjusted according to patient's blood pressure response.

If BP still is uncontrolled, add a diuretic, if appropriate, or another appropriate drug from a different class, OR, substitute another appropriate drug from a different class.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Treatment Regimen-Emphasize the importance of adherence with all aspects of the treatment plan: diet, lifestyle changes, medications and importance of keeping follow-up appointments. See Appendix C – Educational Resources

    a. Establish blood pressure goals and review readings on each visit.
    b. Ask patient what he/she has been doing since the last visit to control their blood pressure.
    c. Ask patient specifically what he/she would like to work on to improve his/her blood pressure.
    d. Ask patient what he/she thinks would make it easier to control his/her blood pressure.
    e. Ask patient to tell you how he/she has been taking his/her medication(s).
    f. Ask if patient sometimes forgets to take his/her medication(s).
    g. Ask if patient has had any side effects and if he/she has concerns about side effects.
    h. Advise patient when and how to contact the clinician with questions or problems.

2. Refer to a Registered Dietitian or Public Health Nutritionist, for DASH Eating Plan counseling. Nurses are to provide counseling on DASH Eating Plan if no Registered Dietitian or Public Health Nutritionist is available and reinforce counseling on follow-up visits.

    a. Attain/maintain sodium intake to 1,500 mg among persons who are 51 or older and those of any age who are African American or have hypertension, diabetes, or chronic kidney disease.
    b. Attain/maintain fat consumption to no more than 25-30% of calories.

c. Achieve/maintain desirable body weight/BMI.
d. Use alcohol and caffeine in moderation.
e. Use foods rich in potassium content especially if taking a potassium-wasting diuretic (e.g., HCTZ) up to 4700 mg/day
f. If impaired renal function or on ACE Inhibitor therapy, avoid salt substitutes because of potassium content.
g. Attain and maintain adequate calcium intake appropriate for
h. age.

3. Risk Factors

   a. Sedentary lifestyle - assist the patient to establish a physical activity plan and discuss the importance of regular aerobic physical activity at least 30 minutes per day most days of the week.
   b. Smoker or nicotine user- Utilize Ask, Advise and Refer (AAR) model and provide cessation counseling and referral to the Georgia Quit Line 1-877-270-STOP (7867) using the Quit Line Fax Back Form as appropriate.
   c. Hypercholesterolemia - provide nutrition counseling and promote adherence to a low cholesterol/low fat diet to decrease cholesterol level.

4. Counsel the patient about the signs and symptoms of stroke and heart attack. Stress that both conditions are medical emergencies and to call 911 (or for an ambulance where 911 is not locally available).

   a. Signs and symptoms of stroke may include: sudden numbness or weakness in the face, arm or leg, especially on one side of the body; sudden confusion or trouble speaking or understanding; sudden trouble seeing in one or both eyes; sudden trouble walking, dizziness, loss of balance or coordination; sudden severe headache with no known cause.

   b. Signs and symptoms of heart attack may include: uncomfortable pressure, fullness, squeezing or pain in the center of the chest lasting more than a few minutes; pain spreading to the shoulders, neck or arms; chest discomfort with lightheadedness, increased sweating, profound weakness, fainting, nausea or shortness of breath.

5. Assess and administer vaccines indicated according to the current Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP) childhood or adult immunization schedule (i.e., those recommended for persons with chronic medical conditions). See the Georgia Immunization Program Manual, Recommended Schedule and Guidelines, for current ACIP schedules and administration guidelines for each vaccine. The Georgia Immunization Manual may be accessed on line at http://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-publications

FOLLOW-UP

1. Clinic Appointments

    a. When beginning anti-hypertensive therapy, see patients about every 2-4 weeks until blood pressure goal is achieved.
    b. After blood pressure goal is reached and maintained for 3-4 visits, may move to 4-6 week intervals if the patient has reached blood pressure goals and is adjusting to the treatment regimen.
    c. When the patient has reached and maintains blood pressure goals, less frequent (3-6 month) appointment intervals may be sufficient.

NOTE: Some patients need and/or want closer supervision. Keeping them on a 4-week appointment interval may be necessary.

2. Triage assessment of the patient is performed at each visit and includes the information components listed below:

NOTE: Any part of the assessment performed by staff other than the PHN ordering and dispensing medication must be verified by the PHN ordering and dispensing the medication.

    a. Chief complaint.
    b. Physical examination includes:
        1) Weight, Body Mass Index, and waist circumference.
        2) Sitting and standing BP (particularly for patients with diabetes or complaints suggestive of orthostatic hypotension, the elderly and patients taking diuretics). A drop in BP without an increase in pulse rate is suggestive of autonomic neuropathy in patients with diabetes, and of volume depletion in patients taking diuretics.
        3) Temperature and pulse rate.
        4) Heart and lung sounds.
        5) Assessment of extremities.
        6) Assess, advise and refer tobacco and nicotine users.

    c. Adherence to the treatment regimen, including lifestyle modifications and pharmacologic treatment. Note any side effects to medications. See Patient Education/Counseling section for assessment components.
    d. ER/Hospital visits or change in medical history since the last visit.

3. Do routine follow-up lab studies to determine the effect of therapy, or when there are symptoms or complaints of problems.

a. 3 months after beginning diuretic therapy: potassium and sodium.
b. 6 to 12 months: potassium and sodium.
c. Obtain baseline serum creatinine and repeat one month after initiation of ACEI/ARB therapy. If serum creatinine elevates to 1.4 mg/dL or greater for women or 1.5 mg/dL or greater for men, consult with physician for recommendation of continued therapy and refer patient to the physician for treatment and evaluation for renal artery stenosis, hyperaldosteronism.
d. Yearly: total cholesterol and lipid profile, hemoglobin/hematocrit, glucose, uric acid, creatinine, calcium, HgbA1C (if has diabetes), and urinalysis by dipstick, by laboratory if any positive results, annual dipstick microalbumin.
e. A repeat ECG is indicated if the patient develops new signs and/or symptoms of heart disease (e.g., chest pain or abnormal heartbeats) or evidence of congestive heart failure (e.g., peripheral edema, shortness of breath); otherwise, once every 5 years is acceptable.

REFERRAL/CONSULTATION

1. All patients should have, at minimum, a nutritional evaluation and development of an appropriate meal plan by a Registered Dietitian or Public Health Nutritionist, if available.

2. Assess, advise and refer tobacco and nicotine users.

3. Allied health professionals - Where available, refer to a pharmacist and/or health educator, as needed, for education and counseling.

4. Medical Consultation - In addition to periodic review by a physician, special consultation is indicated if:

   a. Initial systolic pressure is 180 mmHg or greater.
   b. Initial diastolic pressure is 110 mmHg or greater.
   c. Lab results are abnormal: total cholesterol is 200 mg or higher, LDL is 130 mg/dL or greater than 100 mg/dL in persons with diabetes, HDL equal to or less than 40 mg/dL, triglyceride is 200 mg/dL or greater unless person has diabetes and triglyceride is greater than 150 mg/dL, serum creatinine of 1.4 mg/dL or greater for women or 1.5 mg/dL for men or greater, serum potassium of 3.5 mEq or less or 5.5 mEq or greater, or positive microalbuminuria. Refer for abnormal lipids and initiation of pharmacological intervention by the patient's primary care provider. Refer for elevated serum creatinine and microalbuminuria for evaluation for renal disease.
   d. For patients with diabetes or persons with unknown diabetes, refer to

patient's primary care provider for diagnosis or diabetes management if fasting plasma glucose is equal to or greater than 126 mg/dL or Hemoglobin A1c is greater than 6.5%.

e. Extreme complications/side effects of therapy occur.
f. Patient does not respond to therapy.
g. Patient is less than 18 years old.
h. Patient is pregnant.
i. Patient has premature ventricular contractions (PVCs) equal to or greater than 6 per minute, couplets (bigeminy), multifocal PVCs, or irregular heart rate (other than premature atrial contractions).
j. Patient has bradycardia (heart rate equal to or less than 56 and is not taking a beta-blocker) or tachycardia (heart rate equal to or greater than 100). Follow district protocol guidelines for management/referral or exceptions or specific instructions documented in writing in the patient's record by the referring physician.
k. ECG is abnormal.

5. Document all referrals and the results, including any communication with the provider regarding actions taken. Also document patient refusal and the reason for the refusal to follow up on referrals.

REFERENCES

1. James PA, Oparil S, Carter BL, Cushman WC, Dennison-Himmelfarb V, Handler J, et

al, 2014 Evidence-Based Guideline for the Management of High Blood Pressure in Adults: Report from the Panel Members Appointed to the Eighth Joint National Committee (JNC8). JAMA, 2013[PMID:24352797].

2. Chobania AV, Bakris GI, Black HR, Cushman WC, Green LA, Izzo JL Jr, et al: National Heart, Lung and Blood Institute Joint National Committee on Prevention, Detection, Evaluation and Treatment of High Blood Pressure. The Seventh Report of the Joint National Committee on Prevention, Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Pressure: the JNC 7 report. JAMA. 2003;289:2560-72 [PMID:12748199]

3. Eckel RH, Jakicic JM, Ard JD, et al. AHA/ACC guideline on lifestyle management to reduce cardiovascular risk: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association task force on practice guidelines. Circulation. 2013. Doi:10.1161/01.cir.00004377437740.48606.d1.

4. Joint National Committee on Detection, Evaluation and Treatment of High Blood Pressure, The Seventh Report-JNC7 Express, NIH Publication No. 03-5233, 2003. (Current)

5. Facts About The DASH Eating Plan. NIH Publication No.03-4082, National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute, US Department of Health and Human Services, Bethesda, MD, 2003. (Current)

6. Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Cholesterol in Adults (Adult Treatment Panel III), Executive Summary, NIH Publication No. 01-3670 National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute, US Department of Health and Human Services, Bethesda, MD, 2001.

7. “Lexi-Drugs Online,” Lexi-Comp Database, Lexi-Comp, Inc., Hudson, Ohio

8. http://online.factsandcomparisons.com

9. Dietary Guidelines for Americans 2010, http://www.health.gov/dietaryguidelines

10. U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. Screening for High Blood Pressure: U.S. Preventive Services Task Force Reaffirmation Recommendation Statement. AHRQ Publication No. 08-05105-EF-2, December 2007 First published in Ann Intern Med 2007:147-783-786. http://www.uspreventiveservicestaskforce.org/Page/Topic/recommnedations-summary/blood-pressure-in-adults-hypertension-screening

11. Sica, D. Calcium channel blockers and the kidney. ClinCornerstone 2004;6(4):39-52.

12. US Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and

Prevention, Division of Nutrition, Physical Activity, and Obesity. 2008 Physical Activity Guidelines for Americans, June 2009.

13. "Lexi-Comp Online," Lexi-Comp,Inc., http://online.lexi.com (May 11, 2015)

Appendix A Definitions and Recommendations for Lifestyle Modifications

Definition	Recommendation(s)
Overweight/Obesity CDC defines overweight as an adult who has a BMI between 25 and 29.9 and obese as adult who has a BMI of 30 or higher	Weight reduction to maintain a normal body weight (BMI 18.5-24.9)
Alcohol Usage According to the Dietary Guidelines for Americans, moderate drinking is up to 1 drink per day for women and up to 2 drinks per day for men. National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism (NIAAA) defines binge drinking as a pattern of drinking that brings blood alcohol concentration (BAC) levels to 0.08 g/dL. This typically occurs after 4 drinks for women and 5 drinks for men—in about 2 hours. The Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMHSA), which conducts the annual National Survey on Drug Use and Health (NSDUH), defines binge drinking as drinking 5 or more alcoholic drinks on the same occasion on at least 1 day in the past 30 days. SAMHSA defines heavy drinking as drinking 5 or more drinks on the same occasion on each of 5 or more days in the past 30 days.	If alcohol is consumed, it should be limited to 1 drink per day for women and up to 2 drinks per day for men. One drink is defined as 12 fluid ounces of regular beer (5% alcohol), 5 fluid ounces of wine (12% alcohol), or 1.5 fluid ounces of 80 proof (40% alcohol) distilled spirits. One drink contains 0.6 fluid ounces of alcohol.
High Salt Intake Average daily consumption of dietary sodium is 3500 mg/day	2010 Dietary Guidelines recommend reduction of sodium intake to less than 2,300 mg per day and further reduction to 1,500 mg per day in persons who are 51 and older, those of any age who are African American, or have hypertension, diabetes, or chronic kidney disease.
Physical Inactivity Little to no moderate to vigorous activity in the past 30 days. BRFSS defines sedentary lifestyle as no reported activity or any physical activity or pair of activities done for less than 20 minutes or less than three times per week.	2008 Physical Activity Guidelines for Americans published by the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. Adults (aged 18–64) •Adults should do 2 hours and 30 minutes a week of moderate-intensity, or 1 hour and 15 minutes (75 minutes) a week of vigorous-intensity aerobic physical activity, or an equivalent combination of moderate- and vigorous-intensity aerobic physical activity. Aerobic activity should be performed in episodes of at least 10 minutes, preferably spread throughout the week.

	•Additional health benefits are provided by increasing to 5 hours (300 minutes) a week of moderate-intensity aerobic physical activity, or 2 hours and 30 minutes a week of vigorous-intensity physical activity, or an equivalent combination of both. •Adults should also do muscle-strengthening activities that involve all major muscle groups performed on 2 or more days per week. Older Adults (aged 65 and older) •Older adults should follow the adult guidelines. If this is not possible due to limiting chronic conditions, older adults should be as physically active as their abilities allow. They should avoid inactivity. Older adults should do exercises that maintain or improve balance if they are at risk of falling.

Appendix B Proper Technique for Blood Pressure Measurement

Hypertension should not be determined on a single measurement nor on initial contact. Elevated readings should be confirmed on at least two (2) subsequent visits. Because blood pressure is variable and can be affected by many factors, every effort should be made to ensure that blood pressure measurements are properly obtained. The approved procedure for blood pressure measurement should be:
Equipment:

1. Inspect blood pressure equipment for cracks, leaks or malfunction. Only properly calibrated equipment should be used.
2. Gather equipment
3. Cuff Size: Always use correct cuff size. The use of an incorrect cuff will result in an invalid reading: cuffs that are too large may result in readings that are too low, if cuff is too small, may result in readings that are too high. Several sizes are available: Adult, Large Adult (Obese), and Thigh. The width of the cuff should be equal to approximately two-thirds the distance from the axilla to the antecubital space. The bladder should be long enough to encircle at least 80% of the arm. If the bladder is too short, erroneously high readings may occur and low readings may occur with a bladder that is too wide. Wrap the deflated cuff snugly around the arm approximately one (1) inch (2 fingers width) above the antecubital space.

Recommended cuff sizes:

Arm Circumference	Adult Cuff Size
22 to 26 cm	Small adult (12x22 cm)
27 to 34 cm	Adult (16x30 cm)
35 to 44 cm	Large adult (16x30 cm)
45 to 52 cm	Adult thigh (16x42 cm)

4. Manometers: The mercury manometer is the preferred instrument. The mercury column should be read at eye level. Aneroid manometers should be checked regularly, every 3-6 months) to determine accuracy. The dial at the zero mark of an aneroid under no pressure does not mean that the instrument will provide accurate readings.
5. Stethoscope: Tubing should be no longer than 38 cm. ear pieces should point forward and the bell portion should be used.

Participant Preparation

1. Patient should avoid exertion, smoking or eating, and ingestion of caffeine for thirty (30) minutes prior to measurement.

2. Allow patient to sit quietly for five (5) minutes before taking blood pressure. Patient

should be seated with his/her back fully supported by the chair and legs uncrossed. Ask the participant which arm they prefer to be used. Do not take blood pressure in arm with dialysis fistula, lymph problems, mastectomy or affected side from stroke. Make sure the bare forearm is supported at the level of the heart. Never measure blood pressure over clothing. Ask the participant to roll up the sleeve. If the sleeve is too tight, it may cause an inaccurate reading. If the participant is willing, ask them to slip the arm out of the sleeve. The arm in which the blood pressure is taken should be noted on the results form.

3. Do not talk during measurement.

Procedure

1. Palpate the brachial artery. Apply the appropriate size cuff snugly to bare upper arm with the lower edge of the cuff about 1” above the crease in the elbow. The center of the cuff bladder should be directly over the brachial artery.

2. Palpate the radial pulse and inflate the cuff 20-30 mmHg beyond the reading where the pulse becomes non-palpable. (A person may have an auscultatory gap, a temporary disappearance of the sound after it first appears, which is related to increased arterial stiffness.) Wait 15-30 seconds.

3. Inflate to 30 mm Hg above palpated systolic.

4. Deflate at 2 mm Hg per second.

5. Remember the point where the first sound of at least two regular beats (Korotkoff phase 1).

6. Remember point where sound disappears (Korotkoff phase 5 in adults).

7. Record the systolic and diastolic readings. If an auscultatory gap is present, the three numbers should be recorded as __/___/___.

8. Wait 2 minutes. Repeat reading in the same arm. Average the two readings.

9. If readings differ by more than 5 mm Hg, repeat the readings.

10. Do not partially inflate bladder of cuff, release compression and then resume to full inflation of bladder. If full inflation is not achieved initially, release all compression and start over. Stopping inflation of bladder before it is completely filled will result in an inaccurate reading.

POTENTIAL SOURCES OF ERRORS IN BLOOD PRESSURE MEASUREMENT

IMPROPER TECHNIQUE

1. Cuff misplacement
2. Arm not bare
3. Arm not supported
4. Arm not at heart level
5. Clothing sleeve binding above blood pressure cuff
6. Repeated cuff inflation without complete deflation and rest
7. Missing highest reading because of auscultatory gap
8. Mixing Korotkoff phases 4 & 5 for Diastolic Blood Pressure (DBP)
9. Deflating the cuff too quickly

EQUIPMENT

1. Cuff too small or too large
2. Inaccurate manometer
3. Leaky bulb valve
4. Stethoscope too long
5. Use of diaphragm/flat side of stethoscope

PARTICIPANT

1. Anxiety
2. Recent smoking or caffeine ingestion
3. Cold
4. Talking (by participant or screener)
5. Full urinary bladder
6. Lack of sufficient rest

Appendix C EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES

Million Hearts Initiative
http://millionhearts.hhs.gov/

Million Hearts Resources
http://millionhearts.hhs.gov/resources.html

Toolkits for Health Care Professionals and Patients (English and Spanish)
http://millionhearts.hhs.gov/resources/toolkits.html

National Program to lower blood pressure and prevent hypertension through patient pharmacist engagement
http://millionhearts.hhs.gov/resources/teamuppressuredown.html

Your Guide to Lowering Blood Pressure
Your Guide to Lowering Your Blood Pressure with DASH
www.nhlbi.nih.gov

Figure 1 - Elevated Blood Pressure Flowchart

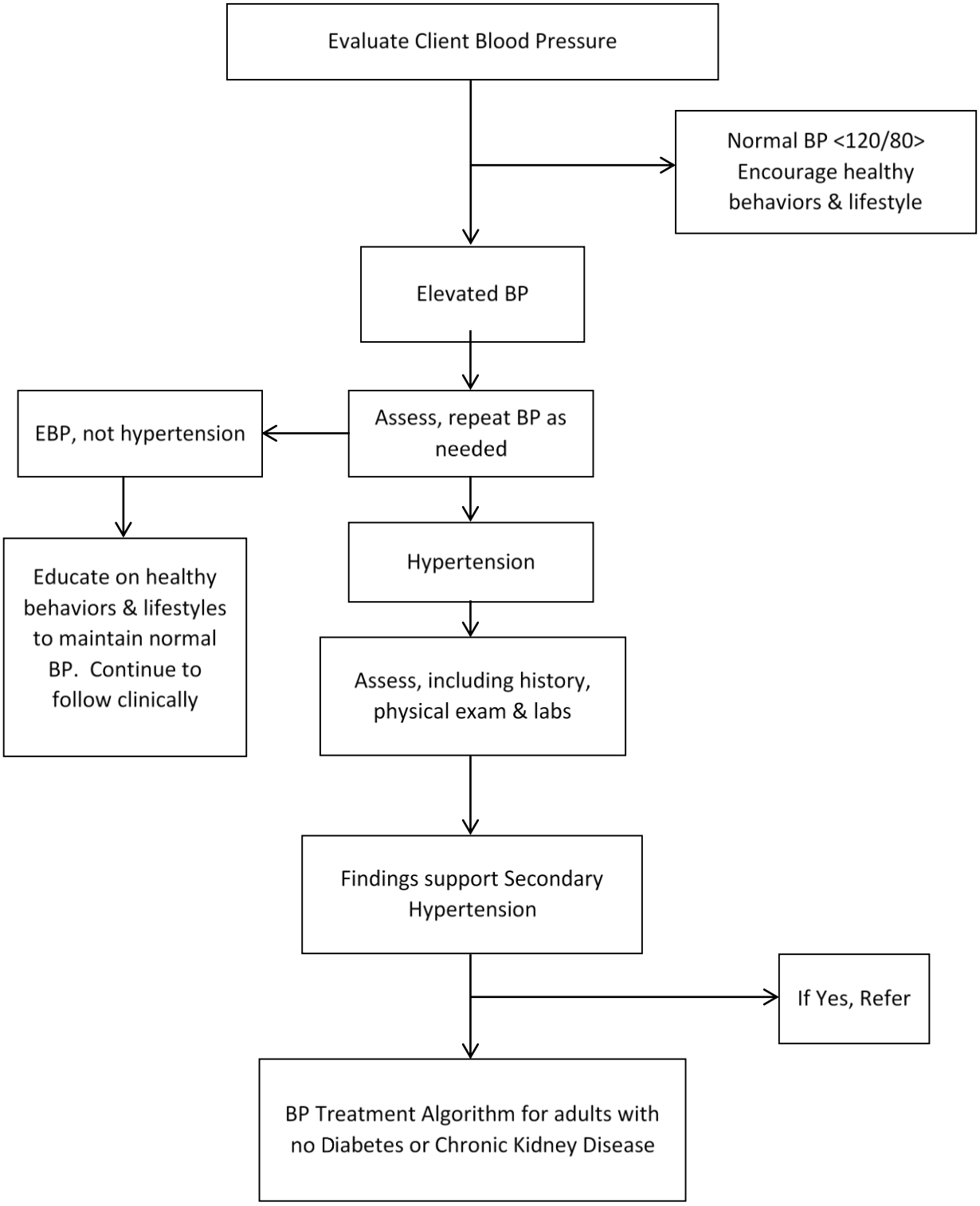
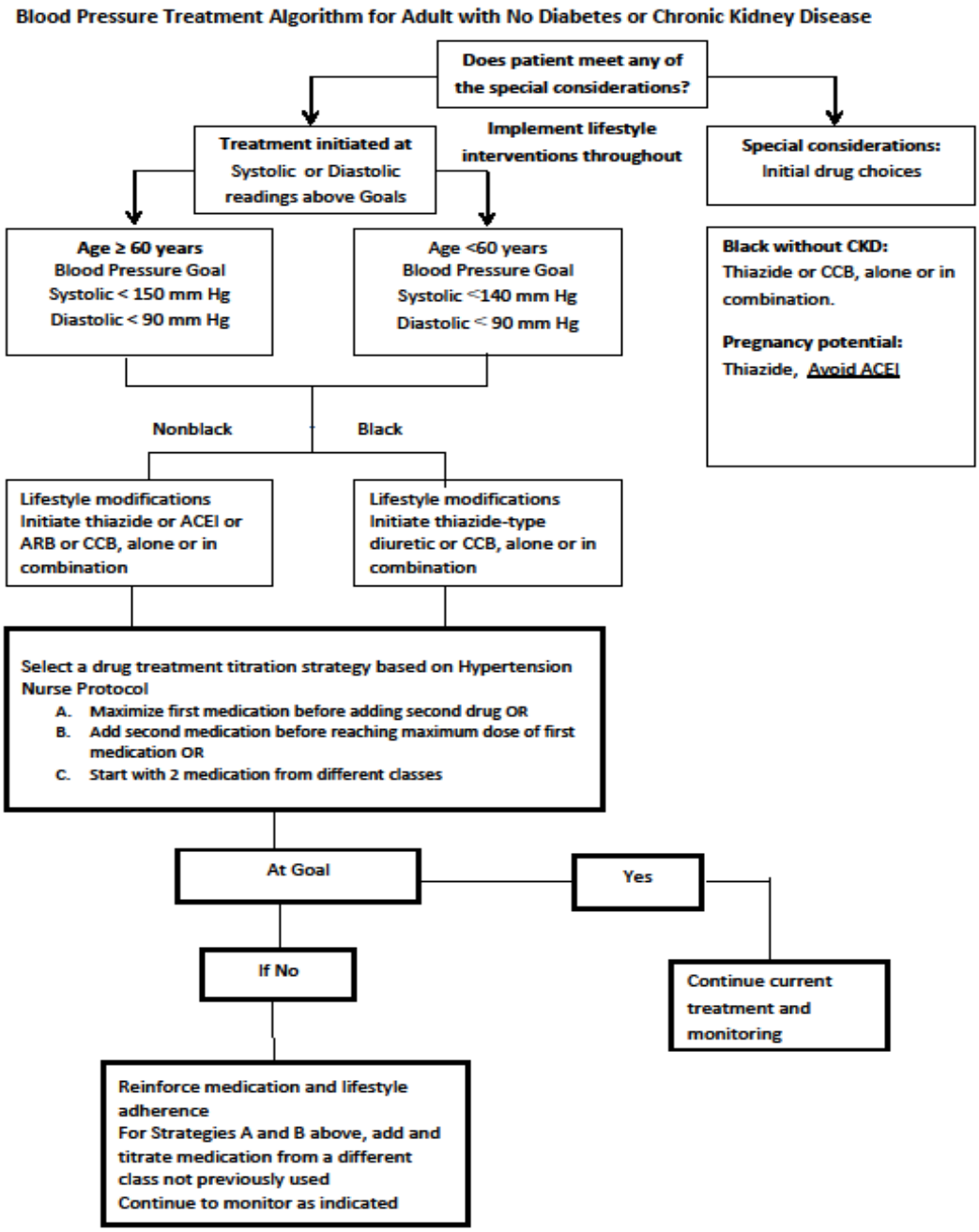


Figure 2 – Blood Pressure Treatment Algorithm for Adult with No Diabetes or Chronic Kidney Disease



SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED DISEASES

SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED DISEASES

Review Team

Gregory S. Felzien, MD, AAHIVS **Medical Advisor** **Division of Health Protection/IDI-HIV** **Georgia Department of Public Health**	**Olugbenga O. Obasanjo, MD** **Health Director District 4,** **Georgia Department of Public Health**
Pradnya B. Tambe, MD **Physician Consultant**	**Kimberly Brown, RN, BSN, MSN** **STD Nurse Consultant**
Donelle Humphrey-Franklin, RPh, MBA **Assistant Pharmacy Director**	**Kimberley Hazelwood, PharmD** **Pharmacy Director**
Tonia Parrott, Ph.D., M.T. (ASCP) **Clinical Microbiology Services Director**	**Latasha Terry, MPA** **STD Director**
Michelle Allen, BA **Infectious Disease Section Director**	**Karen Schrepple, PharmD.** **Director of Pharmacy** **Gwinnett, Newton, & Rockdale County Health Department**
Dawn Krahwinkel MSN, RN **Deputy Director, Center for Clinical Services** **Women's Health, STI and BCCP Program Manager** **Cobb & Douglas Public Health**	**Melissa Green, RN** **Adult Health Supervisor** **Cobb & Douglas Public Health**
Jennifer Sapp, MS, APRN, WHNP-BC **Women's Health, STD, & BCCP Coordinator-District 6**	**Amy L. McColley, RN** **County Nurse Manager**
Shalander Howard, RN **Toombs County Health Department**	**Stacie Drew, RN, MSN** **Wayne Co Health Department** **Nurse Manager**
Tisa DuPree Bright, RN, BSN **County Nurse Manager** **Henry County Health Department**	**Rebecca Kershner, RN, CCP** **District 6 STD Coordinator** **General Medical/ID Supervisor, Laney Walker** **East Central Public Health District**

Rebekah Chance-Revels, MSN-RN, WHNP-BC **Women's Health Coordinator District 9-1** **Coastal Health District**	**Teresa Hritz, RN** **Infectious Disease Coordinator** **South Health District**

GENERAL INFORMATION REGARDING STD EVALUATION & SCREENING

The completion of a sexual history and health assessment is to be conducted on all patients who are referred to the health department by an epidemiologist, communicable disease specialist, or disease investigative specialist, hospital or private provider referred, or a contact to an established **patient of the HD that is infected with an STD.** Assessments will vary per each patient's circumstance. Documentation is required to validate rationale for treatment.

SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED DISEASE PRESENTATIONS:

Lesions: Primary Syphilis, Genital Herpes (HSV), Lymphogranuloma Venereum (LGV)

Discharge: Bacterial Vaginosis (BV), Vulvovaginal Candidiasis, Gonorrhea (GC), Chlamydia (CT), Pelvic Inflammatory Disease (PID), Epididymitis, Nongonococcal Urethritis (NGU), Mucopurulent Cervicitis (MPC), Trichomoniasis

Rashes: Secondary Syphilis, Scabies, Pediculosis Pubis, Gonorrhea (Disseminated Gonococcal Infection), Genital Herpes

STD Patient Definition

STD patient is a patient requesting sexual and reproductive healthcare services. There are certain requirements that must be met to provide services to patients.

A patient requesting sexual and reproductive healthcare services must complete a health assessment. The completion of a health assessment is to be conducted on any and all patients who are referred to a public health department by an epidemiologist (EPI), communicable disease specialist (CDS), or disease investigative specialist (DIS), hospital or private provider referral, or a contact to an established, public health, infected patient. Assessments will vary according to each patient's circumstances. Documentation is required to validate rationale for provided treatment.

All health services must be documented before the dispensing of any STD 340B drugs.

The diagnostic tests included in the reproductive health assessment are:

a. **Gonorrhea and chlamydia testing (e.g. NAAT, Agar plate culture, Gram-stain) according to the *Georgia STD Program Screening Criteria for Chlamydia and Gonorrhea***
b. **HIV testing is recommended annually or according to sexual risk***
c. **Syphilis testing (nontreponemal and/or treponemal) completed based upon health history and physical assessment findings**
d. **Vaginitis testing (wet mount/saline preparation, KOH).**

All health services must be documented before the dispensing of any STD 340B drugs.

STD screening is defined as obtaining a health history, physical assessment and laboratory studies to make a diagnosis of a sexually transmitted infection. STD screening is performed only by appropriately trained and licensed physicians (MD or DO), physician extenders (e.g. a trained healthcare worker, PA), or public health nurses and extended role nurses.

NOTE: CDC recommends that everyone between the ages of 13 and 64 get tested for HIV at least once as part of routine health care. A general rule for those with risk is to get tested annually. Additionally, sexually active gay and bisexual men may benefit from getting an HIV test more often, perhaps every 3 to 6 months.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR GONORRHEA Uncomplicated Urethral, Endocervical, Rectal or Pharyngeal

DEFINITION

Gonorrhea is a sexually transmitted infection caused by *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* bacterium**.** ***Neisseria gonorrhoeae* can** infect the mucous membranes of the reproductive tract, anorectal, ocular or pharyngeal that may be symptomatic or asymptomatic in both men and women. Gonorrhea is the 2nd most commonly reported communicable disease. Georgia ranks **7**th nationally for most reported cases.

Incubation **of** gonorrhea is between 1-14 days. Generally, **symptoms develop** in men within 2-5 days and in women within 10 days. **However, men and women may be asymptomatic.**

ETIOLOGY

Neisseria gonorrhoeae, is an intracellular Gram-negative diplococcus **bacteria**. Infections caused by antibiotic resistant strains are clinically indistinguishable from drug-sensitive infections.

SUBJECTIVE

1. May be asymptomatic at infected site, especially in females.
2. Males frequently have purulent urethral discharge (generally within 24 hours **of exposure**) followed by dysuria.
3. Females may notice increased discharge from the vagina, intermenstrual bleeding and dysuria.
4. Rectal discharge, pain, pruritis and/or scant bleeding **may be present in those** with history of rectal sex.
5. Sore throat **may be present in those** with history of oral sex.
6. **Exposure, oral, anal, or vaginal, with a sex partner who has been recently diagnosed with an STD.**

OBJECTIVE

1. Females commonly have no clinical signs.
2. Mucoid, mucopurulent or purulent discharge from the infected site in both females and males.
3. Erythema and edema of the cervix and/or intermenstrual bleeding in females or urethral meatus in males.
4. Anorectal infections are commonly asymptomatic. Symptoms can include but not limited to: erythema, mucopurulent discharge,

and/or scant bleeding.

5. Pharyngeal inflammation (mostly asymptomatic).

LABORATORY FINDINGS

NOTE: Nonculture, nonamplified probe tests should not be used for diagnosing preadolescent minors. GC culture or amplified DNA Probe remains the preferred method for diagnosis. **Consult with delegating physician or refer to primary care provider prior to treatment.**

1. Adult Endocervical, Urethral, Rectal, or Pharyngeal Infection

   a. Nonculture detection of *N. gonorrhoeae* (e.g.) DNA probe, nucleic acid amplification test).
   b. Culture positive for *N. gonorrhoeae*, with or without confirmatory tests.
   c. Gram-negative intracellular diplococci seen on a smear of male urethral discharge. Gram stains are to be done in-house on symptomatic male patients in an effort to make a diagnosis and treat the patient on the same day.

   NOTE: You must perform either “a” or “b” in female patients. In male patients, you must perform “a” or “b” and when available “c”.

   NOTE: If the criteria for gonorrhea are not present, treatment should be deferred pending the results of the diagnostic studies. Empiric treatment for gonorrhea should be given in the following cases:

      1. Contact to Gonorrhea

      2. Documented or contact to PID

      3. Documented or contact to Epididymitis

      4. Visible discharge in males on examination (in cases where Gram stain is not available).

2. Genital Infection in a child with positive culture for N. gonorrhea, confirmed by two different acceptable methods.

ASSESSMENT Gonorrhea [specify exposed site(s): by clinical assessment].

PLAN

The desired outcomes of treatment are: biologic cure, prevention of transmission to sex partners, prevention of pelvic inflammatory disease (PID) and resulting ectopic pregnancy or infertility, and, for pregnant women, prevention of transmission to infants during birth. Treatment of sex partners helps to prevent reinfection of the index patient and infection of other partners.

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Gonorrhea test should be performed **at the anatomical site of exposure and/or symptoms (rectal, vaginal, urethra, oropharynx)**: nucleic acid amplification test (NAAT), culture or DNA probe.

2. Amplification or DNA probe test for chlamydia should always be **performed** when gonorrhea is suspected.

3. Gram Negative intracellular diplococci **visualized** on gram stain.

4. Gonorrhea agar culture plate, when indicated. Examples are:

   a. Gonococcal Surveillance Project(s) study, if ongoing.
   b. Suspected therapeutic failure after **adequate** gonorrhea treatment.
   c. Symptomatic adults with oral and/or rectal exposure should have cultures **performed** at the exposed site.
   d. Minors with suspected sexual abuse, **perform** oral and rectal cultures regardless of exposure history.
   e. As requested by a physician or supervisor when a Nucleic Hybridization test is not available.

   NOTE: Hologic NAAT can be used for the above example listed as “c” if agar culture plate is not available.

   NOTE: If suspected therapeutic failure after GC treatment, an agar culture plate must be used for specimen collection**.**

   NOTE: Any patients who test positive for gonorrhea should be tested for chlamydia, syphilis, and HIV.

   NOTE: Subgroups of MSM are at high risk for gonorrhea infection and should be screened at sites of exposure.

   Rectal gonorrhea infections, especially those that are

recurrent, have been associated with increased risk for HIV seroconversion among MSM.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

Empiric treatment for gonorrhea must be given in the following cases:

a. Contact to Gonorrhea
b. Documented or contact to PID
c. Documented or contact to Epididymitis
d. Symptoms of discharge in males with visible discharge on examination (in cases where Gram stain is not available).

NOTE: If **self-reported allergy** to cephalosporins or penicillins, **refer to PCN allergy algorithm to rule out allergy in Appendix A.**

NOTE: If patient vomits within 30 minutes of taking Azithromycin, the dose may be repeated.

NOTE: Azithromycin should be given via DOT (direct observation therapy) to increase adherence to therapy. If self-reported allergy to azithromycin consult with delegating physician.

1. Cervical, urethral, or rectal infection of non-pregnant adults or **minors** weighing at least 45 kg/99lbs:

   a. Ceftriaxone 250mg IM, single dose,

   AND

   Azithromycin 1g PO once, both are to be administered on the same day, preferably under direct observation,

   b. Alternative Regimen **ONLY IF** allergic to Azithromycin: Ceftriaxone 250 mg IM, single dose,

   AND

   Doxycycline 100 mg PO, every 12 hours for 7 days (must be at least 8 years of age).

   NOTE: Do not give Doxycycline to pregnant women or

lactating patient(s). Patient(s) must be advised to discontinue breastfeeding or receive alternative regimen. Breastfeeding can be restarted 2 days after completion of treatment.

NOTE: Dual therapy, using two antimicrobials with different mechanisms of action, improves treatment efficacy and potentially slows the emergence and spread of resistance to cephalosporins.

2. Cervical, urethral, or rectal infection of pregnant adult or **minors** weighing at least 45kg/99lbs:

   a. Ceftriaxone 250mg IM, single dose,

   AND

   Azithromycin 1g PO **both are to be administered on the same day, preferably under direct observation**

3. Pharyngeal Infection of adults or **minors** weighing at least 45kg/99lbs:

   a. Ceftriaxone 250mg IM single dose,

   AND

   Azithromycin 1g PO both are to be administered on the same day, preferably under direct observation.

4. Genital**,** rectal or pharyngeal infections in minors weighing less than 45kg/99lbs:

   a. Ceftriaxone 25-50mg/kg IM in a single dose, not to exceed 125mg IM

NOTE: Minors with gonorrhea should also be tested for chlamydia, syphilis and HIV.

NOTE: Culture testing should be **performed** on **preadolescent** minors.

Co-treatment for gonorrhea and chlamydia, with appropriate drugs and dosage, reduces antimicrobial resistance and enhances

pharyngeal treatment of gonorrhea.

5. HIV infected patients should receive the same treatment regimen as those who are HIV negative.

NOTE: Due to the high prevalence of tetracycline resistance among Gonococcal Isolate Surveillance Project isolates the use of azithromycin is preferred instead of doxycycline as the second antimicrobial.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING
(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts)

1. The name/significance of the infection. Educate for sequelae and complications of untreated infection. (http://www.cdc.gov/std/gonorrhea/gon-factsheet-july-2014.pdf).

2. Directions for taking medication and management of potential side effects.

3. All sex partners 60 days prior to the onset of symptoms or positive test should be referred for examination and treatment. Avoid sex **with partner(s)** until partner**(s)** has/have been treated. Refer the last known sex partner if the last sexual contact was greater than 60 days before onset of symptoms or diagnosis. Provide **patient with** written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them to HD for examination and treatment.

4. Education and counseling **regarding** the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).

5. Educate patients who receive Azithromycin about adverse effects (QT Prolongation, torsades de pointes, etc.) and document the patient's understanding. **http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/DrugSafety/UCM343347.pdf, http://www.nhs.uk/conditions/long-QT-syndrome/Documents/Acquired-LQT-Brochure06.pdf and https://www.crediblemeds.org/pdftemp/pdf/CompositeList.pdf**

6. Assist patient(s) in developing a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan and document patient(s) plan. Abstain from sex until all the symptoms are resolved and partner(s) are tested and treated.

7. **Abstain from intercourse until 7 days after taking azithromycin or until the 7 days Doxycycline regimen has been completed. Abstain from sex until sex partner(s) have been treated.**

8. If patient is of childbearing age, counsel on the use of contraceptives to reduce the risk of unintended pregnancy.

9. Advise the patient to return to clinic for all lab results even if presumptively treated at initial visit. Inform patient if lab results are positive additional treatment may be needed.

10. Advise patient to return to clinic in 7 days or less if symptoms do not resolve.

11. Inform patient if additional lab(s) is/are positive, partner(s) will also need additional treatment.

12. If the patient is diabetic, receiving ceftriaxone therapy, and using the ACCU-CHEK Compact Plus system, they should stop using the ACCU-CHEK Compact Plus system. **Advise patient to** begin using an alternate blood glucose monitoring system for the duration of therapy and 2 full days **(48 hours)** after the last treatment because **ceftriaxone** may lead to incorrect low glucose results.

13. **Avoidance of breastfeeding has been and continues to be a standard, strong recommendation for HIV-infected women in the United States, because maternal ART dramatically reduces but does not eliminate breastmilk transmission. Further, safe infant feeding alternatives are readily available in the United States. In addition, there are concerns about other potential risks, including toxicity for the neonate or increased risk of development of ARV drug resistance, should transmission occur, due to variable passage of drugs into breastmilk.**

14. Women who are breastfeeding should not receive Doxycycline. If Doxycycline is given to breastfeeding women, they should discontinue breastfeeding throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment. If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after

completion of treatment.

15. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown.

16. **Refer to the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for immunization recommendations for Hepatitis A, B and HPV (https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/index.html) and the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual.**

MANAGEMENT OF SEX PARTNERS

1. **All sex partners 60 days prior to the onset of symptoms or positive test should be referred for examination and treatment. Avoid sex with partner(s) until partner(s) has/have been treated. Refer the last known sex partner if the last sexual contact was greater than 60 days before onset of symptoms or diagnosis. Provide patient with written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them to HD for exam and treatment.**

2. All **identified** sex partners, as defined above, should be examined and promptly treated with one of the **aforementioned** regimens for gonorrhea.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Patients who have uncomplicated gonorrhea and are treated with the recommended treatment regimen or alternative treatment regimen need not return for test of cure unless symptoms are unresolved. If test of cure is positive for gonorrhea and reinfection is ruled out, consult with delegating physician and contact **DPH** STD Nurse Consultant.

2. Test-of-cure is not routinely recommended unless therapeutic failure is suspected. Question carefully about the possibility of reinfection if there is suspected treatment or therapeutic failure. A patient with symptoms that persist after treatment and reinfection is ruled out, should have a gonorrhea culture done with anti-microbial sensitivity testing on positive cultures. If gonorrhea culture is not available, a second NAAT test can be performed 7 days after treatment. The Hologic APTIMA 2 test is a dual performance test but GC results should be the only results assessed if the test was done within two weeks of adequate

treatment for positive Chlamydia. **When a patient is adequately treated for chlamydia and a second test is conducted within two weeks of treatment, the Gen-Probe APTIMA 2 chlamydia lab results may return positive.**

3. ***N. gonorrhoeae* infection is prevalent among patients who have been diagnosed with and treated for gonorrhea in the previous several months. Most infections result from reinfection rather than treatment failure, indicating a need for improved patient education and referral of sex partners. Clinicians should recommend patients with gonorrhea be retested 3 months after treatment. If patients do not seek medical care for retesting in 3 months, providers are encouraged to test these patients whenever they next seek medical care within the following 12 months, regardless of whether the patient(s) believe that their sex partner(s) were treated. Retesting is distinct from test-of-cure; the latter detects therapeutic failure, which is not recommended if the patient receives first line treatment.**

4. **If patient vomits within 30 minutes of taking Azithromycin, the dose may be repeated.**

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. **Consult with delegating physician if:**

    a. **Signs of Bartholin's gland or Skene's gland abscess or cyst are present.**
    b. **Patient cannot tolerate cephalosporins, penicillins, or azithromycin.**
    c. **Minors allergic to cephalosporins or penicillins for desensitization or alternate treatment.**
    d. **Further medical guidance is needed and STD nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.**

2. **If cephalosporin resistant gonorrhea is suspected, consult with delegating physician and contact the DPH STD Nurse Consultant. Treatment failure due to cephalosporin resistant gonorrhea should be considered in:**

    a. **Persons whose symptoms do not resolve within 3-5**

days after appropriate treatment and report no sexual contact during the post treatment follow-up period.

b. Persons with a positive test-of-cure when no sexual contact is reported during the post-treatment follow-up period.

c. Persons with a positive *N. gonorrhoeae* culture within 30-60 days (but greater than 72 hours) after treatment for gonorrhea regardless of whether sexual contact is reported during the post-treatment follow-up period.

3. PCN allergy algorithm should be completed on all patients who report penicillin allergy in Appendix A.

4. Refer patient to a District Communicable Disease Specialist for prevention counseling and assistance with partner referral.

5. If patient with pharyngeal gonorrhea is treated with an alternative regimen and has a positive test-of-cure, consult with delegating physician and contact DPH STD Nurse Consultant. Hospitalization and consultation with an infectious disease specialist is recommended for initial therapy, of patients diagnosed with disseminated gonococcal infection (DGI). DGI occurs when gonorrhea is not treated and spreads to distant parts of the body beyond the portal of entry. DGI can manifest as rash, arthritis, or flu-like symptoms.

6. **Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for reporting possible sexual or physical abuse of minors, if encountered, through history or physical. All suspected sexual or physical abuse of minors must be reported to the county Department of Family and Children Services office as per Guidelines for Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel** https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf***.***

7. Gram stains are inadequate to evaluate prepubertal minors for gonorrhea and should not be used to diagnose or exclude gonorrhea. Specimens from the vagina, urethra, pharynx, or rectum should be streaked onto selective media for isolation of *N. gonorrhoeae*.

8. **Infants exposed to mothers infected with *N. gonorrhea* during vaginal delivery must be referred to pediatrician for evaluation**

and possible treatment.

9. Patients with acute arthritis, skin pustules, meningitis or eye infection should be referred to ER immediately for emergency evaluation, treatment and follow up. Delegating physician should be notified of referral.

REFERENCES

1. **Centers for Disease Control and *Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015, Vo*l. 64, No. RR-3, May 12, 2017.**

2. **GUIDELINES FOR MANDATORY REPORTING OF SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE for PUBLIC HEALTH PERSONNEL. (2017, April 1). Retrieved May 12, 2017, from https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf.**

3. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Update to CDC's Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines, 2010: Oral Cephalosporins No Longer a Recommended Treatment for Gonococcal Infections, MMWR, Vol. 61(31), 590-594, August 10, 2012.

4. Medscape: Dr. Robert Kircaldy, M.D., MPH, New Treatment Guidelines for Gonorrhea Antibiotic Change: CDC Expert commentary 2012 08-13

5. Holmes, K. K. (2008). *Sexually transmitted diseases*. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical.

6. American Academy of Pediatrics., In Pickering, L. K., In Baker, C. J., In Kimberlin, D. W., In Long, S. S., & American Academy of Pediatrics. (2012). Red book: 2012 report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases

7. **Al-Khatib SM, LaPointe NMA, Kramer JM, Califf RM. What Clinicians Should Know About the QT Interval. *JAMA.* 2003; 289(16):2120-2127. doi:10.1001/jama.289.16.2120**

8. **University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine. (2017). Clinical Skin Disease Images. Retrieved from https://medicine.uiowa.edu/dermatology/education/clinical-skin-disease-images.**

9. **"Lexi-Drugs Online," Lexi-Comp Database, Lexi-Comp Inc., Hudson, Ohio (July 19, 2017).**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR CHLAMYDIA

DEFINITION Chlamydia is a common sexually transmitted disease caused by bacteria that is often asymptomatic in both males and females. Chlamydia is the most commonly reported STD in the United States. Georgia ranks **6th** nationally for most reported cases.

ETIOLOGY *Chlamydia trachomatis* is an obligate intracellular bacterial agent with at least 18 serologic variants (serovars), which includes Lymphogranuloma Venereum.Chlamydia generally infects the columnar epithelial cells and often becomes chronic, lasting months to more than a year if untreated. Incubation is poorly defined but usually at least 1 week. The life cycle of chlamydia is 72 hours.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Frequently asymptomatic in both men and women, also known as the “silent infection”.

2. Females may **report** a history of:

   a. Abnormal discharge from vagina.
   b. Bleeding after intercourse.
   c. Dysuria, pyuria, urinary frequency.

3. Males may **report** a history of:

   a. Mucoid or watery urethral discharge.
   b. Itching of urethral meatus.
   c. Dysuria.
   d. Pain or swelling of testicles.
   e. Pyuria or urinary frequency.

4. Anal symptoms

   a. Rectal pain.
   b. Discharge or bleeding.

OBJECTIVE

1. Many show no clinical signs.

Females **may present with:**

   a. Mucoid to mucopurulent endocervical discharge.
   b. Cervical ectopy/friability.

2. Males **may present with:**

   a. Mucoid to mucopurulent urethral discharge.
   b. Redness at urethral meatus.

3. Anal symptoms

   a. Pain.
   b. Discharge or bleeding **from rectum**.

4. Sexually acquired chlamydial conjunctivitis can occur through contact with infected genital secretions.

ASSESSMENT Chlamydia

PLAN The desired outcomes of treatment of infected patients are: biologic cure, prevention of pelvic inflammatory disease (PID), ectopic pregnancy and infertility, prevention of transmission to sex partners, and prevention of transmission from infected females to infants during birth. Treatment of sex partners helps to prevent reinfection and sequelae of Chlamydia in the index patient **as well as** infection of other partners.

Chlamydia screening of sexually active women less than 26 years of age is recommended. The primary focus of screening is to detect the infection and prevent complications.

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

NOTE: NAAT testing should be performed at the anatomical site of exposure and/or symptoms (rectal, vaginal, urethra, oropharynx).

1. Chlamydia test NAAT or DNA probe.

2. Gonorrhea test NAAT, culture, or DNA probe should always be **performed** when chlamydia is suspected.

3. **Positive urethral, endocervical, anal, oral, or urine test (amplification, culture, DNA probe) for Chlamydia trachomatis. NOTE: Nonculture, nonamplified probe tests should not be used for diagnosing preadolescent minors.**

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Any patients who test positive for chlamydia should be tested for gonorrhea, syphilis, and HIV.

NOTE: If Azithromycin is given it should be given via DOT (direct observation therapy) to increase adherence to therapy. If self-reported allergy to azithromycin consult with delegating physician.

1. **Recommended regimen** for nonpregnant adults and **minors** who are at least 8 years old:

   a. Azithromycin 1g PO, single dose,

   OR

   b. Doxycycline 100mg PO, q12 hours for 7 days.

   NOTE: Do not give Doxycycline to lactating patient(s); patient(s) must be advised to discontinue breastfeeding throughout treatment or receive alternative regimen. If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment. Do not give Doxycycline to minors under the age of 8.

2. **Alternative regimen for nonpregnant adults and minors who are at least 8 years old**:

   a. Erythromycin base 500mg PO, 4 times a day for 7 days,

   OR

   b. Erythromycin Ethylsuccinate 800mg PO, 4 times a day for 7 days,

   OR

   c. Levofloxacin 500 mg once daily for 7 days,

   OR

   d. Ofloxacin 300 mg twice daily for 7 days.

3. **Recommended regimen for** pregnant **women**:

   a. Azithromycin 1g PO, single dose,

   OR

   b. Amoxicillin 500mg PO, 3 times a day for 7 days.

4. **Alternative regimen for pregnant women:**

   a. Erythromycin base 500mg PO, 4 times a day for 7 days,

   OR

   b. Erythromycin base 250mg PO, 4 times a day for 14 days,

   OR

   c. Erythromycin Ethylsuccinate 800mg PO, 4 times a day for 7 days,

   OR

   d. Erythromycin Ethylsuccinate 400mg PO, 4 times a day for 14 days.

   NOTE: The frequent gastrointestinal side effects associated with erythromycin can result in non-adherence with the alternative regimens. The lower dose 14-day erythromycin regimens can be considered if gastrointestinal tolerance is a concern.

NOTE: Prior to the treatment of minors less than 45kg/99 lbs consult with delegating physician or refer to primary care provider.

5. Treatment of minors under 8 years of age that weigh less than 45kg/99lbs:

   a. Erythromycin base or ethylsuccinate 50mg/kg/day PO divided into 4 doses daily for 14 days.

6. Treatment of minors under 8 years of age that weigh 45kg/99lbs or more:

   a. Azithromycin 1g PO in a single dose.

7. HIV infected patients should receive the same treatment regimen as those who are HIV negative.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING
(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts)

1. The name of the infection and its significance. Educate for sequelae and complications of the untreated infection. (http://www.cdc.gov/std/chlamydia/chlamydia-factsheet-june-2014.pdf).

2. Directions for taking medication and management of potential side effects.

3. **All sex partners 60 days prior to the onset of symptoms or positive test should be referred for examination and treatment. Avoid sex with partner(s) until partner(s) has/have been treated. Refer the last known sex partner if the last sexual contact was greater than 60 days before onset of symptoms or diagnosis. Provide patient with written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them to HD for exam and treatment.**

4. **Avoidance of breastfeeding has been and continues to be a standard, strong recommendation for HIV-infected women in the United States, because maternal ART dramatically reduces but does not eliminate breastmilk transmission. Further, safe infant feeding alternatives are readily available in the United States. In addition, there are concerns about other potential risks, including toxicity for the neonate or increased risk of development of ARV drug resistance, should transmission occur, due to variable passage of drugs into breastmilk.**

5. Women who are breastfeeding should not receive Doxycycline. If Doxycycline is given to breastfeeding women, they should discontinue breastfeeding throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment. If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment.

6. **Counsel the patient about high risk of reinfection if patient's partner(s) is/are not tested and treated. The usages of protective barriers (diaphragm, condoms, etc.) are not a substitute for protection during sexual intercourse for any untreated partner(s). Education and counseling on the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).**

7. Educate patients who receive Azithromycin about adverse effects (QT Prolongation, torsades de pointes, etc.) and document the patient's understanding. **http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/DrugSafety/UCM343347.pdf, http://www.nhs.uk/conditions/long-QT-syndrome/Documents/Acquired-LQT-Brochure06.pdf, https://www.crediblemeds.org/pdftemp/pdf/CompositeList.pdf**

8. Abstain from intercourse until 7 days after taking azithromycin or until the 7 days Doxycycline regimen has been completed. Abstain from sex until sex partner(s) have been treated.

9. Advise the patient(s) to return to clinic for all lab results. Inform patient(s) if lab results are positive additional treatment may be needed.

10. Education and counseling on the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).

11. If patient is of childbearing age, counsel on the use of contraceptives to reduce the risk of unintended pregnancy.

12. Assist patient in developing a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan and document patients plan. Abstain from sex until all the symptoms are resolved and partner(s) are tested and treated.

13. **Refer to the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for immunization recommendations for Hepatitis A, B and HPV (https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/index.html) and the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual.**

14. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown.

15. **Advise patient to return to clinic in 7 days if symptoms do not**

resolve.

16. **Inform patient if additional lab(s) is/are positive, partner(s) will also need additional treatment.**

MANAGEMENT OF SEX PARTNERS

1. **All sex partners 60 days prior to the onset of symptoms or positive test should be referred for examination and treatment. Avoid sex with partner(s) until partner(s) has/have been treated. Refer the last known sex partner if the last sexual contact was greater than 60 days before onset of symptoms or diagnosis. Provide patient with written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them to HD for exam and treatment.**

2. All **identified** sex partners, as defined above, should be examined and promptly treated with one of the **aforementioned** regimens for chlamydia.

3. **Provide written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them in for exam and treatment.**

FOLLOW-UP

1. Non-pregnant **patients** do not require a test-of-cure unless therapeutic compliance is in question, symptoms persist, or reinfection is suspected.

2. Preadolescent minors should receive follow-up cultures to ensure that treatment has been effective.

3. Pregnant females should be retested 3-4 weeks after completing therapy, and rescreened near time of delivery.

4. Chlamydia infected women (nonpregnant or pregnant) and men **are recommended to be** retested approximately 3 months after treatment, regardless of whether they believe their sex partners were treated. If retesting at 3 months is not possible, clinicians should retest the next time the patient(s) presents for medical care in the 12 months following initial treatment.

5. **If patient vomits within thirty minutes of taking Azithromycin,**

the dose may be repeated.

6. A NAAT test should not be used less than 3 weeks following completion of treatment with Azithromycin due to possible false positive results.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Consult with delegating physician if:

- **a. Signs of Bartholin's gland or Skene's gland abscess or cyst are present.**
- **b. Signs and symptoms of prostatitis (blood in the urine, painful ejaculation or sexual dysfunction).**
- **c. Signs and symptoms of conjunctivitis (redness, itching, tearing of the eyes, discharge or crusting around the eyes, pink eye, irritation or inflammation of the conjunctiva).**
- **d. Signs and symptoms of reactive arthritis. People who have chlamydia are at higher risk of developing reactive arthritis, formerly known as Reiter's syndrome. This condition typically affects the joints, eyes and urethra.**
- **e. Further medical guidance is needed and STD nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.**

2. If pregnant patient cannot tolerate medication, refer to OB/GYN or OB provider.

3. Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for reporting possible sexual or physical abuse of minors if encountered through history or physical. All suspected sexual or physical abuse of minors must be reported to the county Department of Family and Children Services office as per Guidelines for Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel, which may be viewed on the Public Health Information Library (PHIL) at https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAn***dPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf.***

REFERENCES

1. **Centers for Disease Control and *Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015, Vo*l. 64, No. RR-3, May 12, 2017.**

2. **GUIDELINES FOR MANDATORY REPORTING OF SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE for PUBLIC HEALTH PERSONNEL. (2017, April 1). Retrieved May 12, 2017, from https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf.**

3. Holmes, K. K. (2008). Sexually transmitted diseases. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical.

4. American Academy of Pediatrics., In Pickering, L. K., In Baker, C. J., In Kimberlin, D. W., In Long, S. S., & American Academy of Pediatrics. (2012). Red book: 2012 report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases.

5. **University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine. (2017). Clinical Skin Disease Images. Retrieved from https://medicine.uiowa.edu/dermatology/education/clinical-skin-disease-images.**

6. **"Lexi-Drugs Online," Lexi-Comp Database, Lexi-Comp Inc., Hudson, Ohio (July 19, 2017).**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOLS FOR BACTERIAL VAGINOSIS (BV)

DEFINITION

Bacterial vaginosis (BV) is an infection caused when too much of certain bacteria change the normal **pH** balance of bacteria in the vagina. The clinical result of replacement of the normal *Lactobacillus* species in the vagina with high concentrations of anaerobic bacteria. This polymicrobial clinical syndrome is the most prevalent cause of vaginal discharge or malodor. However, half of the women whose illnesses meet the clinical criteria for BV are asymptomatic. Though associated with having multiple sex partners **(male or female)**, it is unclear whether BV results from acquisition of a sexually transmitted pathogen. **In addition, BV is associated with having a new sex partner, douching, lack of condom use, and lack of vaginal lactobacilli; women who have never been sexually active are rarely affected**. Treatment of male sex partners has not been beneficial in preventing recurrences.

Women with BV are at increased risk for the acquisition of some STDs (e.g., HIV, *N. gonorrhoeae*, C. trachomatis, and HSV- 2), complications after gynecologic surgery, and recurrence of BV. In addition, BV has been associated with adverse pregnancy outcomes (e.g., premature rupture of membranes, preterm labor, and preterm birth). Some specialists recommend screening high-risk pregnant women (e.g., those who have previously delivered a premature infant) for BV at the first prenatal visit.

ETIOLOGY

High concentrations of anaerobic bacteria (e.g., *Prevotella* species and *Mobiluncus* species), *Gardnerella vaginalis*, and *Mycoplasma hominus*, *Ureaplasma* species, and anaerobic bacteria and decrease in concentration of *Lactobacillus* species. Incubation period is unknown.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Frequently asymptomatic.
2. White or gray vaginal discharge.
3. A strong, offensive, fish-like odor that is often most noticeable after intercourse.
4. Pain, itching, or burning in the vagina may occur.
5. Dysuria.

OBJECTIVE

The following criteria are used to diagnose bacterial vaginosis.

1. At least 3 of the following 4 are present (Amsel's Diagnostic Criteria):

a. Homogeneous, white, non-inflammatory discharge that smoothly coats the vaginal walls.
b. The pH of vaginal secretions is higher than 4.5.
c. A "fishy" odor of vaginal discharge, before or after mixing it with 10% KOH (positive "whiff" test).
d. "Clue cells" (epithelial cells with a granular appearance caused by adherent bacteria) on microscopic wet mount of vaginal discharge.

ASSESSMENT Bacterial Vaginosis

PLAN The desired outcomes of treatment of non-pregnant females with BV are: relief of vaginal **signs**/symptoms of infection, reducing the risk for infectious complications after abortion or hysterectomy, and reducing the risk of **acquiring** a STD.

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Amsel's Diagnostic Criteria (observation for classic discharge, clue cells, "whiff" test and vaginal pH).

2. Check history for possible pregnancy.

THERAPEUTIC

Treatment is only recommended for women with symptoms.

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Recommended regimen for women that are not pregnant:

a. Metronidazole 500mg PO, every 12 hours for 7 days

OR

b. Metronidazole gel 0.75% one full applicator (5g), intravaginally, once a day for 5 days

OR

c. Clindamycin cream 2% one full applicator (5g), intravaginally at bedtime for 7 days,

NOTE: Clindamycin cream is preferred in case of allergy or intolerance to metronidazole.

2. Alternative regimen for women that are not pregnant:

a. Clindamycin 300mg PO every 12 hours for 7 days

3. **Recommended regimen for pregnant women in their 2nd or 3rd trimester of pregnancy only:**

NOTE: Refer pregnant women in their 1st trimester to their OB/GYN or OB provider **for treatment for BV.**

a. Metronidazole 250mg PO every 8 hours for 7 days

NOTE: Metronidazole is a FDA Category B drug. Metronidazole should only be used in confirmed 2nd and 3rd trimester of pregnancy. Lactating women taking metronidazole should withhold breastfeeding during treatment and for 24 hours after last dose to reduce infant's exposure to drug. **Alternatively, a nursing mother may choose to pump and discard human milk for the duration of metronidazole therapy, and for 24 hours after therapy ends and feed her infant stored human milk or formula.**

4. Alternative regimen for pregnant women in their 2nd or 3rd trimester of pregnancy only:

a. Clindamycin 300mg PO every 12 hours for 7 days

Clindamycin is distributed into milk following systemic administration; it is not known if it is distributed into milk following intravaginal application but, because of the potential for adverse effects/reactions to clindamycin in nursing infants, a decision should be made whether to discontinue breastfeeding or to discontinue the drug, taking into account the importance of the drug to the woman.

NOTE: Avoidance of breastfeeding has been and continues to be a standard, strong recommendation for HIV-infected women in the United States, because maternal ART dramatically reduces but does not eliminate breastmilk transmission. Further, safe infant feeding alternatives are readily available in the United States. In addition, there are concerns about other potential risks, including toxicity for

the neonate or increased risk of development of ARV drug resistance, should transmission occur, due to variable passage of drugs into breastmilk.

NOTE: HIV infected patients who are diagnosed with BV should receive the same treatment regimen as those who are not HIV infected.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING
(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts)

1. The name/significance of the infection. Educate for sequelae and complications of the untreated infection (http://www.cdc.gov/std/bv/bv-fact-sheet-march-2014.pdf).

2. Directions for taking medication and management of potential side effects (e.g., to avoid alcoholic beverages and other alcohol-containing products until 24 hours following completion of metronidazole therapy).

3. The infection is generally not considered to be sexually transmitted, so sex partners should be referred for examination only if they are symptomatic of possible STD. Otherwise no treatment is necessary for sex partners.

4. Education and counseling of the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).

5. BV is associated with high recurrence placing women at higher risk of other STDs **(e.g., *HIV, N. gonorrhoeae, C. trachomatis, and HSV- 2*).**

6. Advise the patient to return to clinic for all lab results. Inform patient if lab results are positive additional treatment may be needed. **Inform patient if additional lab(s) is/are positive, partner(s) will also need additional treatment.**

7. Instruct patient to return for reevaluation if symptoms persist.

8. Assist patient in developing a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan and document patient's plan. Abstain from sex until all the symptoms are resolved.

9. **Abstain from sex for the duration of treatment and/or until all lab results are obtained.**

10. **Advise patient to return to clinic 7 days 7 days after completion of treatment if symptoms do not resolve.**

11. If patient is of childbearing age, counsel on the use of contraceptives to reduce the risk of unintended pregnancy.

12. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown.

13. **Refer to the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for immunization recommendations for Hepatitis A, B and HPV (https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/index.html) and the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual.**

FOLLOW-UP

Patient should return only if symptoms persist after treatment or recur. Use an alternative treatment regimen for recurrent disease.

NOTE: Clinical cure is the resolution of all symptoms (Amsel's Diagnostic Criteria) 21-30 days after treatment.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. **Consult delegating physician if:**

    a. **Patient would benefit from long term therapy for BV**
    b. **Further medical guidance is needed and STD nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.**

2. Refer to OB/GYN or OB provider if (three or more) recurrences within 6 months that do not respond to alternative treatment regimens. **Suppressive therapy is recommended.**

3. Refer pregnant women in their 1st trimester to OB/GYN for treatment of BV.

4. Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for reporting of possible sexual abuse of minors if encountered through history, physical.

5. All suspected sexual abuse of minors must be reported to the county Department of Family and Children Services office as per Guidelines for Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel, which may be viewed on the Public Health Information Library (PHIL) at ***https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf.***

REFERENCES

1. **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015, Vol. 64, No. RR-3, May 12, 2017.**

2. **GUIDELINES FOR MANDATORY REPORTING OF SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE for PUBLIC HEALTH PERSONNEL. (2017, April 1). Retrieved May 12, 2017, from https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf.**

3. U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. Screening for bacterial vaginosis in pregnancy to prevent preterm delivery: recommendation statement. Ann Intern Med 2008; 148:214–9.

4. Myer L, Kuhn L, Stein ZA, et al. Intravaginal practices, bacterial vaginosis, and women's susceptibility to HIV infection: epidemiological evidence and biological mechanisms. Lancet Infect Disease 2005; 5:786–94.

5. Guidelines Burke A. Cunha, M.D., *Antibiotic Essentials*, 8th edition, Physician's Press, Royal Oak, Michigan, 2009.

6. Holmes, K. K. (2008). Sexually transmitted diseases. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical.

7. American Academy of Pediatrics., In Pickering, L. K., In Baker, C. J., In Kimberlin, D. W., In Long, S. S., & American Academy of Pediatrics. (2012). Red book: 2012 report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases.

8. **University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine. (2017). Clinical Skin Disease Images. Retrieved from** https://medicine.uiowa.edu/dermatology/education/clinical-skin-disease-images**.**

9. **"Lexi-Drugs Online," Lexi-Comp Database, Lexi-Comp Inc., Hudson, Ohio (July 19, 2017).**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR TRICHOMONIASIS

DEFINITION

Trichomoniasis is a sexually transmitted infection of the urogenital tract, most commonly found in the urethra and vagina in women. Trichomoniasis is considered the most common curable STD.

Vaginal trichomonas has been associated with adverse pregnancy outcomes, particularly premature rupture of the membranes, preterm delivery, and low birthweight. High risk populations include those with multiple sex partners, those with a history of STDs, and those that exchange sex for payment and use injecting drugs**. Douching is not recommended because it might increase the risk for vaginal trichomoniasis.**

ETIOLOGY

Trichomonas vaginalis is a flagellated protozoan with an undulating membrane and flagella. The incubation period averages one week but ranges from 5 to 28 days.

SUBJECTIVE

1. May be asymptomatic, especially in males. In males, may present as non-gonococcal urethritis (See Standard Nurse Protocol for non-gonococcal urethritis).

2. Male symptoms may include:

   a. Itching and irritation inside the penis.
   b. Dysuria or burning after ejaculation.
   c. Penile discharge.

3. Female symptoms may include:

   a. Itching, soreness and burning in vaginal area.
   b. Dysuria.
   c. Discharge with an offensive odor.
   d. Vulvar irritation.

OBJECTIVE

1. May be asymptomatic in both females and males.

2. **Females may present with:**

   a. Profuse yellow**ish**-green**,** malodorous vaginal discharge.
   b. Vulvar inflammation with edema or excoriations.
   c. Cervix may have a granular appearance with punctate hemorrhages ("strawberry cervix").

3. Males may present with urethritis, epididymitis, or prostatitis.

NOTE: Males who have been circumcised might have a somewhat reduced risk of trichomoniasis.

LABORATORY FINDINGS (with or without objective findings)

1. Typical motile trichomonads seen on wet mount of vaginal discharge. (wet mount sensitivity: 51% to 65%)

OR

2. Identification of *T. vaginalis* on culture.

OR

3. Identification of Trichomonas on Pap smear.

OR

4. Nucleic Acid Amplification Test (NAAT).

NOTE: If Trichomonas is identified on Pap smear, may treat presumptively or refer to **delegating physician.**

NOTE: When using a wet mount, slides should be evaluated immediately because the sensitivity declines as evaluation is delayed.

NOTE: Refer to Screening Criteria for Chlamydia and Gonorrhea for the use of state purchased nucleic acid amplification test (NAAT).

ASSESSMENT Trichomoniasis

PLAN The desired outcomes of treatment are: relief of symptoms, microbiologic cure, and reduction of transmission and potential infection with other STDs.

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Wet Preparation (saline, 10% KOH).

OR

2. NAAT.

NOTE: Refer to Screening Criteria for Chlamydia and Gonorrhea for the use of state purchased NAAT. If the patient does not meet the screening criteria for using CT/GC NAAT testing, then the wet mount should be used to **screen/**test for Trichomoniasis.

THERAPEUTIC

NOTE: Any patients who test positive for trichomoniasis should be tested for gonorrhea, chlamydia, syphilis, and HIV.

NOTE: Untreated infections might last for months to years with associated two-to threefold increased risk for HIV acquisition.

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. If patient is not pregnant:

   a. Metronidazole 2g PO in a single dose.

   OR

   b. Metronidazole 500mg PO every 12 hours for 7 days.

2. **Alternative regimen for non-pregnant patients:**

   a. **Tinidazole 2g PO in a single dose.**

3. **Recommended regimen for pregnant patients in 2nd and 3rd** trimester only:

   a. Metronidazole 2g PO in a single dose.

4. **Recommended treatment if** patient is HIV infected:

   a. Metronidazole 500mg PO every 12 hours for 7 days.

NOTE: Metronidazole is a FDA Category B drug. Metronidazole should only be used in confirmed 2nd and 3rd trimester of pregnancy (see Consultation/Referral). Lactating women taking metronidazole should withhold breastfeeding during treatment and for 12-24 hours after the last dose to reduce infant's exposure to the drug. **Alternatively, a nursing mother may choose to pump and discard human milk for the duration of metronidazole therapy, and for 24 hours after therapy**

ends and feed her infant stored human milk or formula.

NOTE: Avoidance of breastfeeding has been and continues to be a standard, strong recommendation for HIV-infected women in the United States, because maternal ART dramatically reduces but does not eliminate breastmilk transmission. Further, safe infant feeding alternatives are readily available in the United States. In addition, there are concerns about other potential risks, including toxicity for the neonate or increased risk of development of ARV drug resistance, should transmission occur, due to variable passage of drugs into breastmilk.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING
(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts)

1. The name/significance of the infection. Educate for sequelae and complications of the untreated infection http://www.cdc.gov/std/trichomonas/trich-fact-sheet-aug-2012.pdf.

2. **Directions for taking medication and management of potential side effects (e.g., to avoid alcoholic beverages and other alcohol- containing products until 24 hours following completion of metronidazole therapy**

3. **All sex partners 60 days prior to the onset of symptoms or positive test should be referred for examination and treatment. Avoid sex with partner(s) until partner(s) has/have been treated. Refer the last known sex partner if the last sexual contact was greater than 60 days before onset of symptoms or diagnosis. Provide patient with written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them to HD for exam and treatment.**

4. Advise the patient to return to clinic for all lab results even if presumptively treated at initial visit. Inform patient if lab results are positive additional treatment may be needed.

5. Education and counseling of the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).

6. If patient is of childbearing age, counsel on the use of contraceptives to reduce the risk of unintended pregnancy.

7. **Advise patient to return to clinic 7 days after completion of treatment if symptoms do not resolve.**

8. **Inform patient if additional lab(s) is/are positive, partner(s) will also need additional treatment.**

9. **Abstain from sex for 7 days after therapy is begun and/or until all lab results are obtained**.

10. **Assist patient(s) in developing a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan and document patient(s) plan. Abstain from sex until all the symptoms are resolved and partner(s) are tested and treated.**

11. Women who are breastfeeding should withhold breastfeeding during treatment and for 24 hours after the last dose to reduce child's exposure to the drug. **Alternatively, a nursing mother may choose to pump and discard human milk for the duration of metronidazole therapy and for 24 hours after therapy ends. She may feed her infant stored human milk or formula**.

12. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown.

13. **Refer to the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for immunization recommendations for Hepatitis A, B and HPV (https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/index.html) and the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual.**

MANAGEMENT OF SEX PARTNERS

1. **All sex partners 60 days prior to the onset of symptoms or positive test should be referred for examination and treatment. Avoid sex with partner(s) until partner(s) has/have been treated. Refer the last known sex partner if the last sexual contact was greater than 60 days before onset of symptoms or diagnosis. Provide patient with written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them to HD for examination and treatment.**

2. **All identified sex partners, as defined above, should be examined and promptly treated with one of the above regimens for trichomoniasis.**

FOLLOW-UP

1. Patient should return only if symptoms persist after treatment, or recur. Re-treat with the 7-day regimen of metronidazole if 4-6 weeks **has** elapsed since previous treatment and presence of trichomonads has been reconfirmed (see medication package insert).

2. **Retest women who are sexually active and high-risk within 3 months following initial treatment regardless of whether they believe their sex partners were treated.**

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. **Consult with delegating physician if:**

    a. **Patient is allergic to nitroimidazoles for desensitization referral.**
    b. **Repeated treatment failure. (Assure that partner(s) have been treated to rule out reinfection).**
    c. **Further medical guidance is needed and STD nursing protocol is not applicable to treat patient.**

2. Refer pregnant patients in first trimester who have tested positive for trichomoniasis to their OB/GYN or OB provider.

3. **Antimicrobial resistance occurs in 4%-10% of vaginal trichomoniasis cases. If resistance is suspected after adequate treatment with recommended regimen or alternative regimen and reinfection is excluded susceptibility testing should be done. Contact DPH STD Nurse Consultant for susceptibility testing kit.**

4. Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for reporting possible sexual or physical abuse of minors, if encountered, through history or physical. All suspected sexual or physical abuse of minors must be reported to the county Department of Family and Children Services office as per Guidelines for Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf .

REFERENCES

1. **Centers for Disease Control and *Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015, Vo*l. 64, No. RR-3, May 12, 2017.**

2. **GUIDELINES FOR MANDATORY REPORTING OF SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE for PUBLIC HEALTH PERSONNEL. (2017, April 1). Retrieved May 12, 2017, from https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf.**

3. Holmes, K. K. (2008). *Sexually transmitted diseases*. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical.

4. American Academy of Pediatrics., In Pickering, L. K., In Baker, C. J., In Kimberlin, D. W., In Long, S. S., & American Academy of Pediatrics. (2012). Red book: 2012 report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases.

5. **University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine. (2017). Clinical Skin Disease Images. Retrieved from** https://medicine.uiowa.edu/dermatology/education/clinical-skin-disease-images**.**

6. **"Lexi-Drugs Online," Lexi-Comp Database, Lexi-Comp Inc., Hudson, Ohio (July 19, 2017).**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR UNCOMPLICATED VULVOVAGINAL CANDIDIASIS (VVC) (Yeast infection)

DEFINITION

Uncomplicated vulvovaginal candidiasis (VVC) is a common infection **(yeast infection)** that may occasionally also cause cutaneous penile lesions in male sex partners (e.g. *Candidal* balanitis), but is not always considered to be an STD. An estimated 75% of women will experience at least one episode of VVC during their life-time, and 40**%**-45% will have two or more episodes.

ETIOLOGY

Most infections are caused by *Candida albicans* which grows as oval budding yeast cells**, hyphae,** and pseudohyphae and thrives best when the vaginal pH is 4.5 to 5. Other *Candida* species or yeasts may occasionally cause similar symptoms. The incubation period is unknown.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Vulvovaginal itching.
2. Thick, curdy vaginal discharge.
3. May have vaginal soreness, pain with intercourse, vulvar burning and external dysuria.
4. Redness and swelling of the vulva.

OBJECTIVE

DIAGNOSTIC CRITERIA

NOTE: Many women are asymptomatic. Symptoms are caused by overgrowth of normally occurring yeast forms. Contributing factors, which disrupt the normally protective vaginal flora include: medications, diabetes, HIV, pregnancy, and other immuno-suppressive conditions.

1. Pruritis and erythema in the vulvovaginal area. A thick white, cottage cheese like vaginal discharge may be present.

AND

Vaginal pH less than 4.5

AND

Identification of typical budding yeast, **hyphae**, or pseudohyphae on microscopic exam of vaginal discharge, by saline or adding 10% KOH solution to wet mount.

ASSESSMENT Vulvovaginal Candidiasis (VVC)

PLAN The desired outcome of treatment is the relief of symptoms, microbiologic cure, and reduction of transmission and potential infection with other STDs**.**

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

NOTE: Vulvovaginal candidiasis is an important concern for women with HIV infection. The colonization rates of candida have shown to be higher in HIV-infected women than HIV negative women, although the relationship of vulvovaginal candidiasis to HIV infection remains unclear. **Therapy for uncomplicated and complicated VVC in women with HIV infection should not differ from that for seronegative women.**

1. Wet preparation (10% KOH, saline)

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Intravaginal agents (*Available without a prescription)

Non-pregnant patients:

a. *Butoconazole 2% cream 5g, one applicatorful intravaginally for 3 days,

OR

b. *Clotrimazole 1% cream 5g, one applicatorful intravaginally for 7-14 days,

OR

c. *Miconazole 100mg vaginal suppository, one suppository for 7 days,

OR

d. *Miconazole 200mg vaginal suppository, one suppository for 3 days,

OR

e. *Miconazole 2% cream 5g, one applicatorful intravaginally for 7 days,

OR

f. *Tioconazole 6.5% ointment 5g, intravaginally in a single application,

OR

g. Terconazole 0.4% cream 5g, one applicatorful intravaginally for 7 days,

OR

h. Terconazole 80mg vaginal suppository, one suppository for 3 day,

OR

i. Terconazole 0.8% cream 5g, one applicatorful, intravaginally for 3 days.

OR

2. Oral agent for non-pregnant patients:

   a. Fluconazole (Diflucan) 150mg PO once.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

Keep irritated vulvovaginal area as clean and dry as possible.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts)

1. The name/significance of the infection. Educate for sequelae and complications of untreated infection: http://www.cdc.gov/fungal/diseases/candidiasis/genital/index.html

2. **Directions for taking medication and management of potential side effects.**

3. Although many preparations of intravaginal agents are available without a prescription, self-medication is advised only for women who have been previously diagnosed with VVC and who experience a recurrence of the same symptoms.

4. Butoconazole and clotrimazole cream, tioconazole ointment, and miconazole creams and suppositories are oil-based and may weaken latex condoms and diaphragms, therefore other methods of contraception should be used.

5. If taking fluconazole (Diflucan), noticeable improvement in symptoms may not occur for a few days. Even with a single dose, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, abdominal pain and headache may occur.

6. Education and counseling of the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).

7. If patient is of childbearing age, counsel on the use of contraceptives to reduce the risk of unintended pregnancy.

8. **Assist patient(s) in developing a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan and document patient(s) plan. Abstain from sex until all the symptoms are resolved.**

9. **Abstain from sex for the duration of treatment and/or until all lab results are obtained.**

10. Advise the patient to return to clinic for all lab results even if presumptively treated at initial visit.

11. Inform patient if lab results are positive additional treatment may be needed.

12. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown.

13. **Refer to the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for immunization recommendations for Hepatitis A, B and HPV (https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/index.html) and the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual.**

MANAGEMENT OF SEX PARTNERS

No routine exam and/or treatment is necessary, but may be considered in females with recurrent infections. A minority of male sex partners who have balanitis, characterized by erythematous areas on the glans of the penis in conjunction with pruritus or irritation, can benefit from treatment with over-the-counter topical antifungal agents to relieve symptoms.

FOLLOW-UP

Only if symptoms persist or recur within 2 months of the initial symptoms.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Consult delegating physician for referral of patients with frequent recurrent episodes not responding to usual therapy. Women who experience 4 or more episodes of VVC within a year are described as having Recurrent Vulvovaginal Candidiasis (RVVC). Risk factors include uncontrolled diabetes mellitus, immunosuppression, and corticosteroid use most women who have RVVC have no apparent predisposing conditions. HIV status of the patient, if known needs to be provided to the consulting delegating physician.

2. Refer pregnant women to their OB/GYN or OB provider for treatment.

3. **Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for reporting possible sexual or physical abuse of minors, if encountered, through history or physical. All suspected sexual or physical abuse of minors must be reported to the county Department of Family and Children Services office as per Guidelines for Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf.**

4. Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed and STD nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

REFERENCES

1. **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015, Vol. 64, No. RR-3, May 12, 2017.**

2. **GUIDELINES FOR MANDATORY REPORTING OF SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE for PUBLIC HEALTH PERSONNEL. (2017, April 1). Retrieved May 12, 2017, from https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf .**

3. Holmes, K. K. (2008). Sexually transmitted diseases. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical.

4. American Academy of Pediatrics., In Pickering, L. K., In Baker, C. J., In Kimberlin, D. W., In Long, S. S., & American Academy of Pediatrics. (2012). Red book: 2012 report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases.

5. **University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine. (2017). Clinical Skin Disease Images. Retrieved from** https://medicine.uiowa.edu/dermatology/education/clinical-skin-disease-images**.**

6. **"Lexi-Drugs Online," Lexi-Comp Database, Lexi-Comp Inc., Hudson, Ohio (July 19, 2017).**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PELVIC INFLAMMATORY DISEASE (PID)

DEFINITION

Pelvic inflammatory disease (PID) is an infection of a woman's reproductive organs and a complication caused by untreated STDs, like chlamydia and gonorrhea**.** The clinical syndrome **is due to** the ascending spread of microorganisms from the vagina and endocervix to the endometrium, the fallopian tubes or to contiguous structures.

If untreated, acute infections may result in peritonitis caused by rupture of a tubo-ovarian abscess. And acute or subclinical infections may result in chronic pain, pelvic adhesions, involuntary infertility or ectopic pregnancy.

The intensity of symptoms may vary widely, from mild to acute. Many episodes of PID go unrecognized. Although some women may have asymptomatic PID, many have mild or non-specific symptoms or signs such as abnormal bleeding, dyspareunia or vaginal discharge. Experts recommend that providers maintain a low threshold of diagnosis for PID and recognize when PID should be suspected.

ETIOLOGY

Sexually transmitted organisms, especially *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* and *Chlamydia trachomatis* are implicated in most cases of PID. However, organisms not usually associated with sexual transmission, such as anaerobes, Gram-negative facultative bacteria and streptococci may also be involved. The incubation period for PID is undefined.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Mild to moderate lower abdominal pain or tenderness.
2. Vaginal discharge with or without a bad odor.
3. Dyspareunia and/or bleeding after sex.
4. Fever and chills.
5. Anorexia.
6. Nausea.
7. Bleeding between periods**.**
8. May have a history of exposure to gonorrhea or chlamydia.
9. May have a history of previous PID, recent insertion of an IUD, or onset of symptoms during the first 5-10 days of the menstrual cycle.

OBJECTIVE

The following criteria are used to diagnose pelvic inflammatory disease:

1. A high index of suspicion must be kept in sexually active females. Minimum criteria to institute empiric treatment in sexually active

young females and other females at risk for STDs:

a. Cervical motion tenderness **and/or** uterine/adnexal tenderness.

2. Additional criteria that support a diagnosis of PID include:

   a. Abnormal cervical or vaginal mucopurulent discharge.
   b. Presence of white blood cells (WBCs) on saline microscopy of vaginal secretions.
   c. Laboratory documentation of cervical infection with *N. gonorrhoeae* or *C. trachomatis.*
   d. Oral temperature may be 101° F (38.3° C) or higher.

NOTE: If the cervical discharge appears normal and no white blood cells are found on the wet prep, the diagnosis of PID is unlikely and an alternative diagnosis needs to be considered.

3. Wet prep of vaginal fluid to detect presence of concomitant infection (e.g., BV and Trichomonas).

ASSESSMENT Pelvic Inflammatory Disease

PLAN The desired outcome of treatment is to demonstrate substantial clinical improvement within 3 days after initiation of therapy, with subsequent resolution of all signs and symptoms, prevention of formation of scar tissue both outside and inside the fallopian tubes that can lead to tubal blockage, ectopic pregnancy, infertility and long-term pelvic/abdominal pain.

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Tests for gonorrhea and chlamydia.
2. Pelvic examination for cervical motion tenderness, uterine tenderness, or adnexal tenderness; also, evaluate for cervical exudates or cervical friability.
3. Wet Preparation (saline, 10% KOH).
4. Pregnancy test if there is a possibility that patient may be pregnant (see Consultation/Referral section for more information).

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Any patients who test positive for gonorrhea or chlamydia should be tested for syphilis and HIV.

NOTE: Women with HIV infection responded equally well to recommended parenteral and IM/oral antibiotic regimens as women without HIV infection.

1. Recommended regimen for non-pregnant or HIV-infected adult/minor:

a. Ceftriaxone 250mg IM single dose,
AND
Doxycycline 100mg PO every 12 hours for 14 days (only if at least 8 years old),
AND
Metronidazole 500mg PO every 12 hours for 14 days

NOTE: Do not give Doxycycline to lactating patient(s); patient(s) must be advised to discontinue breastfeeding or receive alternative regimen. If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment. Breastfeeding can be restarted 2 days after completion of treatment. Do not give to minors under the age of 8.

NOTE: Avoidance of breastfeeding has been and continues to be a standard, strong recommendation for HIV-infected women in the United States, because maternal ART dramatically reduces but does not eliminate breastmilk transmission. Further, safe infant feeding alternatives are readily available in the United States. In addition, there are concerns about other potential risks, including toxicity for the neonate or increased risk of development of ARV drug resistance, should transmission occur, due to variable passage of drugs into breastmilk.

2. Alternative regimen for non-pregnant or HIV infected adults/minor (at least 8 years old):

a. Cefoxitin 2g IM and Probenecid 1g PO single dose
AND
Doxycycline 100mg PO every 12 hours for 14 days
AND
Metronidazole 500mg PO every 12 hours for 14 days

b. Ceftriaxone 250mg IM single dose

AND

Azithromycin 1g PO once and repeat Azithromycin 1g in 1 week

AND

Metronidazole 500mg PO every 12 hours for 14 days.

NOTE: Metronidazole is a FDA Category B drug. Metronidazole should only be used in confirmed 2nd and 3rd trimester of pregnancy. Metronidazole should not be used for treatment during the first trimester of pregnancy. If metronidazole is given to breastfeeding women, they should discontinue breastfeeding until two days after treatment is completed. If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment to reduce child's exposure to metronidazole and Doxycycline.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING
(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts)

1. The name/significance of the infection. Educate for sequelae and complications of the untreated infection (http://www.cdc.gov/std/pid/pid-fact-sheet-july-2014.pdf).

2. Directions for taking medication and what to do about potential side effects.

3. Return appointment for evaluation in 3 days.

4. **All sex partners 60 days prior to the onset of symptoms or positive test should be referred for examination and treatment. Avoid sex with partner(s) until partner(s) has/have been treated. Refer the last known sex partner if the last sexual contact was greater than 60 days before onset of symptoms or diagnosis. Provide patient with written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them to HD for exam and treatment.**

5. Counsel to avoid sex with untreated partners.

6. Women who are breastfeeding should not receive Doxycycline. If Doxycycline is given to breastfeeding women, they should

discontinue breastfeeding throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment.

If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment.

7. If the patient is diabetic receiving ceftriaxone therapy, and using the ACCU-CHEK Compact Plus system, they should stop using the ACCU-CHEK Compact Plus system and begin using an alternate blood glucose monitoring system for the duration of this therapy and for 2 full days (48 hours) after the last treatment. **Ceftriaxone** may lead to incorrect low glucose results.

8. Assist patient in developing a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan and document patients plan. Abstain from sex until all the symptoms are resolved and partner(s) are tested and treated.

9. Education and counseling of the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).

10. If patient is of childbearing age, counsel on the use of contraceptives to reduce the risk of unintended pregnancy.

11. Instruct patient to go to Emergency Room if symptoms worsen.

12. Advise the patient to return to clinic for all lab results even if presumptively treated at initial visit. Inform patient if lab results are positive additional treatment may be needed.

13. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown.

14. **Refer to the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for immunization recommendations for Hepatitis A, B and HPV (https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/index.html) and the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual.**

MANAGEMENT OF SEX PARTNERS

All sex partners from 60 days prior to the onset of symptoms or diagnosis should be examined for STDs and promptly treated with a regimen effective against both gonorrhea and chlamydia, regardless of symptoms or Gram stain or other test results. Male sex partners of females with PID

caused by chlamydia or gonorrhea often are asymptomatic. **Avoid sex with partner(s) until partner(s) has/have been treated. Refer the last known sex partner if the last sexual contact was greater than 60 days before onset of symptoms or diagnosis. Provide patient with written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them to HD for exam and treatment.**

FOLLOW-UP

1. Evaluation, by bimanual examination, within 72 hours after initiation of therapy for symptomatic improvement. Also, discuss medication compliance and stress importance of completing therapy.

2. Suggest repeat examination, and rescreening tests for patients diagnosed with gonorrhea and chlamydia, 3-6 months after completing therapy.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Treatment must be **initiated** as soon as possible. If a referral is made to an APRN or physician to confirm the diagnosis, begin treatment before the referral is made, unless the APRN or physician is on-site and can see the patient immediately**.**

2. Consult with delegating physician immediately, for possible hospitalization and/or parenteral treatment when:

    a. Surgical emergencies such as appendicitis cannot be excluded.
    b. The patient is pregnant.
    c. The patient has failed to respond clinically to oral therapy.
    d. The patient is unable to follow or tolerate an outpatient oral regimen.
    e. The patient has signs of a severe illness, nausea and vomiting, or a high fever.

3. If a patient with an IUD does not respond to treatment **with** clinical improvement within 48-72 hours of initiating treatment consult with delegating physician for possible IUD removal and contraceptive counseling.

4. **Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for**

reporting possible sexual or physical abuse of minors, if encountered, through history or physical. All suspected sexual or physical abuse of minors must be reported to the county Department of Family and Children Services office as per Guidelines for Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel *https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf* .

5. **Chlamydia and/or gonorrhea infected women (nonpregnant or pregnant) and men are recommended to be retested approximately 3 months after treatment, regardless of whether they believe that their sex partners were treated. If retesting at 3 months is not possible, clinicians should retest the next time the patient(s) presents for medical care in the 12 months following initial treatment.**

6. Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed and STD nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

REFERENCES

1. **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015, Vol. 64, No. RR-3, May 12, 2017.**

2. **GUIDELINES FOR MANDATORY REPORTING OF SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE for PUBLIC HEALTH PERSONNEL. (2017, April 1). Retrieved May 12, 2017, from https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf .**

3. Holmes, K. K. (2008). Sexually transmitted diseases. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical.

4. American Academy of Pediatrics., In Pickering, L. K., In Baker, C. J., In Kimberlin, D. W., In Long, S. S., & American Academy of Pediatrics. (2012). Red book: 2012 report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases.

5. **University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine. (2017). Clinical Skin Disease Images. Retrieved from** https://medicine.uiowa.edu/dermatology/education/clinical-skin-disease-images**.**

6. **"Lexi-Drugs Online," Lexi-Comp Database, Lexi-Comp Inc., Hudson, Ohio (July 19, 2017).**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR EPIDIDYMITIS, SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED

DEFINITION

Epididymitis is a clinical syndrome characterized by inflammation of the epididymis causing pain and tenderness, associated with urethritis that may be asymptomatic, usually occurring in men less than 35 years of age. **Epididymitis occurring in men over 35 years of age is usually nonsexual and may be associated with urinary tract infections, systemic disease and immunosuppression. In addition, in older men, non-sexually transmitted acute epididymitis is also associated with prostate biopsy, urinary tract instrumentation or surgery, systemic disease, and/or immunosuppression.**

ETIOLOGY

Common causes are *Chlamydia trachomatis* or *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*, *Escherichia coli* and *Pseudomonas spp.* Infection can occur in males who are the insertive partners during anal intercourse. Sexually transmitted acute epididymitis usually is accompanied by urethritis, which frequently is asymptomatic.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Scrotal pain and swelling, usually unilateral.
2. May have dysuria and/or urethral discharge.
3. No history of trauma to the area.

OBJECTIVE

1. Scrotal tenderness and swelling observed during assessment. Inability to differentiate epididymis from testicle during palpation (see consultation and referral section)

   AND

   Gram-stain smear is positive for urethritis (e.g., smear contains **2 or more** polymorphonuclear leukocytes per oil immersion field). The smear may or may not be positive for *Neisseria gonorrhoeae.*

   OR

2. Microscope examination of first-void urine sediment demonstrating 10 or more polymorphonuclear leukocytes per high power field,

   OR

3. Positive leukocyte esterase test on first-void urine.

ASSESSMENT

Epididymitis, sexually transmitted

PLAN

The desired outcomes of treatment are microbiologic cure, alleviation of signs and symptoms, prevention of transmission of infection to others,

and prevention of potential complications (e.g., infertility or chronic pain).

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Tender scrotal swelling and on palpation cannot distinguish epididymis from testicle (see consultation and referral).

2. When available, gram-stain smear from urethra in males for gonorrhea and for presumptive diagnosis of gonococcal infection.

3. Laboratory tests for gonorrhea and chlamydia, Nucleic Acid hybridization tests and/or gonorrhea culture.

4. If the gram-stain is negative or unavailable, positive leukocyte esterase test or microscopic examination of first-void uncentrifuged urine for leukocytes.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Any patients who test positive for gonorrhea or chlamydia should be tested for syphilis and HIV.

NOTE: HIV infected patients with uncomplicated epididymitis can receive the same treatment regimen as those who are not HIV infected.

1. **Recommended treatment** if **epididymitis is** most likely due to gonococcal or chlamydial infection:

   a. Ceftriaxone 250mg IM, single dose,
   AND
   Doxycycline 100mg PO every 12 hours for 10 days, (if patient is 8 years of age or older).

   NOTE: PCN allergy algorithm should be completed on all patients who self-report penicillin allergy. If **a true PCN allergy is identified refer to allergist for desensitization with subsequent treatment.**

   NOTE: Do not give Doxycycline to minors under the age of 8**.**

2. **Recommended treatment if epididymitis is** if most likely due to gonococcal or chlamydial infection and enteric organisms (men

who practice insertive anal sex):

a. Ceftriaxone 250mg IM single dose,
AND
Levofloxacin 500mg PO, once daily for 10 days (if patient is 18 years old).
OR
b. Ofloxacin 300mg PO q 12 hours for 10 days (if patient is 18 years old).

3. If most likely due to enteric organisms (men who practice insertive anal sex) or with negative gonococcal culture or nucleic acid amplification test:

a. Levofloxacin 500mg PO once daily for 10 days (if patient is 18 years old).
OR
b. Ofloxacin 300mg PO q 12 hours for 10 days (if patient is 18 years old).

4. Over-the-counter oral analgesics as needed for pain.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

Patient recommended bed rest, scrotal elevation and support to relieve swelling and pain.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING
(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts)

1. The name/significance of the infection. Educate for sequelae and complications of the untreated infection (http://www.ashasexualhealth.org/stdsstis/pid/).

2. Directions for taking medication and potential side effects and what to do about them.

3. **Counsel patient about** comfort measures (e.g. over-the-counter oral analgesics for pain, bed rest, scrotal elevation and support to relieve swelling and pain).

4. **Advise patient** to seek emergency medical care promptly if

symptoms do not **improve** or worsen. Patient's symptoms should start improving within 48 hours of the initiation of treatment.

5. If infection with gonorrhea and/or chlamydia is known or suspected, refer sex partners for examination and treatment. Avoid sex until treatment is completed and patient and partner(s) no longer have symptoms.

6. If the patient is diabetic, receiv**ing** ceftriaxone therapy and using the ACCU-CHEK Compact Plus system, they should stop using the ACCU-CHEK Compact Plus system and begin using an alternate blood glucose monitoring system for the duration of this therapy and for 2 full days **(48 hours)** after the last treatment. **Ceftriaxone** may lead to incorrect low glucose results.

7. Assist patient in developing a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan and document patients plan. Abstain from sex until all the symptoms are resolved and partner(s) are tested and treated.

8. Education and counseling on the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).

9. Emphasize patient follow up in 3 days for re-evaluation (if date of follow up falls on a weekend, have patient return for re-evaluation the next open clinic day).

10. Emphasize the importance for patient to return to clinic for all lab results even if presumptively treated at initial visit. Inform patient if lab results are positive and additional treatment will be needed.

11. If additional laboratory tests are positive for STI (e.g., gonorrhea), partners also need treatment.

12. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown.

13. **Refer to the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for immunization recommendations for Hepatitis A, B and HPV (https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/index.html) and the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual.**

MANAGEMENT OF SEX PARTNERS

If gonorrhea and/or chlamydial infection is known, or suspected, in the index patient, all sex partners from 60 days prior to the onset of symptoms or diagnosis should be examined and receive appropriate treatment for gonorrhea and chlamydia.

FOLLOW-UP

Re-evaluate patient for improvement of symptoms in 2-3 days. Failure to improve means the diagnosis and therapy should be reevaluated and hospitalization may be necessary.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Immediately consult the delegating physician if unable to perform the necessary diagnostic testing or patient cannot be treated with recommended drugs.

2. Refer immediately for emergency evaluation if testicular torsion is **suspected**.

3. If the diagnosis is questionable refer to a urologist. If the patient has intense pain, refer immediately for emergency evaluation even when urethritis is documented by gram stain.

4. If **patient shows** no improvement **of signs/symptoms** in 3 days refer to a urologist or primary care physician.

5. **Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for reporting possible sexual or physical abuse of minors, if encountered, through history or physical. All suspected sexual or physical abuse of minors must be reported to the county Department of Family and Children Services office as per Guidelines for Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf .**

REFERENCES

1. **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015, Vol. 64, No. RR-3, May 12, 2017.**

2. **GUIDELINES FOR MANDATORY REPORTING OF SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE for PUBLIC HEALTH PERSONNEL. (2017, April 1). Retrieved May 12, 2017, from https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf .**

3. Holmes, K. K. (2008). Sexually transmitted diseases. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical.

4. American Academy of Pediatrics., In Pickering, L. K., In Baker, C. J., In Kimberlin, D. W., In Long, S. S., & American Academy of Pediatrics. (2012). Red book: 2012 report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases.

5. **University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine. (2017). Clinical Skin Disease Images. Retrieved from** https://medicine.uiowa.edu/dermatology/education/clinical-skin-disease-images**.**

6. **"Lexi-Drugs Online," Lexi-Comp Database, Lexi-Comp Inc., Hudson, Ohio (July 19, 2017).**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR CERVICITIS

DEFINITION **Cervicitis is a** clinical syndrome characterized by yellow or green mucopurulent exudate visible in the endocervical canal or an endocervical swab specimen and/or easily induced endocervical bleeding.

ETIOLOGY *Chlamydia trachomatis* and *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* may cause **cervicitis**, but **can also be due to trichomoniasis, genital herpes, *M. genitalium* or Bacterial Vaginitis.** In most cases, neither organism can be isolated. In some cases, the condition persists despite repeated courses of antimicrobial therapy; therefore, alternative diagnoses should be considered.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Frequently asymptomatic.
2. Discharge from the vagina.
3. Abnormal vaginal bleeding (e.g., after intercourse).

OBJECTIVE

1. Presence of a purulent or mucopurulent exudate visible in the endocervical canal or in an endocervical swab specimen (positive swab test).

AND/OR

2. Easily-induced bleeding occurs with insertion of the first endocervical swab (cervical friability).

ASSESSMENT Cervicitis

PLAN The desired outcomes of treatment are microbiologic cure, alleviation of signs and symptoms, prevention of transmission of infection to others, and treatment of sex partners.

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Gonorrhea, chlamydia, **and trichomoniasis** tests**.**

   OR

   Gonorrhea and chlamydia tests

2. Presence of a purulent or mucopurulent exudate visible in the endocervical canal or an endocervical swab specimen (positive swab test).

AND/OR

Easily-induced bleeding occurs with insertion of the first endocervical swab (cervical friability).

3. Wet Preparation (saline, 10%KOH).

THERAPEUTIC

NOTE: Any patients who test positive for gonorrhea or chlamydia should be tested for syphilis and HIV.

NOTE: Women with cervicitis and HIV infection should receive the same treatment regimen as those who are HIV negative. Cervicitis increases cervical HIV shedding and treatment in women with HIV infection reduces HIV shedding from the cervix and might reduce HIV transmission to susceptible sex partners.

1. The results of the chlamydia and gonorrhea tests should be used to determine the need for treatment, unless the patient is unlikely to be located for treatment when test results are available.

2. If the patient is unlikely to be easily located for treatment when the test results are available, empiric treatment to cover gonorrhea and/or chlamydia may be given. See gonorrhea and chlamydia protocols for treatment choices.

3. **BV, candidiasis, or trichomoniasis should be treated if detected on microscopy.**

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts)

1. The name/significance of the syndrome. Educate for sequelae and complications of the untreated infection **(https://medlineplus.gov/ency/article/001495.htm).**

2. Advise the patient to return to clinic for all lab results even if presumptively treated at initial visit. Inform patient if lab results are positive additional treatment may be needed. **Inform patient if additional lab(s) is/are positive, partner(s) will also need additional treatment.**

3. Directions for taking medication and what to do about potential side effects.

4. Encourage self-referral of recent sex partner(s) for examination and possible treatment. Avoid sex until partner(s) has been treated.

5. **Abstain from sex for 7 days after therapy is started and/or until all lab results are obtained.**

6. Assist patient in developing a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan and document patients plan. Abstain from sex until all the symptoms are resolved and partner(s) are tested and treated.

7. Education and counseling of the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).

8. If patient is of childbearing age, counsel on the use of contraceptives to reduce the risk of unintended pregnancy.

9. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown.

10. **Refer to the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for immunization recommendations for Hepatitis A, B and HPV (https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/index.html) and the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual.**

11. **All sex partners 60 days prior to the onset of symptoms or positive test should be referred for examination and treatment. Avoid sex with partner(s) until partner(s) has/have been treated. Refer the last known sex partner if the last sexual contact was greater than 60 days before onset of symptoms or diagnosis. Provide patient with written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them to HD for exam and treatment.**

12. **Advise patient to return to clinic in 7 days or less if symptoms do not resolve.**

13. **Inform patient if additional lab(s) is/are positive, partner(s) will also need additional treatment.**

MANAGEMENT OF SEX PARTNERS

1. Self-referred sex partner(s) should be treated based on their examination

and test results, or the test results of the index patient.

2. Partners of females who are treated for **cervicitis** before test results are available should receive treatment for the same suspected infection(s) as the female partner.

3. **Provide patient with written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them to HD for examination and treatment.**

FOLLOW-UP

1. If symptoms persist, patients should return for re-evaluation. However, after the possibilities of relapse and reinfection have been excluded, management of persistent **cervicitis** is unclear.

2. If the chlamydia or gonorrhea test is positive, it is **recommended to** retest patient approximately 3 months after treatment, regardless of whether they believe that their sex partners were treated. If retesting at 3 months is not possible, clinicians should retest whenever patient next present for medical care in the 12 months following initial treatment.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Consult with or refer to primary care provider for additional evaluation if symptoms persist after relapse and reinfection have been excluded.

2. **Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for reporting possible sexual or physical abuse of minors, if encountered, through history or physical. All suspected sexual or physical abuse of minors must be reported to the county Department of Family and Children Services office as per Guidelines for Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel** ***https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf*** **.**

3. Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed and STD nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

REFERENCES

1. **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015, Vol. 64, No. RR-3, May 12, 2017.**

2. **GUIDELINES FOR MANDATORY REPORTING OF SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE for PUBLIC HEALTH PERSONNEL. (2017, April 1). Retrieved May 12, 2017, from https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf .**

3. Holmes, K. K. (2008). Sexually transmitted diseases. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical.

4. American Academy of Pediatrics., In Pickering, L. K., In Baker, C. J., In Kimberlin, D. W., In Long, S. S., & American Academy of Pediatrics. (2012). Red book: 2012 report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases**.**

5. **University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine. (2017). Clinical Skin Disease Images. Retrieved from https://medicine.uiowa.edu/dermatology/education/clinical-skin-disease-images.**

6. **"Lexi-Drugs Online," Lexi-Comp Database, Lexi-Comp Inc., Hudson, Ohio (July 19, 2017).**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR NONGONOCOCCAL URETHRITIS (NGU)

DEFINITION **Non-gonococcal urethritis (NGU) is a** sexually transmitted clinical syndrome in men, usually characterized by a mucoid-to-purulent urethral discharge and often accompanied by dysuria or urethral itching. It is diagnosed if urethritis is present and Gram-negative intracellular organisms cannot be identified on Gram stains. May progress to epididymitis, **prostatitis** or reactive arthritis if untreated.

ETIOLOGY *Chlamydia trachomatis* causes 15%-40% of cases, with lower prevalence occurring in older men. The etiology of many cases of nonchlamydial NGU is unknown. *Ureaplasma urealyticum* and possibly *Mycoplasma genitalium* are implicated in as many as 15%-25% **of NGU cases**. Trichomonas vaginalis and *herpes simplex virus* occasionally cause NGU. **Incubation is variable but can range between 5-8 days.**

SUBJECTIVE

1. Urethral discharge, especially in the morning.

2. Itching or burning of the urethra.

OBJECTIVE The following criteria are used to diagnose NGU.

1. Documentation of urethritis by:

   a. Mucopurulent or purulent discharge,

   OR

   b. Gram stain of urethral secretions demonstrating 2 **or more** WBC per oil immersion field.

   OR

   c. Positive leukocyte esterase **(dipstick)** test in a first void urine or sediment demonstrating ≥10 WBC per high power field.

   AND/OR

2. When available a Gram stain that is negative for Gram-negative intracellular diplococci.

3. If the criteria for urethritis are not present, treatment should be deferred pending the results of the diagnostic studies. Empiric treatment of symptoms without documentation of urethritis is recommended only for patients at high risk for infection who are unlikely to return for a follow-up evaluation (e.g. **minors** who have multiple partners, non-compliance for follow up of previous positive results, etc.).

NOTE: If gram stain urethral secretion specimens have less than 5 WBCs per HPF and patient urinated within 2 hours prior to specimen collection, collect another sample 2 hours after void and/or prior to next void.

ASSESSMENT Nongonococcal Urethritis (NGU)

PLAN The desired outcome of treatment is alleviation of symptoms and microbiologic cure of infection.

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Gonorrhea, chlamydia **and trichomoniasis** tests**.**

2. Documentation of urethritis by:

   a. Mucopurulent or purulent discharge,

   OR

   b. Gram stain of urethral secretions demonstrating **2** or more WBCs per oil immersion field.

   OR

   c. Positive leukocyte esterase test in a first void urine sediment demonstrating **10 or more** WBCs per high power field.

   AND/OR

   d. Gram stain that is negative for Gram-negative intracellular diplococci, when available

THERAPEUTIC

NOTE: Any patients who test positive for gonorrhea or chlamydia should be tested for syphilis and HIV.

NOTE: HIV infected patients with NGU can receive the same treatment regimen as those who are not HIV infected. **In addition, NGU might facilitate HIV transmission.**

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Recommended regimens

   a. Azithromycin 1g PO single dose,

   OR

   b. Doxycycline 100mg PO every 12 hours for 7 days if patient

is at least 8 years old.

NOTE: Do not give Doxycycline to lactating patient(s); patient(s) must be advised to discontinue breastfeeding throughout treatment or receive alternative regimen.

If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment. Do not give Doxycycline to minors under the age of 8.

2. Alternative regimens:

a. Erythromycin base 500mg PO every 6 hours a day for 7 days,

OR

b. Erythromycin ethylsuccinate 800mg PO every 6 hours a day for 7 days,

OR

c. Levofloxacin 500mg PO, once daily for 7 days (if patient is at least age 18),

OR

d. Ofloxacin 300mg PO, every 12 hours for 7 days (if patient is at least age 18).

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING
(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts)

1. The name/significance of the syndrome. Educate for sequelae and complications of untreated infection (http://www.ashasexualhealth.org/stdsstis/ngu/).

2. Directions for taking medication and what to do about potential side effects.

3. Women who are breastfeeding should not receive Doxycycline. If Doxycycline is given to breastfeeding women, they should discontinue breastfeeding throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment. If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment.

4. **All sex partners from 60 days prior to the onset of symptoms or positive test should be referred for examination and treatment. Avoid sex with partner(s) until partner(s) has been treated. Refer the last known sex partner if the last sexual contact was greater than 60 days before onset of symptoms or diagnosis. Provide written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them in for exam and treatment.**

5. Education and counseling of the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).

6. **Educate patients who receive Azithromycin about adverse effects (QT Prolongation, torsades de pointes, etc.) and document the patient's understanding.** http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/DrugSafety/UCM343347.pdf **or** http://www.nhs.uk/conditions/long-QT-syndrome/Documents/Acquired-LQT-Brochure06.pdf **or https://www.crediblemeds.org/pdftemp/pdf/CompositeList.pdf**

7. Advise the patient to return to clinic for all lab results even if presumptively treated at initial visit. Inform patient if lab results are positive additional treatment may be needed.

8. Assist patient in developing a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan and document patients plan. Abstain from sex until all the symptoms are resolved and partner(s) are tested and treated.

9. Instruct patient to abstain from sexual intercourse until at least 7 days after therapy has started **and/or until all lab results are obtained**. The partner(s) must be adequately treated and the treated patient's symptoms completely resolved and sex partners have been adequately treated.

10. **Refer to the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for immunization recommendations for Hepatitis A, B and HPV (https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/index.html) and the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual.**

11. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown.

12. **Advise patient to return to clinic in 7 days if symptoms do not resolve.**

MANAGEMENT OF SEX PARTNERS

1. **All identified sex partners, as defined above, should be examined and promptly treated with one of the above regimens for NGU.**

2. **Provide written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them in for exam and treatment.**

3. **All sex partners from the 60 days prior to the onset of symptoms or diagnosis should be examined and promptly treated with one of the recommended regimens.**

FOLLOW-UP

1. Advise the patient to return to clinic for all lab results even if presumptively treated at initial visit. Inform patient if lab results are positive additional treatment will be needed.

2. Inform patient if additional lab(s) is/are positive, partner(s) will need additional treatment also.

3. The patient should return if symptoms persist or return within three month of treatment. Patient(s) with persistent or recurrent urethritis should be retreated with the initial regimen if they have failed to comply with the regimen, or if they have been re-exposed to an untreated sex partner. Otherwise, refer to delegating physician.

4. **If the chlamydia or gonorrhea test is positive, recommended to retest patient approximately 3 months after treatment, regardless of whether they believe that their sex partners were treated. If retesting at 3 months is not possible, clinicians should retest whenever patient next present for medical care in the 12 months following initial treatment.**

5. **If patient vomits within thirty minutes of taking Azithromycin, the dose may be repeated.**

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Refer to urologist or primary care physician for evaluation and treatment of 3 or more recurrent urethritis within three months. Referral should also be considered if patient is experiencing pain for more than 3 months within a 6-month period.

2. **Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for reporting possible sexual or physical abuse of minors, if encountered, through history or physical. All suspected sexual or physical abuse of minors must be reported to the county Department of Family and Children Services office as per Guidelines for Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel *https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf* .**

3. Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed and STD nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

REFERENCES

1. **Centers for Disease Control and *Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015, Vo*l. 64, No. RR-3, May 12, 2017.**

2. **GUIDELINES FOR MANDATORY REPORTING OF SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE for PUBLIC HEALTH PERSONNEL. (2017, April 1). Retrieved May 12, 2017, from** https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf

3. Holmes, K. K. (2008). Sexually transmitted diseases. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical.

4. American Academy of Pediatrics., In Pickering, L. K., In Baker, C. J., In Kimberlin, D. W., In Long, S. S., & American Academy of Pediatrics. (2012). Red book: 2012 report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases**.**

5. **University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine. (2017). Clinical Skin Disease Images. Retrieved from https://medicine.uiowa.edu/dermatology/education/clinical-skin-disease-images.**

6. **"Lexi-Drugs Online," Lexi-Comp Database, Lexi-Comp Inc., Hudson, Ohio (July 19, 2017).**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR LYMPHOGRANULOMA VENEREUM (LGV)

DEFINITION

Lymphogranuloma Venereum (LGV)GV is a systemic, sexually transmitted disease (STD) or infection caused by a type of Chlamydia trachomatis (serovars L1, L2, L3). The incidence is highest among sexually active people living in tropical or subtropical climates. It is rarely diagnosed in the United States or other industrialized countries. LGV is more common in men who have sex with men than women or heterosexual men. Incubation period ranges between 3-12 days. LGV has three clinical stages:

1. First stage: Often unrecognized due to rapid healing. A painless papule at the site of infection, which ulcerates and then heals rapidly. Mild urethritis may also occur. The patient rarely presents for examination at this stage.

2. Secondary Stage: Usually occurring 14-45 days after the first stage, it is characterized by painful increasing inguinal lymphadenopathy or, in patients exposed by receptive anal intercourse, acute hemorrhagic proctitis. The lymphadenopathy is usually unilateral; less than 20% have the “groove sign” showing involvement of the femoral nodes. Diagnosis and treatment during this stage can have the desired outcome of curing infection and prevention of ongoing tissue destruction.

3. Third stage: This stage can occur years after denoted by chronic inflammation of the lymph nodes, ulceration and fistula **formation, genital elephantiasis, or infertility**. Patients, especially those who have engaged in unprotected anal sex, may present with an atypical presentation. Symptoms could include proctitis or proctocolitis with rectal discharge, bleeding, pain on defecation or tenesmus.

ETIOLOGY

Chlamydia trachomatis is an obligate intracellular bacterial agent with at least 18 serologic variants divided between biologic variants. LGV is serologic variant (serovars) L1, L2, and/or L3.

SUBJECTIVE

1. With or without tender, (typically) unilateral, swollen glands (lymph nodes/bubo) in the groin.

2. May have history of briefly occurring painless papule/ulcer in the genital area.

3. **Proctitis or proctocolitis with rectal discharge, tenderness**

and bleeding, with history of rectal sex. May complain of constipation, pain on defecation and tenesmus.

OBJECTIVE Diagnosis of LGV can be complicated. Diagnosis should be made considering a thorough sexual history, travel history, clinical findings and several laboratory tests including Chlamydia serology and Chlamydia serotyping of specimens.

1. Patient history and clinical findings consistent with LGV. One or more tender, progressively enlarging, fluctuant inguinal lymph nodes,

OR

2. Characteristic signs of hemorrhagic proctitis in a patient with history of rectal sex. May be accompanied by fever, malaise and myalgias.

AND

Positive microimmunofluorescent (MIF) serologic test titer more than 1:128, for a lymphogranuloma venereum strain of *Chlamydia trachomatis* (serum).

AND

Isolation/culture of *Chlamydia trachomatis*, LGV serotypes L1, L2 or L3 from clinical specimen (rectal swab).

ASSESSMENT Lymphogranuloma Venereum (LGV)

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

NOTE: MIF and LGV serotype are to be submitted to a private laboratory for processing. Georgia Public Health Laboratory does not conduct testing to diagnose LGV. The STD Office provides only treatment and the cost for the MIF and LGV lab should be discussed with administration prior to collection of specimens.

1. Gonorrhea, chlamydia **and trichomoniasis** testing**.**

2. Positive microimmunofluroscent (MIF) (titer more than 1:128) serologic test for a lymphogranuloma venereum strain of *Chlamydia trachomatis* (serum).

3. Isolation/culture of *Chlamydia trachomatis*, LGV serotype L1, L2 or L3 from a clinical specimen (rectal swab).

4. Serology for HIV and for syphilis (RPR).

5. If ulcer(s) present: darkfield exam, if available.

6. **Herpes serology** and**/or** herpes culture.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Any patients who test positive for LGV should be tested for syphilis and HIV**.**

NOTE: Persons with both LGV and HIV infection should receive the same regimens as those who are HIV negative. Prolonged therapy might be required, and delay in resolution of symptoms might occur.

1. If patient is not pregnant and 8 years of age or older:

   a. Doxycycline 100mg PO every 12 hours a day for 21 days.

   NOTE: Do not give Doxycycline to lactating patient(s); patient(s) must be advised to discontinue breastfeeding throughout treatment and for two days after treatment is completed or receive alternative regimen. If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment. Do not give to minors under the age of 8.

   OR

   b. If patient cannot take Doxycycline, Erythromycin base 500mg PO, every 6 hours for 21 days.

2. If patient is pregnant and/or lactating: Erythromycin base 500mg PO every 6 hours for 21 days.

3. Patients with both LGV and HIV infection should receive the same regimens as those who are HIV-negative.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts)

1. The name/significance of the infection. Educate for sequelae and

complications of the untreated infection:
http://www.cdc.gov/std/treatment/2010/genital-ulcers.htm

2. Give directions for taking the medication and potential side effects and what to do about them. Stress the importance of finishing medications. Advise to abstain from sexual contact until treatment is completed and until partners have finished all their medication.

3. Women who are breastfeeding should not receive Doxycycline. If Doxycycline is given to breastfeeding women, they should discontinue breastfeeding throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment. If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment.

4. **All sex partners from 60 days prior to the onset of symptoms or positive test should be referred for examination and treatment. Avoid sex with partner(s) until partner(s) has been treated. Refer the last known sex partner if the last sexual contact was greater than 60 days before onset of symptoms or diagnosis. Provide written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them in for exam and treatment.**

5. **Abstain from sex for 7 days after therapy is begun and/or until all lab results are obtained.**

6. **Advise patient to return to clinic in 7 days or less if symptoms do not resolve.**

7. Stress safe sex practices among men who have sex with men (MSM) and bisexual men. Emphasize the importance of using condoms and avoiding penetrating sex. Limiting the number of sex partners and regular use of protective barriers can also reduce risk.

8. Counsel patient on individualized STD/HIV risk reductions and incorporate reduction plan.

NOTE: LGV can facilitate the spread of other STDs including HIV because of the disease's ulcers. Keep acute HIV infection and syphilis in mind as well as LGV when patients present with symptoms. HIV and syphilis are more prevalent than LGV in

Georgia and patients should be screened for all STDs.

9. Advise the patient to return to clinic for all lab results even if presumptively treated at initial visit. Inform patient if lab results are positive additional treatment may be needed. **Inform patient if additional lab(s) is/are positive, partner(s) will also need additional treatment.**

10. Education and counseling of the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).

11. If patient is of childbearing age, counsel on the use of contraceptives to reduce the risk of unintended pregnancy.

12. Assist patient in developing a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan and document patients plan. Abstain from sex until all the symptoms are resolved and partner(s) are tested and treated.

13. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown.

14. **Emphasize the importance of regular health screenings among high-risk populations.**

15. **Refer to the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for immunization recommendations for Hepatitis A, B and HPV (https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/index.html) and the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual.**

MANAGEMENT OF SEX PARTNERS

1. **All identified sex partners, as defined above, should be examined and promptly treated with one of the above regimens for Lymphogranuloma Venereum.**

2. **Provide written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them in for exam and treatment.**

3. **All sex partners from 60 days prior to the onset of symptoms or positive test should be referred for examination (tested at the anatomic site of exposure) and treatment. Avoid sex with partner(s) until partner(s) has been treated. Refer the last known sex partner if the last sexual contact was greater than 60 days before onset of symptoms or diagnosis. Provide written note(s)**

to give to partner(s) to refer them in for exam and treatment.

FOLLOW UP

1. Assess patient every 1-2 weeks until all lesions have healed. Clinical response is the best gauge of therapy effectiveness.

2. **If the chlamydia or gonorrhea test is positive, recommended to retest patient approximately 3 months after treatment, regardless of whether they believe that their sex partners were treated. If retesting at 3 months is not possible, clinicians should retest whenever patient next present for medical care in the 12 months following initial treatment.**

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Consult with delegating physician if:

    a. Inadequate response to treatment (continued signs and symptoms of LGV in the absence of possible reinfection).
    b. Lymph node enlargement continues to the point where rupture seems possible (blue color of overlying skin shows that rupture is imminent); refer for aspiration or incision and drainage.
    c. Patient presents to the HD with history and signs/symptoms that are suggestive of LGV consult with the delegating physician. Notify DPH STD Nurse Consultant of suspected or confirmed LGV case.
    d. Further medical guidance is needed and STD nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

2. **Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for reporting possible sexual or physical abuse of minors, if encountered, through history or physical. All suspected sexual or physical abuse of minors must be reported to the county Department of Family and Children Services office as per Guidelines for Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel *https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf* .**

3. Refer to a District Communicable Disease Specialist for prevention counseling and assistance with partner referral.

REFERENCES

2. Centers for Disease Control and *Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015, Vo*l. 64, No. RR-3, May 12, 2017.

3. GUIDELINES FOR MANDATORY REPORTING OF SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE for PUBLIC HEALTH PERSONNEL. (2017, April 1). Retrieved May 12, 2017, from https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf .

3. *CDC, "MMWR Weekly", Lymphogranuloma Venereum Among Men Who Have Sex with Men-Netherlands, A*rticle, 53 (42) pp. 985-988 October 29, 2004.

4. Holmes, K. K. (2008). Sexually transmitted diseases. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical.

5. American Academy of Pediatrics., In Pickering, L. K., In Baker, C. J., In Kimberlin, D. W., In Long, S. S., & American Academy of Pediatrics. (2012). Red book: 2012 report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases.

6. University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine. (2017). Clinical Skin Disease Images. Retrieved from https://medicine.uiowa.edu/dermatology/education/clinical-skin-disease-images**.**

7. "Lexi-Drugs Online," Lexi-Comp Database, Lexi-Comp Inc., Hudson, Ohio (July 19, 2017).

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR GENITAL/PERIANAL WARTS

DEFINITION Infection of the genital and/or anal areas with the *human papillomavirus* (HPV) which results in genital/perianal warts. It is usually sexually transmitted, and the viral strains causing anogenital warts are not usually found on other areas of the body. Asymptomatic genital HPV infection is common and usually self-limited. While intra-anal warts are seen predominately in patients who have receptive anal intercourse, perianal warts can occur in males and females who do not give a history of anal sex.

ETIOLOGY Genital/perianal warts are members of the Papillomavirus family and are DNA virus. There are more than 100 types identified. More than 40 HPV types can infect the genital tract. The larger, fleshy warts are usually caused by HPV types 6 or 11**(90%)**, **they have been associated with conjunctival, nasal, oral, and laryngeal warts.** HPV types 16, 18, 31**, 33 and 35 are usually flat, papular, or pedunculated growths on the genital mucosa**. HPV 16 and 18 are the cause of cervical cancers. The higher-numbered types are the ones associated with cervical and other anogenital cancers. Regardless of type, most HPV infections are subclinical. However, depending on the size and anatomic location, genital warts can be painful, friable and pruritic. Incubation period is unknown but is estimated to range from 3 months to several years.

SUBJECTIVE

1. May have no noticeable symptoms.
2. Bumps/growths in the genital or anal areas.
3. Bumps/growths may be painful or pruritic.

OBJECTIVE The following criteria are used to diagnose genital/perianal warts:

1. Single or multiple typical soft, fleshy growths on the skin or mucous membranes around the vulvovaginal area, anal area, penis, urethra or perineum. They may be like cauliflower, with a stalk-like base, or have a broad base.
2. Demonstration of typical cytologic changes on a Pap smear is suggestive of subclinical HPV infection. HPV is associated with higher grade intraepithelial neoplasia.

ASSESSMENT Genital and/or Perianal Warts (specify site)

PLAN

The desired outcome of treatment is the removal of symptomatic warts. Treatment can induce wart-free periods in most patients.

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. **Visual inspection.**

2. RPR titer **with confirmatory**, if not already done.

3. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown.

4. Darkfield Exam of any open moist lesions to rule out primary syphilis or condylomata lata of secondary syphilis, if available.

5. A biopsy referral may be indicated if the wart(s) does not respond to therapy or gets worse during treatment.

THERAPEUTIC

NOTE: Treatment of genital warts is optional, and the warts may spontaneously regress. Many patients will require a course of therapy rather than a single treatment. Treatment is not indicated in the absence of lesions.

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Any patient who is positive for HPV should be tested for gonorrhea, chlamydia, syphilis and HIV.

NOTE: HIV infected patients can receive the same treatment regimen as those who are not HIV infected Persons with HIV infection or who are otherwise immunosuppressed are more likely to develop anogenital warts than those who do not have HIV infection. Moreover, such persons can have larger or more numerous lesions, might not respond to therapy as well as those who are immunocompetent, and might have more frequent recurrences after treatment.
(https://www.cdc.gov/std/tg2015/warts.htm)

NOTE: For patient-applied therapy, clinicians must educate and demonstrate, to the patient, proper application technique of the initial treatment before dispensing medication to the patient.

1. Patient-Applied:

NOTE: For genital warts only. Patient must be able to identify and reach warts to be treated; **the first application is to be applied by** the clinician **in order to** demonstrate the proper application technique and identify which warts should be treated.

a. Podofilox 0.5% solution or gel. Apply solution with a cotton swab, or gel with a finger or swab, twice a day for 3 days, followed by 4 days of no therapy. Wash hands after applying medication.

   This cycle may be repeated, as necessary, for a total of 4 cycles. The total area treated should not exceed 10 cm^2, and no more than 0.5 mL of podofilox used per day. Nurse should apply the initial treatment to demonstrate to patient proper application technique.

OR

b. If 12 years of age or older**,** Imiquimod 5% cream, (e.g., Aldara). Apply cream with a finger or cotton swab at bedtime, three times a week until warts are cleared, for up to 16 weeks. Wash hands after applying the medication. Wash the treatment area with mild soap and water 6-10 hours after the application. Educate patient about local inflammatory reaction.

NOTE: Podofilox or Imiquimod should not be used in minors, pregnant or nursing patients.

2. Provider-Administered

NOTE: Trichloroacetic acid or bichloroacetic acid should not be used in minors, pregnant or nursing patients. Treatment outlined is not for individuals with lesions in the urethra, vagina, anal, or cervical areas.

NOTE: Refer to the product package insertion prior to administration.

a. Trichloroacetic acid (TCA) or bichloroacetic acid (BCA) 80-90% solution applied sparingly to warts and allowed to dry to a white "frosting" before the patient sits or stands. If an excess amount is applied, powder the treated area with liquid soap preparation, talc or sodium bicarbonate to remove unreacted acid. May repeat weekly as necessary.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING
(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts)

1. The name/significance of the infection. Educate for sequelae and complications of the untreated infection: http://www.cdc.gov/std/hpv/hpv-factsheet-march-2014.pdf

2. For the fleshy warts, stress that these are not usually caused by the same strains that are associated with cancer, but it is possible that other strains are also present. Treatment of external warts is not likely to influence the development of cervical cancer.

3. **Directions of how to apply the medication and** care of the treated area.

4. No treatment, even laser or liquid nitrogen (cryotherapy), is known to eradicate the virus, and recurrences are common. Recurrences occur most frequently during the first 3 months, and are usually due to reactivation of latent virus rather than reinfection by a sex partner.

5. Most HPV infections can clear spontaneously. However, some infections do get worse.

6. Infected females should undergo regular cervical Pap screening as recommended for females without genital warts.

7. Partners may be infected with HPV even if they have no visible warts. The use of condoms may reduce transmission to new partners. Correct and consistent condoms use may lower transmission and contact of HPV, but may not provide full protection based upon location(s) of HPV not covered by condom.

8. HPV infection may persist lifelong in a dormant state and become infectious intermittently.

9. **Vaccination should be administered to eligible patients or refer patients to another facility equipped to provide the vaccine.**

10. For patient-applied treatment:

    a. Do not use more often than directed or on any other area of the body. Wash hands immediately after applying medication.

b. Report problems with application or side-effects, such as bleeding or severe swelling of tissue. Mild to moderate pain or local irritation is common with podofilox.

c. Mild to moderate local inflammatory reactions **(e**.g. irritation, ulceration/erosions, vesicles, hypopigmentation) are common with imiquimod.

d. Do not share the medication with anyone else.

e. Do not have intercourse during the days when warts are being treated with podofilox or when imiquimod cream is on the skin.

f. Females should avoid getting pregnant. A**dvise provider if she may be, or intends to become pregnant**.

11. **Abstain from sex until treatment is completed or until obvious warts are no longer present to reduce transmission risk to partner(s).**

12. **Advise the patient to return to clinic for all lab results even if presumptively treated at initial visit. Inform patient if lab results are positive additional treatment may be needed.**

13. **Inform patient if additional lab(s) is/are positive, partner(s) will also need additional treatment.**

14. Assist patient in developing a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan and document patients plan. Abstain from sex until all the symptoms are resolved and partner(s) are tested and treated.

15. Education and counseling of the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).

16. If patient is of childbearing age, counsel on the use of contraceptives to reduce the risk of unintended pregnancy.

17. Pregnant women should be educated and counseled concerning the low risk for warts on the larynx of their infants or minors (http://www.nidcd.nih.gov/health/voice/pages/laryngeal.aspx/#3 or http://www.rrpf.org/whatisRRP.html).

18. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown.

19. **Refer to the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for immunization recommendations for Hepatitis A, B and HPV (https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/index.html) and the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual.**

MANAGEMENT OF SEX PARTNERS

1. Recommend a Pap smear for female partners who have not had one in the past year.

2. **All identified sex partners should be examined and promptly treated according to findings.**

3. **Provide written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them for exam and treatment.**

FOLLOW-UP

1. If desired, patients using self-administered treatment may return in a few weeks for assessment of treatment response.

2. For provider-administered topical treatment, apply weekly as needed. If no significant improvement in four weeks, or if warts have not completely cleared after six weeks, alternative therapy should be used**.**

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Refer patient(s) to a dermatologist or primary care provider if requests are made for treatment of lesions not located in the vulvovaginal area, anal area, penis, urethra or perineum. In addition, refer patient(s) who may require or request cryotherapy or surgical removal.

2. For Pap smear recommendations follow Georgia Breast and Cervical Cancer Program Cervical Screening Guidelines.

3. If patient is pregnant, consult with delegating physician for possible referral to OB/GYN or OB provider.

4. For additional information and psychological support, refer to:

Local HELP line (678-561-4377 in Atlanta) or the National Herpes and HPV and Cervical Cancer Prevention Hotline, 919-361 8488, 1-800-CDC-INFO, or **http://www.ashasexualhealth.org/stdsstis/hpv/support-groups/**

5. **Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for reporting possible sexual or physical abuse of minors, if encountered, through history or physical. All suspected sexual or physical abuse of minors must be reported to the county Department of Family and Children Services office as per Guidelines for Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel *https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf* .**

6. Consult with or refer to primary care provider if warts are not responding to treatment.

7. Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed and STD nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

REFERENCES

1. **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015, Vol. 64, No. RR-3, May 12, 2017.**

2. **GUIDELINES FOR MANDATORY REPORTING OF SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE for PUBLIC HEALTH PERSONNEL. (2017, April 1). Retrieved May 12, 2017, from https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf .**

3. Holmes, K. K. (2008). Sexually transmitted diseases. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical.

4. American Academy of Pediatrics., In Pickering, L. K., In Baker, C. J., In Kimberlin, D. W., In Long, S. S., & American Academy of Pediatrics. (2012). Red book: 2012 report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases.

5. **University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine. (2017). Clinical Skin Disease Images. Retrieved from https://medicine.uiowa.edu/dermatology/education/clinical-skin-disease-images.**

6. **"Lexi-Drugs Online," Lexi-Comp Database, Lexi-Comp Inc., Hudson, Ohio (July 19, 2017).**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR GENITAL HERPES

DEFINITION

Genital herpes (HSV) is a sexually transmissible viral infection characterized by recurring vesicular blisters resulting in ulcerative lesions on the genitals or adjacent areas that heal spontaneously without scarring. However, typical lesions are absent in many infected patients.

Some severe cases of first episode infection last an average of 12 days and aseptic meningitis or generalized symptoms due to viremia may occur. Subsequent milder recurrent infections do not last as long. During latency between clinical episodes, viral shedding occurs intermittently and individuals may transmit the virus to partners with asymptomatic viral shedding.

Most people with HSV-II (genital herpes infection) do not know they have it. Most infected patients never recognize signs suggestive of genital herpes; some will have symptoms shortly after infection and then never again. Many cases are acquired from patients who do not know that they are infected.

Persistent infection (lesions more than 4 weeks) or extensive anogenital ulceration and proctitis occur in immunocompromised patients. Lesions caused by HSV are common among HIV-infected patients. These individuals may experience increased viral shedding, have more prolonged episodes, and may experience more severe and atypical symptoms. HSV is an AIDS defining illness with: chronic ulcers (greater than1 month's duration) or bronchitis, pneumonitis, or esophagitis (onset at age greater than 1 month).

ETIOLOGY

HSVs are enveloped, double-stranded, DNA viruses. Herpes simplex virus (HSV), type 1 or type 2. HSV-I usually involve the face and skin above the waist and HSV-II usually involves the skin below the waist. However at least 20% of genital herpes are caused by HSV-I. Most genital infections are with HSV-II, which is most apt to cause recurrences. Presence of HSV II antibodies implies anogenital infection. Incubation period ranges from 2 days to 2 weeks.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Single or multiple blisters and/or shallow ulcers, usually painful, anywhere on the genitals.

2. May have swollen tender lymph nodes in the groin.

3. Fever, headache, or malaise or myalgias.

4. Pruritic lesions.

5. Dysuria.

6. Vaginal or urethral discharge**.**

OBJECTIVE **PHYSICAL/LAB FINDINGS**

1. Typical vesicular lesions and/or shallow ulcers.

2. May have atypical papular lesions and no ulcers**.**

3. May have enlarged, tender inguinal lymph nodes.

4. Suspicious genital papules, vesicles or ulcers, with a history of episode(s) of similar symptoms or sexual exposure to a patient with HSV are suggestive.

5. In the setting of HIV infected patient, a large non-healing genital ulceration may be HSV.

ASSESSMENT Genital Herpes

PLAN The desired outcome of treatment with systemic antiviral drugs is to minimize the signs and symptoms of herpes episodes**.**

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Identification of HSV I and/or HSV II in lesion scrapings by cell culture

OR

2. A clinical diagnosis is made based on the presence of characteristic single or multiple blisters and/or shallow painful ulcers that are typical for herpes, but not for syphilis or chancroid. Herpetic lesions are darkfield negative unless a co-existing syphilis lesion is present.

3. Herpes culture to confirm diagnosis of typical lesions. Sensitivity of viral culture is low and as healing begins culture sensitivity declines rapidly. Positive culture gives a definitive diagnosis.

Absence of a positive culture however, does not mean the patient does not have herpes. The virus may not always be cultured from the lesion if it is not present in adequate amounts.

Type-specific HSV serologic assays in conjunction with herpes culture, might be useful in the following scenarios:

NOTE: Herpes culture should be performed first when noticeable symptoms are present. Serology should be done in conjunction with herpes culture in the below scenarios:

a. If patient has a history of recurring genital or atypical lesions but **if** obtaining an adequate specimen for a culture is not possible, order type-specific serologic antibody tests for HSV 1 and 2.

b. A clinical diagnosis of genital herpes without laboratory confirmation.

c. A partner with genital herpes.

d. A patient with a history of multiple sex partners.

e. Patients with HIV infection.

f. MSM at increased risk for HIV acquisition.

NOTE: Screening for HSV-I and HSV-II in the general population is not indicated.

NOTE: Primary infection may be diagnosed in patients who are HSV antibody-negative but have positive viral cultures with evidence of acute infection. Pending serology testing or repeat serology after primary infection may result in more accurate HSV antibody positive result.

4. **RPR plus confirmatory and/or, if** available, darkfield exam of lesion fluid to rule out syphilis.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Any patients who test positive for HSV should be tested for gonorrhea, chlamydia, syphilis and HIV.

Systemic antiviral drugs partially control the signs/symptoms of herpes episodes when used to treat first clinical episodes, recurrent episodes or daily suppressive therapy. However, these drugs neither eradicate latent virus nor affect subsequent risk, frequency, or severity of recurrences after the drug is discontinued.

NOTE: Pregnant females must be referred to an OB/GYN or OB provider for treatment. Lactating patients must discontinue breastfeeding while receiving treatment.

1. First genital episode

NOTE: Treatment may be extended if healing is incomplete after 10 days of therapy.

a. Acyclovir **(Zovirax)** 400mg PO q 8 hours for 7-10 days,
OR
b. Acyclovir **(Zovirax)** 200mg PO, 5 times a day for 7-10 days,
OR
c. Famciclovir **(Famvir)** 250mg PO q 8 hours for 7-10 days,
OR
d. Valacyclovir **(Valtrex)** 1g PO q 12 hours for 7-10 days.

NOTE: Valacyclovir has enhanced absorption after oral administration.

NOTE: Treatment may be extended if healing is incomplete after 10 days of therapy.

2. Episodic recurrent episodes

NOTE: Effective episodic treatment of recurrent herpes requires initiation of therapy within 1 day of lesion onset, or during the prodrome that precedes some outbreaks, **if not on daily suppressive therapy**. The patient should be provided with 1 cycles worth of medication with instructions to self-initiate treatment immediately when symptoms begin and to contact health department for follow-up **visit** to assess symptoms. **No additional medication should be dispensed until assessment has been completed.**

a. Acyclovir 400mg PO every 8 hours for 5 days,
OR

b. Acyclovir 800mg PO every 12 hours for 5 days,

OR

c. Acyclovir 800mg PO every 8 hours for 2 days,

OR

d. Famciclovir 125mg PO every 12 hours for 5 days,

OR

e. Famciclovir 500mg PO once followed by 250mg PO every 12 hours for 2 days,

OR

f. Famciclovir 1000mg PO every 12 hours for 1 day,

OR

g. Valacyclovir 500mg PO, every 12 hours for 3 days,

OR

h. Valacyclovir 1g PO once a day for 5 days.

3. Daily suppressive therapy

NOTE: It is no longer required for a certain number of episodes to occur before prescribing daily suppressive therapy. It is a patient/clinician decision to determine whether a patient should receive daily suppressive therapy or episodic therapy.

a. Acyclovir 400mg PO every 12 hours a day,

OR

b. Famciclovir 250mg PO every 12 hours a day,

OR

c. Valacyclovir 500mg PO once a day, use only if 9 or fewer recurrences per year

OR

d. Valacyclovir 1g PO once a day.

NOTE: The use of Valacyclovir may be less effective than other dosing regimens in patients who have more than 9 episodes per year.

NOTE: Baseline kidney (BUN, Albumin, GFR, Potassium, Creatinine Clearance, etc.) and liver (ALP, ALT, AST, Bilirubin, Lipase, Protein, etc.) function test recommended prior to the start of daily suppressive therapy and then annually or as needed based on symptoms, drug-drug interactions, etc. Consult with and report abnormal findings to delegating physician for guidance of patient care.

NOTE: If daily suppressive therapy has been initiated, at the

completion of annual therapy the patient can:

a. **Continue daily suppressive therapy.**
b. **Discontinue daily suppressive therapy. If or when the patient has an outbreak, after reassessment, daily suppressive therapy can be restarted, if indicated versus a trial of episodic treatment.**

4. HIV-infected patients:

   a. Episodic treatment:
      1) Acyclovir 400mg PO every 8 hours a day, for 5-10 days,
      OR
      2) Famciclovir 500mg PO every 12 hours a day for 5-10 days,
      OR
      3) Valacyclovir 1g PO every 12 hours a day for 5-10 days.

   b. Daily suppressive therapy:
      1) Acyclovir 400 - 800mg PO 2-3 times a day,
      OR
      2) Famciclovir 500mg PO every 12 hours a day,
      OR
      3) Valacyclovir 500mg PO every 12 hours a day.

   NOTE: Suppressive therapy with oral acyclovir, valacyclovir, or famciclovir is effective in preventing recurrences and is preferred for patients who have severe or frequent HSV recurrences or who want to minimize the frequency of recurrences. Suppressive therapy for HSV may be continued indefinitely, without regard for improved CD4 cell count, although need for continuation should be addressed on an annual basis, particularly if immune reconstitution has occurred.

5. Over-the-counter oral analgesic of patient's choice (e.g., acetaminophen or ibuprofen) as needed for pain related to outbreak and prodrome syndrome.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Keep affected areas as clean and dry as possible. Pat lesions dry; avoid rubbing the area. (The use of ointments will retain moisture and may delay healing.)

2. **Encourage increased intake of fluids (e.g., water) to dilute urine if it burns the affected area.**

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING
(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts)

1. The name/significance of the infection. Educate for sequelae and complications of the untreated infection. http://www.cdc.gov/std/herpes/herpes-factsheet-july-2014.pdf

2. Counseling of infected patients and their sex partners is critical to help the patient cope with the infection and to prevent sexual and perinatal transmission.

3. Although initial counseling is important, many patients benefit more from counseling about the chronic aspects of the disease after the acute illness subsides.

4. Educate about the natural history of the disease, the potential for recurrent episodes, and the risks of asymptomatic viral shedding between episodes.

5. Give clear directions for taking medication and management of potential side effects.

6. Advise patients experiencing a first episode that suppressive and episodic antiviral therapy is available to prevent or shorten the duration of recurrent episodes.

7. Discuss comfort and pain-relieving measures.

8. Encourage patients to inform their current sex partner(s) about the infection and inform future partner(s) before initiating a sexual relationship. Encourage patients to inform sex partner(s) of infected patients that they might be infected even if they have no symptoms.

9. **Sexual transmission can occur during asymptomatic periods.** Prodrome occurs before recurring episodes. A day or two before an outbreak occurs; the genital skin gets sensations such as itching, tingling or pain. This period is called prodrome phase. The skin also sheds virus during this phase. Therefore, it is important to have no sexual relation during this period. If your partner has

herpes, ask them to keep you informed about their prodrome phase.

10. Avoid sexual activity with uninfected partners when lesions or prodromal symptoms are present. At other times, correctly-used latex condoms may reduce the risk of transmission when the infected areas are covered.

11. Explain the risk for neonatal infection to all patients, including men. Advise infected women of child-bearing age to inform health-care providers who care for them during pregnancy and those who will care for their newborn infant.

12. Patients should refer all symptomatic sex partner(s) for evaluation. Asymptomatic sex partners may be referred for evaluation and counseling. Sex partners of infected person should be advised that they may be infected even if they have no symptoms.

13. Discuss resources available for further information and psychological support including availability of latex condoms.

14. Risk of neonatal HSV should be discussed with females and males.

15. Refer all pregnant patients who are infected or exposed to herpes to obstetrician.

16. Episodic treatment does not reduce risk of transmission.

17. Recurrence of lesions does not mean that the patient has been re-exposed.

18. Recurrences and subclinical shedding are much more frequent for genital HSV-II then for genital HSV-I infection.

19. When exposed to HIV, HSV-II seropositive persons are at increased risk for HIV acquisition.

20. Pregnant women or women who conceive while taking daily suppressive should consult with their OB/GYN or OB provider for treatment regimen guidance.

21. Education and counseling of the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).

22. If patient is of childbearing age, counsel on the use of contraceptives to reduce the risk of unintended pregnancy.

23. Assist patient(s) in developing a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan and document patient(s) plan. Abstain from sex until all the symptoms are resolved and partner(s) are tested and treated.

24. All sex partners 60 days prior to the onset of symptoms or positive test should be referred for examination and treatment. Avoid sex with partner(s) until partner(s) has/have been treated. Refer the last known sex partner if the last sexual contact was greater than 60 days before onset of symptoms or diagnosis. Provide patient with written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them to HD for exam and treatment.

25. Refer to the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for immunization recommendations for Hepatitis A, B and HPV (https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/index.html) and the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual.

26. Women without symptoms or signs of genital herpes or prodrome can deliver vaginally. Women with recurrent genital herpetic lesions near or at the onset of delivery should deliver by C-section to prevent transmission to infant during vaginal delivery.

27. Advise the patient to return to clinic for all lab results even if presumptively treated at initial visit. Inform patient if lab results are positive additional treatment may be needed.

28. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown**.**

MANAGEMENT OF SEX PARTNERS

1. Symptomatic sex partners should be managed the same as any patient with genital lesions. Educate to understand the natural history of HSV including possibility of asymptomatic shedding of virus and lesions reappearing without sexual re-exposure.

2. Ask asymptomatic partners about a history of typical or atypical genital lesions and encourage examining themselves for lesions in

the future. Counsel about the possibility of being infected even if they have never been symptomatic. Order type-specific serologic antibody testing to determine whether the risk for HSV acquisition exists.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Schedule an appointment with the patient when culture results are available. Individualize counseling according to clinical progress and apparent emotional impact where further education and counseling for patient and sex partners may be indicated. Assist patient to develop a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan.

2. If the patient did not have a positive herpes culture, order type-specific serologic antibody testing to confirm the clinical diagnosis of genital herpes and determine the type of antibodies present. This has important counseling implications, since HSV-I genital infection is less likely to cause asymptomatic shedding or to recur than HSV-II.

3. For patients on continuous daily suppressive therapy, discuss therapy after one year, to assess the patient's psychological adjustment to genital herpes, rate of recurrent episodes, and the need to continue or discontinue therapy.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Consult with delegating physician for referral of the following types of patients:

    a. Pregnant women. OB/GYN or OB provider must be given full information including copy of laboratory slips to ensure that the patient is treated adequately.
    b. History of renal impairment.
    c. Persistent lesions.

2. Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed and STD nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

3. If signs or symptoms of meningitis present refer immediately for emergency evaluation. Consult delegating physician If symptoms

of meningitis (e.g., headache, nausea, vomiting, stiff neck) during first or with recurrent episode(s).

4. Refer all pregnant patients who are infected or exposed to herpes to OB/GYN for treatment.

5. Pregnant women or women who conceive while taking daily suppressive should consult with their OB/GYN or OB provider for treatment regimen guidance.

6. For additional information and psychological support, refer to: Local HELP line (678-561-4377 in Atlanta) or the National Herpes and HPV and Cervical Cancer Prevention Hotline, 919-361 8488, 1-800-CDC-INFO, or http://www.ashasexualhealth.org/stdsstis/herpes/

7. In HIV infected patients, if receiving antiviral treatment and lesions persist or recur refer to Infectious Disease specialist **and/or HIV specialist** for evaluation of possible resistance.

8. **Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for reporting possible sexual or physical abuse of minors, if encountered, through history or physical. All suspected sexual or physical abuse of minors must be reported to the county Department of Family and Children Services office as per Guidelines for Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf**

REFERENCES

1. **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015, Vol. 64, No. RR-3, May 12, 2017.**

2. **GUIDELINES FOR MANDATORY REPORTING OF SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE for PUBLIC HEALTH PERSONNEL. (2017, April 1). Retrieved May 12, 2017, from https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf .**

3. Holmes, K. K. (2008). Sexually transmitted diseases. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical.

4. American Academy of Pediatrics., In Pickering, L. K., In Baker, C. J., In Kimberlin, D. W., In Long, S. S., & American Academy of Pediatrics. (2012). Red book: 2012 report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases.

5. **University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine. (2017). Clinical Skin Disease Images. Retrieved from https://medicine.uiowa.edu/dermatology/education/clinical-skin-disease-images.**

6. **"Lexi-Drugs Online," Lexi-Comp Database, Lexi-Comp, Inc., Hudson, Ohio (July 19, 2017).**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SYPHILIS, EARLY SYMPTOMATIC (PRIMARY and SECONDARY)

DEFINITION

Early symptomatic syphilis is the symptomatic stages occurring during the first year of untreated syphilis infection.

The primary stage is characterized by a painless, indurated ulcer (chancre) that appears at the site(s) of sexual exposure in about 21 days (range of 10-90 days) and lasts from 1 to 5 weeks before spontaneously healing.

The secondary stage, which usually appears 1 to 5 weeks after the primary chancre is healed, is characterized by a variety of skin or mucous membrane rashes or other type lesions. They will disappear spontaneously within 2 to 6 weeks, but may recur within the year.

ETIOLOGY

Treponema pallidum is a spirochete which causes syphilis. The primary chancre and certain moist lesions (condyloma lata or mucous patches) of secondary syphilis are very contagious, and sexual contact when such

lesions are present is the usual mode of transmission.

SUBJECTIVE

1. **Possible Primary Syphilis**

   a. **Painless open sore in the genital area.**
   b. **May have non-tender, swollen glands in the groin.**
   c. **No definitive history of contact to a known case of early syphilis, though patient may have noticed a suspicious lesion or rash on a sex partner.**

2. Primary Syphilis:

   a. Painless open sore, at a site of sexual exposure.
   b. Localized, non-tender swollen glands.

3. Secondary Syphilis: Has one or more of the following:

NOTE: Symptomatic neurosyphilis **(abnormal walk (gait), numbness in toes, feet, or legs, confusion or poor concentration, headaches, seizures, visual problems, weakness, or stiff neck)** can rarely occur in the secondary stage and should be considered if signs and/or symptoms of meningitis are present. **Any patient with signs or symptoms of meningitis should be referred to the nearest emergency room immediately.**

   a. Rough, red, or reddish-brown rash on the body and/or extremities. Rash usually does not itch.
   b. Growths/lesions in the anogenital region.
   c. Hair falling out.
   d. Swollen glands.
   e. Sores in the mouth, vagina, or anus.
   f. Fever, malaise.

OBJECTIVE

1. Primary Syphilis:

   a. Firm, round, painless ulcer (chancre) with an indurated border and relatively smooth base, at a site of sexual exposure, e.g., genitals, anus, mouth.
   b. Localized firm, non-tender, enlarged lymph nodes.

2. Secondary Syphilis (one or more of the following is present):

   a. Bilaterally symmetrical macular or papular, nonpruritic rash on body and/or extremities. May be only on the palms and soles (palmar/plantar).

b. Condyloma lata (large, raised, gray or white lesions, usually in the genital and/or anal region or mouth).
c. Patchy hair loss on scalp, eyebrows or eyelashes.
d. Generalized enlarged lymph nodes.
e. Mucous patches in the mouth or on the cervix.

PHYSICAL EXAM/ LAB FINDINGS

1. Primary Syphilis

a. Identification of *T. pallidum* on darkfield microscopic exam of serum from a chancre is definitive.

OR

b. Typical ulcer (chancre),

AND

A newly-reactive RPR, confirmed by a reactive treponemal EIA, A-TRP or TPPA,

OR

A four-fold or greater increase over the last known RPR titer in a patient with a previous history of syphilis is presumptive.

NOTE: Patients with a typical ulcer, a newly-reactive RPR or STAT POSTIVE RPR card test and no history of previous syphilis may be treated for primary syphilis prior to the results of the treponemal test being available.

c. A typical ulcer and exposure to a known case of early syphilis in the previous 10-90 days is suggestive of primary syphilis.

2. Secondary Syphilis

a. Identification of *T. pallidum* on darkfield microscopic exam of lesion material is definitive.

OR

b. Typical signs (e.g., rash, mucous patches)

AND

Newly-reactive RPR, confirmed by a treponemal test,

OR

A four-fold increase over the last known titer in a patient

with a previous history of syphilis is presumptive.

NOTE: Patients with secondary typical signs, a newly-reactive RPR or STAT POSITIVE RPR and no history of previous syphilis may be treated for secondary syphilis prior to the results of the treponemal test being available.

c. Typical dermatologic signs and exposure to a known case of early syphilis in the past six months is suggestive of secondary syphilis.

3. HIV-infected patients

When clinical findings are suggestive of syphilis but serologic tests are nonreactive or their interpretation is unclear, alternative tests may need to be considered. Neurosyphilis should be considered in HIV-infected patients with neurologic symptoms.

ASSESSMENT Primary Syphilis **OR** Secondary Syphilis

PLAN The desired outcome of case management is to ensure infection cure in the patient, prevention of infection in sexual partners exposed within the preceding 90 days, and congenital infection.

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. RPR titer, if not already done. False-positive nontreponemal test results can be associated with various medical conditions and factors unrelated to syphilis, including other infections (e.g., HIV), autoimmune conditions (e.g., Lupus), immunizations, pregnancy, IV drug use and older age. VDRL and RPR cannot be compared.

2. Repeat RPR, if lab results are equivocal or indeterminate in 2-4 weeks.

3. Confirmatory test by a reactive treponemal EIA, A-TRP, or TPPA. Interpretation of Syphilis EIA, A-TRP or TPPA results.

   a. Reactive means a diagnosis of syphilis is confirmed.
   b. Minimal reactive or equivocal means the test could not be called either reactive or non-reactive and a second specimen should be submitted for repeat testing in two to four weeks.
   c. Non-reactive means a diagnosis of syphilis is not confirmed.

4. If confirmatory test is reactive and the RPR (nontreponemal) is non-

reactive, redraw the RPR (nontreponemal) within two to four weeks.

5. If the RPR is negative, then a different treponemal test should be performed. If the second treponemal is negative and the risks are low, treatment may not be indicated.

6. Herpes culture/serology.

7. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown.

8. Recommendation: RPR STAT Card, if available. Must be able to titer out results if RPR STAT card report indicates positive findings, confirmed by a reactive treponemal EIA, A-TRP, or TPPA. If RPR card test is negative, titer out results to rule out prozone phenomenon (false negative test).

9. Recommendation: Darkfield microscopic exam if resources are available.

DIAGNOSTIC TEST	RESULTS
RPR	Non-confirmatory - Nontreponemal
VDRL	Non-confirmatory- Nontreponemal
A-TRP	Confirmatory- Treponemal
EIA	Confirmatory- Treponemal
FTA-ABS	Confirmatory- Treponemal
TPPA	Confirmatory- Treponemal

NOTE: Patients with a positive treponemal screening test should receive a nontreponemal test to confirm the screening test. If the nontreponemal test is negative, another type of treponemal test, different from the initial treponemal test (**A-TRP**, FTA-ABS, TPPA, or EIA), should be done.

THERAPEUTIC

NOTE: Empiric treatment for primary or secondary syphilis can be given if clinical manifestations (e.g., chancre, skin rash, lymphadenopathy) of primary or secondary are identified and the patient is unlikely to be located for treatment when test results are available. If empiric treatment is provided see patient education section for required education.

PHARMACOLOGIC

REMINDER: If Benzathine Penicillin G is in short supply, reserve existing penicillin for pregnant patients or HIV-infected patients.

NOTE: Any patients who test positive for syphilis should be tested for gonorrhea, chlamydia and HIV.

NOTE: Combinations of benzathine penicillin, procaine penicillin, and oral penicillin preparations are not considered appropriate for the treatment of syphilis.

1. **Recommended regimen i**f patient is neither pregnant nor HIV-infected:

   a. Benzathine Penicillin G, 2.4 million units (mu) IM, once.

   OR

   b. If history of allergy to penicillin, Doxycycline 100mg PO every 12 hours for 14 days (if patient is 8 years of age or older).

2. **Alternative regimen if patient is neither pregnant nor HIV-infected:**

   a. Tetracycline 500mg PO every 6 hours for 14 days if patient is 8 years of age or older.

3. If patient is HIV-infected**:**

   a. Benzathine Penicillin G, 2.4 million units IM, once.

   OR

   b. If **self-reported allergy** to penicillins, **refer to PCN allergy algorithm to rule out allergy in Appendix A.** If true allergy to penicillin, the patient must be referred for desensitization and subsequent treatment with penicillin.

NOTE: Persons with HIV infection who have primary or secondary syphilis should be treated as those without HIV infection.

4. Alternative Regimen if allergic to penicillin and desensitization is unavailable:

   a. Doxycycline 100mg PO every 12 hours for 14 days, with careful monitoring for compliance, (if patient is 8 years of age or older).

NOTE: The efficacy of the alternative regimen in HIV infected

population has not been well studied. Close serologic and clinical follow-up should be performed with alternative therapy.

5. If patient is pregnant:

a. Benzathine Penicillin G, 2.4 million units IM, once.
OR
b. If self-report allergy to penicillin, complete PCN allergy algorithm in Appendix A. If true allergy identified refer patient for skin testing and possible desensitization, then subsequent treatment with penicillin.

NOTE: Do not give Doxycycline or Tetracycline to lactating patient(s); patient(s) must be advised to discontinue breastfeeding throughout treatment and for two days after treatment or receive alternative regimen. If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment. Do not give to minors under the age of 8.

NOTE: Avoidance of breastfeeding has been and continues to be a standard, strong recommendation for HIV-infected women in the United States, because maternal ART dramatically reduces but does not eliminate breastmilk transmission. Further, safe infant feeding alternatives are readily available in the United States. In addition, there are concerns about other potential risks, including toxicity for the neonate or increased risk of development of ARV drug resistance, should transmission occur, due to variable passage of drugs into breastmilk.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING
(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts)

1. The name/significance of the infection. Educate for sequela and complications of the untreated infection (http://www.cdc.gov/std/syphilis/syphilis-factsheet-july-2014.pdf).

2. If patient is given oral medication provide patient with directions for taking the medication, possible side effects, and what to do about the side effects.

3. Inform patient(s) about the possibility of having a Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction (e.g. fever, chills, headache, myalgia, and

exacerbation of cutaneous lesions). Educate as follows:

a. If pregnant, seek medical care immediately if notice a change in fetal movement or uterine contractions. Pregnant women may have more severe reactions and should contact their prenatal care provider at the first sign or symptoms.

b. Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction may occur within 12 hours after treatment of early syphilis. Local reaction may consist of intensification of lesions (e.g., a chancre may become edematous or a faint secondary rash may become prominent).

c. Systemic reaction may consist of a rise in temperature to 101-102 degrees Fahrenheit. The self-limiting reaction usually lasts a few hours, but may be up to 24 hours. Antipyretic may be taken as needed. (If pregnant, seek medical care immediately if notice a change in fetal movement or uterine contractions.)

4. Signs and symptoms of neurosyphilis. See Appointment Card. If neurologic or ophthalmic disease is suspected patient should be referred for CSF analysis, otologic and ophthalmologic examination.

5. The need for, and schedule of, follow-up blood tests 6, and 12 months after treatment. Resolution of signs and symptoms should occur within 3 to 6 months and seroversion or a fold four decline in nontreponemal titers within 12 to 24 months.

6. Patients treated during the primary stage of syphilis may revert to being serologically nonreactive after 1-3 years.

7. Patients who receive positive treponemal screening test should have a standard nontreponemal test with titer preformed to guide patient management decisions.

8. Counseling regarding abstinence until therapy is completed.

9. **Advise the patient to return to clinic for all lab results even if presumptively treated at initial visit. Inform patient if lab results are positive additional treatment may be needed.**

10. The need for examination and treatment of sex partner(s) and avoidance of sex with untreated partner(s). Introduce the patient to the Communicable Disease Specialist who will assist them with notifying partner(s) of need for examination and treatment.

11. **Inform patient if additional lab(s) is/are positive, partner(s) will also need additional treatment.**

12. Assist patient in developing a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan and document patients plan. Abstain from sex until all the symptoms are resolved and partner(s) are tested and treated.

13. Refer all pregnant patients to OB/GYN or OB provider to seek prenatal care and/or fetal evaluation.

14. **All pregnant women should be tested for syphilis during 1st and 3rd trimester (TITLE 31. HEALTH CHAPTER 17. CONTROL OF VENEREAL DISEASE § 31-17-4.2. HIV and Syphilis Pregnancy Screening).**

15. Education and counseling of the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).

16. If patient is of childbearing age, counsel on the use of contraceptives to reduce the risk of unintended pregnancy.

17. If empiric treatment is provided, patient education must include:

    a. Information of presumptive therapy with pending lab results.
    b. Patient option to consent to treatment or refusal of treatment prior to lab results due to the high suspicion of syphilis.
    c. Patient must return for lab results.
    d. Patients should be referred to a Communicable Disease Specialist for further counseling.
    e. Updated demographics (current locating information, phone number, emergency contact, etc.) collected on patient and provided to CDS.

18. **Refer to the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for immunization recommendations for Hepatitis A, B and HPV https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/index.html) and the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual.**

MANAGEMENT OF SEX PARTNERS

1. **Provide written note(s) to patient to give to partner(s) to refer them to the HD for exam and treatment.**

2. Contacts to Primary Syphilis

   a. Examine and treat, with one of the regimens listed above, all referred partners exposed within 3 months of onset, or since onset, of symptoms.

3. Contacts to Secondary Syphilis

   a. Examine all referred partners exposed within 6 months of onset, or since onset, of symptoms.
   b. Treat (with one of the regimens listed above): All those exposed within the preceding 3 months, regardless of examination and serologic test results, and those exposed more than 3 months ago, if serologic test results are not immediately available and follow-up is uncertain.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Monitor compliance if taking **alternative regimen from Benzathine penicillin G.**

2. Schedule a routine appointment for a clinical evaluation and repeat RPR at 6 and 12 months after receiving treatment. Serologic response should be compared with the titer at the time of treatment.

3. If pregnant, clinical evaluation and RPRs should be done at least once during the third trimester and again at time of delivery. Monthly RPR titers may be indicated for women at high risk for reinfection.

4. HIV infected patients should be managed in the same manner as HIV-negative patients. However, HIV infected patients should have their RPR titers monitored at 3-month intervals for a year, and then at 24 months after therapy (3, 6,9,12, and 24 months).

5. Clinical presentation and RPR titer response should be appropriate for the stage of disease. RPR titers may decline more

slowly for patients that previously had syphilis.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Seek medical consultation from delegating physician if:

    a. Signs/symptoms persist or recur.
    b. A sustained four-fold increase in RPR titer compared to the baseline or maximum titer occurs. (The patient probably failed treatment or was re-infected. The patient should be re-treated and reevaluated for HIV infection and/or re-exposure. A cerebral spinal fluid exam should also be performed.).
    c. Titers have not declined fourfold within 6 months. The patient should be reevaluated for HIV infection. If further clinical and serologic follow up cannot be assured, re-treatment should be given.
    d. In either instance above, re-treatment should consist of three weekly doses of benzathine penicillin 2.4 million units IM, unless CSF exam indicates that neurosyphilis is present.
    e. Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed and STD nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.
    f. Probable or suspected cases of syphilis with clinical magnifications or reactive RPR titer consult with delegating physician immediately to initiate possible presumptive treatment while pending confirmation.
    g. Patient(s) with penicillin-allergy that need skin testing and desensitization, as necessary.

2. If patient displays signs/symptoms of neurologic or ophthalmic disease immediately refer patient to ER for emergency evaluation. Inform delegating physician of need for referral.

3. All primary and secondary syphilis cases should be referred to a Communicable Disease Specialist for further counseling and sex partner referral.

4. Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for reporting possible sexual or physical abuse of minors, if encountered, through history or physical. All suspected sexual or physical abuse of minors must be reported to the county

Department of Family and Children Services office as per Guidelines for Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel *https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf* .

REFERENCES

1. **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015, Vol. 64, No. RR-3, May 12, 2017.**

2. **GUIDELINES FOR MANDATORY REPORTING OF SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE for PUBLIC HEALTH PERSONNEL. (2017, April 1). Retrieved May 12, 2017, from https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf .**

3. Holmes, K. K. (2008). Sexually transmitted diseases. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical.

4. American Academy of Pediatrics., In Pickering, L. K., In Baker, C. J., In Kimberlin, D. W., In Long, S. S., & American Academy of Pediatrics. (2012). Red book: 2012 report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases.

5. **Centrs for Disease Control and Prevention. (October 18, 2016), Appendix C. STD Surveillance Case Definitions. Retrieved from https://www.cdc.gov/std/stats15/appendixc.htm.**

6. Erratum: *MMWR*, Vol. 59, RR-12, December 17, 2010.

7. CDC*, "*Case Definitions for Infectious Conditions under Public Health Surveillance," *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report,* Vol. 46, No. RR-10, May 2, 1997.

8. **University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine. (2017). Clinical Skin Disease Images. Retrieved from** https://medicine.uiowa.edu/dermatology/education/clinical-skin-disease-images**.**

9. **"Lexi-Drugs Online," Lexi-Comp Database, Lexi-Comp, Inc., Hudson, Ohio (July 19, 2017).**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR LATENT SYPHILIS (EARLY AND LATE)

DEFINITION

The intervals during untreated syphilis infection, after the primary stage, are characterized by seroreactivity without other evidence of disease. Diagnosis is dependent upon proper interpretation of serologic test results, history of contact to syphilis and/or history of previous signs and symptoms.

Patients who have latent syphilis acquired within the preceding year are classified as having early latent (EL) syphilis.

Late latent (LL) syphilis is defined as having latent syphilis for more than 1 year.

Neurosyphilis can occur at any stage of syphilis. Neurosyphilis is an infection of the brain or spinal cord. Neurosyphilis can apply to all stages of syphilis: primary syphilis, secondary syphilis, early latent syphilis, late latent syphilis, and late syphilis with clinical manifestations. Clinical description of symptomatic neurosyphilis can consist of abnormal walk (gait), numbness in toes, feet, or legs, confusion or poor concentration, headaches, seizures, visual problems, weakness, or stiff neck.

ETIOLOGY

Treponema pallidum, a spirochete is responsible for causing syphilis. Unless there are hidden lesions present during the early latent periods, the infection can only be spread through contact with infected blood, such as transplacentally from mother to unborn child.

SUBJECTIVE

1. No current symptoms.

2. May have a history of symptoms (lesions, rashes, etc.) suggestive of primary or secondary syphilis.

3. May have a history of sexual contact with a known case of syphilis.

OBJECTIVE

The following criteria are used to diagnose latent syphilis:

1. Early Latent Syphilis

   a. No clinical signs/symptoms

AND

Reactive RPR and confirmatory tests

AND

Patient has had the following within the past year:

1) A nonreactive serologic test or a four-fold titer increase on serial RPR test(s)

OR

2) Symptoms consistent with primary or secondary syphilis

OR

3) Sexual exposure to a known case of primary, secondary or early latent syphilis.

2. Late Latent Syphilis

a. No clinical signs/symptoms

AND

Reactive RPR and confirmatory tests

AND

The criteria for having acquired the infection within the preceding 12 months (see early latent syphilis above) are not met.

ASSESSMENT Early Latent Syphilis **OR** Late Latent Syphilis

PLAN The desired outcome of case management of early latent syphilis is to cure the infection in the patient and prevent development of infection in sexual partner(s) exposed within the preceding 90 days and **to prevent congenital syphilis** in a fetus. The desired outcome of treatment of late latent syphilis is to prevent the occurrence **of** or **thwart the** progression **of** late complications.

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Careful re-examination of all accessible mucosal surfaces (e.g., the oral cavity, the female perineum, and underneath the foreskin in uncircumcised males) to evaluate for internal mucosal lesions.

2. RPR titer, if not already performed.

3. Confirmatory test by a reactive treponemal EIA, A-TRP, or TPPA.

a. Interpretation of Syphilis EIA, TPPA or A-TRP results

1) Reactive means a diagnosis of syphilis is

confirmed.

2) **Minimal reactive or equivocal means the test could not be called either reactive or non-reactive and a second specimen should be submitted for repeat testing in 2-4 weeks.**
3) **Non-reactive means a diagnosis of syphilis is not confirmed.**

4. Review Appointment Card Signs/Symptoms of Neurosyphilis with patient, if any found, refer immediately for emergency evaluation and notify delegating physician.

THERAPEUTIC

NOTE: After the completion of neurosyphilis treatment, benzathine penicillin 2.4 million units IM X 3 can be considered to provide total duration of therapy.

NOTE: PCN allergy algorithm should be completed on all patients who report penicillin allergy. Persons with a true penicillin allergy whose compliance with therapy or follow-up cannot be ensured should be desensitized and treated with benzathine penicillin.

PHARMACOLOGIC

REMINDER: If Benzathine Penicillin G is in short supply, reserve existing penicillin for pregnant and HIV-infected patients.

1. Early Latent Syphilis

a. The preferred regimen for patients who are not pregnant, not allergic to penicillin, are HIV negative and neurosyphilis is ruled out (see appointment card):
   1) Benzathine Penicillin G, 2.4 million units IM, once.

OR

b. **Alternative regimen:**
   1) Doxycycline 100mg PO every 12 hours for 14 days, with careful monitoring for compliance, (if patient is 8 years of age or older).

NOTE: Do not give Doxycycline to lactating patient(s); patient(s) must be advised to discontinue breastfeeding throughout treatment and for two days after treatment is

completed or receive alternative regimen. If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment. Do not give to minors under the age of 8.

c. If patient is pregnant and neurosyphilis is ruled out (see appointment card
   1) Benzathine Penicillin G, 2.4 million units IM, once.
   2) If patient is pregnant **a true PCN allergy is identified** refer to allergist for desensitization with subsequent treatment with penicillin. **PCN allergy algorithm should be completed on all patients who report penicillin allergy.**

d. If patient is HIV infected and neurosyphilis is ruled out (see appointment card):
   1) Benzathine Penicillin G, 2.4 million units IM, once.

   NOTE: PCN allergy algorithm should be completed on all patients who report penicillin allergy. If patient is HIV infected and a true PCN allergy is identified refer to allergist for desensitization with subsequent treatment with penicillin.

e. **Alternative regimen if allergic to penicillin and desensitization is unavailable:**
   1) Doxycycline 100 mg PO, 2 times a day for 14 days, with careful monitoring for compliance, (if patient is 8 years of age or older).

   NOTE: The efficacy of the Doxycycline regimen in HIV infected population has not been well studied. Close serologic and clinical follow-up should be performed with Doxycycline therapy.

NOTE: If patient is pregnant, and/or HIV infected, or has signs and symptoms of neurosyphilis, refer immediately for emergency evaluation. Delegating physician, Allergist and Infectious Disease specialist should be consulted.

2. Late Latent Syphilis

   a. If patient is not pregnant, not allergic to penicillin**,** is HIV

negative and does not have neuropsychiatric signs/ symptoms the preferred regimen is:

1) Benzathine Penicillin G, 2.4 million units IM, once for 3 doses (7.2 million units total).

NOTE: An interval of up to 10-14 days between doses may occur without re-starting the sequence of injections

OR

2) **PCN allergy algorithm should be completed on all patients who report penicillin allergy. If true PCN allergy identified refer to allergist for desensitization with subsequent treatment with penicillin.**

OR

3) If allergic to penicillin, and neurosyphilis has been ruled out, Doxycycline 100mg PO every 12 hours for 28 days (if patient is 8 years of age or older), with careful monitoring for compliance

OR

4) Tetracycline 500mg PO every 6 hours for 28 days, (if patient is 8 years of age or older) with careful monitoring for compliance.

NOTE: Do not give Doxycycline or Tetracycline to HIV infected patient(s), lactating patient(s); patient(s) must be advised to discontinue breastfeeding throughout treatment and for two days after treatment or receive alternative regimen. If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment. Do not give to minors under the age of 8.

If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment. Do not give to minors under the age of 8.

b. If patient is pregnant and does not have neuropsychiatric signs/symptoms:

1) Benzathine Penicillin G, 2.4 million units IM, once

weekly for 3 doses (7.2 million units total).

NOTE: Pregnant patients who miss any dose of therapy, scheduled at 7-day intervals, must restart the sequence of injections.

OR

2) **PCN allergy algorithm should be completed on all patients who report penicillin allergy.** If patient is pregnant and **a true PCN allergy is identified** refer to allergist for desensitization with subsequent treatment with: Benzathine Penicillin G, 2.4 million units IM, weekly for 3 doses (7.2 million units total).

NOTE: Lactating mothers should not take Doxycycline longer than 4 weeks (28 days) or Tetracycline longer than 3 weeks (21 days). If lactating mothers are going to take Doxycycline or Tetracycline longer than specified, they must be advised to discontinue breastfeeding. If breastfeeding women are pumping they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant. Once long term treatment is completed, breastfeeding may be resumed after 48 hours.

NOTE: Do not give Doxycycline or Tetracycline to minors under the age of 8.

c. If patient is HIV infected and does not have neuropsychiatric signs/symptoms:

1) Benzathine Penicillin G, 2.4 million units IM, once for 3 doses (7.2 million units total).

NOTE: Patient(s) who miss any dose of therapy, scheduled at 7-day intervals, must restart the sequence of injections.

OR

2) If patient has a history of allergy to penicillin, refer to allergist for skin testing and possible desensitization, with subsequent treatment with Benzathine Penicillin G, 2.4 million units IM once weekly for 3 doses (7.2 million units total).

3) Alternative regimen if allergic to penicillin and

desensitization is unavailable: Doxycycline 100mg PO every 12 hours a day for 28 days, with careful monitoring for compliance, (if patient is 8 years of age or older).

NOTE: The efficacy of the Doxycycline regimen in HIV infected population has not been well studied. Close serologic monitoring and clinical follow-up should be performed with Doxycycline therapy.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING
(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts).

1. The name/significance of the infection. Educate for sequela and complications of the untreated infection (https://www.cdc.gov/std/syphilis/stdfact-syphilis.htm).

2. If given oral medication, directions for administration and management of possible side effects.

3. Inform patients about the possibility of having a Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction (e.g. fever, chills, headache, myalgia, and exacerbation of cutaneous lesions). Please educate patients as follows:

    a. If patient is pregnant, instruct patient to seek medical care immediately if she notices a change in fetal movement or uterine contractions. Pregnant women may have more severe reactions and should contact their prenatal care provider at the first sign of symptoms.
    b. Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction may occur within 12 hours after treatment of early syphilis. Local reaction may consist of intensification of lesions (e.g., a chancre may become edematous or a faint secondary rash may become prominent).
    c. Systemic reaction may consist of a rise in temperature to 101-102 degrees Fahrenheit. The self-limiting reaction usually lasts a few hours, but may be up to 24 hours. Antipyretic may be taken as needed.
    d. Pregnant women may have more severe reactions and should contact their prenatal care provider at the first sign or symptoms. (If pregnant, seek medical care immediately if notice a change in fetal movement or uterine contractions).

4. The need for and frequency of follow-up blood tests.

5. For early latent syphilis, the need for examination of sex partners and avoidance of sex with untreated partners. Introduce patients to the communicable disease specialist who will assist them with partner notification.

6. For late syphilis without neuropsychiatric signs/symptoms, give patient appointment card containing signs and symptoms of neurosyphilis with instructions on when to return.

7. Seropositive pregnant women should be considered infected unless adequate documentation of treatment history in medical records and titers has declined.

8. **All pregnant women should be tested for syphilis during 1st and 3rd trimester (TITLE 31. HEALTH CHAPTER 17. CONTROL OF VENEREAL DISEASE § 31-17-4.2. HIV and Syphilis Pregnancy Screening).**

9. Pregnant women diagnosed for syphilis in 2nd trimester, should be referred to OB/GYN or OB provider for sonographic fetal evaluation for congenital syphilis.

10. Assist patient in developing a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan and document patients plan. Abstain from sex until all the symptoms are resolved and partner(s) are tested and treated.

11. Education and counseling of the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).

12. **Do not give Doxycycline or Tetracycline to lactating or pregnant patient(s); lactating patient(s) must be advised to discontinue breastfeeding throughout treatment and for two days after treatment is completed or receive alternative regimen. If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment. Do not give to minors under the age of 8.**

13. Women who are breastfeeding should not receive Doxycycline. If Doxycycline is given to breastfeeding women, they should discontinue breastfeeding throughout treatment and can resume

breastfeeding two days after completion of treatment. If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment.

14. If patient is of childbearing age, counsel on the use of contraceptives to reduce the risk of unintended pregnancy.

15. Review Appointment Card Signs/Symptoms of Neurosyphilis with patient. Refer all patients who have neuropsychiatric signs/symptoms immediately to ER for emergency evaluation; consult with delegating physician, allergist and infectious disease specialist. If no symptoms, review instructions on when to return for follow-up.

16. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown.

17. Refer pregnant patients to OBGYN or OB provider for prenatal care.

18. **Refer to the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for immunization recommendations for Hepatitis A, B and HPV (https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/index.html) and the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual.**

MANAGEMENT OF SEX PARTNERS

1. Provide written note(s) to patient to give to sex partner(s) to come into health department for examination and treatment.

2. Contacts to Early Latent Syphilis:

    a. Examine all referred partners from the previous year.
    b. Treat all contacts exposed within the past 3 months, regardless of examination and serologic test results (with one of the above single dose or 14-day regimens).
    c. Treat all contacts exposed beyond 3 months ago, if serologic test results are not immediately available and follow-up is uncertain.

3. Contacts to Late Latent Syphilis:

a. Evaluate steady (e.g., marital) sex partners. No treatment is needed unless the partner is found to be infected.
b. Minors born to an infected female within the past few years should also be evaluated.

FOLLOW-UP (All latent syphilis)

1. Repeat RPR at 6, 12, and 24 months after treatment. Evaluate for possible neurosyphilis and re-treat appropriately if:

   a. Titers increase fourfold.
   b. If an initially high titer (at least 1:32) fails to decline at least fourfold within 12 to 24 months.
   c. If the patient develops signs or symptoms attributable to syphilis.

2. If the patient is HIV-infected, repeat RPR at 6, 12, 18 and 24 months after treatment. Refer patient for CSF (cerebrospinal fluid) exam and re-treat accordingly if:
3.
   a. Signs or symptoms of syphilis recur.
   b. If signs or symptoms of neurosyphilis develop.
   c. If titers rise fourfold.

4. Persons who have syphilis and symptoms or signs suggesting neurologic disease (e.g., cranial nerve dysfunction, meningitis, stroke, and hearing loss) or ophthalmic disease (e.g., uveitis, iritis, neuroretinitis, and optic neuritis) should be referred to infectious disease specialist and/or ophthalmologist for evaluation that includes CSF analysis, ocular slit-lamp ophthalmologic examination, and otologic examination. Treatment should be guided by the results of this evaluation.

5. A CSF examination should be performed if:

   a. A sustained (longer than 2 weeks) fourfold increase or greater in titer is observed.
   b. An initially high titer (1:32 or greater) fails to decline at least fourfold within 12–24 months of therapy.
   c. Signs or symptoms attributable to syphilis develop.
   d. In such circumstances, patients with CSF abnormalities should be treated for neurosyphilis. If

the CSF examination is negative, retreatment for latent syphilis should be administered. Serologic titers might fail to decline despite a negative CSF examination and a repeated course of therapy, especially if the initial nontreponemal titer is low (less than 1:8); in these circumstances, the need for additional therapy or repeated CSF examinations is unclear but is generally not recommended. Serologic and clinical monitoring should be offered along with a reevaluation for HIV infection.

6. If pregnant, clinical evaluation and RPRs should be performed at least once during the third trimester and again at delivery.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Consult delegating physician if further medical guidance is needed and STD nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

2. Refer all patients who have neuropsychiatric signs/symptoms immediately to ER for emergency evaluation; consult with delegating physician, allergist and infectious disease specialist.

3. **PCN allergy algorithm should be completed on all patients who report penicillin allergy.**

4. Pregnant women diagnosed for syphilis in 2nd trimester, should be referred to OB/GYN or OB provider for sonographic fetal evaluation for congenital syphilis.

5. **If a true allergy is identified**, refer to a primary care physician or dermatologist for skin testing for penicillin allergy and possible desensitization.

6. All latent syphilis cases should be referred to a Communicable Disease Specialist for further counseling and sex partner referral.

7. **Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for reporting possible sexual or physical abuse of minors, if encountered, through history or physical. All suspected sexual or physical abuse of minors must be reported to the county Department of Family and Children Services office as**

per Guidelines for Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel ***https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf*** **.**

8. Refer pregnant patients to OB/GYN or OB provider for prenatal care.

NOTE: **The following appointment card depicts some of the symptoms and signs of Neurosyphilis.** Patient **Health Information:**

You have been treated for Syphilis. This infection is curable if treated properly. It is very important that you return for treatment as discussed by the doctor or nurse to cure the infection and prevent progression of the infection. To ensure the infection has been cured, it is important that you repeat blood work every:

- **6 months (after initial treatment)**
- **12 months (for follow-up)**
- **24 months (for further follow-up)**

Return to:

PLACE HEALTH CLINIC LABEL HERE

On the following Dates:

Date	Treatment

If you are having complications, have been re-exposed to this infection or feel you are having signs and symptoms, please return as soon as possible.

If you or someone else notices you are having any of these signs and/or symptoms, you should return to the clinic or report to your primary care physician right away.

- ☐ **Memory Loss**
- ☐ **Problems with Mental Function**
- ☐ **Unsteady Walking**
- ☐ **Balance Problems (Dizziness or Faint)**
- ☐ **Urinary Problems (Can't Hold Pee)**
- ☐ **Bowel Problems (Can't hold bowel movements)**
- ☐ **Vision Problems (Blurred vision, loss of vision)**
- ☐ **Eye Pain**
- ☐ **Problems Having Sex**
- ☐ **Numbness or Loss of Feeling in Legs**
- ☐ **Stiff Neck**
- ☐ **Headache**
- ☐ **Fever**
- ☐ **Loss of Hearing**
- ☐ **Persistent Nausea and Vomiting (Always throwing up)**
- ☐ **Seizures**
- ☐ **Stroke**
- ☐ **Unexplained Episodes of Severe Pain**

Appointment Card

PLACE HEALTH CLINIC LABEL HERE

REFERENCES

1. **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015, Vol. 64, No. RR-3, May 12, 2017.**

2. **GUIDELINES FOR MANDATORY REPORTING OF SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE for PUBLIC HEALTH PERSONNEL. (2017, April 1). Retrieved May 12, 2017, from https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf .**

3. Holmes, K. K. (2008). Sexually transmitted diseases. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical.

4. American Academy of Pediatrics., In Pickering, L. K., In Baker, C. J., In Kimberlin, D. W., In Long, S. S., & American Academy of Pediatrics. (2012). Red book: 2012 report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases.

5. **University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine. (2017). Clinical Skin Disease Images. Retrieved from https://medicine.uiowa.edu/dermatology/education/clinical-skin-disease-images**.

6. **"Lexi-Drugs Online," Lexi-Comp Database, Lexi-Comp, Inc., Hudson, Ohio (July 19, 2017).**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PEDICULOSIS PUBIS (crabs/pubic lice)

DEFINITION **Pediculosis pubis is an** infestation of pubic hair **with pubic louse**, pubic louse may also infest facial hair or eyelashes. Lice deposit eggs (nits) on the hair shaft; nits hatch in one week. Keep a high index of suspicion of sexual molestation in minors with pubic lice.

ETIOLOGY Crab louse, Phthirus pubis, typically spread by sexual contact or sleeping in the same bed. Nymphs and adult lice feed on human **blood; only the body louse is known to spread disease**. Incubation period is approximately 6-10 days.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Itching in the pubic area.
2. "Bugs" or "crabs in pubic area."

OBJECTIVE

1. Identification of lice, larvae, or nits attached to genital hair.

OR

2. History of exposure to pubic lice and pruritic, reddened macules or papules or secondary excoriations are observed in the genital area.

ASSESSMENT Pediculosis Pubis (Crab or Pubic Lice)

PLAN **The desired outcome of treatment is to eliminate lice and nits from patients and their clothing and bedding.**

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Identification of lice, larvae, or nits attached to genital hairs.
2. History of exposure to pubic lice and pruritic, reddened macules or papules or secondary excoriations are observed in the genital area.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Any patients who **are diagnosed with** pubic lice/crabs should be tested for gonorrhea, chlamydia, syphilis and HIV.

NOTE: Persons who have pediculosis pubis and also HIV infection should receive the same treatment regimen as those who are HIV negative.

NOTE: Prior to treatment of minors, consult with or refer to primary care provider. Keep a high index of suspicion of sexual molestation in minors with pubic lice.

1. Patients at least 2 months of age may use:

   a. Permethrin 1% cream rinse (e.g., NIX) applied to the affected area and washed off after 10 minutes. May repeat in 1 week if live lice are still found.

   NOTE: Patients who are breastfeeding should discontinue throughout treatment and can resume breastfeeding two days after completion of treatment. If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment. Do not give to ragweed sensitized patients.

   OR

   b. Pyrethrins with Piperonyl Butoxide (e.g., RID) applied to the affected area and washed off after 10 minutes.

   NOTE: Patients who are breastfeeding should discontinue during the duration of treatment and can resume breastfeeding two days after completion of treatment. If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant during duration of treatment nor two days after completion of treatment.

   Do not give to ragweed or chrysanthemums sensitized patients.

2. Mild topical antipruritic/anti-inflammatory cream or ointment may be obtained OTC for itching.

3. Alternative Regimens may be ordered, administered and dispensed after consulting with delegating physician.

   a. If patient is at least 2 years of age weighs at least 15 kg, and is not pregnant give Ivermectin 250mcg/kg PO once. Repeat in two weeks.

   NOTE: Patients who are breastfeeding should discontinue throughout treatment and can resume breastfeeding two days after completion of treatment.

If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment.

OR

b. If age is equal or greater than six years of age give Malathion 0.5% lotion applied for 8-12 hours and then washed off. May reapply in 7-9 days if needed.

NOTE: Malathion lotion is flammable; patients must avoid heat sources (fire, hair, dryers, curling irons, etc.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

Bedding and clothing should be decontaminated (e.g., either machine-washed with hot water, or machine-dried using the heat cycle or dry-cleaned) or removed from body contact for at least 72 hours (clean clothing should be worn after treatment).

PATIENTS EDUCATION/COUNSELING
(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts)

1. The name/significance of the infection. Educate for sequelae and complications of the untreated infection (http://www.ashasexualhealth.org/stdsstis/crabs/).

2. How to apply prescribed medication and decontaminate clothing and bedding. Fumigation of living areas is not necessary.

3. Inform all sex/bed partners from within the preceding month to obtain over the counter medication and complete treatment as soon as possible. Avoid sex or sleeping with untreated partners.

4. Education and counseling of the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).

5. If patient is of childbearing age, counsel on the use of contraceptives to reduce the risk of unintended pregnancy.

6. Assist patient in developing a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan and document patients plan. Abstain from sex until all the symptoms are resolved.

7. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown.

8. Refer to the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for immunization recommendations for Hepatitis A, B and HPV (https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/index.html) and the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Reevaluate in 1 week if symptoms persist.

2. Re-treatment may be necessary if lice or eggs are found.
   If no response to initial treatment, re-treatment with a different regimen is recommended.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Consult with delegating physician:

   a. Regarding any question of management.
   b. Consult delegating physician for referral of pediculosis pubis of the eyelashes/eyebrows.
   c. Consult with delegating physician for treatment of patients related to pediculosis pubis outbreak (e.g. nursing homes, jails, schools, and other communities).
   d. Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed and/or STD nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

2. **Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for reporting possible sexual or physical abuse of minors, if encountered, through history or physical. All suspected sexual or physical abuse of minors must be reported to the county Department of Family and Children Services office as per Guidelines for Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf .**

REFERENCES

1. **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015, Vol. 64, No. RR-3, May 12, 2017.**

2. **GUIDELINES FOR MANDATORY REPORTING OF SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE for PUBLIC HEALTH PERSONNEL. (2017, April 1). Retrieved May 12, 2017, from https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf .**

3. *Mark Lebwohl, Lily Clark and Jacob Lev*itt, "Therapy for Head Lice B*ased* on Life Cycle, Resistance, and Safety Considerations," *Pediatrics*, 2007, 119: 965-974.

4. Holmes, K. K. (2008). Sexually transmitted diseases. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical.

5. American Academy of Pediatrics., In Pickering, L. K., In Baker, C. J., In Kimberlin, D. W., In Long, S. S., & American Academy of Pediatrics. (2012). Red book: 2012 report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases.

6. **University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine. (2017). Clinical Skin Disease Images. Retrieved from https://medicine.uiowa.edu/dermatology/education/clinical-skin-disease-images.**

7. **"Lexi-Drugs Online," Lexi-Comp Database, Lexi-Comp, Inc., Hudson, Ohio (July 19, 2017).**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SCABIES RELATED TO SEXUAL TRANSMISSION

NOTE: Refer to Child Health Scabies Protocol when infection can be ruled out as acquired through sexual transmission

DEFINITION

Scabies due to sexual transmission is the infestation with the "itch mite" which penetrates the skin, creating visible papules, vesicles, or small, linear burrows, which contain the mites and their eggs. Common sites in adults include the flexor surface of the wrists, webbing between fingers, anterior axillary folds, the external genitalia, and the inner aspects of the upper thigh. In infants, other skin areas including the neck, face and scalp may be affected.

The predominant symptom is pruritus due to sensitization. It begins two to six weeks after the first infestation, sooner after subsequent infestations. Complications include excoriations and secondary infections due to scratching.

ETIOLOGY

Scabies is caused by *Sarcoptes scabiei*, the itch mite, which travels from body to body through close physical contact, sleeping in the same bed or sharing clothing. Lesions may be seen only in the genital and adjacent areas when spread sexually. The incubation period in people with no previous exposure is 4-6 weeks. People who have been previously infested are sensitized and can develop symptoms 1-4 days after exposure.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Severe itching, usually worse at night, associated with a "breaking out" or rash.

2. May have history of similar symptoms in other family members, playmates, or sexual partners.

OBJECTIVE

1. Burrows in the skin, appearing as finely-raised, wavy lines from a few millimeters to a centimeter in length.

2. Papules or vesicles.

3. Excoriations and possible signs of secondary infection from scratching.

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION/LAB FINDINGS

1. Gross or microscopic identification of mites, larva or eggs on scraping from papules or burrows.

OR

2. Burrows in the skin or characteristic pruritic, erythematous,

papular eruptions, and other causes of dermatitis are excluded.

3. Diagnosis is suggestive in a patient who has had sexual or other close physical contact to a patient infested with scabies and has compatible skin lesions.

ASSESSMENT Scabies **due to sexual transmission**

PLAN The desired outcome of treatment is to eliminate the mites and relieve symptoms.

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

NOTE: If the patient is symptomatic for scabies and denies sexual (vaginal, penile, oral or anal) intercourse in the past 60 days, Scabies can be treated as **outlined** per protocol without STI screening (CT, GC, RPR, HIV). Documentation of assessment must be completed. Patient should be educated regarding the missed opportunity of screening for other STIs and possibility of asymptomatic infections.

1. Gross or microscopic identification of mites, larva or eggs on scraping from papules or burrows.

2. Burrows in the skin or characteristic pruritic, erythematous, papular eruptions, and other causes of dermatitis are excluded.

3. Diagnosis is suggestive in a patient who has had sexual or other close physical contact to a patient infested with scabies and has compatible skin lesions.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Any patients who test positive for scabies related to sexual transmission should be tested for gonorrhea, chlamydia, syphilis and HIV.

NOTE: Persons with HIV infection who have uncomplicated scabies should receive the same treatment regimens as those who are HIV negative. Persons with HIV infection and others who are immunosuppressed are at increased risk for crusted scabies. Such persons should be managed in consultation with a specialist.

1. Recommended regimen for nonpregnant, nonlactating patient **at least 2 months of age:**

a. Permethrin 5% Cream (e.g., Elimite), single application. Thoroughly massage into all skin from the neck down to the soles of the feet, avoiding contact with mucous membranes, eyes and mouth. Remove by washing after 8-14 hours.

b. If age is equal or greater than 2 years of age and weigh at least 15kg. Ivermectin 200mcg/kg orally, repeated in 2 weeks.

NOTE: Patients who are breastfeeding will need to discontinue until 72 hours after last treatment.

2. Alternative regimen for nonpregnant, nonlactating patients at least 2 months of age:

a. Lindane 1% lotion (1 oz.) or cream (30g), single application to all skin areas from neck down and thoroughly wash off in 8 hours.

NOTE: [ALERT; US BOXED WARNING] Lindane is not recommended as first-line therapy because of toxicity. Use only as an alternative due to inability to tolerate other therapies or if other therapies have failed. All patients must be provided a medication guide. Do not use Lindane:

1) Immediately after bath or shower.
2) If patient has extensive dermatitis.
3) In pregnant women or lactating women.
4) In minors, less than 2 years of age.
5) In those who weigh less than 110 pounds.
6) If patient has uncontrolled seizures.

3. Pregnant or lactating females

NOTE: Treat only if clearly indicated; they should discontinue breastfeeding throughout treatment and can resume breastfeeding two days after completion of treatment. If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment.

a. Permethrin 5% Cream, as above.

NOTE: Avoidance of breastfeeding has been and continues to be a standard, strong recommendation for HIV-infected women in the United States, because maternal ART dramatically reduces but does not eliminate breastmilk transmission. Further, safe infant feeding alternatives are

readily available in the United States. In addition, there are concerns about other potential risks, including toxicity for the neonate or increased risk of development of ARV drug resistance, should transmission occur, due to variable passage of drugs into breastmilk.

4. For relief of itching, suggest an **OTC** oral **or topical** antihistamine.

5. Bacitracin ointment (OTC) for mild secondary infection

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Bedding and clothing should be decontaminated (e.g., either dry cleaned or machine-washed and dried using the hot cycle) or removed from body contact for at least 72 hours. Fumigation of living areas is unnecessary.

2. Keep fingernails clean and well-trimmed to minimize secondary infection from scratching.

3. Bathe in cool water using a mild soap.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING
(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts.)

1. The name/significance of the infection. Educate for possible sequelae and complications of the untreated infection (http://www.ashasexualhealth.org/stdsstis/scabies/).

2. Directions for use of medication and management of possible side effects.

3. Itching may persist for up to two weeks even after successful treatment. Over the counter, Hydrocortisone cream (only use after diagnosis has been made) or Benadryl cream may relieve persistent itching.

4. Education and counseling of the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).

5. If patient is of childbearing age, counsel on the use of contraceptives to reduce the risk of unintended pregnancy.

6. Assist patient in developing a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan and document patients plan. Abstain from sex until all the

symptoms are resolved.

7. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown.

8. **Refer to the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for immunization recommendations for Hepatitis A, B and HPV (https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/index.html) and the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual.**

MANAGEMENT OF PARTNERS

Those that have had close personal, household contacts, or sexual partners within the **past** month need examination and treatment.

FOLLOW-UP

Reexamine in **2** weeks. Retreatment can be considered after 2 weeks for patients who are still symptomatic or if live mites are present. Treatment with an alternative regimen (e.g., Lindane) is recommended for patients who do not respond to the recommended treatment. If alternative regimen is contraindicated refer patient to primary care physician or dermatologist.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Refer to Child Health Scabies Protocol when infection can be ruled out **as being** acquired through sexual transmission.

2. Consult with delegating physician:

   a. For repeated **treatment** failure **or failure** to respond to treatment.
   b. For severe secondary infection.
   c. For treatment of patients related to scabies outbreak (nursing homes, jails, schools, and other communities) **prior to use of Lindane on any patient.**

3. **When further medical guidance is needed and STD nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.**

4. Refer infants younger than 2 months of age to primary care physician or pediatrician for evaluation and treatment may also refer to the Child Health Standard Nurse Protocol for Scabies.

5. **Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for reporting possible sexual or physical abuse of minors, if encountered, through history or physical. All suspected sexual or physical abuse of minors must be reported to the county Department of Family and Children Services office as per Guidelines for Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel *https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf*.**

REFERENCES

1. **Centers for Disease Control and *Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015, Vo*l. 64, No. RR-3, May 12, 2017.**

2. **GUIDELINES FOR MANDATORY REPORTING OF SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE for PUBLIC HEALTH PERSONNEL. (2017, April 1). Retrieved May 12, 2017, from https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf .**

3. **"Lexi-Drugs Online," Lexi-Comp Database, Lexi-Comp, Inc., Hudson, Ohio (July 19, 2017).**

4. Holmes, K. K. (2008). Sexually transmitted diseases. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical.

5. American Academy of Pediatrics., In Pickering, L. K., In Baker, C. J., In Kimberlin, D. W., In Long, S. S., & American Academy of Pediatrics. (2012). Red book: 2012 report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases.

6. **University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine. (2017). Clinical Skin Disease Images. Retrieved from https://medicine.uiowa.edu/dermatology/education/clinical-skin-disease-images.**

GA Department of Public Health Penicillin Allergy Testing (PRE-PEN) Protocol

Patient Criteria

Who to test:

- Patients who report a penicillin allergy that may be IgE mediated but cannot remember their reaction and there is no objective data confirming the allergy.
- Penicillin is clinically indicated and is considered by the prescriber to be the preferred agent.
- Penicillin or beta-lactam antibiotics are withheld due to concern for allergy.

Who NOT to test:

- Patients known to be extremely hypersensitive to penicillin, e.g. anaphylactic reaction within the last 5 years.
- Patients with clear history of severe skin reaction such as Stevens-Johnson syndrome or toxic epidermal necrolysis.
- Patients who have received antihistamines within the last 48-72 hours.

Procedure

Step 1. Prick Test

a. Clean the volar surface of either forearm with an alcohol swab.
b. Using an ink pen, draw 3 vertical lines approximately 1 inch apart on the designated testing site of the arm labeling testing sites as follows: PRP, PG, +, –
c. In quick sequence, apply skin prick tests with PRE-PEN (PRP), penicillin G (PG), histamine (+) and saline (–).

    - Tests are conducted by applying a small drop of solution from the corresponding prefilled syringe and then making a single, shallow puncture of the epidermis using a twisting motion with a Duotip Test-II pricking device. Use a new pricking device per site.

d. Read the test in 15-20 minutes: (document test results below)

    - The positive control (histamine skin test) should be positive (> 3 mm wheal) to ensure the test is working properly. Flare and itching at positive control site are common.
    - Test is <u>negative:</u> change in diameter of PRE-PEN and PenG wheal is less than 3 mm than that observed with the negative control. <u>Proceed to intradermal test.</u>
    - Test is <u>positive:</u> change in diameter of PRE-PEN or PenG wheal is greater than 3 mm than that observed with the negative control. As soon as a positive response is observed, the solution should be wiped off the skin. <u>Do not proceed to</u>

intradermal test.

Step 2. Intradermal Test

a. Only conduct this test if patient produced a negative result with the prick test in step 1. Select 5 sites on the volar surface on the forearm. These sites should be on the opposite arm from the prick test if possible. Clean area with alcohol swab and label testing sites as PRP, PRP, PG, PG, C.
b. Using prefilled PRE-PEN syringe, intradermally inject 0.02 ml of PRE-PEN solution in duplicate (separate at least 2 cm apart). Mark the perimeter of each initial bleb with an ink pen.
c. Using prefilled PenG syringe, intradermally inject 0.02 ml of Pen G in duplicate (separate at least 2 cm apart). Mark the perimeter of each initial bleb with an ink pen.
d. Using prefilled saline syringe, intradermally inject 0.02 ml of saline. Mark the perimeter of initial bleb with an ink pen.
e. Read the test in 15-20 minutes: (document test results below)

- Test is negative: there is no increase in the original bleb and no greater reaction than the negative control site.
- Test is positive: bleb or wheal increases >3 mm from its original size. Patient is NOT to receive penicillin.

Step 3. (Optional) Oral Penicillin Challenge

a. Give patient oral penicillin (e.g., amoxicillin 250mg) challenge and move patient to in a monitored setting for 61 minutes.

Results

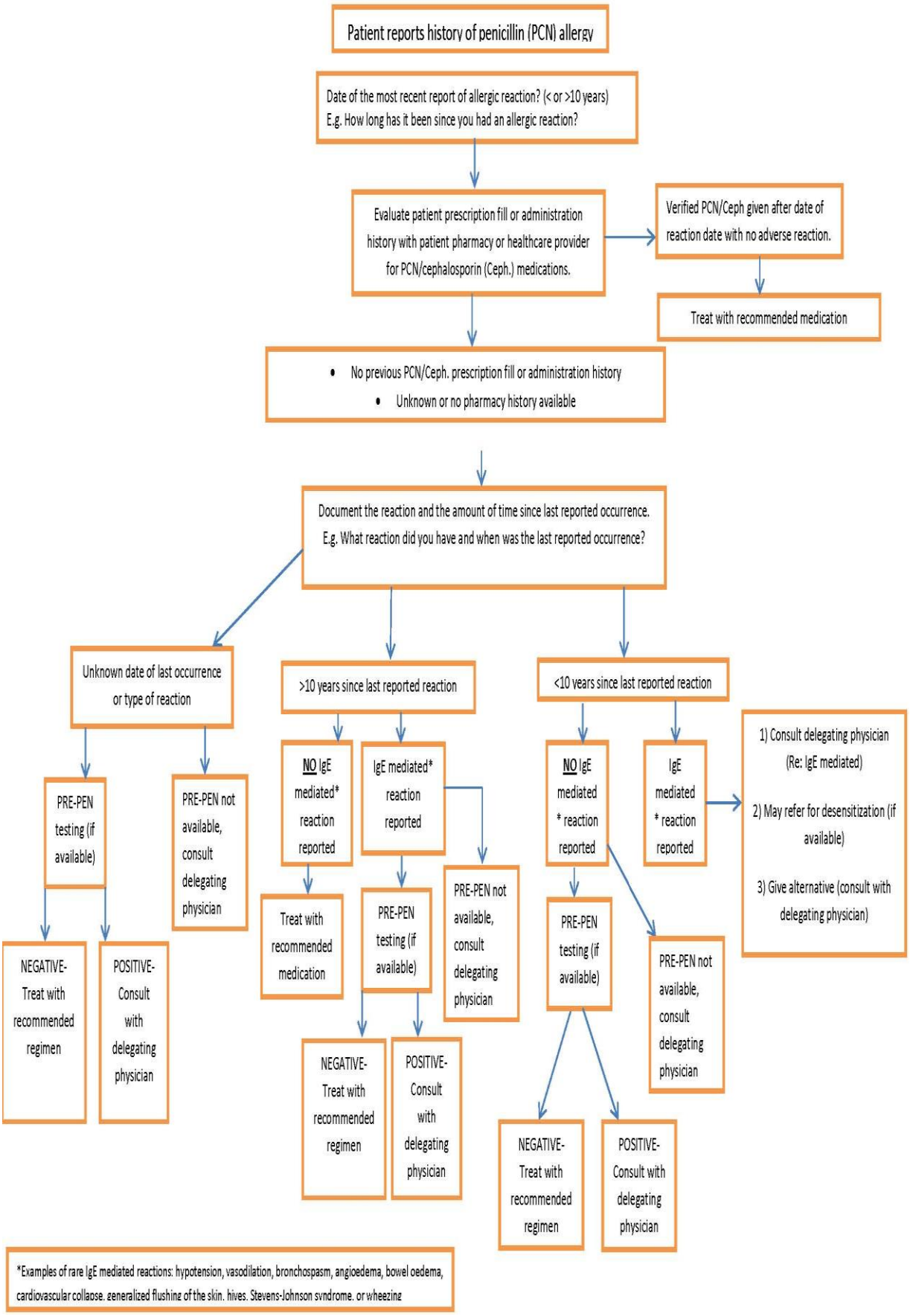
Patient: _____
DOB:_____
Nurse Performing Test: _____

Test Date	Product	Prick Width (mm)	Intradermal #1 Width (mm)	Intradermal #2 Width (mm)	Results (Pos/Neg/Ambiguous)
	PrePen (undiluted)				
	Penicillin G (10,000 U/ml)				
	Diluent Control				
	Histamine (1.0mg/ml)				

Interpretation:

- ☐ NEGATIVE for penicillin allergy
- ☐ POSITIVE for penicillin allergy

Physician Signature: _____ Date: _____ Time: _____


Patient reports history of penicillin (PCN) allergy
Date of the most recent report of allergic reaction? (< or >10 years) E.g. How long has it been since you had an allergic reaction?
Evaluate patient prescription fill or administration history with patient pharmacy or healthcare provider for PCN/cephalosporin (Ceph.) medications.
Verified PCN/Ceph given after date of reaction date with no adverse reaction.
Treat with recommended medication
• No previous PCN/Ceph. prescription fill or administration history
• Unknown or no pharmacy history available
Document the reaction and the amount of time since last reported occurrence. E.g. What reaction did you have and when was the last reported occurrence?
Unknown date of last occurrence or type of reaction
>10 years since last reported reaction
<10 years since last reported reaction
PRE-PEN testing (if available)
PRE-PEN not available, consult delegating physician
NEGATIVE- Treat with recommended regimen
POSITIVE- Consult with delegating physician
NO IgE mediated* reaction reported
IgE mediated* reaction reported
Treat with recommended medication
PRE-PEN testing (if available)
PRE-PEN not available, consult delegating physician
NEGATIVE- Treat with recommended regimen
POSITIVE- Consult with delegating physician
NO IgE mediated * reaction reported
IgE mediated * reaction reported
1) Consult delegating physician (Re: IgE mediated)
2) May refer for desensitization (if available)
3) Give alternative (consult with delegating physician)
PRE-PEN testing (if available)
PRE-PEN not available, consult delegating physician
NEGATIVE- Treat with recommended regimen
POSITIVE- Consult with delegating physician
*Examples of rare IgE mediated reactions: hypotension, vasodilation, bronchospasm, angioedema, bowel oedema, cardiovascular collapse, generalized flushing of the skin, hives, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, or wheezing

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

TUBERCULOSIS

2018-2019 TUBERCULOSIS CLINICAL REVIEW COMMITTEE

Susan M. Ray, MD Medical Consultant, Tuberculosis Unit Professor, Emory School of Medicine	**Kortney Floyd, APRN, CPNP** Deputy Chief Nurse, Nurse Protocol GA Department of Public Health
Titilola "Lola" Rush, RN, BSN Tuberculosis Coordinator District 3-5	**Barbara Lawton, Pharm.D.** Pharmacy Manager District 3-2
Tonia Parrott, Ph.D., M.T. (ASCP) Clinical Microbiology Services Director Georgia Public Health Laboratory	**Rose-Marie Sales, MD, MPH** Director, Tuberculosis Unit Two Peachtree
Toni Miles RN, BSN Tuberculosis Program Coordinator/Clinic Manager District 3-3	**Mary Robin Connelly, MMSc.** Manager, Mycobacteriology Georgia Public Health Laboratory
Kim Anita Warren, RN CLC Tuberculosis Coordinator District 5-2	**Tammy Bowling, RN, BSN** Tuberculosis Coordinator District 1-2
Kimberley Hazelwood PharmD Pharmacy Director State Office of Pharmacy	**Donelle Humphrey-Franklin RPh, MBA** Assistant Pharmacy Director State Office of Pharmacy

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR ACTIVE TUBERCULOSIS (TB) DISEASE AGE 15 AND OVER

DEFINITION

Tuberculosis (TB) is an infectious disease transmitted through the air in droplet nuclei that are produced when a person with active TB disease of the lung or larynx sneezes, coughs, speaks, or sings. Persons breathing air contaminated with these droplet nuclei may become infected with TB.

Generally, a positive culture or positive Nucleic Acid Amplification test (NAAT) for *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* is necessary to confirm the diagnosis of TB disease. However, people being evaluated for TB may be diagnosed based on: a positive sputum/specimen smear for acid-fast bacilli (AFB); lung histology showing necrotizing granulomas with or without AFB; or clinical syndrome, even when a culture or pathologic specimen has not been, or cannot be, obtained.

ETIOLOGY

Causative agent of TB is the *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (*M.tb*) complex (*M. tuberculosis, M. bovis, M. africanum, M. microti, M. canetii, M. caprae, M.mungi and M. pinnipedii)*.

SUBJECTIVE

1. May have history of exposure to a known person with TB disease

2. May have history of active TB disease or latent TB infection

3. May have one or more of the following symptoms related to TB:

    a. Productive, prolonged cough (usually more than two or three weeks' duration)
    b. Fever
    c. Chest pain or pleuritic pain
    d. Chills
    e. Night sweats
    f. Easily fatigued
    g. Loss of appetite
    h. Weight loss without dieting
    i. Hemoptysis (coughing up blood)
    j. Headache
    k. Muscle/bone/joint pain

    NOTE: A complete medical history and review of current medications is required to determine if there are any diseases/illnesses present that would require consultation or referral to delegating physician.

OBJECTIVE

Physical examination performed per guidelines may reveal the following criteria that are useful in identifying a person with TB disease:

1. Coughing or shortness of breath
2. Fever/sweating
3. Appears ill or fragile
4. Vital signs (height, weight, BMI, blood pressure, respiratory rate)
5. Jaundice of sclera or skin
6. Abdominal tenderness
7. Joint swelling or redness
8. Difficulty walking, tremors
9. Dizziness, syncope, memory loss

ASSESSMENT

1. Pulmonary tuberculosis OR
2. Extra-pulmonary tuberculosis OR
3. Person being evaluated for pulmonary tuberculosis OR
4. Person being evaluated for extra-pulmonary tuberculosis

For patients with the following conditions, consultation with the delegating physician is required for patients to be treated under this protocol. Consultation must be documented in the patient's record.

1. BMI greater than 30 (obese)
2. Diabetes mellitus
3. Pregnant/breastfeeding
4. Liver disease
5. Extra-pulmonary TB not requiring 2nd line TB drugs or use of corticosteroid therapy. (Excludes: Central Nervous System (CNS) TB, TB pericarditis: these cases must be referred for physician management).
6. Allergic reactions not requiring 2nd line TB drugs
7. Decision to extend continuation phase using first-line TB drugs, e.g. bone/joint TB, miliary TB.
8. Review of current medications reveal potential for drug-drug interactions with TB medications.
9. Treatment interruptions:

    a. During the initial phase of treatment if the lapse is 14 days or more in duration.
    b. During the continuation phase of treatment:
        1) If patient is smear positive initially and received less than 80% of the planned total doses for continuation phase.
        2) Any patient whose lapse is 3 months or more in duration.

NOTE: For patients with the following conditions, referral to the delegating physician is required and patients cannot be treated under this protocol:

1. TB treatment for children (from birth through 14 years of age**)**
2. Any known drug resistance to anti-TB medications
3. Known HIV infection
4. Central Nervous System (CNS) TB
5. TB pericarditis
6. TB patient requiring adjunctive use of corticosteroid therapy
7. Use of once-weekly Isoniazid and Rifapentine in continuation phase for active TB disease
8. Renal insufficiency **(**estimated creatinine clearance less than 70 mL/ min)
9. End-stage renal disease on hemodialysis
10. Any TB patient requiring 2nd line TB drugs
11. Treatment failure (positive culture of *M. tuberculosis* after 4 months of treatment)

PLAN

Active TB disease with the desired outcomes of treatment being biologic cure, prevention of drug resistant TB and prevention of transmission of TB to individuals exposed to persons with active TB.

NOTE: Any hospital admissions or deaths of persons with TB disease are to be reported immediately to the GA TB Program.

INITIAL DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. If positive results for either an IGRA or a TST cannot be verified (including millimeters [mm] of induration), perform a TST or IGRA. Vaccination with live viruses may interfere with either of these test reactions. For persons scheduled to receive a TST, testing should be done as follows:

   a. Either on the same day as vaccination with live-virus vaccine

   OR

   b. 4-6 weeks after the administration of the live-virus vaccine. At least one month after smallpox vaccination.

2. Collect three sputum specimens on consecutive days for culture and send them to the Georgia Public Health Laboratory (GPHL) in Decatur.

   Use the lab slip found on the GPHL website at **http://dph.georgia.gov/lab.** Look at the related files at the bottom of the page for the GPHL Submission Form. Check *Smear, Culture, and Sensitivity* for all three specimens and *NAAT* for

the first specimen only. Do not mark “smear only” unless the patient has had a recent positive culture result.

The public health nurse (PHN) will obtain the first sputum specimen and provide the patient with two additional containers for collection and mailing of the next two specimens. Instructions should be given to both patient and family on how to properly produce sputum for examinations. At least one of the specimens collected MUST be an early morning specimen as they provide the highest yield for detecting *M.tb*. Ideally the initial specimens should be collected over a three-day period, however multiple samples may be collected in the same day if eight hours has elapsed between collections and at least one is an early morning specimen.

Specimens not mailed the day of collection should be refrigerated until mailed. Seek patient confirmation regarding mailing of specimens and check with the laboratory to confirm receipt of the specimens. If necessary, the PHN should collect and mail the specimens. Optimum sputum specimens contain an 8-10 ml sample; however, any amount collected will be tested at the state lab. Specimens received by the lab that contain less than a 0.5 ml sample may have an insufficient quantity of material for all lab testing to be performed.

3. Perform the following baseline blood chemistry labs:

   a. Obtain aspartate aminotransferase (AST), alanine aminotransferase (ALT), bilirubin**,** alkaline phosphatase, CBC with platelet count, serum uric acid, serum creatinine, **Hemoglobin A1C**, and Hepatitis C antibody for all adults.

   b. Hepatitis B profile should be obtained for all adults (regardless of birth country) and anyone less than 18 years old who is foreign-born.

   c. All individuals will be tested for HIV using the opt-out approach. Consent is inferred unless patient declines testing. If HIV positive, collaborate with HIV Program to obtain CD4 T-cell count, then refer to consulting physician.

4. Obtain baseline visual acuity testing and red/green color discrimination for patients being placed on Ethambutol.

5. Urine pregnancy test, if woman is of child bearing age (approximately 15-45 years of age) or with menstrual cycle and not using contraceptives.

6. Refer patient to have chest x-ray performed to detect abnormalities compatible with TB disease.

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES' FINDINGS

1. A positive interferon gamma release assay (IGRA) or a positive tuberculin skin test (TST). The absence of a positive IGRA/TST does not rule out the diagnosis of TB disease or latent TB infection.

2. Positive staining of AFB in sputum, bronchial brush, bronchial wash or lung tissue biopsy. However, a person with TB disease can be smear negative.

3. Chest x-ray showing abnormalities compatible with TB disease. (Radiographic findings of healed, inactive TB and reactivating TB sometimes cannot be distinguished).

4. The following criteria (one or more) are required for a confirmed diagnosis of TB:

   a. Pathology findings compatible with the diagnosis of TB.
   b. Specimens with positive culture or positive NAAT for *M.tb.*

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Order medications for treatment with directly observed therapy (DOT) from drug stock and send a copy of the drug order(s) to the District Pharmacist or District Drug Coordinator. Refer to Tables 1 and 2 for options and dosages.

1. If a patient is REFERRED to the delegating physician for management, the PHN may not dispense ANY of the prescribed medications. A Pharmacist or Dispensing Physician can dispense the 2nd line TB medications or the prescription may be called in to a pharmacy by the physician.

2. PHN may not dispense 2nd line TB medications. If 2nd line TB medications are ordered, a Pharmacist or Dispensing Physician can dispense the 2nd line TB medications or the prescription may be called in to a pharmacy by the physician.

Table 1: Regimen Options - Treatment of Patients with Drug-Susceptible TB

Option	Total Duration (Months)	Initial Phase		Continuation Phase[10]		Comments
		Drugs	Interval & Dose # (minimal duration)	Drugs	Interval & Dose # (minimal duration)	
A	6	Isoniazid Rifampin Pyrazinamide Ethambutol	Daily DOT for 40 doses (8 wks.)	Isoniazid Rifampin	Daily DOT for 90 doses (18 weeks) OR Twice-weekly[3] DOT for 36 doses (18 wks.) OR Thrice-weekly DOT for 54 doses (18 weeks) is preferred treatment	Regimen must be directly observed. Continue Ethambutol until susceptibility to Isoniazid and Rifampin is obtained via drug susceptibility results.
B [11] Selected patients only. See footnote.	6	Isoniazid Rifampin Pyrazinamide Ethambutol	Daily DOT for 10 doses (2 wks.), then twice-weekly DOT for 12 doses (6 wks.)	Isoniazid Rifampin	Twice-weekly[12] DOT for 36 doses (18 wks.)	Regimen must be directly observed. Include Ethambutol in initial phase. After the initial phase, continue Ethambutol until susceptibility to Isoniazid and Rifampin is obtained via drug susceptibility results.
Pyridoxine (Vitamin B6) 25 - 50 mg PO daily to prevent the development of Isoniazid-induced peripheral neuropathy.						

NOTE: a. Daily DOT = 5 days/week (Monday through Friday). Self-administered doses (including those on weekends) will not be counted toward the total doses. 5 daily doses of DOT equal 2 twice-weekly doses of DOT.

b. Split dosing should be avoided.

c. Rifamate, a fixed combination of Rifampin 300 mg, and Isoniazid 150 mg, may be used to minimize the number of pills. Intermittent dosing is not recommended with fixed combination medications.

d. Refer to current drug reference or drug package insert for a complete list of adverse drug reactions and drug interaction.

---

10 TB treatment may be extended beyond 6 months minimal duration as determined by consultation with and documentation from delegating physician.

11 Option B should NOT be used for patients with cavitary pulmonary TB, disseminated TB, vertebral TB or for patients who have co-morbid medical conditions such as HIV, diabetes mellitus or liver disease.

12 Twice-weekly doses should optimally be given at least two days apart, unless given to “catch up” on a missed dose. A dose given two consecutive days is discouraged.

Table 2: First-Line TB Drugs Dosages

Drugs	Adult Dose based on body weight in kilograms (kg)[13]			Adverse Reactions
	Daily	Twice-Weekly	Thrice-Weekly (preferred over twice weekly)	
Isoniazid	300 mg (5 mg/kg Maximum Dose 300 mg)	900 mg (15 mg/kg Maximum Dose 900 mg)	900 mg (15 mg/kg Maximum Dose 900 mg)	• Gastrointestinal (GI) upset • Liver enzyme elevation • Acute hepatitis • Peripheral neuropathy • Mild effects on central nervous system • Drug interactions
Rifampin	600 mg	600 mg	600 mg	• Orange discoloration of body fluids and secretions • Drug interactions • GI upset • Hepatitis • Easy bruising/ bleeding • Influenza-like symptoms • Rash
Pyrazinamide[14]	40-55 kg: 1000 mg 56-75 kg: 1500 mg 76+ kg: 2000 mg	40-55 kg: 2000 mg 56-75 kg: 3000 mg 76+ kg: 4000 mg	40-55 kg: 1500 mg 56-75 kg: 2500 mg 76+ kg: 3000 mg	• GI upset • Joint aches • Hepatitis • Rash • Hyperuricemia • Gout (rare)
Ethambutol	40-55 kg: 800 mg 56-75 kg: 1200 mg 76+ kg: 1600 mg	40-55 kg: 2000 mg 56-75 kg: 2800 mg 76+ kg: 4000 mg	40-55 kg: 1200 mg 56-75 kg: 2000 mg 76+ kg: 2400 mg	• Optic neuritis

NOTE: Ethambutol and Pyrazinamide dosage adjustment may be needed if there is renal impairment. Patients with estimated creatinine clearance less than 70 mL/min or those with end-stage renal disease on dialysis are considered to be persons with complicated TB disease and dosing should be REFERRED to the district contract TB physician or delegating physician for care; a patient with these conditions cannot be managed using this protocol.

13 **Formula used to convert pounds to kilograms: Divide pounds by 2.2 to get kilograms. Example: Patient weighs 154 pounds ÷ 2.2 = 70 kilograms.**

14 Calculate Pyrazinamide and Ethambutol doses using actual body weight. NOTE: Round up fractions of a dose to the nearest whole number. Obese patients' (BMI over 30) dosing should be determined in collaboration with the district delegating/contract TB physician.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts)

Education/communication should use methods adapted to patient's cultural and linguistic background. Provide education to the patient and his/her family, when family is available, and document in the patient record.

1. The *"12 Points of Tuberculosis (TB) Patient Education"* and the *"Patient Tuberculosis Education Record"* is located on the TB web pages at http://dph.georgia.gov/sites/dph.georgia.gov/files/TB-ClinicForm12_Points_PtEd.pdf

    a. Transmission of Tuberculosis
    b. Differences between latent TB infection (LTBI) and active TB disease
    c. Progression of LTBI to active TB disease
    d. Signs and symptoms of TB disease
    e. Importance of HIV testing
    f. Respiratory isolation and use of masks
    g. Infectious period
    h. Importance of chemotherapy as prescribed
    i. Side effects and adverse medication reactions
    j. Directly observed therapy
    k. Importance of regular medical assessments
    l. Importance of contact identification

2. The rationale for using an alternative or back-up method of birth control (e.g., copper-bearing IUD such as ParaGard, condoms, diaphragm) is that when Rifampin is prescribed, it reduces effectiveness (degree depending on method) of combined oral contraceptives, progestin-only oral contraceptives, Levonorgestrel implants, Depo-Provera, patch and ring. Advise condom back-up.

3. The patient's immunization status. Assess and refer or administer vaccines indicated according to the current Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP) childhood and adult immunization schedule.

    For persons scheduled to receive a TST, testing should be done either on the same day as vaccination with live-virus vaccine OR 4-6 weeks after the administration of the live-virus vaccine and at least one month after smallpox vaccination.

    See the Georgia Immunization Program Manual, Recommended Schedule and Guidelines, for current ACIP schedules and administration guidelines for each vaccine. The Georgia

Immunization Manual may be accessed online at **http://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-section**

FOLLOW-UP

NOTE: Any hospital admissions or deaths of persons with TB disease are to be reported immediately to the GA TB Program.

1. Continued patient management/follow-up by a case management team comprised of the patient, PHN, physician and others determined by an individual needs assessment. Refer to the *TB Program Policy and Procedure Manual, 2016* and *Tuberculosis Nursing: A Comprehensive Guide to Patient Care, 2nd Edition* located in each county health department and "Scaled Goal Matrix Tool: Uniform Clinical Performance Measures for TB Nurse Case Managers, 2006" located on the TB web pages at **https://dph.georgia.gov/tb-public-health-clinic-forms**

2. After the nursing assessment, the PHN will use the *"Case Management Timeline – A Tracking Form for TB Medical Records"* located on the TB web pages at **https://dph.georgia.gov/tb-public-health-clinic-forms** to determine documents to forward for review by the district TB coordinator, the district's contract physician and the state office.

3. Review the respiratory isolation status for the patient**.** All 3 of the following criteria must be met in order for isolation to be discontinued: patient has three consecutive negative AFB sputum smear results; patient has received standard anti-tuberculosis treatment for a minimum of two weeks; and patient has demonstrated clinical improvement.

   After the baseline 3 consecutive sputum specimens, collect follow-up sputum samples as follows:

   a. You may collect up to three sputum samples in a week until three consecutive negative AFB smears are obtained to determine when to discontinue respiratory isolation. Only one sputum sample that week should be marked on the lab form for smear/culture/sensitivity. Any additional sputum samples of the same week should be examined for AFB smear only.

   b. After three consecutively negative sputum smears are obtained, collect only one sputum specimen for smear/culture/sensitivity weekly until culture converts to

negative.

c. After sputum culture converts to negative, collect one sputum specimen monthly thereafter for smear/culture/sensitivity.

d. Collect one sputum specimen at 60 days after medication treatment initiation for smear/culture/sensitivity test. A positive culture at this point identifies patients at increased risk for relapse. If the culture is still positive, refer patient for treatment to the contract physician.

e. If the patient is unable to produce sputum, document the collection attempt.

4. Monitor patient monthly for adverse drug reactions, drug-drug interactions, drug-food interactions, drug-lab interactions, infectious status, and clinical and bacteriologic response to therapy.

5. Provide HIV test results with post-test counseling to patient and, if positive, appropriate referrals to HIV care. Seek confirmation that patient kept referral appointment for HIV care.

6. Conduct contact identification following the *Tuberculosis Policy and Procedure Manual,* the *Tuberculosis Nursing: A Comprehensive Guide to Patient Care, 2nd Edition,* and the *CDC Guidelines for the Investigation of Contacts of Persons with Infectious Tuberculosis* (current edition).

7. Perform the following blood chemistry tests monthly to monitor reactions to TB drugs:

   a. AST and ALT
   b. Bilirubin
   c. Alkaline phosphatase
   d. CBC with platelets
   e. Serum uric acid and serum creatinine monthly only if there are abnormalities at baseline or there are clinical reasons to obtain the measurements (e.g., hepatitis B or C virus infection, alcohol abuse, and abnormal kidney function).

   NOTE: Discontinue Isoniazid and/or Rifampin and report immediately to the consulting physician if any of the following occur:
   1) AST/ALT levels equal to or greater than 3 times the upper limit of normal with symptoms of adverse reactions.
   2) AST/ALT levels equal to or greater than 5 times the upper

limit of normal in an asymptomatic patient.
3) Patient reporting symptoms of adverse reactions.

8. Monitor the vision of patients taking Ethambutol by providing vision checks monthly, including visual acuity and red/green color discrimination.

9. Adherence should methodically be assessed monthly, at a minimum.

10. Observe the patient for Isoniazid-induced peripheral neuropathy (e.g., tingling, numbness, pain) during therapy. If present, report to the delegating physician immediately.

11. If patient is a woman of child-bearing age, assess date of last menstrual period monthly. Perform pregnancy test as needed.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. For patients with the following conditions, CONSULTATION with the delegating physician is required for patients to be treated under this protocol. Consultation must be documented in the patient's record.

   a. BMI greater than 30 (obese)
   b. Diabetes mellitus
   c. Pregnant/breastfeeding
   d. Liver disease
   e. Extra-pulmonary TB not requiring 2nd line TB drugs or use of corticosteroid therapy. (Excludes: Central Nervous System (CNS) TB, TB pericarditis: these cases must be REFERRED for physician management).
   f. Allergic reactions not requiring 2nd line TB drugs
   g. Decision to extend continuation phase using first-line TB drugs, e.g. bone/joint TB, miliary TB.
   h. Review of current medications reveal potential for drug-drug interactions with TB medications.
   i. Treatment interruptions:
      1) During the initial phase of treatment if the lapse is 14 days or more in duration.
      2) During the continuation phase of treatment:
         a) If patient is smear positive initially and received less than 80% of the planned total doses for continuation phase.
         b) Any patient whose lapse is 3 months or more in duration.

NOTE: Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed and/or the TB nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

2. For patients with the following conditions, REFERRAL to the delegating physician is required and patients cannot be treated under this protocol.

   a. TB treatment for children birth through 14 years of age
   b. Any known drug resistance to anti-TB medications
   c. Known HIV infection
   d. Central Nervous System (CNS) TB
   e. TB pericarditis
   f. TB patient requiring adjunctive use of corticosteroid therapy
   g. Use of once-weekly Isoniazid and Rifapentine in continuation phase for active TB disease
   h. Renal insufficiency with estimated creatinine clearance less than 70 ml/min
   i. End-stage renal disease on hemodialysis
   j. Any TB patient requiring 2nd line TB drugs
   k. Treatment failure (positive culture of *M. tb* after 4 months of treatment)

   NOTE: Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed and/or the TB nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

3. Refer patient to a licensed dietitian if indicated. This will be especially important if the patient has a history of drug or alcohol abuse, is pregnant or breastfeeding, is HIV positive, has gastrointestinal side effects from TB drugs, has history of eating disorder or if desirable weight is not maintained.

4. If patient needs housing, food or other frontline services, consult with the Georgia TB Program's Social Worker.

5. If smoker or tobacco user, refer to a local cessation program and/or the Georgia Tobacco Quit Line, 1-877-270-STOP (7867).

6. If substance abuse known or suspected, refer for appropriate counseling.

Table 3: TREATMENT OF TB - DRUG INTERACTIONS

NOTE: Refer to current drug reference or drug package insert for a complete list of adverse drug reactions and drug interactions.

MEDICATION INTERACTIONS – RIFAMPIN

Name/type	Effect
Anticoagulants (Warfarin, Coumadin)	↓ serum concentration
Cardiac glycosides (Digoxin)	↓ serum concentration
Sulfonylureas (Glipizide, Glyburide, Glimepiride)	↓ serum concentration
Thiazolidinediones (Rosiglitazone, Pioglitazone)	↓ serum concentration
Contraceptives (oral, implants, patch, ring, injections)	↓ serum concentration
Fluconazole, Voriconazole, Itraconazole	↓ serum concentration
Corticosteroids	↓ serum concentration
Narcotics/analgesics (Methadone)	↓ serum concentration
Atovaquone (Mepron)	↓ serum concentration
Dapsone	↓ serum concentration
Cyclosporine	↓ serum concentration
Quinidine	↓ serum concentration
Protease inhibitors	↓ serum concentration
Lamotrigine (Lamictal)	↓ serum concentration
Phenytoin (Dilantin)	↓ serum concentration
Valproic acid and derivatives (Depakene, Depakote)	↓ serum concentration
Buspirone (Buspar)	↓ serum concentration
Thyroid hormone replacement	↓ serum concentration

DRUG INTERACTIONS – ISONIAZID

Name/type	Effect
Diazepam (Valium)	↓ serum concentration ↑ half-life
Phenytoin (Dilantin)	↑ serum concentration ↑ toxicity
Carbamazepine (Tegretol)	↑ serum concentration ↑ toxicity
Citalopram (Celexa)	↑ serum concentration ↑ toxicity
Alcohol	↑ risk of Isoniazid-induced hepatitis
Antacids	should be taken two hours apart, otherwise Isoniazid will have no effect
Carbamazepine	↓ carbamazepine metabolism
Cycloserine	↑ risk of CNS toxicity
Ethionamide	↑ risk of encephalopathy ↑ serum concentration of Isoniazid
Phenytoin	↓ Phenytoin metabolism

MEDICATION INTERACTIONS – RIFAMPIN/RIFAPENTINE

NOTE: The information on interactions with Rifampin and HIV antiretroviral therapy (ART) is constantly changing; all HIV positive patients should be referred to the contract Physician for care. In general, only certain HIV medications can be used and Rifampin may be replaced by Rifabutin. Rifabutin is in the formulary at the state pharmacy.

Name/type	Effect
Adefovir	↑ risk of side effects
Amprenavir (should not be used together)	↓ serum concentration
Anticoagulants	↓ effectiveness of anticoagulants
Atovaquone	↓ serum concentration
AZT	↓ serum concentration
Barbiturates	↓ effectiveness of barbiturates
Clarithromycin	↓ serum concentration
Corticosteroids	↓ serum concentration
Cyclosporine	↓ serum concentration
Dapsone	↓ serum concentration
Delavirdine (should be taken together otherwise,	↓ serum concentration)
Diazepam	↓ effectiveness of Diazepam
Digitalis	↓ effectiveness of Digitalis
Disopyramide	↓ effectiveness of Disopyramide
Efavirenz	↓ serum concentration
Estrogen	↓ effectiveness of Estrogen
Ethinyl Estradiol (birth control pills)	↓ serum concentration
Fluconazole	↓ serum concentration
Halothane	↑ risk of liver toxicity
Indinavir (should not be used together)	↑ Rifampin serum concentration
Isoniazid	↑ risk of liver toxicity
Itraconazole	↓ serum concentration
Lopinavir/Ritonavir (should not be used together)	↓ serum concentration
Methadone	↓ effectiveness of Methadone
Mexiletine	↓ effectiveness of Mexiletine
Nelfinavir (should not be used together)	↓ serum concentration
Nevirapine	may affect serum concentration
Probenecid	↑ Rifampin serum concentration
Progesterone	↓ effectiveness of Progesterone
Quinidine	↓ serum concentration
Ritonavir	↓ serum concentration
Theophylline	↓ serum concentration
Verapamil	↓ effectiveness of Verapamil
Voriconazole	↓ serum concentration

REFERENCES

1. AIDSmeds.com, http://www.newwww.aidsmeds.com/index.shtml, 2014.

2. American Diabetes Association. Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes 2011, Diabetes Care, Vol. 34, Suppl. 1, S11 – S61, December 30, 2010.

3. The Atlanta Tuberculosis Coalition, *Georgia TB Reference Guide*, 2014. (Current)

4. American Thoracic Society/Centers for Disease Control and Prevention/Infectious Diseases Society of America (October 2002), "Treatment of Tuberculosis," *American Journal of Respiratory Critical Care Medicine*, 2003, 67, pp. 603-662. (Current)

5. CDC, W. Atkinson, S. Wolfe, J. Hamborsky, L. McIntyre, eds., *Epidemiology and Prevention of Vaccine-Preventable Diseases*, 12th ed., Washington D.C., Public Health Foundation, April 14, 2011.

6. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), "Guidelines for Prevention and Treatment of Opportunistic Infections in HIV-Infected Adults and Adolescents: Recommendations from CDC, the National Institutes of Health, and HIV Medicine Association of the Infectious Diseases Society of America," *MMWR* Early Release 2009, Vol. 58, No. RR-4, March 24, 2009, http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/rr/rr58e324.pdf (May 5, 2011).

7. CDC, "Guidelines for Preventing the Transmission of Mycobacterium Tuberculosis in Health-Care Settings," *MMWR*, Vol. 54, No. RR-17, Dec. 30, 2005. (Current)

8. CDC, "Guidelines for the Investigation of Contacts of Persons with Infectious Tuberculosis*," MMWR,* Vol. 54, No. RR-15, Dec. 16, *2005.* (Current)

9. CDC, "Revised Recommendations for HIV Testing of Adults, Adolescents and Pregnant Women in Health Care Settings*," MMWR*, Vol. 55, No. RR-14, Sep. 22, 2006. (Current)

10. CDC, "Tuberculosis Associated with Blocking Agents Against Tumor Necrosis Factor-Alpha-California*,*" *MMWR*, Vol. 53, No. 30, Aug. 6, 2004. (Current)

11. CDC. "Updated Guidelines for Using Interferon Gamma Release Assays to Detect *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* Infection — United States, 2010" MMWR 2010; 59 (RR-5); 1-25

12. Daugherty-Gibson, J.; Field, K.; Boutotte, J.; and Wilce, M., Developing a case management model for ensuring completion of TB therapy. *The International Journal of Tuberculosis and Lung Disease*, 10, S105, 2002. (Current)

13. Epidemiology and Prevention of Vaccine Preventable Diseases, 12th edition, 2nd printing. (Revised May 2012)

14. Georgia Department of Public Health, Division of Health Protection, Immunization and Infectious Disease Program, Tuberculosis Office. *Tuberculosis Program Evaluation Guidelines.* 2012. (Current)

15. Georgia Department of Public Health, Division of Health Protection, Immunization and Infectious Disease Program, Tuberculosis Office. *Tuberculosis Policy and Procedure Manual.* 2014. (Current)

16. HIV Insite, Database of Antiretroviral Drug Interactions, http://arv.ucsf.edu/insite?page=ar-00-02 (May 17, 2011).

17. National Tuberculosis Controllers Association (NTCA) and National Tuberculosis Nursing Coalition (NTNC), *Tuberculosis Nursing: A Comprehensive Guide to Patient Care,* 2nd Edition. 2011 (Current)

18. New Jersey Medical School Global Tuberculosis Institute, Northeastern Regional Training and Medical Consultation Consortium, *Tuberculosis Case Management for Nurses: Self-Study Modules and Facilitator's Guide,* May 2005. (Current)

19. Rom, William N., and Garay, Stuart M. *Tuberculosis*, 2nd ed., Little, Brown and Company (Inc.), Boston, 2004. (Current)

20. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, *Core Curriculum on Tuberculosis – What the Clinician Should Know*, 5th Edition, 2011 (Current)

21. World Health Organization (WHO), *Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use*, 4th ed., *2009,* http://whqlibdoc.who.int/ (May 16, 2011) Epidemiology and Prevention of Vaccine Preventable Diseases, 12th edition, 2nd printing. (Revised May 2012)

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR LATENT TUBERCULOSIS INFECTION (LTBI) AND PRESUMPTIVE LTBI

DEFINITION

LTBI means that a person has been infected with M.tuberculosis (M.tb) but has no clinical or radiographic evidence of **active** TB **disease**. Individuals who are infected but do not have active disease are not infectious but, if not adequately treated, are at risk for developing disease and becoming infectious in the future.

Presumptive LTBI treatment is the practice of providing window period prophylaxis treatment to high-risk **persons exposed to** infectious **people with TB disease. This means,** when **these exposed persons have** an initial negative **tuberculin** skin test (TST) reaction (less than 5mm induration) or negative **interferon gamma release assay** (IGRA) test result and the test was performed less than eight weeks from the **person's** last exposure to **a person with TB disease, treatment for LTBI is started until a follow-up TST/IGRA is negative**. The window period is the time span between the date of a **negative** initial TST or IGRA and the date of the follow-up TST or IGRA.

Exposed persons at particularly high-risk of developing TB disease once infected with *M.tb* include: children less than 5 years of age and persons with compromised immune systems; compromised by HIV infection, medications (Prednisone, cancer chemotherapy, anti-rejection drugs for cancer therapy, tumor necrosis factor alpha agents antagonists) and certain medical conditions (diabetes mellitus, silicosis, end stage renal disease, cancer of the head and neck, reticuloendothelial diseases [e.g., lymphoma, leukemia], gastric or jejunoileal bypass surgery). **These persons would benefit from presumptive LTBI therapy.**

ETIOLOGY

Causative agent of TB is the *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (*M.tb*) complex (*M. tuberculosis, M. bovis, M. africanum, M. microti, M. canetii, M. caprae, M.mungi and M. pinnipedii)*.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient may have a history of known exposure **to a person with** TB

2. **Patient has no** symptoms of TB **disease**

   NOTE: A complete medical history and review of current medications is required to determine if there are any diseases/illnesses present that would require consultation or referral to delegating physician.

OBJECTIVE

1. Physical examination performed **per** programmatic guidelines shows no signs of active TB disease present.

NOTE: If signs and symptoms of TB disease are evident, patient should have 3 consecutive negative sputum smears and negative cultures with evaluation by a clinician**/delegating physician** before starting treatment for LTBI.

ASSESSMENT

1. Latent tuberculosis infection

2. Presumptive latent tuberculosis infection during the window period

PLAN

The desired outcomes of treatment are to decrease high-risk persons chance of developing active TB disease once diagnosed with latent TB infection.

NOTE: Any hospital admissions or deaths of persons with TB disease is to be reported immediately to the GA TB Program.

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. If positive results for either an IGRA or a TST cannot be verified (including millimeters [mm] of induration), perform a TST or IGRA. Vaccination with live viruses may interfere with either of these test reactions. For persons scheduled to receive a TST, testing should be done as follows:

   a. Either on the same day as vaccination with live-virus vaccine

   OR

   b. 4-6 weeks after the administration of the live-virus vaccine. At least one month after smallpox vaccination.

2. Perform the following **baseline** blood chemistry labs:

   a. Obtain aspartate aminotransferase (AST), alanine aminotransferase (ALT), bilirubin**, glucose, and Hepatitis C antibody for all adults[15]. If glucose is above normal range (per reported parameters), obtain a hemoglobin A1C at next visit; if patient known to have diabetes, obtain a hemoglobin A1C with other baseline lab tests.**

   b. Hepatitis B profile should be obtained for all adults (regardless of birth country) and anyone less than 18 years old who is foreign-born.

   c. All individuals 13 years and older will be tested for HIV

15 **In this LTBI protocol, the term "adults" will be used to refer to anyone 16 years of age and older.**

using the opt-out approach. Consent is inferred unless patient declines testing. Individuals younger than 13 years old should also be tested for HIV using the opt-out approach if the individual is sexually active or abuses drugs. If HIV positive, collaborate with HIV Program to obtain CD4 T-cell count, then refer to consulting physician. (See referral section of this protocol).

d. Baseline complete blood count with platelets for patients on the Isoniazid-Rifapentine regimen or Rifampin regimen.

e. If any lab results are abnormal, consult with delegating physician.

NOTE: The baseline lab measurements are not mandatory for children less than 16 years of age, unless a complicating medical condition (e.g., HIV, liver disease, renal disease, cardiac disease), **foreign born requiring Hepatitis B testing** or **high-risk** lifestyle is known or suspected.

3. Urine pregnancy test, if woman is of child bearing age (approximately 15-45 years of age) or if with menstrual cycle, sexually active and not using contraceptives.

4. Chest x-ray performed to detect abnormalities compatible with TB disease. (Radiographic findings of healed, inactive TB and reactivating TB sometimes cannot be distinguished).

LABORATORY FINDINGS

1. Chest x-ray negative for evidence of tuberculosis disease.

2. Absence of clinical signs of TB **disease**, both pulmonary and extra-pulmonary.

3. **Patients with the following conditions/illnesses should be treated for LTBI if they have a positive TST (5-10mm) and/or positive IGRA:**

   a. HIV-positive

   b. **Recently exposed to a person with TB disease**

   c. Fibrotic changes on chest x-ray consistent with old TB

   d. Organ transplants recipients and other immune-suppressed persons (those receiving the equivalent of equal to or greater

than 15mg daily of prednisone for 1 month or longer).

4. Patients with the following conditions/illnesses should be treated for LTBI if they have a positive TST (10-15mm) and/or positive IGRA:

    a. Recent arrivals (less than 5 years) from high prevalence countries

    b. Injection drug users

    c. Residents and employees of high-risk congregate settings (e.g., correctional facilities, nursing homes and other long-term facilities for the elderly, homeless shelters, residential facilities for **patients with AIDS**, hospitals and other health care facilities).

    d. Mycobacteriology laboratory personnel.

    e. Persons with clinical conditions that place them at high risk of progression to TB disease (e.g., substance abuse, infection with *M.tb* within the past two years, diabetes, hematologic or reticuloendothelial malignancies, chronic renal failure, post-gastrectomy, silicosis, immunosuppressive therapy, chronic malabsorption syndromes or candidates being considered for treatment with tumor necrosis factor (TNF) antagonists such as injectable Remicade [Infliximab] for rheumatologic conditions or ulcerative colitis prior to initiation of therapy).

    f. Children less than 5 years of age, or children and adolescents exposed to adults in high-risk groups.

5. Patients with no risk factors should be treated for LTBI if they have a positive TST (15mm or greater) and/or positive IGRA.

6. **Persons exposed to a person with TB disease may be treated for presumptive LTBI. Exposed persons with suppressed immune systems due to HIV infection, prolonged corticosteroid therapy, organ transplant and/or use of tumor necrosis factor alpha inhibitors should be treated for presumptive LTBI with a full course of LTBI treatment, regardless if follow-up TST/IGRA is negative.**

7. **There is also a group of people that can be treated for presumptive LTBI but do not have to complete a full course of LTBI treatment (as discussed above). The following exposed persons being treated for presumptive LTBI treatment can stop treatment if the follow-up TST/IGRA is negative:**

a. **Child less than** 5 years of age.

b. **Person** diagnosed with diabetes mellitus, silicosis, end stage renal disease, gastrectomy, jejunoileal bypass, leukemia, lymphoma, and/or cancer of the head or neck.

NOTE: Treatment of LTBI or presumptive LTBI might NOT be indicated for **persons**:
1) At increased risk for adverse reactions to Isoniazid and persons for whom Isoniazid is contraindicated.
2) Who cannot tolerate Isoniazid or Rifampin.
3) Likely to be infected with drug-resistant *M.tb*. **These persons should be referred to the delegating physician.**
4) Who are not likely to complete a course of LTBI treatment.

NOTE: Treatment of LTBI might NOT be completed on **persons who have been exposed to a person later found not to have TB. The Public Health Nurse (PHN) should consult with the delegating physician for care.**

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Order medications for treatment from drug stock and send a copy of the drug order(s) to the District Pharmacist or District Drug Coordinator. **Refer to Tables 1 and 2 for options and dosages. Also, some patients are required or strongly recommended to receive LTBI treatment with directly observed therapy. Please refer to most recent edition of Tuberculosis Policy & Procedure Manual for more information.**

1. If a patient is referred to the delegating physician, the **PHN** may not **dispense** ANY of the prescribed medications**. A pharmacist or dispensing p**hysician can dispense the TB medications or the prescription may be called in to a pharmacy **by the physician**.

2. **PHN may dispense Rifapentine when given in conjunction with Isoniazid for LTBI treatment.** PHN may not dispense 2nd line TB medications. If 2nd line medications are ordered, **a pharmacist or dispensing physician can dispense the 2nd line TB medications or the prescription may be called in to a pharmacy**.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING
(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts)

Education/communication should use methods adapted to patient's cultural and linguistic background. Provide education to the patient and his/her family, when family is available, and document in the patient record.

1. **The *"12 Points of Tuberculosis (TB) Patient Education"* and the *"Patient Tuberculosis Education Record"* is located on the TB web pages at http://dph.georgia.gov/sites/dph.georgia.gov/files/TB-ClinicForm12_Points_PtEd.pdf**

   a. Transmission of Tuberculosis
   b. Differences between latent TB infection (LTBI) and active TB disease
   c. Progression of LTBI to active TB disease
   d. Signs and symptoms of TB disease
   e. Importance of HIV testing
   f. Importance of chemotherapy as prescribed
   g. Side effects and adverse medication reactions
   h. Directly observed therapy (if necessary)
   i. Importance of regular medical assessments

2. The rationale for using an alternative or back-up method of birth control (e.g., copper-bearing IUD such as ParaGard, condoms, diaphragm) is that when Rifampin is prescribed, it reduces effectiveness (degree depending on method) of combined oral contraceptives, progestin-only oral contraceptives, Levonorgestrel implants, Depo-Provera, patch and ring. Advise condom back-up.

3. The patient's immunization status. Assess and refer or administer vaccines indicated **per** the current Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP) childhood and adult immunization schedule.

   For persons scheduled to receive a TST, testing should be done either on the same day as vaccination with live-virus vaccine OR 4-6 weeks after the administration of the live-virus vaccine and at least one month after smallpox vaccination.

   See the Georgia Immunization Program Manual, Recommended Schedule and Guidelines, for current ACIP schedules and administration guidelines for each vaccine. The Georgia Immunization Manual may be accessed online at http://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-section

FOLLOW-UP

1. At eight to ten weeks after **initial TST/IGRA**, a follow-up TST/IGRA is to be **performed** on **exposed persons** on window period prophylaxis. If the follow-up TST/IGRA is positive, treatment is to continue until a full course of LTBI treatment is completed.

   If the follow-up TST/IGRA is negative in an exposed person who is immunosuppressed, **(due to HIV infection, prolonged corticosteroid therapy, organ transplant and/or use of tumor necrosis factor alpha inhibitors) a full course of LTBI treatment is required.**

   If the follow-up TST/IGRA is negative in any other exposed person, then the window period treatment may be discontinued.

2. **Monitor patients receiving LTBI therapy at least monthly for adverse drug reactions (such as hepatitis, peripheral neuropathy), drug-drug interactions, drug-food interactions, drug-lab interactions, adherence.**

   NOTE: Any hospital admissions or deaths due to adverse reactions are to be reported immediately to the GA TB Program.

   a. Observe the patient for Isoniazid-induced peripheral neuropathy (e.g., tingling, numbness, pain) during therapy. If present, refer to the delegating physician immediately.

   b. Symptoms of hepatitis (nausea, loss of appetite, vomiting, persistently dark urine, yellowish skin, malaise, unexplained elevated temperature for more than three days, abdominal tenderness and/or right upper quadrant tenderness). **If present, put all LTBI medications on hold, obtain AST/ALT levels and refer to the delegating physician immediately.**

3. Provide HIV test results with post-test counseling to patient and, if positive, appropriate referrals to HIV care. Seek confirmation that patient kept referral appointment for HIV care.

4. **Obtain monthly complete blood count (with platelets) for patients receiving the Isoniazid-Rifapentine or Rifampin regimen. Hold all TB medications and refer to delegating physician if any results are abnormal.**

   NOTE: Children (under the age of 16 years) are **not required to have routine follow-up labs regardless of treatment regimen.**

5. **Obtain monthly AST/ALT for patients considered at risk of developing hepatotoxicity. These patients include those that:**

a. **Admit to frequent alcohol use, whether past or present.**
b. **Admit to intravenous drug use, whether past or present.**
c. **HIV positive**
d. **Diagnosed with Hepatitis B and/or Hepatitis C**
e. **Postpartum[16] women**

6. **Hold all TB medications and refer to the delegating physician immediately if:**

   a. AST/ALT levels equal to or greater than 3 times the upper limit of normal **with symptoms of adverse reactions**.
   b. AST/ALT levels equal to or greater than 5 times the upper limit of normal in an asymptomatic patient.
   c. Patient reporting symptoms of adverse reactions.

   NOTE: Any hospital admissions or deaths due to adverse reactions are to be reported immediately to the GA TB Program.

7. **If patient is a woman of child-bearing age, assess date of last menstrual period monthly. Perform pregnancy test as needed. If pregnancy test ever positive, hold all TB medications and refer to delegating physician immediately.**

8. At the end of month three, identify those patients who are eligible for the Telephone Nurse Monitoring Program (TNMP) **per** the procedure in the *Tuberculosis Policy and Procedure Manual, most recent version.*

9. A clinical symptom screen is required for all patients who have a lapse in treatment. A repeat chest x-ray/evaluation is required for patients who are symptomatic or who have had a lapse in LTBI therapy for two months or more.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. **For patients with the following conditions, CONSULTATION with the delegating physician is required for patients to be treated**

16 **Period of time immediately after the birth of an infant through 6 weeks. Pregnant women, particularly African-American and Hispanic women, may be at increased risk for fatal hepatitis associated with Isoniazid, per some reports. This risk may be increased during the postpartum period. These patients should be closely monitored for adverse reactions throughout the course of treatment. The risk of hepatitis from Isoniazid in pregnant/postpartum women does NOT preclude treatment of LTBI if these women are at extremely high risk for developing active TB (e.g., in close contact of person with TB disease, HIV positive, or with documented recent infection or conversion).**

under this protocol. Consultation must be documented in the patient's record.

a. **Diabetes mellitus**
b. **Liver disease**
c. **Allergic reactions not requiring 2nd line TB drugs**
d. **Review of current medications reveal potential for drug-drug interactions with TB medications.**
e. **Treatment interruptions of two months or more**
f. **HIV positive or refuses HIV testing**
g. **Any abnormal lab results**

NOTE: Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed and/or the LTBI nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

2. For patients with the following conditions, REFERRAL to the delegating physician is required. These patients would no longer be able to be treated under this protocol.

a. Pregnant, breastfeeding or postpartum women
b. Patients experiencing adverse reactions
c. Patients with known exposure to a person with drug resistant TB disease
d. Children aged 2 through 11 years of age who are close contacts for whom the Isoniazid and Rifapentine regimen may be considered because it offers practical advantages or because the child is unlikely to complete 9 months of daily Isoniazid.

NOTE: Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed and LTBI nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

3. **If smoker or tobacco user, refer to a local cessation program and/or the Georgia Tobacco Quit Line, 1-877-270-STOP (7867).**

4. **If substance abuse known or suspected, refer for appropriate counseling.**

5. **If patient needs housing, food or other frontline services, consult with the Georgia TB Program's Social Worker.**

Table A: Treatment of LTBI – Recommended Drug Regimens [and Dosages for Adults] and Children

Drug	Interval and Duration	Adult Dosage	Criteria for Completion	Comments
Isoniazid	Daily self-admin (7 days/ week) for 9 months Daily DOT **(Mon-Fri)** for 9 months Twice-weekly* DOT for 9 months	300mg PO (5 mg/kg - max dose 300mg) 300mg PO (5 mg/kg - max dose 300mg) 900mg PO (15 mg/kg - max dose 900mg)	270 doses within 12 months 190 doses within 12 months 76 doses within 12 months	In HIV-**positive** patients, Isoniazid may be taken concurrently with nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NRTIs), protease inhibitors, or non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NNRTIs). Consider adding pyridoxine (Vitamin B6) 25 – 50 mg to be given with each dose of isoniazid as a preventive measure against Isoniazid-induced peripheral neuropathy. NOTE: **Twice-weekly regimen** not recommended for HIV **positive** patients.
Rifampin	Daily self-admin (7 days/ week) for 4 months (18 weeks) Daily DOT **(Mon-Fri)** for 4 months (18 weeks)	600mg PO **for all adults** (10 mg/kg **for children** - max dose 600mg) 600mg PO for **all adults** (10 mg/kg **for children** - max dose 600mg)	120 doses within 6 months 90 doses within 6 months	Rifampin therapy may be used for persons who **are knowingly exposed to a person with Isoniazid-resistant, Rifampin susceptible TB disease;** may also be chosen for other persons with LTBI.
Isoniazid and Rifapentine	Once weekly by DOT for 12 doses	Isoniazid:15mg/kg PO (round up to the nearest 50 or 100 mg); 900mg PO max Rifapentine: 10-14kg 300mg PO; 14.1-25kg 450mg PO; 25.1-32kg 600mg PO; 32.1-49.9kg 750mg PO; Equal to or **greater than** 50kg 900mg (max dose) PO	11 doses within 16 weeks (doses may be given no more frequently than every 72 hours)	Isoniazid and Rifapentine is recommended as an equal alternative to 9 months of daily self-administered Isoniazid for treating LTBI in otherwise healthy patients aged 12 years and older at high risk for developing active TB. **These patients include**: **persons in close contact with person with TB disease**, recent converters, HIV **positive persons** (NOT on antiretrovirals) and those with old, healed TB on chest x-ray. Isoniazid and Rifapentine can also be used in situations where it offers practical advantages or for individuals unlikely to complete 9 months of daily Isoniazid. Isoniazid and Rifapentine is **NOT** recommended for the following patients: children less than 2 years of age, HIV **positive** persons receiving antiretroviral treatment, pregnant women or women expecting to become pregnant during treatment and patients who have LTBI with presumed Isoniazid or Rifampin resistance. Refer to the contract physician children aged 2 through 11 years of age who are close contacts for whom the Isoniazid and Rifapentine regimen may be considered because it offers practical advantages or because the child is unlikely to complete 9 mo. of daily Isoniazid.

*Twice-weekly doses should optimally be given at least two days apart, unless given to "catch up" on a missed dose. A dose given two consecutive days is discouraged. **NOTE:** Isoniazid is available in 100 and 300 mg tablets (both are scored for dividing in half (½). Rifapentine is available in 150 mg tablets only. **NOTE**: Directly Observed Therapy (DOT) is REQUIRED for all patients less than 5 years of age, patients on ANY intermittent dosing regimen (including the combined isoniazid and Rifapentine regimen). Directly Observed Therapy (DOT) is recommended for all children up to the age of 15 years.

Table B: Treatment of LTBI – Drug Adverse Reactions and Monitoring

NOTE: The baseline lab measurements are not mandatory for children less than 16 years of age, unless a complicating medical condition (e.g., HIV, liver disease, renal disease, cardiac disease), foreign born requiring Hepatitis B testing or high-risk lifestyle is known or suspected.

Drug	Adverse Reactions	Monitoring **NOTE: If any lab results abnormal, report to delegating physician**.	Comments
Isoniazid	Gastrointestinal (GI) upset, hepatic enzyme elevations, hepatitis, peripheral neuropathy, mild effects on central nervous system, drug interactions	**Obtain aspartate aminotransferase (AST), alanine aminotransferase (ALT), bilirubin, glucose, and Hepatitis C antibody for all adults. If glucose is above normal range (per reported parameters), obtain a hemoglobin A1C at next visit; if patient known to have diabetes, obtain a hemoglobin A1C with other baseline lab tests.** **Hepatitis B profile should be obtained for all adults (regardless of birth country) and anyone less than 18 years old who is foreign-born.** **All individuals will be tested for HIV using the opt-out approach. Consent is inferred unless patient declines testing. If HIV positive, collaborate with HIV Program to obtain CD4 T-cell count, then refer to consulting physician. (See referral section on pp. 6.17).** **Baseline complete blood count with platelets for patients on the Isoniazid-Rifapentine regimen or Rifampin regimen.**	Hepatitis risk increases with age and alcohol consumption. Pyridoxine can prevent isoniazid-induced peripheral neuropathy.
Rifampin and Rifapentine	Orange discoloration of body fluids (secretions, tears, urine), GI upset, drug interactions, hepatitis, thrombocytopenia, rash, fever, Influenza-like symptoms, hypersensitivity reaction[17]	**Obtain aspartate aminotransferase (AST), alanine aminotransferase (ALT), bilirubin, glucose, and Hepatitis C antibody for all adults. If glucose is above normal range (per reported parameters), obtain a hemoglobin A1C at next visit; if patient known to have diabetes, obtain a hemoglobin A1C with other baseline lab tests.**	Hepatitis risk increases with age and alcohol consumption.

[17] Hypersensitivity reactions may include a flu like syndrome (e.g. fever, chills, headaches, dizziness, and musculoskeletal pain), thrombocytopenia,

		Hepatitis B profile should be obtained for all adults (regardless of birth country) and anyone less than 18 years old who is foreign-born. **All individuals will be tested for HIV using the opt-out approach. Consent is inferred unless patient declines testing. If HIV positive, collaborate with HIV Program to obtain CD4 T-cell count, then refer to consulting physician. (See referral section on pp. 6.17).** **Baseline complete blood count with platelets for patients on the Isoniazid-Rifapentine regimen or Rifampin regimen.**	

shortness of breath or other signs and symptoms including wheezing, acute bronchospasm, urticaria, petechiae, purpura, pruritus, conjunctivitis, angioedema, hypotension or shock.

a. If moderate to severe reaction (e.g., thrombocytopenia, hypotension), hospitalization or life-threatening event: discontinue treatment
b. If mild reaction (e.g., rash, dizziness, fever): Continue to monitor patient closely with a low threshold for discontinuing treatment

Table C: Treatment of LTBI – Drug Interactions

NOTE: Refer to current drug reference or drug package insert for a complete list of adverse drug reactions and drug interactions.

MEDICATION INTERACTIONS – RIFAMPIN

Name/type	**Effect**
Anticoagulants (Warfarin, Coumadin)	↓ serum concentration
Cardiac glycosides (Digoxin)	↓ serum concentration
Sulfonylureas (Glipizide, Glyburide, Glimepiride)	↓ serum concentration
Thiazolidinediones (Rosiglitazone, Pioglitazone)	↓ serum concentration
Contraceptives (oral, implants, patch, ring, injections)	↓ serum concentration
Fluconazole, Voriconazole, Itraconazole	↓ serum concentration
Corticosteroids	↓ serum concentration
Narcotics/analgesics (Methadone)	↓ serum concentration
Atovaquone (Mepron)	↓ serum concentration
Dapsone	↓ serum concentration
Cyclosporine	↓ serum concentration
Quinidine	↓ serum concentration
Protease inhibitors	↓ serum concentration
Lamotrigine (Lamictal)	↓ serum concentration
Phenytoin (Dilantin)	↓ serum concentration
Valproic acid and derivatives (Depakene, Depakote)	↓ serum concentration
Buspirone (Buspar)	↓ serum concentration
Thyroid hormone replacement	↓ serum concentration

DRUG INTERACTIONS – ISONIAZID

Name/type	**Effect**
Diazepam (Valium)	↓ serum concentration ↑ half-life
Phenytoin (Dilantin)	↑ serum concentration ↑ toxicity
Carbamazepine (Tegretol)	↑ serum concentration ↑ toxicity
Citalopram (Celexa)	↑ serum concentration ↑ toxicity
Alcohol	↑ risk of Isoniazid-**induced** hepatitis
Antacids (Should be taken two hours apart, or Isoniazid will have no effect)	
Carbamazepine	↓ carbamazepine metabolism
Cycloserine	↑ risk of CNS toxicity
Ethionamide	↑ risk of encephalopathy, ↑ **serum concentration of Isoniazid**
Phenytoin	↓ Phenytoin metabolism

MEDICATION INTERACTIONS – RIFAMPIN/RIFAPENTINE

NOTE: The information on interactions with Rifampin and HIV antiretroviral therapy (ART) is constantly changing; all HIV positive patients should be referred to the contract Physician for care. In general, only certain HIV medications can be used and Rifampin may be replaced by Rifabutin. Rifabutin is in the formulary at the state pharmacy.

Name/type	**Effect**
Adefovir	↑ risk of side effects
Amprenavir **(should not be used together)**	↓ serum **concentration**
Anticoagulants	↓ effectiveness of anticoagulants
Atovaquone	↓ serum **concentration**
AZT	↓ serum **concentration**
Barbiturates	↓ effectiveness of barbiturates
Clarithromycin	↓ serum **concentration**
Corticosteroids	↓ serum **concentration**
Cyclosporine	↓ serum **concentration**
Dapsone	↓ serum **concentration**
Delavirdine (should be taken together otherwise,	↓ serum **concentration)**
Diazepam	↓ effectiveness of Diazepam
Digitalis	↓ effectiveness of Digitalis
Disopyramide	↓ effectiveness of Disopyramide
Efavirenz	↓ serum **concentration**
Estrogen	↓ effectiveness of Estrogen
Ethinyl Estradiol (birth control pills)	↓ serum **concentration**
Fluconazole	↓ serum **concentration**
Halothane	↑ risk of liver toxicity
Indinavir **(should not be used together)**	↑ **R**ifampin **serum concentration**
Isoniazid	↑ risk of liver toxicity
Itraconazole	↓ **serum concentration**
Lopinavir/**R**itonavir (should not be used together)	↓ serum **concentration**
Methadone	↓ effectiveness of Methadone
Mexiletine	↓ effectiveness of Mexiletine
Nelfinavir (should not be used together)	↓ serum **concentration**
Nevirapine	may affect serum concentration
Probenecid	↑ Rifampin **serum concentration**
Progesterone	↓ effectiveness of Progesterone
Quinidine	↓ serum **concentration**
Ritonavir	↓ serum **concentration**
Theophylline	↓ serum **concentration**
Verapamil	↓ effectiveness of Verapamil
Voriconazole	↓ serum **concentration**

Table D: Pediatric Dosages – Isoniazid in Children and Adolescents[18]

Daily Dosage of Isoniazid in Children and Adolescents

Child's Weight in lbs.	Child's Weight in kg	Daily Dose (mg) 10-15mg/kg
6 – 14	3 – 6	50mg PO
14.5 – 21	6.5 – 9.5	100mg PO
22 – 29	10 – 13	150mg PO
30 – 35	13.5 – 16	200mg PO
36 – 43	16.5 – 19.5	250mg PO
44 +	20 +	300mg PO

Twice-weekly Dosage of Isoniazid in Children and Adolescents

Child's Weight in lbs.	Child's Weight in kg	Twice-weekly Dose (mg) 20-30mg/kg
6.5 – 10	3 – 4.5	100mg PO
11 – 14	5 – 6	150mg PO
14.5 – 18	6.5 – 8	200mg PO
18.5 – 21.5	8.5 – 9.5	250mg PO
22 – 24	10 – 11	300mg PO
25 – 29	11.5 – 13	350mg PO
29.5 – 32	13.5 – 14.5	400mg PO
33 – 35	15 – 16	450mg PO
36 – 40	16.5 – 18	500mg PO
40.5 – 43	18.5 – 19.5	550mg PO
44 – 48	20 – 21.5	600mg PO
48.5 – 51	22 – 23	650mg PO
52 – 54.5	23.5 – 24.5	700mg PO
55 – 57.5	25 – 26	750mg PO
58 – 62	26.5 – 28	800mg PO
62.5 – 65	28.5 – 29.5	850mg PO
66 +	30 +	900mg PO

NOTE: Isoniazid Syrup should not be refrigerated (keep at room temperature). Isoniazid tablets are scored and can be crushed for oral administration.

18 **Tables created by Susan M. Ray, MD Medical Consultant, Tuberculosis Unit Professor, Emory School of Medicine**

Table E: Daily Pediatric Dosages - Rifampin in Children and Adolescents[19]

Child's Weight in lbs.	Child's Weight in kg	Daily Dose (mg) 10-20mg/kg
15 – 32	7 – 14.5	150mg PO
33 – 48.5	15 - 22	300mg PO
49 – 65	22.5 – 29.5	450mg PO
66 +	30 +	600mg PO

Table F: Treatment of LTBI-Isoniazid and Rifapentine Dosages in Children and Adults [20]

Patient's Weight in lbs.	Patient's Weight in kg	Isoniazid Weekly dose (mg) 15 mg/kg	Rifapentine Weekly dose(mg) 20mg/kg
22 – 29.3	10 – 13.3	200**mg PO weekly**	300**mg PO weekly**
29.4 – 30.9	13.4 – 14	250**mg PO weekly**	300**mg PO weekly**
31 – 36.6	14.1 – 16.6	250**mg PO weekly**	450**mg PO weekly**
36.7 – 44	16.7 – 20	300**mg PO weekly**	450**mg PO weekly**
44.1 – 51.4	20.1 – 23.3	350**mg PO weekly**	450**mg PO weekly**
51.5 – 55	23.4 – 25	400**mg PO weekly**	450**mg PO weekly**
55.1 – 58.8	25.1 – 26.7	400**mg PO weekly**	600**mg PO weekly**
58.9 – 66	26.8 – 30	450**mg PO weekly**	600**mg PO weekly**
66.1 – 70.5	30.1 – 32	500**mg PO weekly**	600**mg PO weekly**
70.6 – 73.3	32.1 – 33.3	500**mg PO weekly**	750**mg PO weekly**
73.4 – 80.9	33.4 – 36.7	550**mg PO weekly**	750**mg PO weekly**
81 – 88	36.8 – 40	600**mg PO weekly**	750**mg PO weekly**
88.1 – 95.5	40.1 – 43.3	650**mg PO weekly**	750**mg PO weekly**
95.6 – 102.9	43.4 – 46.7	700**mg PO weekly**	750**mg PO weekly**
103 – 110	46.8 – 49.9	750**mg PO weekly**	750**mg PO weekly**
110.1 – 117.4	50 – 53.3	800**mg PO weekly**	900**mg PO weekly**
117.5 – 124.9	53.4 – 56.7	850**mg PO weekly**	900**mg PO weekly**
125+	56.8+	900**mg PO weekly**	900**mg PO weekly**

NOTE: Isoniazid is available in 100mg and 300 mg tablets (both are scored for dividing in half. Rifapentine is available in 150mg tablets only. This means a patient of average weight (125lbs. or more) will need to take 3 tablets of Isoniazid and 6 tablets of Rifapentine. Patients need to be aware of the pill burden when offered this regimen.

19,11 **Tables created by Susan M. Ray, MD Medical Consultant, Tuberculosis Unit Professor, Emory School of Medicine**

REFERENCES

1. AIDSmeds.com, http://www.aidsmeds.com, Assessed November 21, 2014.

2. American Diabetes Association. Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes 2014, Diabetes Care, Vol. 37, Suppl. 1, S14-S80, January, 2014.

3. American Academy of Pediatrics, Red Book Online – Last updated 06/15/13. http://redbook.solutions.aap.org/, Assessed November 21, 2014.

4. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). W. Atkinson, S. Wolfe, J. Hamborsky, L. McIntyre, eds., *Epidemiology and Prevention of Vaccine-Preventable Diseases*, 12th ed., Washington D.C., Public Health Foundation, April 14, 2011.

5. CDC, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, National Center for HIV/AIDS, Viral Hepatitis, STD, and TB Prevention, Division of Tuberculosis Elimination, Developed in partnership with the New Jersey Medical School Global Tuberculosis Institute. *Latent Tuberculosis Infection: A Guide for Primary Health Care Providers.* 2010 (Current) http://www.cdc.gov/tb/publications/LTBI/pdf/TargetedLTBI.pdf. Assessed November 24, 2014.

6. CDC, Revised Recommendations for HIV Testing of Adults, Adolescents and Pregnant Women in HealthCare Settings*," MMWR*, Vol. 55, No. RR-14, Sep. 22, 2006. (Current)

7. CDC, Targeted Tuberculin Testing and Treatment of Latent Tuberculosis Infection, *MMWR*, Vol. 49, No. RR-6, Jun. 9, 2000. (Current)

8. CDC. (2011). Recommendations for use of an Isoniazid-Rifapentine regimen with direct observation to treat latent mycobacterium tuberculosis infection. *MMWR*. 60(48). 1650-1653 (Current) 9. CDC.

9. Tuberculosis associated with blocking agents against tumor necrosis factor - alpha - California, 2002–2003. *MMWR* 2004; 53 (No. 30). (Current) http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/PDF/wk/mm5330.pdf. Assessed November 24, 2014.

10. CDC. Updated Guidelines for Using Interferon Gamma Release Assays to Detect *Mycobacterium Tuberculosis* Infection — United States, 2010. ǁ *MMWR* 2010; 59 (RR-5); 1-25 (Current)

11. Department of Health and Human Services, Panel on Antiretroviral Guidelines for Adults and Adolescents, *Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in HIV-1-infected Adults and Adolescents*, November 13, 2013; pp. 1-166, http://www.aidsinfo.nih.gov/. Assessed November 21, 2014.

12. *Georgia TB Reference Guide*, 2005.The Atlanta Tuberculosis Coalition. http://www.medicine.emory.edu/id/ATPC/atpc.html. Assessed November 21,

2014. (Current)

13. Georgia Department of Public Health, Division of Health Protection, Immunization and Infectious Disease Program, Tuberculosis Office. *Tuberculosis Program Evaluation Guidelines.* 2012. http://dph.georgia.gov/tb-publications-reports-manuals-and-guidelines, Assessed November 21, 2014. (Current)

14. Georgia Department of Public Health, Division of Health Protection, Immunization and Infectious Disease Program, Tuberculosis Office. *Tuberculosis Policy and Procedure Manual.* 2016. http://dph.georgia.gov/tb-publications-reports- manuals-and-guidelines. Assessed November 21, 2016. (Current)

15. Holland, D., Sanders, G., Hamilton, C., and Stout, J. (2011). Potential Economic viability of two proposed Rifapentine-based regimens for treatment of latent tuberculosis infection. *Public Library of Science ONE,* 6(7). E22276. (Current)

16. Keane, Joseph et al, Tuberculosis Associated with Infliximab, a Tumor Necrosis actor – Neutralizing Agent, *New England Journal of Medicine*, Vol.345, No. 15, October 11, 2001, pp. 1098-1104. (Current)

17. Macaraig, Michelle. Sept. 20, 2012. "Increased treatment completion for Latent TB infection with the Telephone Nurse Monitoring Program (TNMP). Presentation at TB Education and Training Network (ETN) Conference, http://www.cdc.gov/tb/education/tbetn/conference.htm. Assessed November 24, 2014.

18. Martinson, N., Barnes, G. Moulton, L., et al. (2011). New regimens to prevent tuberculosis in adults with HIV infection. *New England journal of Medicine, 365.* 11-20 (Current).

19. National Tuberculosis Controllers Association (NTCA) and National Tuberculosis Nursing Coalition (NTNC), *Tuberculosis Nursing: A Comprehensive Guide to Patient Care,* 2nd Edition. 2011, http://www.tbcontrollers.org/resources/tb- nursing-manual/ (Current)

20. New York City Department of Health and Mental Hygiene. *Clinical Practice Manual.* "Management of Patient with LTBI: Telephone Nurse Monitoring Program (TNMP)." 2006. Sent by Michelle Macaraig, D.Ph., MPH, Assistant Director for Strategic Planning and Program Evaluation, Bureau of TB Control, New York City Department of Health and Mental Hygiene.

21. Reichman, LB, and Bhavaraju, R, eds. *Guidelines for the Diagnosis of Latent Tuberculosis Infection in the 21st Century, 2nd Edition.* Newark: New Jersey Medical School Global Tuberculosis Institute (Current) http://www.umdnj.edu/ntbcweb/downloads/products/guideltbi.pdf. Assessed November 24, 2014.

22. Rom, William N., and Garay, Stuart M. *Tuberculosis*, 2nd ed., Little, Brown and

Company (Inc.), Boston, September 12, 2003. (Current)

23. Schechter, M., Zajdenverg, R., Falco, G., et al. (2006). Weekly Rifapentine/Isoniazid or daily rifampin/pyrazinamide for latent tuberculosis in household contacts. *American journal of Respiratory Critical Care Medicine, 173.* 922-926. (Current)

24. Sterling T., Villarino, M., Borisov, A., et al. (2011). Three months of Rifapentine and Isoniazid for latent tuberculosis infection. *The New England Journal of medicine, 365*(23). 2155-2166. (Current)

25. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Core Curriculum on Tuberculosis – *What the Clinician Should Know*, 6th ed., 2013. (Current)

26. Department of Reproductive Health, World Health Organization (WHO), Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 4th ed., 2009. http://www.who.int/reproductivehealth/publications/family_planning/9789241563888/en/. Assessed November 24, 2014.

WOMEN'S HEALTH

WOMEN'S HEALTH
2018-2019 CLINICAL REVIEW TEAM

Melissa Kottke, MD, MPH, MBA **Medical Consultant**	**Bonnie Cox, MN, APRN** **Women's Health Program Nurse Consultant** **GA Department of Public Health**
Anita Barkin, DrPH, MSN, APRN **North Central Health District**	**Karen Nixon, MSN, APRN** **East Metro Health District**
Rebekah Chance-Revels, MSN, APRN **Coastal Health District**	**Allen Rowland, MSN, APRN** **Southeast Health District**
Jo Ann Cook, MSN, APRN **West Central Health District**	**Jennifer Sapp, MS, APRN** **East Central Health District**
Kimberley Hazelwood, Pharm D **Pharmacy Director** **GA Department of Public Health**	**Pamela Smith, MSN, APRN** **Northeast Health District**
Risë Wood, RPh **Northwest Health District**	

CENTERS FOR DISEASE CONTROL AND PREVENTION (CDC) US MEDICAL ELIGIBILITY CRITERIA (MEC), SELECTED PRACTICE RECOMMENDATIONS (SPR) FOR CONTRACEPTIVE USE AND QUALITY FAMILY PLANNING (QFP)

The CDC US Medical Eligibility Criteria **(MEC)** and Selected Practice Recommendations **(SPR)** for Contraception Use reflect adaptations of the WHO Medical Eligibility Criteria and SPR to ensure appropriateness for use in the United States. Most of the U.S. guidance does not differ from the WHO guidance. However, several changes have been made, including adaptations of selected WHO recommendations, addition of recommendations for new medical conditions, and removal of recommendations for contraceptive methods not currently available in the United States.

In 2014, the CDC released Providing Quality Family Planning Services **(QFP).** Created in collaboration with the Office of Population Affairs and the Department of Health and Human Services, this document provides recommendations about how to provide high quality evidence based family planning services. Used together, the **MEC**, SPR and QFP should guide clinicians in providing evidence-based contraceptive care in the United States.

The **MEC** contains recommendations for health-care providers for the safe use of contraceptive methods by women and men with various characteristics and medical conditions. It is intended to assist health-care providers when they counsel women, men, and couples about contraceptive method choice. These recommendations are meant to be a source of clinical guidance; health-care providers should always consider the individual clinical circumstances of each person seeking family planning services.

The SPR contains recommendations which are intended to help health-care providers address issues related to use of contraceptives, such as how to help a woman initiate use of a contraceptive method, which examinations and tests are needed before initiating use of a contraceptive method, what regular follow-up is needed, and how to address problems that often arise during use, including missed pills and side effects such as unscheduled bleeding.

CDC US Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use **was updated in 2016.**
http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6503.pdf
This full report provides vital information, not only about what the recommendation is, but also why. Providers should be aware that this guidance is continually updated in response to emerging evidence. For updates, refer to the CDC's website.
http://www.cdc.gov/reproductivehealth/unintendedpregnancy/usmec.htm

Additional resources including **android/**iPhone/iPad apps, wall charts, wheels and guidance in Spanish can be accessed at that site. Local clinics should make copies of the CDC Medical Eligibility Criteria available to all clinic staff and should encourage its use with each contraceptive clinical encounter

TYPE OF CONTRACEPTIVE		
CONDITION	**CATEGORY** I=Initiation C=Continuation	**CLARIFICATIONS/ EVIDENCE**
Condition	Condition classified from 1 to 4 The categories for fertility awareness-based methods and surgical sterilization are described at the beginning of the relevant section.	Clarifications and evidence regarding the classification

NA denotes a condition for which a ranking was not given by the Working Group but for which clarifications have been provided.

I=Initiation. This provides guidance for initiating a contraceptive method given the presence of a particular medical condition at the time of initiation.
C=Continuation. This provides guidance about whether to continue a contraceptive method if a particular medical condition has been diagnosed since starting that method of contraception. To illustrate this with an example: **Stroke (history of a cerebrovascular accident).** Initiating a **contraceptive implant** in someone with this situation is Medical Eligibility Criteria Category 2. This should be interpreted that it is acceptable to start using a **contraceptive implant** with this condition. However, for someone who had not had **a stroke before using the implant**, but who **has a stroke while using the contraceptive implant**, continuing the method is Medical Eligibility Criteria Category 3, and one should obtain consultation with an MD.

Classification of categories:

Each condition was defined as representing either an individual's characteristics (e.g., age, history of pregnancy, **use of certain medications**) or a known pre-existing medical/pathological condition (e.g., diabetes, hypertension). It is expected that national and institutional health and service delivery environments will decide the most suitable means for screening for conditions according to their public health importance. Patient history will often be the most appropriate approach.
The conditions affecting eligibility for the use of each contraceptive method were classified under one of the following four categories:

1. A condition for which there is no restriction for the use of the contraceptive method.

2. A condition where the advantages of using the method generally outweigh the theoretical or proven risks.

3. A condition where the theoretical or proven risks usually outweigh the advantages of using the method.

4. A condition which represents an unacceptable health risk if the contraceptive method

is used.

Abbreviations used by the CDC Medical Eligibility Criteria:
COC – Combined oral contraceptive
CHC- Combined hormonal contraceptive
POP – Progestin-only pill
POC- Progestin-only contraceptive
DMPA – Depot medroxyprogesterone acetate
Implants – Implanon & Nexplanon
Cu IUD – Copper IUD (ParaGard)
LNG IUD – Levonorgestrel IUD (**ex. Liletta, Kyleena**, Mirena, Skyla)
UPA- Ulipristal Acetate

Using the categories in practice:

Categories 1 and 4 are self-explanatory. Classification of a method/condition as category 2 indicates the method can generally be used, but careful follow-up may be required. However, provision of a method to a woman with a condition classified as category 3 requires careful clinical judgment and access to clinical services; for such a woman, the severity of the condition and the availability, practicality, and acceptability of alternative methods should be taken into account. For a method/condition classified as category 3, use of that method is not usually recommended unless other more appropriate methods are not available or acceptable. Careful follow-up will be required.

Where resources for clinical judgment are limited, such as in community-based services, the four-category classification framework can be simplified into two categories. With this simplification, a classification of Category 3 indicates that a woman is not medically eligible to use the method. District level conditions are often consistent with community-based services and thus the two-tier approach listed in the following table is recommended. Provision of a contraceptive to a woman with a condition that falls into category 3 (for initiation or continuation) should be done only after consultation with the delegating MD.

CATEGORY	WITH CLINICAL JUDGMENT	WITH LIMITED CLINICAL JUDGMENT
1	Use method in any circumstances	Yes (Use the method)
2	Generally use the method	
3	Use of method not usually recommended unless other more appropriate methods are not available or not acceptable	No (Do not use the method)
4	Method not to be used	

NOTE ABOUT AGE AND WHEN TO STOP USING CONTRACEPTION: Age--by itself--is not a contraindication to any method of contraception. Use of hormonal methods can mask the diagnosis of menopause (which can only be confirmed after 12 months of

amenorrhea). The average age of menopause in the U.S. is 51, and a clinician can be certain about menopause by age 55. A woman with no medical problems can continue her desired contraception as long as she desires it or until age 55. However, medical co-morbidities increase with age. And the combination of these (ex: hypertension, diabetes, obesity) plus age may increase the risk, particularly with estrogen containing contraceptives. For all women, continuous reassessment of her health, co-morbidities and reproductive goals and needs is essential and working with her to determine what is best for her as she nears menopause.

The CDC US Medical Eligibility Criteria also highlights the importance of selecting contraceptive methods that have higher efficacy at preventing pregnancy. The following table (Table 1) lists the perfect and typical use failure rates of common contraceptives, as well as the continuation rates at one year. Providers should become familiar with the typical use failure rates, as those are the rates that are experienced by most patients. The CDC US Medical Eligibility Criteria also created a list of conditions that are associated with an increased risk of adverse events in the event of unintended pregnancy (Box 2).

For women with conditions that may make unintended pregnancy an unacceptable health risk, long-acting, highly effective contraceptive methods may be the best choice. Women with these conditions should be advised that sole use of barrier methods for contraception and behavior-based methods of contraception <u>may not</u> be the most appropriate choice because of their relatively higher typical-use rates of failure (Table 1).

TABLE 1. Percentage of women experiencing an unintended pregnancy during the first year of typical use and the first year of perfect use of contraception and the percentage continuing use at the end of the first year — United States

	Women experiencing an unintended pregnancy within the first year of use		
Method	**Typical use***	**Perfect use†**	**Women continuing use at 1 year§**
No method¶	85%	85%	
Spermicides**	29%	18%	42%
Withdrawal	27%	4%	43%
Fertility awareness–based methods	25%		51%
Standard Days method††		5%	
TwoDay method™††		4%	
Ovulation method††		3%	
Sponge			
Parous women	32%	20%	46%
Nulliparous women	16%	9%	57%
Diaphragm§§	16%	6%	57%
Condom¶¶			
Female (Reality®)	21%	5%	49%
Male	15%	2%	53%
Combined pill and progestin-only pill	8%	0.3%	68%
Evra patch®	8%	0.3%	68%
NuvaRing®	8%	0.3%	68%
Depo-Provera®	3%	0.3%	56%
Intrauterine device			
ParaGard® (copper T)	0.8%	0.6%	78%
Mirena® (LNG-IUS)	0.2%	0.2%	80%
Implanon®	0.05%	0.05%	84%
Female sterilization	0.5%	0.5%	100%
Male sterilization	0.15%	0.10%	100%
Emergency contraceptive pills***	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
Lactational amenorrhea methods†††	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable

Adapted from Trussell J. Contraceptive efficacy. In Hatcher RA, Trussell J, Nelson AL, Cates W, Stewart FH, Kowal D. Contraceptive technology. 19th revised ed. New York, NY: Ardent Media; 2007.

* Among typical couples who initiate use of a method (not necessarily for the first time), the percentage who experience an unintended pregnancy during the first year if they do not stop use for any other reason. Estimates of the probability of pregnancy during the first year of typical use for spermicides, withdrawal, fertility awareness-based methods, the diaphragm, the male condom, the pill, and Depo-Provera are taken from the 1995 National Survey of Family Growth corrected for underreporting of abortion; see the text for the derivation of estimates for the other methods.

† Among couples who initiate use of a method (not necessarily for the first time) and who use it *perfectly* (both consistently and correctly), the percentage who experience an unintended pregnancy during the first year if they do not stop use for any other reason. See the text for the derivation of the estimate for each method.

§ Among couples attempting to avoid pregnancy, the percentage who continue to use a method for 1 year.

¶ The percentages becoming pregnant in the typical use and perfect use columns are based on data from populations where contraception is not used and from women who cease using contraception to become pregnant. Of these, approximately 89% become pregnant within 1 year. This estimate was lowered slightly (to 85%) to represent the percentage who would become pregnant within 1 year among women now relying on reversible methods of contraception if they abandoned contraception altogether.

** Foams, creams, gels, vaginal suppositories, and vaginal film.

†† The TwoDay and Ovulation methods are based on evaluation of cervical mucus. The Standard Days method avoids intercourse on cycle days 8–19.

§§ With spermicidal cream or jelly.

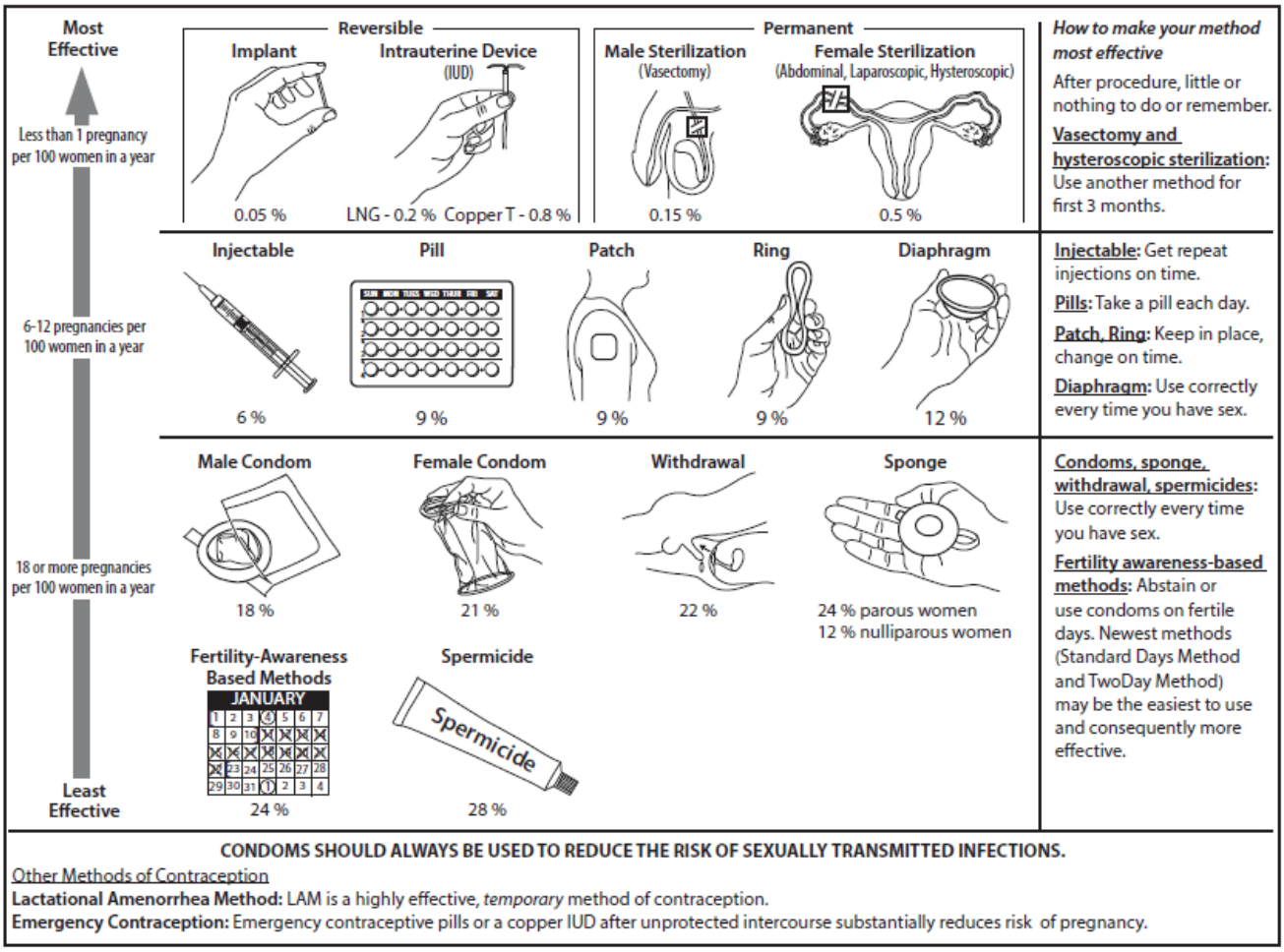
¶¶ Without spermicides.

*** Treatment initiated within 72 hours after unprotected intercourse reduces the risk for pregnancy by at least 75%. The treatment schedule is 1 dose within 120 hours after unprotected intercourse and a second dose 12 hours after the first dose. Both doses of Plan B can be taken at the same time. Plan B (1 dose is 1 white pill) is the only dedicated product specifically marketed for emergency contraception. The Food and Drug Administration has in addition declared the following 22 brands of oral contraceptives to be safe and effective for emergency contraception: Ogestrel or Ovral (1 dose is 2 white pills); Levlen or Nordette (1 dose is 4 light-orange pills); Cryselle, Levora, Low-Ogestrel, Lo/Ovral, or Quasence (1 dose is 4 white pills); Tri-Levlen or Triphasil (1 dose is 4 yellow pills); Jolessa, Portia, Seasonale, or Trivora (1 dose is 4 pink pills); Seasonique (1 dose is 4 light blue-green pills); Empresse (1 dose is 4 orange pills); Alesse, Lessina, or Levlite (1 dose is 5 pink pills); Aviane (1 dose is 5 orange pills); and Lutera (1 dose is 5 white pills).

††† Lactational amenorrhea method is a highly effective *temporary* method of contraception. However, to maintain effective protection against pregnancy, another method of contraception must be used as soon as menstruation resumes, the frequency or duration of breastfeeding is reduced, bottle feeds are introduced, or the baby reaches 6 months of age.

Some providers may find the following graphic useful in interpreting the above efficacy data and in counseling patients. In general, provider counseling **can** follow a hierarchical approach, encouraging the patient to use the most effective contraceptive for which she is eligible and finds acceptable.

FIGURE. Effectiveness of family planning methods*



Sources: Adapted from World Health Organization (WHO) Department of Reproductive Health and Research, Johns Hopkins Bloomberg School of Public Health/ Center for Communication Programs (CCP). Knowledge for health project. Family planning: a global handbook for providers (2011 update). Baltimore, MD; Geneva, Switzerland: CCP and WHO; 2011; and Trussell J. Contraceptive failure in the United States. Contraception 2011;83:397–404.

* The percentages indicate the number out of every 100 women who experienced an unintended pregnancy within the first year of typical use of each contraceptive method.

BOX 2. Conditions associated with increased risk for adverse health events as a result of pregnancy*

Breast cancer
Complicated valvular heart disease
Cystic fibrosis
Diabetes: insulin dependent; with nephropathy, retinopathy, or neuropathy or other vascular disease; or of >20 years' duration
Endometrial or ovarian cancer
Epilepsy
Hypertension (systolic ≥160 mm Hg or diastolic ≥100 mm Hg)
History of bariatric surgery within the past 2 years
HIV: not clinically well or not receiving antiretroviral therapy
Ischemic heart disease
Gestational trophoblastic disease
Hepatocellular adenoma and malignant liver tumors (hepatoma)
Peripartum cardiomyopathy
Schistosomiasis with fibrosis of the liver
Severe (decompensated) cirrhosis
Sickle cell disease
Solid organ transplantation within the past 2 years
Stroke
Systemic lupus erythematosus
Thrombogenic mutations
Tuberculosis

*Long-acting, highly effective contraceptive methods might be the best choice for women with conditions that are associated with increased risk for adverse health events as a result of pregnancy. These women should be advised that sole use of barrier methods for contraception and behavior-based methods of contraception might not be the most appropriate choice because of their relatively higher typical-use rates of failure.

The CDC's Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use **were also updated in 2016**. They can be found at **http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6504.pdf** Like the Medical Eligibility Criteria, the SPR represents an extensive and ongoing review of the literature regarding how to use contraception. Specifically, the SPR provides recommendations on when to initiate contraceptives, which studies are necessary prior to initiation, and makes some suggestions on clinical management scenarios.

Clinicians are encouraged to read the document in its entirety, including the detailed review on the utility of a urine pregnancy test. This set of protocols (in particular, the **Initiation of Contraceptives** protocol) reflects that using a checklist to be "reasonably certain that a

woman is not pregnant" has a very high probability that the woman is not pregnant. See Box below. The SPR supports immediate initiation for all methods of contraception if you can be reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant.

BOX 2. How to be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant

A health care provider can be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant if she has no symptoms or signs of pregnancy and meets any one of the following criteria:

- is ≤7 days after the start of normal menses
- has not had sexual intercourse since the start of last normal menses.
- has been correctly and consistently using a reliable method of contraception
- is ≤7 days after spontaneous or induced abortion
- is within 4 weeks postpartum
- is fully or nearly fully breastfeeding (exclusively breastfeeding or the vast majority [≥85%] of feeds are breastfeeds), amenorrheic, and <6 months postpartum

Appendix B

When To Start Using Specific Contraceptive Methods

Contraceptive method	When to start (if the provider is reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant)	Additional contraception (i.e., back-up) needed	Examinations or tests needed before initiation*
Copper-containing IUD	Anytime	Not needed	Bimanual examination and cervical inspection†
Levonorgestrel-releasing IUD	Anytime	If >7 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	Bimanual examination and cervical inspection†
Implant	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	None
Injectable	Anytime	If >7 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	None
Combined hormonal contraceptive	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	Blood pressure measurement
Progestin-only pill	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 2 days.	None

Abbreviations: BMI = body mass index; HIV = human immunodeficiency virus; IUD = intrauterine device; STD = sexually transmitted disease; U.S. MEC = *U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use*.

* Weight (BMI) measurement is not needed to determine medical eligibility for any methods of contraception because all methods can be used (U.S. MEC 1) or generally can be used (U.S. MEC 2) among obese women (Box 1). However, measuring weight and calculating BMI (weight [kg] / height [m]^2) at baseline might be helpful for monitoring any changes and counseling women who might be concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.

† Most women do not require additional STD screening at the time of IUD insertion. If a woman with risk factors for STDs has not been screened for gonorrhea and chlamydia according to CDC's *STD Treatment Guidelines* (http://www.cdc.gov/std/treatment), screening can be performed at the time of IUD insertion, and insertion should not be delayed. Women with current purulent cervicitis or chlamydial infection or gonococcal infection should not undergo IUD insertion (U.S. MEC 4).

Other key recommendations from the SPR include a detailed discussion of the tests and/or examinations that are needed before initiation of contraceptive methods. For this classification,

Class A: essential and mandatory in all circumstances for safe and effective use of the contraceptive method.

Class B: contributes substantially to safe and effective use, but implementation may be considered within the public health and/or service context; risk of not performing an examination or test should be balanced against the benefits of making the contraceptive method available.

Class C: does not contribute substantially to safe and effective use of the contraceptive method.

TABLE. Examinations and tests needed before initiation of contraceptive methods

	Contraceptive method and class							
Examination or test	**Cu-IUD and LNG-IUD**	**Implant**	**Injectable**	**CHC**	**POP**	**Condom**	**Diaphragm or cervical cap**	**Spermicide**
Examination								
Blood pressure	C	C	C	A*	C	C	C	C
Weight (BMI) (weight [kg]/ height [m]^2)	—†	—†	—†	—†	—†	C	C	C
Clinical breast examination	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C
Bimanual examination and cervical inspection	A	C	C	C	C	C	A§	C
Laboratory test								
Glucose	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C
Lipids	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C
Liver enzymes	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C
Hemoglobin	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C
Thrombogenic mutations	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C
Cervical cytology (Papanicolaou smear)	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C
STD screening with laboratory tests	—¶	C	C	C	C	C	C	C
HIV screening with laboratory tests	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C

Abbreviations: BMI = body mass index; CHC = combined hormonal contraceptive; Cu-IUD = copper-containing intrauterine device; DMPA = depot medroxyprogesterone acetate; HIV = human immunodeficiency virus; LNG-IUD = levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine device; POP = progestin-only pill; STD = sexually transmitted disease; U.S. MEC = *U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 2010*.

* In cases in which access to health care might be limited, the blood pressure measurement can be obtained by the woman in a nonclinical setting (e.g., pharmacy or fire station) and self-reported to the provider.

† Weight (BMI) measurement is not needed to determine medical eligibility for any methods of contraception because all methods can be used (U.S. MEC 1) or generally can be used (U.S. MEC 2) among obese women (Box 2). However, measuring weight and calculating BMI at baseline might be helpful for monitoring any changes and counseling women who might be concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.

§ A bimanual examination (not cervical inspection) is needed for diaphragm fitting.

¶ Most women do not require additional STD screening at the time of IUD insertion if they have already been screened according to CDC's *STD Treatment Guidelines* (available at http://www.cdc.gov/std/treatment). If a woman has not been screened according to guidelines, screening can be performed at the time of IUD insertion and insertion should not be delayed. Women with purulent cervicitis or current chlamydial infection or gonorrhea should not undergo IUD insertion (U.S. MEC 4). Women who have a very high individual likelihood of STD exposure (e.g., those with a currently infected partner) generally should not undergo IUD insertion (U.S. MEC 3). For these women, IUD insertion should be delayed until appropriate testing and treatment occurs.

The SPR discusses follow-up suggestions after contraceptive initiation (table below). **Adolescents and women with complex medical histories may require additional or tailored follow-up. The SPR** also makes recommendations about management of abnormal bleeding during contraceptive use and what to do with a woman who develops PID with an IUD in situ. These are reflected in those specific protocols.

TABLE D1. Routine follow-up after contraceptive initiation

	Contraceptive method				
Action	**Cu-IUD or LNG-IUD**	**Implant**	**Injectable**	**CHC**	**POP**
General follow-up					
Advise women to return at any time to discuss side effects or other problems or if they want to change the method. Advise women using IUDs, implants, or injectables when the IUD or implant needs to be removed or when a reinjection is needed. No routine follow-up visit is required.	X	X	X	X	X
Other routine visits					
Assess the woman's satisfaction with her current method and whether she has any concerns about method use.	X	X	X	X	X
Assess any changes in health status, including medications, that would change the method's appropriateness for safe and effective continued use based on U.S. MEC (i.e., category 3 and 4 conditions and characteristics) (Box 1).	X	X	X	X	X
Consider performing an examination to check for the presence of IUD strings.	X	—	—	—	—
Consider assessing weight changes and counseling women who are concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.	X	X	X	X	X
Measure blood pressure.	—	—	—	X	—

Abbreviations: CHC = combined hormonal contraceptives; Cu-IUD = copper-containing intrauterine device; HIV = human immunodeficiency virus; IUD = intrauterine device; LNG-IUD = levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine device; POP = progestin-only pills; U.S. MEC = *U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use*.

NOTE (regarding length of use): The long acting methods of contraception are often effective for longer than the FDA approved time. For example, the Mirena is approved for use for 5 years, however clinical data demonstrates its effectiveness for up to 7 years. Liletta is currently approved for four years, but studies are ongoing for evaluating use up to seven years. The Copper T380A is approved for use for 10 years, however clinical data demonstrates its effectiveness for 12 years, and probably longer. The contraceptive implant is approved for use for 3 years however, clinical data demonstrates its effectiveness for 5 years, and probably longer. This information can be used when counseling women at the time of initiation as well as at the end of the FDA approval window. If the patient is satisfied with the method at the end of the FDA approval window and would like to continue using it, evidence indicates that it still provides contraception as noted above. If she would like to have it removed, this should be honored.

PROVIDING QUALITY FAMILY PLANNING

Providing Quality Family Planning is an essential service for the health of families. These recommendations help "put everything together," and suggest how to intertwine the MEC and SPR into clinical settings. Figure 1 in QFP (below) shows how providing family planning services is embedded within a larger framework of preventive care. Clinicians providing family planning should be equipped to provide all Family Planning Services as well as Related Preventive Health Services, with referral as needed. Provision of Other preventive health services should be available on-site or by referral.

FIGURE 1. Family planning and related and other preventive health services

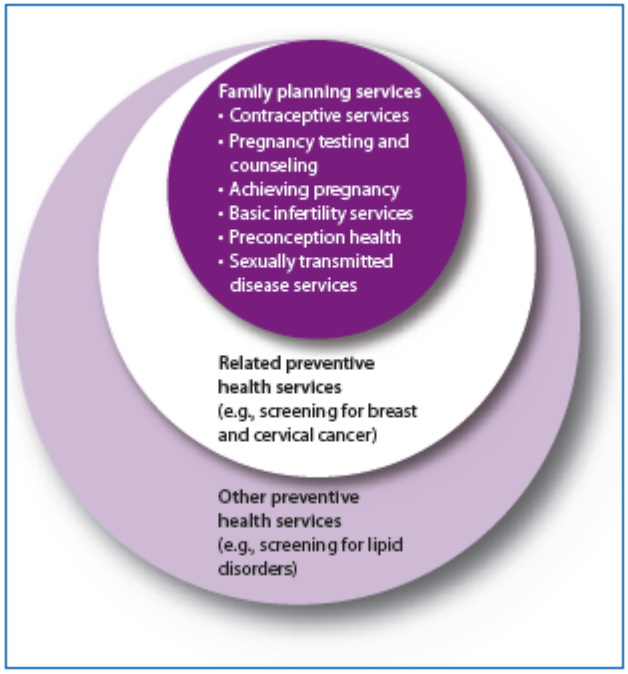
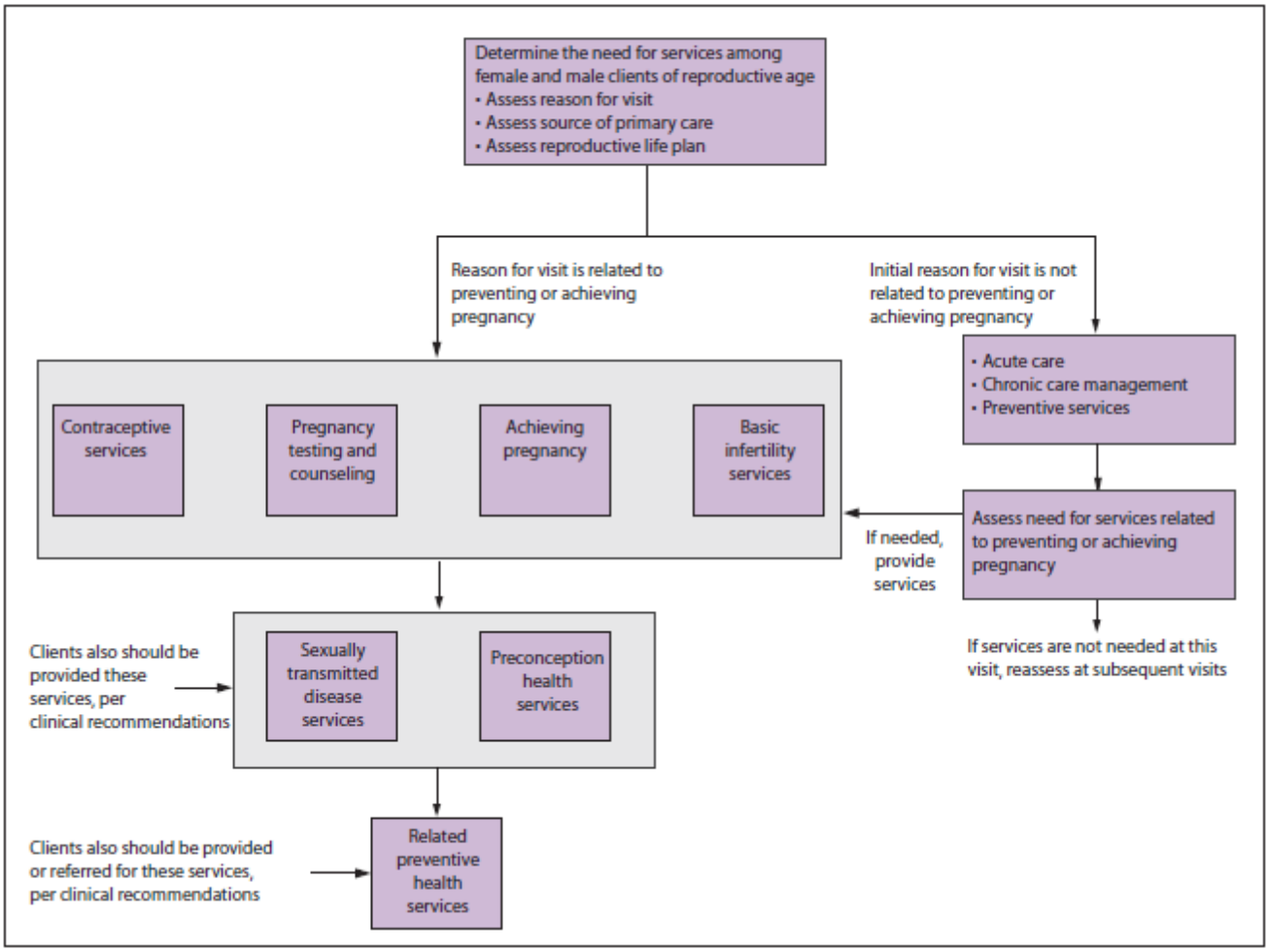


FIGURE 2. Clinical pathway of family planning services for women and men of reproductive age



A suggested clinical pathway is depicted in Figure 2. Determining the reason for the visit, other sources of care and reproductive life plan are the first steps. A reproductive life plan can be a simple assessment to understand the fertility goals of the patient. See questions listed in Box 2. As Figure 2 indicates, clinicians should ask a woman about her source of primary care. If she is receiving primary care services elsewhere, a clinician need not repeat these in conjunction with providing Family Planning services.

BOX 2. Recommended questions to ask when assessing a client's reproductive life plan

Providers should discuss a reproductive life plan with clients receiving contraceptive, pregnancy testing and counseling, basic infertility, sexually transmitted disease, and preconception health services in accordance with CDC's recommendation that all persons capable of having a child should have a reproductive life plan.*

Providers should assess the client's reproductive life plan by asking the client questions such as:

- Do you have any children now?
- Do you want to have (more) children?
- How many (more) children would you like to have and when?

* Source: CDC. Recommendations to improve preconception health and health care—United States: a report of the CDC/ATSDR Preconception Care Work Group and the Select Panel on Preconception Care. MMWR 2006;55(No. RR-6).

The QFP makes the following recommendations for steps to providing contraceptive services. Clinicians should follow these steps:

1. Establish and maintain rapport:

    a. Use open ended questions, listen, encourage sharing, demonstrate empathy and acceptance

    b. Maintain privacy and confidentiality, explain how personal information will be used

    c. Encourage questions

2. Obtain clinical and social information

    a. Medical history, including menstrual, obstetric history, conditions that may affect contraceptive eligibility (see MEC). **A complete medication history including herbal medications should be obtained and reviewed for potential interactions with contraceptives**.

    b. Reproductive life plan (as above)

    c. Contraceptive history and preferences

    d. Sexual health assessment (using the 5 P's)
        1) Practices (what types of sexual activity are they engaging in, e.g., vaginal, oral, anal)
        2) Pregnancy prevention method
        3) Partner (number, gender, concurrency)

4) Protection from STDs (what are they doing for STD prevention, e.g., condoms, abstinence, monogamy)
5) Past STD history (self and partner(s), those with history of STDs are at higher risk of STDs)

3. Work interactively to select the most effective and appropriate contraceptive method incorporating the following:

    a. Method effectiveness

    b. Correct use

    c. Non-contraceptive benefits

    d. Side effects

    e. Protection from STDs/HIV

    f. Providers should also incorporate additional concerns identified from social history into this discussion (e.g., socio-behavioral concerns, intimate partner violence, mental health and substance use) that may impact method use

4. Conduct a physical assessment related to contraceptive use, when warranted (see **SPR Table-Examination and tests needed before initiation of contraceptive methods also see Preventive Care and Health Screening Protocol for screening that may be valuable for overall health**).

5. Provide contraceptive method along with instructions, help patient develop a plan for use, confirm understanding, arrange follow-up.

    a. Start the method the day of visit when possible (see Initiation of Contraceptives protocol).

    b. Provide multiple cycles (ideally a full year) of pill, patch, or ring when possible.

REFERENCES:

1. CDC, U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 2016, MMWR 2016; 65: 3 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6503.pdf

2. CDC, U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use, 2016. MMWR 2016; 65:4 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6504.pdf

3. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Providing Quality Family Planning MMWR 2014 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/rr/rr6304.pdf

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PREVENTIVE CARE AND HEALTH SCREENING

DEFINITION

Preventive care and health screening is an important part of providing health care to women. Screening, by its definition, is performed before the onset of symptoms of disease to prevent disease or to identify it in its early stages. Recommendations for preventive care and health screening are generally grouped by age and are determined after identifying major causes of morbidity and mortality for that age group. Attention is directed towards those conditions for which early identification can impact the trajectory of the disease and intervention is possible.

ETIOLOGY

This protocol discusses the examination, counseling and testing that should be offered as a part of preventive care in a family planning setting. Please note that offering preventive care and health screening is valuable for overall health, but there is no screening that is necessary for the safe provision of contraception. Preventive care and screening, like all aspects of clinical care, change over time. Providers must make efforts to be up-to-date on recommendations. Suggested resources for providers include the US Preventive Services Task Force http://www.uspreventiveservicestaskforce.org/adultrec.htm and American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists www.acog.org. Furthermore, cervical cancer screening and breast cancer screening should be consistent with current Georgia Breast and Cervical Cancer Program Screening Guidelines.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient's general well-being and health habits (including exercise, nutrition, sexuality, substance use, **mental health**, experiences of intimate partner violence and immunization history).

2. A family history to include cancer, heart disease, hypertension, high cholesterol, diabetes, autoimmune diseases, mental health disorders and other concerns.

OBJECTIVE

EXAM

The following exam components should be performed and documented at the initial visit, if needed, and annually thereafter. If a woman indicates that she has a primary care physician and has had appropriate screening based on Tables 1-3 below, this can be documented **per patient history**, and these services do not need to be repeated at an initial visit.

TABLE 1: Exam components

	Menarche-18 years	19-39 years	40-64 years
Height	X	X	X
Weight	X	X	X
BMI	X	X	X
Blood pressure	X	X	X
Tanner staging of secondary sexual characteristics	X		
Neck (thyroid and lymph nodes)		X	X
Heart and Lung	X	X	X
Breast exam		X	X
Abdomen	X	X	X
Pelvic exam*	As indicated	X (Pap smears begin at age 21)	X
Rectal exam			X (begin at age 50; may begin at age 45 for high risk populations)
General Health and wellness (ex. skin, oral cavity), as indicated	X	X	X

***Pelvic exams should be performed for pap screening and for women who are having symptoms. Some emerging evidence suggests that this exam may be deferred in other situations.

ASSESSMENT Preventive care and health screening

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES (Please see chart below)**

The following table outlines the diagnostic studies (lab and other) that should be performed or recommended, if needed, at the initial and annual visit by age category. Depending upon the setting, some may require referral.

TABLE 2: Diagnostic Studies

	Menarche-18 years	19-39 years	40-64 years
Urine pregnancy test	As indicated	As indicated	As indicated
Cervical cancer screening	None	Ages 21-29: Cytology alone every 3 years Age 30 and over: Prefer co-testing (cytology plus HPV) every 5 years Acceptable for cytology alone every 3 years	Prefer co-testing (cytology plus HPV testing) every 5 years Acceptable for cytology alone every 3 years
Urinalysis	As indicated	As indicated	As indicated
Hemoglobin	As indicated	As indicated	As indicated
Wet prep	As indicated	As indicated	As indicated
Lipids[21]			X (begin at age 45 and every 5 years thereafter)
Fasting glucose[22]			X (begin at age 45 and every 5 years thereafter)
Mammography			X (every 1-2 years ages 40-49, annually thereafter)
Colon cancer screening			Begin at age 50 (AHRQ, ACOG and AGA support initiating screening for African American and Native American patients at age 45. Clinicians are encouraged to discuss these recommendations with patients and initiate screening accordingly). Preference for colonoscopy every 10 years. Sigmoidoscopy every 5 years, with high-sensitive fecal occult blood test (3 samples) every 3 years or annual screening with high-sensitive fecal occult blood testing (3 samples) acceptable. **NOTE:** A single stool guaiac collected at the time of clinical rectal exam is NOT sufficient for colon cancer screening.

21 For those who are at increased risk for cardiovascular disease, lipid screening may occur after age 20 and every five years thereafter. Increased risk can occur with the following:
a. BMI greater than 30
b. Hypertension
c. Personal history of coronary heart disease
d. Diabetes
e. Family history of early onset heart disease (less than 50 years for males and less than 60 years for females)
f. Tobacco use
22 For those with hypertension or a history of gestational diabetes, screening for type 2 diabetes with a fasting glucose is appropriate. In some settings, screening with stat hgb A1c may be appropriate.

TABLE 3: STD Screening

The following table outlines a risk-based strategy for STD screening. Providers are reminded that screening is to be applied to asymptomatic patients and that additional testing may be appropriate for symptomatic patients. Providers are also encouraged to be aware of their local epidemiology of STDs. Some areas of Georgia have epidemic-level prevalence of disease. STD screening, as with other preventive health studies, can be recommended, but not required.

	Females	Males
Chlamydia	Annually all women less than 26 years old. For women 26 years old and over, screen annually for those with new partners, multiple partners or partners with other partners. Those who have previously tested positive should be screened for reinfection 3 months after treatment or whenever the person presents for care in the 12 months following initial treatment.	Screen those who are in settings with high risk: adolescent clinics, correctional facilities, STD clinics as well as MSM. Screening should be at anatomic site of exposure. Those who have previously tested positive should be screened for reinfection 3 months after treatment or whenever the person presents for care in the 12 months following initial treatment.
Gonorrhea	Annually all women less than 26years old. For women 26 years old and over, screen annually for those with new partners, multiple partners, previous STD or gonorrhea, inconsistent condom use (if at risk), commercial sex work, and drug use. Those who have previously tested positive should be screened for reinfection 3 months after treatment or whenever the person presents for care in the 12 months following initial treatment.	MSM and those with symptoms of infection. Screening should be at anatomic site of exposure. Those who have previously tested positive should be screened for reinfection 3 months after treatment or whenever the person presents for care in the 12 months following initial treatment.
HIV	All patients 13-64 should routinely be screened for HIV**.** This should be offered at the initial visit and reassessed annually for the need for additional screening (see below for those who should be screened annually). Those at high risk should be screened annually. High risk includes: injection-drug users and their sex partners, persons who exchange sex for money or drugs, sex partners of HIV-infected persons, and MSM or heterosexual persons who themselves or whose sex partners have had more than one sex partner since their most recent HIV test**.** **Additionally, all men or women who seek evaluation and treatment for STDs should be offered screening for HIV.**	

Hepatitis C	One time screening for those who were born 1945-1965. Screen also if at high risk for infection.
Syphilis	Populations at risk include MSM, commercial sex workers, persons who exchange sex for drugs, those in adult correctional facilities and those living in communities with high prevalence of syphilis.

PATIENT EDUCATION AND COUNSELING

1. Obesity: For those with BMI greater than 30, intensive, multicomponent behavioral interventions for obese adults include the following components:

    a. Behavioral management activities, such as setting weight-loss goals.

    b. Improving diet or nutrition and increasing physical activity
        1) Regular aerobic physical activity at least 30 minutes per day, most days of the week.
        2) Refer for diet and nutrition counseling, if available.

    c. Addressing barriers to change.

    d. Self-monitoring.

    e. Strategizing how to maintain lifestyle changes.

2. Nutrition

    a. **Counsel** or refer to nutritionist or dietician (if available) if patient has poor dietary intake, is overweight or underweight, is anemic or has any chronic disease related to poor nutrition.

    b. Recommend that all women who are seeking pregnancy or are capable of pregnancy are consuming 400 mcg of folic acid daily for prevention of neural tube defects.

3. Smoking: For women reporting any amount of smoking,

    a. Refer patient to local cessation program and/or Georgia Tobacco Quit Line, 1-877-270-STOP (7867), if smoker or tobacco user. **Patient must be 13 years or older to receive services.**

b. Providers may utilize the 5 A framework to tobacco cessation
   1) **A**sk about tobacco use.
   2) **A**dvise to quit through clear personalized messages.
   3) **A**ssess willingness to quit.
   4) **A**ssist to quit.
   5) **A**rrange follow-up and support

4. Alcohol use

   a. May screen using AUDIT, AUDIT-C, CAGE, T-ACE or single question tool.
      1) Single question tool is "How many times in the past year have you had 5 (for men) or 4 (for women and all adults older than 65 years) or more drinks in a day?"
      2) **A positive screen is more than 1 time.**

   b. Women identified to have a positive screen should **have additional conversation to assess for alcohol abuse or dependence. She may need to** be counseled that her level of drinking may be negatively impacting her health and safety and referred to local resources, including Alcoholics Anonymous.

5. Immunizations

   a. Emphasize importance of keeping immunizations current; assess patient's immunization status and administer vaccines indicated according to the current Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices childhood or adult immunization schedule. If patient declines vaccination, document refusal.

   b. See the Georgia Immunization Program Manual, Recommended Schedule and Guidelines, for current immunization schedules and administration guidelines for each vaccine. The Georgia Immunization Manual may be accessed online at **https://dph.georgia.gov/sites/dph.georgia.gov/files/Immunizations/Immunization%20%20Complete%20Manual%20with%20Updates%20Rev%20060616.pdf**

   c. The CDC guidance on Providing Quality Family Planning Services recommends the following immunizations related to reproductive health:
      1) Human Papilloma Virus (HPV)
      2) Hepatitis B: Routine hepatitis B vaccination should be offered to all unvaccinated children and adolescents aged

18 years and younger and all unvaccinated adults who do not have a documented history of hepatitis B infection**.**

6. Intimate Partner Violence

    a. Women should be asked about safety within **their** relationship including physical, emotional and sexual violence and coercion.

    b. Those who are experiencing partner violence should be referred to local resources. If the patient is under 18 years of age, then consult legal counsel for possible reporting as child abuse.

FOLLOW-UP

As indicated by exam, patient education and counseling.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

Women with abnormal screening labs (those that fall outside the lab report's reference range) or findings **which are not covered by a separate nurse protocol - such as Iron Deficiency Anemia in Non-Pregnant Women or Bacterial Cystitis -** should be referred to MD for appropriate follow-up (i.e. to a primary care provider for management of laboratory abnormalities), as indicated.

REFERENCES

1. US Preventive Services Task Force. http://www.uspreventiveservicestaskforce.org/ Accessed May 25, 2013.

2. AUDIT-C toolkit. http://old.thenationalcouncil.org/galleries/business-practice%20files/tool_auditc.pdf Accessed May 26, 2013.

3. Barbieri, Robert. Your age-based guide to comprehensive well-woman care. OBGManagement, *October 2012 · Vol. 24, No. 10,* Pg 20-33.

4. ACOG Practice Bulletin #131: Screening for Cervical Cancer. https://access.acog.org/eweb/dynamicpage.aspx?site=congress&webcode=LoginRequired&urlReq=http%3a%2f%2fwww.acog.org%2fResources+And+Publications%2fPractice+Bulletins+List.aspx

5. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use. MMWR 2013; 62

6. www.arhp.org

7. https://www.guideline.gov/, **Accessed June 1, 2017**

8. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Providing Quality Family Planning MMWR 2014 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/rr/rr6304.pdf

9. ACOG, Committee Opinion 609, Colon Cancer Screening Strategies. http://www.acog.org/Resources-And-Publications/Committee-Opinions/Committee-on-Gynecologic-Practice/Colorectal-Cancer-Screening-Strategies, Accessed February 27, 2015

10. Guidelines for Women's Health, 4th Edition, American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2014. http://www.acog.org/Resources%20And%20Publications/Guidelines%20for%20Womens%20Health%20Care.aspx

11. Qaseem A, Humphrey LL, Harris R, Starkey M, Denberg TD, for the Clinical Guidelines Committee of the American College of Physicians. Screening Pelvic Examination in Adult Women: A Clinical Practice Guideline From the American College of Physicians. Ann Intern Med. 2014;161:67-72. doi:10.7326/M14-0701

12. CDC HPV Vaccine Recommendations: https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/vpd/hpv/hcp/recommendations.html Accessed January 29, 2017.

13. GA DPH, Screening Criteria for Chlamydia and Gonorrhea, Maternal and Child Health Section, STD Office, March 2017.

14. GA DPH Breast and Cervical Cancer Program, Breast Procedure Manual 2015, Cervical Procedure Manual 2015, Breast and Cervical Cancer Program Manual 2015.

15. National Institute of Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism. Helping Patients who drink too much. https://pubs.niaaa.nih.gov/publications/Practitioner/CliniciansGuide2005/clinicians_guide4_before.htm

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR EMERGENCY CONTRACEPTIVE PILLS (ECPs)

DEFINITION

Emergency Contraception (EC) is a contraceptive method used to prevent pregnancy. ECPs are ineffective if a woman is already pregnant.

Progestin-only ECPs are increased doses of levonorgestrel taken after sexual intercourse to prevent pregnancy by inhibiting ovulation.

Ulipristal acetate is the newest branded ECP. It is a selective progestin receptor modulator. It also works to delay ovulation. It is only available by prescription, but has superior efficacy in preventing pregnancy compared to progestin-only ECP between 72-120 hours after sex and also in women who are obese.

The copper IUD is the most effective method of EC and should be offered to women who need EC as well as desire contraception going forward. It can be placed up to 5 days after unprotected sex and left in place up to at least 10 years, with studies suggesting up to 12 years efficacy. See Copper IUD protocol for details on placement.

As of April 2013, a court ruling indicated levonorgestrel based ECP must be made available over-the-counter, with no age or gender restrictions. They are still available by prescription, and this may be an important clinical practice to continue because of cost concerns. Ulipristal acetate and the Copper IUD are available only by prescription.

ETIOLOGY

ECP work by delaying or preventing ovulation. ECP are most effective if given within 72 hours of unprotected intercourse, but are effective up to 120 hours. The sooner ECP are initiated, the more effective the treatment. ECP will not disrupt a pregnancy once implantation has occurred. There is no evidence that ECP will harm a pregnancy once implantation has occurred. The effectiveness of treatment depends on when in the woman's menstrual cycle the emergency contraception is used and how soon after sex it is taken.

There are no medical contraindications to the use of ECP except known pregnancy and allergy to the medicine. The duration of use of ECP is less than that of regular use of combined oral contraceptives and progestin only pills and thus would be expected to have less clinical impact.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient provides history of unprotected sexual intercourse within the last 120 hours (5 days) and requests post-coital contraception as an emergency measure only (not as ongoing routine contraception).

   For women who are interested in ongoing contraception, the copper IUD provides the most effective EC and highly effective

long acting reversible contraception. It should be discussed with all women requesting emergency contraception (See Copper IUD Protocol).

NOTE: Progestin only EC is most effective if given within 72 hours of unprotected intercourse. The sooner ECP are initiated, the more effective the treatment. If the patient is more than 72 hours from unprotected intercourse, educate the woman that the copper IUD and ulipristal acetate are superior to levonorgestrel for pregnancy prevention in this window.

2. Due to the time-sensitive nature of use of ECPs, patients may request and/or providers can recommend or provide EC in advance for use as needed. This may be particularly valuable for women who elect short term or coitally-dependent contraception (contraceptive pills, condoms, contraceptive patch, contraceptive rings, etc.) or for any woman who has a medical condition that puts her at increased risk if she experiences an unintended pregnancy (See Box 2 CDC Medical Eligibility Criteria).

3. Precautions:

   When providing Plan B® One-Step, Plan B® Two-Step, Next Choice, generic levonorgestrel, or ulipristal acetate, Ella®:

   a. History of hypersensitivity to any component of ECPs.
   b. Known or suspected pregnancy.

OBJECTIVE

1. A pregnancy test is not needed before providing ECP, but may be performed if the patient reports more than one act of unprotected intercourse since last menstrual period (LMP).

2. Pelvic exam, if indicated.

3. Current and local availability of Plan B® One-Step, Plan B® Two-Step, Next Choice, generic levonorgestrel, or ulipristal acetate.

ASSESSMENT

Patient requests EC; no contraindications or allergies to any component of the emergency contraceptive.

PLAN

THERAPEUTIC

NOTE: Hazardous agent; use appropriate precautions for handling and disposal which can be found at: https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Levonorgestrel 1.5 mg (e.g. Plan B® One-Step, My Way®, React®, EContra EZ®, Aftera®): one single dose of 1.5mg levonorgestrel PO as soon as possible within 120 hours after unprotected intercourse.

OR

2. Levonorgestrel 0.75mg (e.g.Plan B® Two-Step, Next Choice®) packaged as two doses of 0.75mg with package instructions to take each dose 12 hours apart. However, it works better and is easier for the patient to take both pills PO at once as soon as possible.

   NOTE: Antiemetics not needed with progestin only ECP.

OR

3. If the patient is a candidate for ulipristal acetate, one tablet of 30mg ulipristal acetate PO as soon as possible. Ulipristal acetate works better than levonorgestrel-only ECP between 72-120 hours and for women who have BMI greater than 30. For women in these situations, clinicians should preferentially offer Ulipristal acetate or Paragard if available due to their higher efficacy.

4. If patient wants to initiate an ongoing method, ParaGard should be considered as it provides the most effective EC and provides highly effective long acting contraception.

   a. For those who use ulipristal acetate as ECP, a back-up barrier method is encouraged until her next menses. Patient may initiate a hormonal contraceptive method according to manufacturer's directions at the next menstrual cycle or she may initiate hormonal contraceptives 5 days after taking the ulipristal acetate for ECP. She should be provided contraceptive supplies and instructions about when to begin. Women who are interested in DMPA or a subdermal implant should return in 5 days for the injection or at the time of next menses.

   b. For those who use levonorgestrel-only ECP**,** initiate the method according to manufacturer's directions at the next menstrual cycle or begin the method the day after ECP treatment is complete. DMPA and a subdermal implant can be initiated on the same day as this ECP. Encourage use of a back-up method for 7 days and repeat urine pregnancy testing in 2-3 weeks.

5. ECPs (Ella (ulipristal acetate) or Levonorgestrel only) are not indicated for use in children or adolescents prior to menarche. Adolescents (postmenarchal) who need ECPs should follow adult dosing schedule. If there is any situation in which a clinician feels that a minor's request for EC is a result of a sexual act that was not consensual, the clinician should report the concern according to clinical guidelines regarding Mandatory Reporting Laws.

6. Offer STD screening if sexual encounter also placed patient at risk of contracting STDs. If patient has been raped, refer to local authorities and clinical setting where an exam can be performed for collecting evidence (if your clinic does not do this). Provision of the ECP should not be delayed for this referral.

7. Refer patient to NP for copper IUD placement if she is interested in copper IUD as emergency contraception.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Provide the patient with exact directions for taking medication. This will include taking one dose (combining doses if necessary, for those that suggest separating progestin only ECP over 12 hours) of the levonorgestrel based ECP or ulipristal acetate as soon as possible.

2. Strongly encourage patient to choose an acceptable, ongoing method of birth control**.** ECP is not intended for routine contraception. Repeated use within the same menstrual cycle is not recommended. For women who initiate a hormonal method and use levonorgestrel-only ECP, encourage use of a back-up method for 7 days. For those who use ulipristal acetate as ECP a back-up method is encouraged until her next menses. Emergency contraception does not protect from pregnancy going forward (except for use of Paragard as EC) and future acts of sex require additional contraception.

3. Inform patient that next menstrual period may start a few days earlier or later than usual. The next menstrual period should begin within the next 2 or 3 weeks. If no menses in 3 weeks advise patient to return to clinic for pregnancy test.

4. If patient initiates an ongoing method immediately after ECP, her next cycle may also be delayed. In this setting, offer a urine pregnancy test in 2-4 weeks. **(This can be done by a home pregnancy test if the patient desires).**

5. Women who use ulipristal acetate for EC and who begin a hormonal contraception should use a back-up method **until her next menses**.

6. Provide counseling on preconception health counseling and future fertility. (Refer to Preconception Health Toolkit) http://www.fpm.emory.edu/preventive/research/projects/

7. Advise patient that ECP does not protect against STD/HIV. Counsel on the use of condoms to reduce the risk of STD/HIV.

8. Provide information **for** the Emergency Contraception Hotline (1-888-NOT-2-LATE). The Hotline is an automated, toll free confidential service available 24 hours a day in English and Spanish. In addition to basic information, each caller hears a recording of the names and telephone numbers of the five closest ECP providers.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Return to clinic if menses has not started in 3 weeks or if next menses is unusually light or painful.

2. Return to clinic for ongoing birth control method if not provided at visit.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Refer patient to physician immediately for symptoms concerning for an ectopic pregnancy.

REFERENCES

1. Robert Hatcher et al., *Contraceptive Technology,* 20th ed., Ardent Media, Inc., New York, 2011. (Current)

2. Joellen Hawkins et al., *Protocols for Nurse Practitioners in Gynecologic Settings,* 11th ed., Springer Publishing Co., New York, 2015.

3. M. Zieman, R.A. Hatcher. *Managing Contraception, 13th ed., Ardent Media Inc.,* New York, 2015

4. CDC, U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 2016, MMWR 2016; 65: 3 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6503.pdf

5. CDC, U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use, 2016. MMWR 2016; 65:4 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6504.pdf

6. Association of Reproductive Health Professionals, Emergency Contraception: Clinical Update < https://www.arhp.org/Publications-and-Resources/Clinical-Proceedings/EC/Methods> (Accessed April 12, 2013)

7. US Department of Health and Human Services; Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. NIOSH list of antineoplastic and other hazardous drugs in healthcare settings, 2016. Available at https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html. Updated September 2016. Accessed November 8, 2016.

8. Wolters Kluwer; *Lexicomp Online*, 2017; http://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/5245 >accessed June 4, 2017

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR INITIATION OF CONTRACEPTIVES

DEFINITION

Contraceptive initiation **can occur** on the day of the clinical visit **when a provider is reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant**.

ETIOLOGY

This protocol discusses initiation **of contraceptive** methods **including the following:** combined hormonal contraception (OC, Vaginal Ring, Contraceptive Patch); Progestin-only Pills (POP); medroxyprogesterone acetate (commonly known as DMPA); subdermal contraceptive implants and intrauterine devices (IUD).

Requiring a patient to return for contraceptive initiation or to remember when to start her method at some point in the future opens opportunity not only for failure to initiate the method but also for pregnancy to occur while waiting to do so. Initiating contraceptives immediately can streamline patient education regarding initiation. It can make instructions easier to provide and to understand. For DMPA, it can increase access by 81%.

A sensitive urine pregnancy test is positive when the hormone human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG) is present in sufficient quantities in the body. This will generally be positive by 14 days after an act of intercourse. Thus, a pregnancy test done on any given day would not reliably identify pregnancies from more recent intercourse. Initiation of hormonal contraception during this two-week window does not alter whether or not previous intercourse will result in pregnancy that is not yet detectable. There is a low rate of pregnancy for those who initiate hormonal contraceptives while not on their menses (~3%). In general when inadvertently used early in pregnancy, combined hormonal and progestin only contraceptive methods do not harm a pregnancy.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient is interested in starting contraception.

2. **Medical, menstrual and coital history**. Patient does not have any contraindication to using the selected contraceptive (as per the individual Standard Nurse Protocol and the CDC Medical Eligibility Criteria).

OBJECTIVE

1. Clinicians can be reasonably certain a woman is not pregnant by her history if she has no signs or symptoms of pregnancy and she meets any of the following:

    a. Has not had intercourse since her last normal menstrual period.

    b. Has been consistently and correctly using a reliable method of contraception.

c. Is within the first seven days of a normal menstrual period.

d. Is within four weeks postpartum (**lactating or** non-lactating).

e. Is within seven days of a miscarriage or abortion.

NOTE: If a woman has not had sex since a miscarriage or abortion, a provider can be reasonably certain that she is not pregnant and can initiate any method. A pregnancy test is not indicated and may still be positive.

f. Is fully breastfeeding, is amenorrheic and is less than six months postpartum.

ASSESSMENT Patient desires contraception

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

1. Sensitive urine pregnancy test (UCG) as indicated.

THERAPEUTIC (See chart below)

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. If a pregnancy test is **performed and is** positive, provide options counseling.

2. If a provider can be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant, any contraceptive may be initiated on that day.

3. In situations where a provider cannot be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant, the benefits of initiating hormonal contraceptives (combined hormonal contraceptives, DMPA, POP, subdermal implant) outweigh the risks and contraception can be initiated immediately. Offer initiation of hormonal contraception immediately:

a. Starting hormonal contraception today can be easier for patients and can increase access.

b. Hormonal contraception will not prevent a pregnancy from sex that has already occurred.

c. Most studies show no increased risk for adverse outcomes (congenital anomalies, neonatal or infant death) in infants exposed to contraception.

d. The likelihood of pregnancy in previous studies of immediate initiation in situations like these was 3%.

e. If patient wants to begin hormonal contraception (OC, contraceptive ring, contraceptive patch, DMPA, subdermal implant) that day, initiate method.

f. Encourage condoms or abstinence for 7 days. Repeat UCG in 14-28 days (this can be done by a home pregnancy test if the patient desires).

g. If patient declines initiation of hormonal contraception on that day, provide the method to begin on the first day of the next menstrual cycle or advise her to return to clinic to receive a DMPA shot or implant when her next period begins.

h. If the patient desires an IUD and the provider cannot be reasonably certain that patient is not pregnant, the patient should be provided an alternate method of contraception and should return for IUD placement when the provider can be reasonably certain she is not pregnant.

i. If patient has had unprotected sex in the last 120 hours, offer emergency contraception (emergency contraceptive pills or Paragard IUD). See Emergency Contraceptive Pills protocol

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Provide method-specific counseling and consent for the method that the patient is initiating.

2. Provide condoms for backup protection (or encourage abstinence) for at least 7 days. Counsel on the continued use of condoms to reduce the risk of STD/HIV.

3. Schedule well-woman care as needed.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Routine follow-up for **situations when the provider can be reasonably certain the patient is not pregnant when initiating contraception, refer to table below.**

TABLE D1. Routine follow-up after contraceptive initiation

	Contraceptive method				
Action	**Cu-IUD or LNG-IUD**	**Implant**	**Injectable**	**CHC**	**POP**
General follow-up					
Advise women to return at any time to discuss side effects or other problems or if they want to change the method. Advise women using IUDs, implants, or injectables when the IUD or implant needs to be removed or when a reinjection is needed. No routine follow-up visit is required.	X	X	X	X	X
Other routine visits					
Assess the woman's satisfaction with her current method and whether she has any concerns about method use.	X	X	X	X	X
Assess any changes in health status, including medications, that would change the method's appropriateness for safe and effective continued use based on U.S. MEC (i.e., category 3 and 4 conditions and characteristics) (Box 1).	X	X	X	X	X
Consider performing an examination to check for the presence of IUD strings.	X	—	—	—	—
Consider assessing weight changes and counseling women who are concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.	X	X	X	X	X
Measure blood pressure.	—	—	—	X	—

Abbreviations: CHC = combined hormonal contraceptives; Cu-IUD = copper-containing intrauterine device; HIV = human immunodeficiency virus; IUD = intrauterine device; LNG-IUD = levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine device; POP = progestin-only pills; U.S. MEC = *U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use*.

2. For **situations when a provider cannot be reasonably certain patient is not pregnant**, a urine pregnancy test should be repeated in 2**-4** weeks (this can be done by a home pregnancy test if the patient desires).

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Serious health concerns expressed by the patient.

2. Seek consultation, as applicable, if patient has health screening laboratory values **(not covered by a nurse protocol)** or has abnormal laboratory values and/or physical findings.

How to Be Reasonably Certain That a Woman is Not Pregnant

A health-care provider can be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant if she has no symptoms or signs of pregnancy and meets any one of the following criteria:

- is ≤7 days after the start of normal menses
- has not had sexual intercourse since the start of last normal menses
- has been correctly and consistently using a reliable method of contraception
- is ≤7 days after spontaneous or induced abortion
- is within 4 weeks postpartum
- is fully or nearly fully breastfeeding (exclusively breastfeeding or the vast majority [≥85%] of feeds are breastfeeds), amenorrheic, and <6 months postpartum

In situations in which the health-care provider is uncertain whether the woman might be pregnant, the benefits of starting the implant, depot medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA), combined hormonal contraceptives and progestin-only pills likely exceed any risk; therefore, starting the method should be considered at any time, with a follow-up pregnancy test in 2-4 weeks. For IUD insertion, in situations in which the health-care provider is not reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant, the woman should be provided with another contraceptive method to use until the health-care provider can be reasonably certain that she is not pregnant and can insert the IUD.

When to Start Using Specific Contraceptive Methods

Contraceptive method	When to start (if the provider is reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant)	Additional contraception (i.e., back up) needed	Examinations or tests needed before initiation[1]
Copper-containing IUD	Anytime	Not needed	Bimanual examination and cervical inspection[2]
Levonorgestrel-releasing IUD	Anytime	If >7 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	Bimanual examination and cervical inspection[2]
Implant	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	None
Injectable	Anytime	If >7 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	None
Combined hormonal contraceptive	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	Blood pressure measurement
Progestin-only pill	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 2 days.	None

Abbreviations: BMI = body mass index; IUD = intrauterine device; STD = sexually transmitted disease; U.S. MEC = U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use

[1] Weight (BMI) measurement is not needed to determine medical eligibility for any methods of contraception because all methods can be used (U.S. MEC 1) or generally can be used (U.S. MEC 2) among obese women. However, measuring weight and calculating BMI (weight [kg]/height [m^2] at baseline might be helpful for monitoring any changes and counseling women who might be concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.

[2] Most women do not require additional STD screening at the time of IUD insertion. If a woman with risk factors for STDs has not been screened for gonorrhea and chlamydia according to CDC's STD Treatment Guidelines (http://www.cdc.gov/std/treatment), screening can be performed at the time of IUD insertion, and insertion should not be delayed. Women with current purulent cervicitis or chlamydial infection or gonococcal infection should not undergo IUD insertion (U.S. MEC 4).

Source: For full recommendations and updates, see the U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use webpage at http://www.cdc.gov/reproductivehealth/unintendedpregnancy/usspr.htm.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion

REFERENCES:

1. https://www.cdc.gov/reproductivehealth/contraception/pdf/when-to-start_508tagged.pdf

2. CDC, U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use, 2016. MMWR 2016; 65:4 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6504.pdf

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR COMBINED HORMONAL CONTRACEPTIVES

DEFINITION

Combined hormonal contraceptives are birth-control **methods** that include a combination of an estrogen and a progestin. Estrogen and progesterone are two hormones which direct many of the processes surrounding the menstrual cycle. **Combined hormonal contraceptives include oral contraceptives (OCs or pills), transdermal patch and vaginal ring. There are many different OC formulations with varying amounts of estrogen and progestins. The patch and the ring have one formulation each.**

ETIOLOGY

Combined **hormonal contraceptive**s work primarily by preventing ovulation. The progestin in **combined hormonal contraceptives** provide most of the birth control activity by: thickening cervical mucus to prevent sperm penetration into the upper genital tract, blocking the luteinizing hormone (LH) surge prohibiting ovulation, and inhibiting capacitation of the sperm which may delay sperm transport. Estrogen may contribute to the contraceptive effect by decreasing folliculogenesis by suppressing release of FSH, but serves primarily to allow menstrual cycle control. Estrogen and progestins have other effects on the reproductive tract, however, there is no significant evidence that these effects contribute to the contraceptive efficacy.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient provides a detailed health history (includes menstrual, sexual, contraception, personal health and family history) that does not reveal a condition representing an unacceptable health risk according to the CDC *US Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use*.

2. If breastfeeding, **is at least 30 days postpartum without co-morbidities that increase venous thromboembolism risk (such as age 35 or older, previous venous thromboembolism, thrombophilia, immobility, transfusion at delivery, BMI 30 or greater, postpartum hemorrhage, post cesarean delivery, preeclampsia, or smoking). For breastfeeding post-partum patients with above co-morbidities, patient must be at least 42 days postpartum before initiating combined hormonal contraception.**

3. If non-breastfeeding, must be at least 21 days postpartum without co-morbidities that increase venous thromboembolism risk (**listed above**). For non-breastfeeding post-partum patient with above co-morbidities, patient must be at least 42 days postpartum before initiating combined hormonal contraception.

4. If age 35 or older, does not smoke.

5. If age 35 or older, and has two or more co-morbidities (to include the following: BMI of 30 or greater, diabetes, **low HDL, high LDL or high triglycerides**) must use non-estrogen containing methods as first line.

6. If on antiretroviral therapy, does not take **Fosamprenavir**.

7. If on anticonvulsant therapy, does not take certain anticonvulsants (e.g., phenytoin, carbamazepine, barbiturates, primidone, topiramate, oxcarbazepine, lamotrigine).

8. If on antimicrobial therapy, does not take a rifamycin **(Rifampin, rifabutin, or Rifapentine)** derivative.

9. **For those requesting pills, has not had a history of malabsorptive bariatric surgery (Roux-en-Y gastric bypass, biliopancreatic diversion).**

10. Refer to CDC *US Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use* for medical conditions that represent an unacceptable health risk for taking combined OCs. Medical conditions include:

    a. Hypertension
    b. Deep vein thrombosis (DVT) / Pulmonary embolism
    c. Known thrombogenic mutations
    d. **History of superficial venous thrombosis**
    e. Ischemic heart disease
    f. Stroke
    g. Valvular heart disease-complicated (pulmonary hypertension, risk for atrial fibrillation, history of subacute bacterial endocarditis)
    h. **Peripartum cardiomyopathy**
    i. Lupus with positive (or unknown) antiphospholipid antibodies
    j. Migraine headaches with aura (at any age)
    k. **Multiple sclerosis with prolonged immobility**
    l. Breast cancer
    m. Diabetes: nephropathy/retinopathy/neuropathy, other vascular disease or diabetes of greater than 20 years' duration
    n. **Inflammatory bowel disease (ulcerative colitis or Crohn's disease) who are at increased risk for VTE (those with active or extensive disease, surgery, immobilization, corticosteroid use, vitamin deficiencies or fluid depletion)**
    o. Gall-bladder disease (symptomatic) – medically treated, current **symptomatic**
    p. History of cholestasis: past related to CHCs
    q. Viral Hepatitis: acute or flare (initiation of combined hormonal contraception)

r. Cirrhosis: severe (decompensated)
s. Liver Tumors: benign hepatocellular adenoma, malignant (hepatoma)
t. Major surgery with prolonged immobilization
u. Solid organ transplant, complicated (graft failure, rejection, cardiac allograph vasculopathy)

OBJECTIVE

1. **Provider should assess whether they can be reasonably certain that the patient is not pregnant (see Initiation of Contraception protocol).**

2. Physical examination and laboratory tests, as indicated. See Standard Nurse Protocol for Preventive Care and Health Screening.

ASSESSMENT

Patient **desires combined hormonal contraception and** has no condition representing an unacceptable health risk for taking combined **hormonal contraceptive**s. Patient is not allergic to any component of the **contraceptive**.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Blood pressure is below 140/90.

2. Urine pregnancy test, as indicated.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Hazardous agent; use appropriate precautions for handling and disposal **which can be found at:** https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html

1. Select a **method** based on the hormonal dose, the patient's medical history (clinical picture), preference, past experiences with contraceptives, cost and potential side effects.

   a. **For those interested in a pill,** both WHO and FDA recommend using the lowest dose pill (35 mcg or less) that is effective. (See Appendix A).

   b. For those interested in the patch:
      1) Women who use the contraceptive patch are exposed to about 60% more estrogen than if they were taking a typical birth control pill containing 35 **mcg** of estrogen. In general, increased estrogen exposure may increase the risk of developing serious blood clots (for instance,

in the legs or lungs) that can block blood vessels and cause death or serious disability. However, it is not known whether women using the contraceptive patch are at a greater risk of having these serious problems. One study found a doubling of this risk and another study found no increased risks. The manufacturer of the contraceptive patch is doing studies on this.

2) The transdermal contraceptive patch may be less effective in women with body weight of 198 lbs (90 kg) or higher. May consider back-up method such as condoms if weight is 198 lbs (90 kg) or higher**.**

c. Storage of NuvaRing®: Store out of direct sunlight.

NOTE: Prior to dispensing to the **patient**, refrigerate at 2-8° C (36-46° F). After dispensing to the **patient**, NuvaRing® can be stored for up to 4 months at room temperature out of direct sunlight. When dispensed to the **patient**, place an expiration date on the label not to exceed either, 4 months from the date of dispensing or the expiration date, whichever comes first.

2. Provide instructions on selected combined **hormonal contraceptive** usage to include: initiation of method, routines **for method use. If a provider can be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant, combined hormonal contraceptives may be initiated on that day of clinic visit (See Initiation of Contraceptives protocol). Encourage back up contraception for 7 days.**

3. **In situations where a provider cannot be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant, the benefits of initiating combined hormonal contraceptives outweigh the risks and contraception can be initiated immediately.**

   a. Offer initiation of hormonal contraception immediately.
   1) Starting hormonal contraception the day of clinic visit can be easier for patients and can increase access.
   2) Hormonal contraception will not prevent a pregnancy from sex that has already occurred.
   3) Most studies have shown no increased risk for adverse outcomes (congenital anomalies, neonatal or infant death) in infants exposed to contraception.
   4) The likelihood of pregnancy in previous studies of immediate initiation in situations like these was 3%.
   5) If patient wants to begin combined hormonal contraception (OC, Contraceptive Ring, Contraceptive Patch) the day of clinic visit, initiate

it. Encourage condoms or abstinence for 7 days. Repeat UCG in 14-28 days (this can be done by home pregnancy test if the patient desires).

6) If patient declines initiation of hormonal contraception on that day, provide the method to begin on the first day of her next menstrual cycle.

7) If patient has had unprotected sex in the last 120 hours, offer emergency contraception (emergency contraceptive pills or Paragard IUD). See Emergency Contraceptive Pills Protocol. If providing ulipristal acetate for EC, start CHC in 5 days.

4. Switching from other methods:

   a. When switching from a non-hormonal method, start combined **hormonal contraceptive** immediately.

   b. For patients with an IUD, it may be reasonable to start combined **hormonal contraceptive**s when the appointment for IUD removal is made.

   c. When switching from a hormonal method that works primarily by inhibiting ovulation **(Combined hormonal contraception, DMPA, implant)**, start **combined method** immediately after stopping the other method with no breaks.

5. Provide education/counseling to include: details of method use side effects and danger signs, effectiveness and back-up methods, preconception health and future fertility, and risks of STD/HIV.

6. Provide up to a 13-month supply of combined **hormonal method.**

7. Instruct patient **to follow the method-specific instructions (See PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING below).**

8. Schedule follow-up exam, **as indicated**.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Counsel patient according to the seven basic elements of informed consent **using the pneumonic**, BRAIDED. Benefits- **(benefits of using the method)**, **Risks (major risks and side effects), Alternatives (other methods available), Inquiries (all patient's questions have been answered), Decision (patient can make a decision to stop the method at any time),**

Explanation (instructions on use of the method), Documentation.

2 **For those who request the pill,** explain instructions for combined OCs use.

a. Take pills at the same time every day to encourage pill taking to be part of a routine.

b. **Can e**ncourage **patient** to set an alarm as a reminder or to sign up for services to trigger reminders (e.g., Bedsider.org).

c. Use a back-up barrier method (or abstinence) for the first 7 days of combined OCs initiation, as indicated above.

d. Use a back-up barrier method if a pill is missed. A missed pill(s) increases the risk of pregnancy. Refer to pill package insert for missed pill(s) instructions.

e. Offer Plan B or emergency contraceptive pills (ECP) in advance and instruct women to use it if 2 or more **OC** pills were missed and patient had unprotected sex in the last 5 days.

OPTIONAL: For women who desire menstrual suppression, additional instructions for extended use of OCs:

a. Take one monophasic OC each day (recommend 20mcg).

b. Skip the placebo pills (the 7 pills at the end of the month that are a different color) and start the next pill pack.

c. This means that the woman should take one active pill each day (no placebo pills) until she desires a period. Common extended cycles include bi-cycling (two pill packs in a row followed by one week of placebo pills and the resulting menstrual period), tri-cycling (three pill packs in a row followed by one week of placebo pills and the resulting menstrual period), or continuous (no placebo pills, no menstrual periods).

d. This will require more pill packs over the course of the year (16 cycles). Alternatively, a provider can order an extended version of pills (ex. Seasonale,

Lybrel) if the woman has insurance coverage and desires menstrual suppression.

3. **For those who request the patch**, explain instructions for patch use:

   a. The first day the patch is applied is designated as "Patch Change Day."
      1) Remove the patch and apply a new patch on Patch-Change Day on weeks 2 and 3. Apply the new patch to a different area of skin to reduce skin irritation.
      2) No patch is applied on week 4. Menstrual period will begin during week 4.

   b. Remove liner and apply the sticky surface of the patch on clean, dry skin of the lower abdomen, buttocks, upper outer arm, or upper torso (not on the breasts). The absorption is the same when applied to any of these areas.
      1) Press down firmly on the patch with the palm of the hand for 10 seconds. Make sure that the edges stick well.
      2) Location of patch should not be altered in mid-week.
      3) Check the patch every day to make sure it is sticking. Avoid touching the sticky surface.

   c. Do not apply creams, oils, or cosmetics near the patch site.

   d. If the patch becomes loose and is still sticky, try to reattach it. If it is not sticky, replace it with a new patch, and then change the new patch on the usual Patch-Change Day.

   e. Do not attempt to tape down a patch that has become loosened.

   f. To remove the patch, grasp it by an edge and pull it off. Fold it closed on itself on the adhesive side to seal in the medication. Discard the patch in the garbage; do not flush it into the toilet.

   g. Remove any stickiness or adhesive that remains on the skin by using baby oil or lotions.

   h. Management of Missed/Forgotten Patches:

      <u>1st Week</u>
      1) Apply new patch as soon as possible.
      2) Record this day of the week as new Patch-Change Day.

3) Use back-up method for first 7 days of patch use.
4) If new patch was applied 3 or more days late (patch was left off for 10 days or more in a row) and patient had unprotected sex in last 120 hours, offer emergency contraception.

<u>2nd – 3rd Week</u>

1) *1-2 days late*:
   a) Apply a new patch as soon as remembered.
   b) Keep the same Patch-Change Day.
   c) No need for back-up method.
2) *More than 2 days late*:
   a) Stop current cycle and start a new 4-week cycle by applying a new patch immediately.
   b) Record this day of the week as the new Patch-Change Day.
   c) Use back-up method for first 7 days **of patch use.**

<u>4th Week</u>

1) Remove the patch.
2) Start the next cycle on the usual Patch-Change Day.
3) No need for back-up method.

4. **For those who request the ring**, explain instructions for ring use.

a. **Insertion:**

1) Remove NuvaRing® from the foil pouch.
2) Press opposite sides of the ring together and gently push the folded ring into your vagina while lying down, squatting, or standing with one leg up. If you feel discomfort after inserting NuvaRing®, slide it farther in until it feels comfortable. **Once in the vagina, the exact position of NuvaRing® is not important for it to be effective**. Once inserted, keep NuvaRing® in place for 3 weeks in a row.
3) The NuvaRing® does not require fitting or placement in a specific position, nor the use of spermicidal jelly. It does not need to surround the cervix. If discomfort is felt, the device is probably not placed high enough in the vagina.
4) The NuvaRing® does not need to be removed for intercourse.

b. Continuation:

1) After 7 ring-free days, insert a new NuvaRing® into the vagina to begin the cycle again. Insert the new NuvaRing® on the same day of the week the previous NuvaRing® was inserted, even if the menses is not finished.

c. **Late Replacement or Removal**:

1) NuvaRing® can be accidentally expelled when it has not been inserted properly, while removing a tampon, or when straining to move the bowels. If expelled, rinse

ring with cool/lukewarm water and re-insert promptly (within 3 hours from the time it was expelled).

2) During the first or second week, if the NuvaRing® is out of the vagina for more than 3 hours, rinse and re-insert the ring as soon as possible. Use a back-up method for the next 7 days. If ring is lost, insert a new one. Offer emergency contraception if patient had unprotected intercourse in the last 120 hours (5 days).
3) During the third week, if the NuvaRing is out of the vagina for more than 3 hours, she can insert a new ring immediately to begin a new 3-week cycle

OR,

if the ring was used continuously for the preceding 7 days, choose to have a withdrawal bleed and insert a new ring no later than 7 days from the last ring removed/expelled.

For either option, use a back-up method until the new ring has been used continuously for 7 days.

4) If patient waited more than 7 days before inserting a new NuvaRing®, **follow Initiation of Contraceptives Protocol for restart**. Consider emergency contraception (if recent intercourse) plus a back-up method for the first 7 days after reinsertion of new ring. Restart therapy by inserting a new NuvaRing® as soon as possible and begin a new 4-week cycle.
5) If a new ring was inserted 3 or more days late or the NuvaRing® was in place longer than 4 weeks, **follow Initiation of Contraceptives Protocol for restart**. Use an additional contraceptive method until new ring has been in place for at least 7 days. Offer emergency contraception if patient had unprotected sexual intercourse in the last 120 hours (5 days).

d. Removal & Disposal:

1) Remove the NuvaRing® by hooking the index finger **around the ring and pulling it out.**
2) Place the used NuvaRing® in the foil pouch and throw it away in a trash container out of the reach of children and pets (do not flush it down the toilet).

OPTIONAL: For women who desire menstrual suppression, additional instructions for extended use of vaginal ring:

a. Menstrual suppression can be accomplished with the vaginal ring without requiring additional product over the course of the year.

b. Place one ring vaginally on any calendar day (ex. April 14).

c. One month later (May 14), remove the ring and place another

5. Discuss side effects and danger signs (ACHES). **ACHES is a pneumonic for thrombotic diseases that may be attributable to CHCs (severe Abdominal pain; Chest pain, coughing up blood, dyspnea; Headaches, weakness, numbness; Eye problems such as complete or partial loss vision; leg pain, Swelling, redness or inflammation).**

   The primary side effects of hormonal contraception are headache, nausea, application site reactions, and breast discomfort. Women using the patch are more likely to experience breakthrough bleeding and/or spotting during the first 2 months compared with users of a combined OC. Some women using the ring may experience vaginal irritation or infection.

6. Discuss effectiveness of combined **methods** and back-up methods.

   a. For those using the ring, do not rely on a diaphragm as a back-up method because NuvaRing® may interfere with the correct placement and position of a diaphragm

7. Provide counseling on preconception health counseling and future fertility. (Refer to Preconception Health Toolkit).
   http://www.fpm.emory.edu/preventive/research/projects/

8. Counsel on the use of condoms to reduce the risk of STD/HIV.

FOLLOW-UP

Patient should return as **needed (see table below)** for evaluation or contact clinic if side effects, danger signs, or symptoms of pregnancy develop. Outside of clinic hours, seek physician or emergency care if danger signs develop.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Refer patient to **PCP/clinic MD or APRN** if patient develops any of the following danger signs:

    a. Abdominal pain (severe).
    b. Eye problems (vision loss or blurring).
    c. Speech problems.
    d. Chest pain (severe), coughs, shortness of breath.
    e. Severe leg pain (calf or thigh).
    f. Severe headaches that start or become worse after beginning to take combined OCs.
    g. Dizziness, weakness, numbness or depression.

2. Seek consultation **with delegating physician/PCP/clinic MD or APRN**, as applicable, on serious health concerns expressed by patient.

3. Advise patient to continue treatment with physician if patient is under the supervision of physician for a health problem.

4. Seek consultation **with delegating physician/PCP/clinic MD or APRN**, as applicable, if patient has health screening laboratory values **(not covered by a nurse protocol)** or has abnormal laboratory values and/or physical findings that indicate combined **hormonal contraceptive**s should not be continued.

5. Seek consultation **with delegating physician/PCP/clinic MD or APRN**, if the patient **develops** high blood pressure while on combined hormonal contraception.

    a. Immediately refer patient to the Emergency Room with severe hypertension characterized by systolic pressure 180 mmHg or greater or diastolic pressure 110 mmHg or greater on any occasion. Instruct the patient to stop the combined OCs and discuss non-estrogen containing methods.

    b. For blood pressure 140 mmHg or greater systolic, or 90 mmHg or greater diastolic, on two measurements 6 hours apart,

discuss changing method to one that does not contain estrogen (IUD, Implant, progestin-only method).

c. A diagnosis of hypertension requires two readings more than six hours apart. If the **patient** has a single elevated reading (using an appropriately sized blood pressure cuff) and desires to continue to use combined hormonal contraception, ask **patient** to return for a repeat blood pressure check in 1-7 days.
   1) If **patient** has an elevated blood pressure when she returns, discuss the need to change to a method that does not contain estrogen, using the CDC *US Medical Eligibility for Contraceptive Use* guidance for women with hypertension. Refer her for primary care management of her blood pressure.
   2) If she has a normal blood pressure when she returns, she may continue combined hormonal contraception, but may warrant more frequent blood pressure monitoring**.**

How to Be Reasonably Certain That a Woman is Not Pregnant

A health-care provider can be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant if she has no symptoms or signs of pregnancy and meets any one of the following criteria:

- is ≤7 days after the start of normal menses
- has not had sexual intercourse since the start of last normal menses
- has been correctly and consistently using a reliable method of contraception
- is ≤7 days after spontaneous or induced abortion
- is within 4 weeks postpartum
- is fully or nearly fully breastfeeding (exclusively breastfeeding or the vast majority [≥85%] of feeds are breastfeeds), amenorrheic, and <6 months postpartum

In situations in which the health-care provider is uncertain whether the woman might be pregnant, the benefits of starting the implant, depot medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA), combined hormonal contraceptives and progestin-only pills likely exceed any risk; therefore, starting the method should be considered at any time, with a follow-up pregnancy test in 2-4 weeks. For IUD insertion, in situations in which the health-care provider is not reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant, the woman should be provided with another contraceptive method to use until the health-care provider can be reasonably certain that she is not pregnant and can insert the IUD.

When to Start Using Specific Contraceptive Methods

Contraceptive method	When to start (if the provider is reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant)	Additional contraception (i.e., back up) needed	Examinations or tests needed before initiation[1]
Copper-containing IUD	Anytime	Not needed	Bimanual examination and cervical inspection[2]
Levonorgestrel-releasing IUD	Anytime	If >7 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	Bimanual examination and cervical inspection[2]
Implant	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	None
Injectable	Anytime	If >7 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	None
Combined hormonal contraceptive	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	Blood pressure measurement
Progestin-only pill	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 2 days.	None

Abbreviations: BMI = body mass index; IUD = intrauterine device; STD = sexually transmitted disease; U.S. MEC = U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use

[1] Weight (BMI) measurement is not needed to determine medical eligibility for any methods of contraception because all methods can be used (U.S. MEC 1) or generally can be used (U.S. MEC 2) among obese women. However, measuring weight and calculating BMI (weight [kg]/height [m^2] at baseline might be helpful for monitoring any changes and counseling women who might be concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.

[2] Most women do not require additional STD screening at the time of IUD insertion. If a woman with risk factors for STDs has not been screened for gonorrhea and chlamydia according to CDC's STD Treatment Guidelines (http://www.cdc.gov/std/treatment), screening can be performed at the time of IUD insertion, and insertion should not be delayed. Women with current purulent cervicitis or chlamydial infection or gonococcal infection should not undergo IUD insertion (U.S. MEC 4).

Source: For full recommendations and updates, see the U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use webpage at http://www.cdc.gov/reproductivehealth/unintendedpregnancy/usspr.htm.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion

TABLE D1. Routine follow-up after contraceptive initiation

	Contraceptive method				
Action	**Cu-IUD or LNG-IUD**	**Implant**	**Injectable**	**CHC**	**POP**
General follow-up					
Advise women to return at any time to discuss side effects or other problems or if they want to change the method. Advise women using IUDs, implants, or injectables when the IUD or implant needs to be removed or when a reinjection is needed. No routine follow-up visit is required.	X	X	X	X	X
Other routine visits					
Assess the woman's satisfaction with her current method and whether she has any concerns about method use.	X	X	X	X	X
Assess any changes in health status, including medications, that would change the method's appropriateness for safe and effective continued use based on U.S. MEC (i.e., category 3 and 4 conditions and characteristics) (Box 1).	X	X	X	X	X
Consider performing an examination to check for the presence of IUD strings.	X	—	—	—	—
Consider assessing weight changes and counseling women who are concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.	X	X	X	X	X
Measure blood pressure.	—	—	—	X	—

Abbreviations: CHC = combined hormonal contraceptives; Cu-IUD = copper-containing intrauterine device; HIV = human immunodeficiency virus; IUD = intrauterine device; LNG-IUD = levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine device; POP = progestin-only pills; U.S. MEC = *U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use*.

REFERENCES

1. Robert Hatcher et al., *Contraceptive Technology,* 20th ed., Ardent Media, Inc., New York, 2011. (Current)

2. Joellen Hawkins et al., *Protocols for Nurse Practitioners in Gynecologic Settings,* **11th** ed., Springer Publishing Co., New York, **2015.**

3. M. Zieman, R.A. Hatcher. *Managing Contraception,* ***13th ed.,*** *Ardent Media Inc.,* New York**, 2015.**

4. **CDC, U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 2016, MMWR 2016; 65: 3** http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6503.pdf

5. **CDC, U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use, 2016. MMWR 2016; 65:4** http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6504.pdf

6. US Department of Health and Human Services; Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. NIOSH list of antineoplastic and other hazardous drugs in healthcare settings, 2016. Available at https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html **Updated September 2016. Accessed November 8, 2016.**

7. **Human Reproduction, Vol.31, No.11 pp. 2491–2498, 2016, Advanced Access publication on September 26, 2016 doi:10.1093/humrep/dew222 https://academic.oup.com/humrep/article-pdf/31/11/2491/6629131/dew222.pdf**

8. **McNicholas C, Swor E, Wan L, et al. Prolonged use of the etonogestrel implant and levonorgestrel intrauterine device: 2 years beyond Food and Drug Administration - approved duration. Am J Obstet Gynecol 2017; 216:586.e1-6. http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.ajog.2017.01.036**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PROGESTIN-ONLY PILL (MINIPILL)

DEFINITION

Progestin-only pills **(POP)** are also known as minipills. Minipills contain only a progestin and are taken daily with no hormone free days. Minipills have lower progestin doses than combined pills and no estrogen. The amount of progestin in the minipill is less than the amount in the lowest-dose combination oral contraceptives.

ETIOLOGY

Minipills prevent pregnancy primarily by thickening and decreasing cervical mucus preventing sperm penetration. This effect on cervical mucus rapidly resolves, so punctual daily dosing is essential for optimizing contraceptive efficacy. Secondary mechanism of action may include: suppressing mid-cycle peaks of LH and FSH, inhibiting progesterone-receptor synthesis, reducing number/size of endometrial glands associated with a thin atrophic endometrium, reducing activity of the cilia in the fallopian tubes, arresting movement of the blastocyst, and premature luteolysis (diminished function of the corpus luteum).

Minipills do not suppress the milk supply once breastfeeding is well established and studies have found no adverse effects on infant health. The minipill may be used for women who cannot use estrogen according to the CDC *US Medical Eligibility for Contraceptive Use* guidance and for those who cannot tolerate estrogen-excess side effects.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient provides a detailed health history (includes menstrual, sexual, contraception, personal health and family history) that does not reveal a condition representing an unacceptable health risk according to the product prescribing information and the CDC *Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use*.

2. If breastfeeding, **patient** may initiate immediately. However, there is minimal likelihood of ovulating before one month postpartum in a woman who is breastfeeding.

3. If on anticonvulsant therapy, does not take certain anticonvulsants (e.g., phenytoin, carbamazepine, barbiturates, primidone, topiramate, oxcarbazepine).

4. If on antimicrobial therapy, does not take a rifamycin derivative (**Rifamycin, Rifabutin or Rifapentine)**.

5. **Does not have a history of malabsorptive procedures (ex. Roux-en-Y gastric bypass or biliopancreatic diversion)**

6. Refer to CDC *Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use* for medical conditions that represent an unacceptable health risk for taking the minipill. Medical conditions include:

a. Lupus with positive (or unknown) antiphospholipid antibodies
b. Breast cancer
c. Cirrhosis – severe (decompensated)
d. Liver Tumors – benign hepatocellular adenoma; malignant (hepatoma)

7. Refer to CDC Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use for medical conditions that represent an unacceptable health risk if they develop while taking the minipill. Women with these conditions may initiate minipills. However, if women who did not have these conditions at the time of initiation develop these conditions after being on minipills, the minipills should not be continued. Medical conditions include:

   a. Ischemic heart disease
   b. Stroke

8. May report estrogen-excess side effects while taking combined hormonal contraceptives, such as headaches, breast tenderness, nausea and chloasma.

9. May want lowest-dose oral contraceptive available.

OBJECTIVE

1. **Provider assessment of whether they can be reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant (see Initiation of Contraception protocol).**

2. Physical examination and laboratory tests, as indicated. See protocol for Preventive Care and Health Screening.

ASSESSMENT

Patient has no condition representing an unacceptable health risk if taking minipills. Not allergic to any component of minipill.

3.
PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

Pregnancy test, if indicated, is negative.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Hazardous agent; use appropriate precautions for handling and disposal which can be found at:
https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html

1. Order any FDA approved progestin-only OC. (See Appendix A)

2. Determine appropriate pill initiation method to begin taking pills. See Patient Education/Counseling below.

3. Provide instructions on selected progestin-only pill usage to include: pill initiation method, daily pill routines, and missed pills.

4. Provide education/counseling to include: informed consent, side effects and danger signs, effectiveness and back-up methods, preconception health and future fertility, and risks of STD/HIV.

5. Provide up to a 13-month supply of progestin only OCs.

6. Instruct patient to take one pill daily by mouth at the same time of day.

7. Schedule follow-up exam, **as indicated (see table below)**.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Counsel patient according to seven basic elements of informed consent (BRAIDED - Benefits Risks Alternatives Inquiries Decision Explanation Documentation).

2. Educate patient on **when to initiate the method (see Initiation of Contraceptives Protocol)** and table below.

3. Switching from other methods.

    a. When switching from a non-hormonal method, start progestin only pills immediately following the guidelines for the quick start method.

    b. For patients with an IUD, it may be reasonable to start minipills when the appointment for IUD removal is made.

    c. When switching from a hormonal method that works primarily by inhibiting ovulation, start minipills immediately after stopping the other method with no breaks.

4. Explain instructions for minipill use.

    a. Always take one pill every day at the same time. Taking a pill more than a few hours late increases the risk of pregnancy and missing two or more pills in a row greatly increases the risk. When one packet is finished, take the first pill from the next packet on the very next day. All pills are active, hormonal pills. There is no wait between packets.

b. With missed pills or more than three hours late taking the pills, use a barrier method or avoid sex for two days. Take the last missed pill as soon as possible and continue taking one pill each day as usual.

c. Advise patient to refer to the pill package insert for missed pill(s) instructions.

d. Offer emergency contraceptive pills (ECP) in advance to be used if pill was missed or taken late and patient had unprotected sex in the past 120 hours. ECP reduce the risk of pregnancy. (See Nurse Protocol of Emergency Contraceptive Pills.)

5. Discuss effectiveness of minipill and back-up methods.

a. There appear to be no significant metabolic effects and there is an immediate return to fertility upon discontinuation of the minipill.

b. The minipill may cause irregular bleeding or amenorrhea.

c. **There is not consensus regarding how to manage BTB with POPs. BTB is common with POPs and is generally not a sign that there is anything wrong. The patient can be reassured if there is no objective concern from history, exam or diagnostic study, as described above. If patient is not satisfied with this reassurance, provider should discuss alternative contraceptive methods.**

6. Discuss danger signs:

a. Abdominal pain may be due to an ovarian cyst or ectopic pregnancy.

b. A delayed period after several months of regular cycles may be a sign of pregnancy.

c. Repeated, very severe headaches.

7. Provide counseling on preconception health counseling and future fertility. (Refer to Preconception Health Toolkit). **http://www.fpm.emory.edu/preventive/research/projects/**

8. Counsel on the use of condoms to reduce the risk of STD/HIV.

FOLLOW- UP

Patient should return as **needed (see table below)** for evaluation or contact clinic if side effects, danger signs, or symptoms of pregnancy develop. Outside of clinic hours, seek physician or emergency care if danger signs develop.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Refer patient to physician if patient develops danger signs.

2. Seek consultation, as applicable, if patient has abnormal health screening laboratory values **(not covered by a nurse protocol)** or develops abnormal laboratory values and/or physical findings that indicate the minipill should not be continued.

3. Refer to physician if patient has suspected pregnancy (e.g., missed menses after several regular cycles), especially if she has signs of ectopic pregnancy such as abdominal pain or tenderness, or fainting.

How to Be Reasonably Certain That a Woman is Not Pregnant

A health-care provider can be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant if she has no symptoms or signs of pregnancy and meets any one of the following criteria:

- is ≤7 days after the start of normal menses
- has not had sexual intercourse since the start of last normal menses
- has been correctly and consistently using a reliable method of contraception
- is ≤7 days after spontaneous or induced abortion
- is within 4 weeks postpartum
- is fully or nearly fully breastfeeding (exclusively breastfeeding or the vast majority [≥85%] of feeds are breastfeeds), amenorrheic, and <6 months postpartum

In situations in which the health-care provider is uncertain whether the woman might be pregnant, the benefits of starting the implant, depot medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA), combined hormonal contraceptives and progestin-only pills likely exceed any risk; therefore, starting the method should be considered at any time, with a follow-up pregnancy test in 2-4 weeks. For IUD insertion, in situations in which the health-care provider is not reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant, the woman should be provided with another contraceptive method to use until the health-care provider can be reasonably certain that she is not pregnant and can insert the IUD.

When to Start Using Specific Contraceptive Methods

Contraceptive method	When to start (if the provider is reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant)	Additional contraception (i.e., back up) needed	Examinations or tests needed before initiation[1]
Copper-containing IUD	Anytime	Not needed	Bimanual examination and cervical inspection[2]
Levonorgestrel-releasing IUD	Anytime	If >7 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	Bimanual examination and cervical inspection[2]
Implant	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	None
Injectable	Anytime	If >7 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	None
Combined hormonal contraceptive	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	Blood pressure measurement
Progestin-only pill	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 2 days.	None

Abbreviations: BMI = body mass index; IUD = intrauterine device; STD = sexually transmitted disease; U.S. MEC = U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use

[1] Weight (BMI) measurement is not needed to determine medical eligibility for any methods of contraception because all methods can be used (U.S. MEC 1) or generally can be used (U.S. MEC 2) among obese women. However, measuring weight and calculating BMI (weight [kg]/height [m²] at baseline might be helpful for monitoring any changes and counseling women who might be concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.

[2] Most women do not require additional STD screening at the time of IUD insertion. If a woman with risk factors for STDs has not been screened for gonorrhea and chlamydia according to CDC's STD Treatment Guidelines (http://www.cdc.gov/std/treatment), screening can be performed at the time of IUD insertion, and insertion should not be delayed. Women with current purulent cervicitis or chlamydial infection or gonococcal infection should not undergo IUD insertion (U.S. MEC 4).

Source: For full recommendations and updates, see the U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use webpage at http://www.cdc.gov/reproductivehealth/unintendedpregnancy/usspr.htm.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion

TABLE D1. Routine follow-up after contraceptive initiation

Action	Contraceptive method				
	Cu-IUD or LNG-IUD	Implant	Injectable	CHC	POP
General follow-up					
Advise women to return at any time to discuss side effects or other problems or if they want to change the method. Advise women using IUDs, implants, or injectables when the IUD or implant needs to be removed or when a reinjection is needed. No routine follow-up visit is required.	X	X	X	X	X
Other routine visits					
Assess the woman's satisfaction with her current method and whether she has any concerns about method use.	X	X	X	X	X
Assess any changes in health status, including medications, that would change the method's appropriateness for safe and effective continued use based on U.S. MEC (i.e., category 3 and 4 conditions and characteristics) (Box 1).	X	X	X	X	X
Consider performing an examination to check for the presence of IUD strings.	X	—	—	—	—
Consider assessing weight changes and counseling women who are concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.	X	X	X	X	X
Measure blood pressure.	—	—	—	X	—

Abbreviations: CHC = combined hormonal contraceptives; Cu-IUD = copper-containing intrauterine device; HIV = human immunodeficiency virus; IUD = intrauterine device; LNG-IUD = levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine device; POP = progestin-only pills; U.S. MEC = *U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use*.

4.

REFERENCES

1. Robert Hatcher et al., *Contraceptive Technology,* 20th ed., Ardent Media, Inc., New York, 2011. (Current)

2. Joellen Hawkins et al., *Protocols for Nurse Practitioners in Gynecologic Settings,* **11th** ed., Springer Publishing Co., New York, **2015.**

3. M. Zieman, R.A. Hatcher. *Managing Contraception,* ***13th ed., Ardent Media Inc.,*** **New York, 2015**.

4. **CDC, U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 2016, MMWR 2016; 65: 3** http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6503.pdf

5. **CDC, U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use, 2016. MMWR 2016; 65:4** http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6504.pdf

6. US Department of Health and Human Services; Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. NIOSH list of antineoplastic and other hazardous drugs in healthcare settings, 2016. Available at http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/topics/antineoplastic/pdf/hazardous-drugs-list_2016-161.pdf. **Updated September 2016. Accessed November 8, 2016.**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR MEDROXYPROGESTERONE ACETATE (DMPA) (Injectable Contraceptive)

DEFINITION Medroxyprogesterone acetate is a progestin-only (estrogen-free) long acting reversible hormonal contraceptive birth control which is injected every 3 months or 12 weeks. Medroxyprogesterone acetate is commonly known as DMPA.

ETIOLOGY DMPA inhibits ovulation by suppressing levels of follicular-stimulating hormone (FSH) and luteinizing hormone (LH) and by eliminating the LH surge. The pituitary gland remains responsive to gonadatropin-releasing hormone, which suggests that the site of action of medroxyprogesterone acetate is the hypothalamus.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient desires DMPA as choice of contraception.

2. Patient provides detailed health history (includes menstrual, sexual, contraception, personal health and family history) that does not reveal a condition representing an unacceptable health risk according to the product prescribing information and to the *CDC Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use*.

3. Refer to *CDC Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use* for medical conditions that represent an unacceptable health risk for taking DMPA. Medical conditions include:

   a. Multiple risk factors for arterial cardiovascular disease (examples of risk factors include, but are not limited to, the following: age over 35, smoking, diabetes, **low HDL, high LDL or high triglycerides**, obesity and hypertension). Women with multiple risk factors for arterial cardiovascular disease should be encouraged to consider long-acting reversible contraceptives. For women with three or more risk factors, consult with the delegating physician prior to initiating DMPA.

   b. Elevated blood pressure levels (systolic equal to or greater than 160 mmHg or diastolic equal to or greater than 100 mmHg., patients with well controlled hypertension or those who have blood pressures less than 160/100 are candidates for DMPA).

   c. Vascular disease.

   d. Deep vein thrombosis (DVT)/pulmonary embolism - acute.

   e. Ischemic heart disease.

f. Stroke.

g. **Lupus with** positive (or unknown) antiphospholipid antibodies.

h. Severe thrombocytopenia (at the time of initiation).

i. **Rheumatoid arthritis receiving immunosuppressive therapy (with long term corticosteroid therapy) with a history of or risk factors for nontraumatic fractures.**

j. Unexplained vaginal bleeding (suspicious **for serious condition** before evaluation).

k. Breast cancer.

l. Diabetes – nephropathy/retinopathy/neuropathy, other vascular disease or diabetes of greater than 20 years duration.

m. Cirrhosis – severe (decompensated).

n. Liver Tumors – benign hepatocullular ademona; malignant (hepatoma).

OBJECTIVE Physical examination and laboratory tests, as indicated. See protocol for Preventive Care and Health Screening.

ASSESSMENT Patient has no condition representing an unacceptable health risk if using DMPA. Not allergic to any component of injection.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

Pregnancy test, if indicated, is negative.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Hazardous agent; use appropriate precautions for handling and disposal which can be found at:
https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html

NOTE: Allergic reactions may occur. Encourage patient to remain in the clinic at least 20 minutes after each injection. Refer to the **Emergency Preparedness** Allergic Reaction Nurse Protocol as needed.

1. Availability: DMPA is provided either IM or **subcut** IM: 1 mL vials or prefilled syringes containing 150 mg/1mL.**Subcut**: 104mg/0.65mL

2. Storage: DMPA IM is to be stored at room temperature 20° to 25°C (68° to 77° F). Both the vial and the pre-filled syringe should be vigorously shaken at least one minute just before use to ensure the dose is uniformly suspended (refer to package insert).

   DMPA **subcut** is to be stored at room temperature 20**°** to 25°C (68° to 77° F). Shake vigorously prior to administration.

3. Administration: DMPA 150mg IM, injected deeply into the deltoid or gluteus maximus muscle. Depending on the size of the patient, may need to use a 1.5-inch needle. Do not massage the injection site, and instruct patient not to massage site. (Massaging area may reduce duration of action and thereby effectiveness). Rotate administration site with each injection.

   DMPA 104mg **subcut**, administer by **subcut** injection in the anterior thigh or abdomen. Avoid boney areas and the umbilicus. Administer over 5-7 seconds. Do not rub the injection area (refer to package insert). **Rotate administration site with each injection.**

4. Initiation:

   a. Educate patient on **when to initiate the method.**

   b. **If a provider can be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant, DMPA may be initiated on that day. Back up for 7 days.**

   c. **In situations where a provider cannot be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant, the benefits of initiating DMPA outweigh the risks and contraception can be initiated immediately.**
      1) **Starting DMPA the day of clinic visit can be easier for patients and can increase access.**
      2) **Hormonal contraception will not prevent a pregnancy from sex that has already occurred.**
      3) **Most studies have shown no increased risk for adverse outcomes (congenital anomalies, neonatal or infant death) in infants exposed to contraception.**
      4) **The likelihood of pregnancy in previous studies of immediate initiation in situations like these was 3%.**
      5) **If patient wants to begin DMPA that day of the clinic visit, initiate that day. Encourage condoms or abstinence for 7 days. Repeat UCG in 14-28 days (this can be done by home pregnancy test if the patient desires).**
      6) **If patient declines initiation of hormonal contraception on that day of clinic visit, return to**

the clinic during the first 5 days of her next menstrual cycle for starting DMPA.

7) If patient has had unprotected sex in the last 120 hours, offer EC (emergency contraceptive pills or Paragard IUD). See Emergency Contraceptive Pills Protocol. If providing ulipristal acetate EC, start DMPA in 5 days.

5. Switching from other methods:

    a. For patients with an IUD, it may be reasonable to start the DMPA when the appointment for IUD removal is made.

    b. When switching from a hormonal method that works primarily by inhibiting ovulation, give the DMPA immediately after stopping the other method with no breaks.

6. Continuation:

    a. The manufacturer recommends re-injection of DMPA IM between 11 and 13 weeks after a previous injection and **subcut** between 12 and 14 weeks after a previous injection

    b. At each re-injection follow-up visit, ask the date of the last menses, ask about any problems or concerns, specifically signs and symptoms of pregnancy, any changes in contraceptive or STD prevention needs. If the patient is not having any unacceptable symptoms or problems, she may receive re-injection.

    c. Contraceptive coverage will be maintained in switching from IM (150 mg/mL) to subcutaneous (104mg per 0.65 mL) **DMPA** provided the next injection is given within the prescribed dosing period for the IM (150 mg/mL).

    d. Contraceptive coverage will be maintained in switching from **DMPA** 104mg **subcut** to 150mg IM, provided the next injection is given within the prescribed dosing period for **DMPA** 104g **subcut**.

7. Managing Late Injections

    a. **Women who present after 13 weeks for DMPA IM and 14 weeks for DMPA subcut but prior to 15 weeks 0 days may receive their next injection without additional evaluation.**

b. If **women present** greater than 15 weeks **0 days** from last **IM or subcut of DMPA** injection and patient desires to continue with DMPA, treat as re-initiation.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Counsel patient according to seven basic elements of informed consent (BRAIDED – Benefits Risks Alternatives Inquiries Decision Explanation Documentation).

2. Emphasize the importance of the schedule associated with use of this method of contraception. Instruct patient to use back-up contraception during the first week after the injection if injections are late.

3. Discuss danger signs and other warning signs including repeated painful headaches, heavy bleeding, severe depression, jaundice, severe lower abdominal pain (may be sign of pregnancy), and pus, prolonged pain, or bleeding at the injection site.

4. Common side effects may include: bleeding/menstrual irregularities, weight changes, headache, nervousness, abdominal pain, dizziness, and weakness or fatigue. Less common side effects include: decreased libido, backache, leg cramps, depression, nausea, acne, vaginitis, breast pain, hair loss, bloating, rash, and hot flashes. Common side effects may not be relieved until the drug clears the body 6-8 months after the last injection. Bleeding irregularities are very common (30% in the first year and 10% thereafter). If necessary, bleeding can be treated with medication (as noted below in follow-up).

5. Call or return if there are questions about possible side effects or development of reasons to avoid use, such as weight gain, heavy bleeding, headaches or depression.

6. Advise that amenorrhea is common on DMPA and is not harmful. Approximately 50% of women are amenorrheic after one year of use, and this increases to 80% by 5 years.

7. Review the FDA black box warning and WHO and CDC recommendations on DMPA and bone mineral density. Counsel patient on adequate calcium intake from foods like milk, cheese, yogurt or ice cream or a calcium/vitamin D supplement daily; regular exercise; and avoiding alcohol, smoking and excessive intake of sodas and caffeine. Advise patient after 2 years of continuous DMPA use, re-evaluation regarding bone health, risk and continuation of DMPA for contraception is appropriate.

Women and their providers should continually reassess contraceptive medical eligibility over time, but for healthy women 18-45 years old, the duration of use for DMPA need not be limited**.**

8. Please see details below.

NOTE: In November 2004, the FDA issued the following "black box warning" in the Depo-Provera package labeling. Clinicians are advised to review the following warning, which has been added to the prescribing information:

"Women who use Depo-Provera Contraceptive Injection may lose significant bone mineral density. Bone loss is greater with increasing duration of use and may not be completely reversible. It is unknown if use of Depo-Provera Contraceptive Injection during adolescence or early adulthood, a critical period of bone accretion, will reduce peak bone mass and increase the risk of osteoporotic fracture in later life. Depo-Provera Contraceptive Injection should be used as a long-term birth control method (e.g., longer than 2 years) only if other birth control methods are inadequate."

The WHO and many others have reviewed the evidence on this subject and concluded:

"there should be no restriction on the use of Depo-Provera (DMPA), including no restriction on duration of use, among women aged 18 to 45 who are otherwise eligible to use the method."

Most studies have found that women lose bone mineral density while using Depo-Provera, but regain bone mineral density after discontinuing Depo-Provera. Depo-Provera may decrease the amount of calcium in the bones. It is not known if use during the reproductive years affects the risk of fracture in later postmenopausal years.

Therefore, all Depo-Provera users should have the FDA black box warning clearly explained to them and a discussion of alternatives if they choose to change methods.

Women with medical co-morbidities that place them at risk for osteoporosis and fracture, such as chronic corticosteroid use, disorders of bone metabolism, a strong family history of osteoporosis or women with anorexia nervosa, may not be well suited for long-term Depo-Provera use. Consider alternative contraceptives in patients with significant risk factors for osteoporosis.

WHO further recommended:

"Among adolescents (menarche to age 17) and women over age 45, the advantages of using Depo-Provera usually outweigh the theoretical safety concerns regarding fracture risk. Since data are insufficient to determine if this is the case with long-term use among these age groups, the overall risks and benefits for continuing use of the method should be reconsidered over time with the individual user."

9. Discuss effectiveness of DMPA and back-up methods.

10. Advise patient that DMPA is a long acting contraceptive and not immediately reversible. It takes at least 3 months for fertility to return after last injection. Anovulation may linger after discontinuation. The average is about 9 months (range of 4-31 months) after the last injection and does not increase with longer duration of use.

11. There is no apparent increased risk for breast cancer.

12. No adverse effects have been noted in infants of mothers using DMPA during lactation. Quality and quantity of breast milk is not adversely affected.

13. Provide counseling on preconception health counseling and future fertility. (Refer to Preconception Health Toolkit **http://www.fpm.emory.edu/preventive/research/projects/**

14. Counsel on the use of condoms to reduce the risk of STD/HIV. DMPA offers no protection from STD/HIV.

FOLLOW-UP

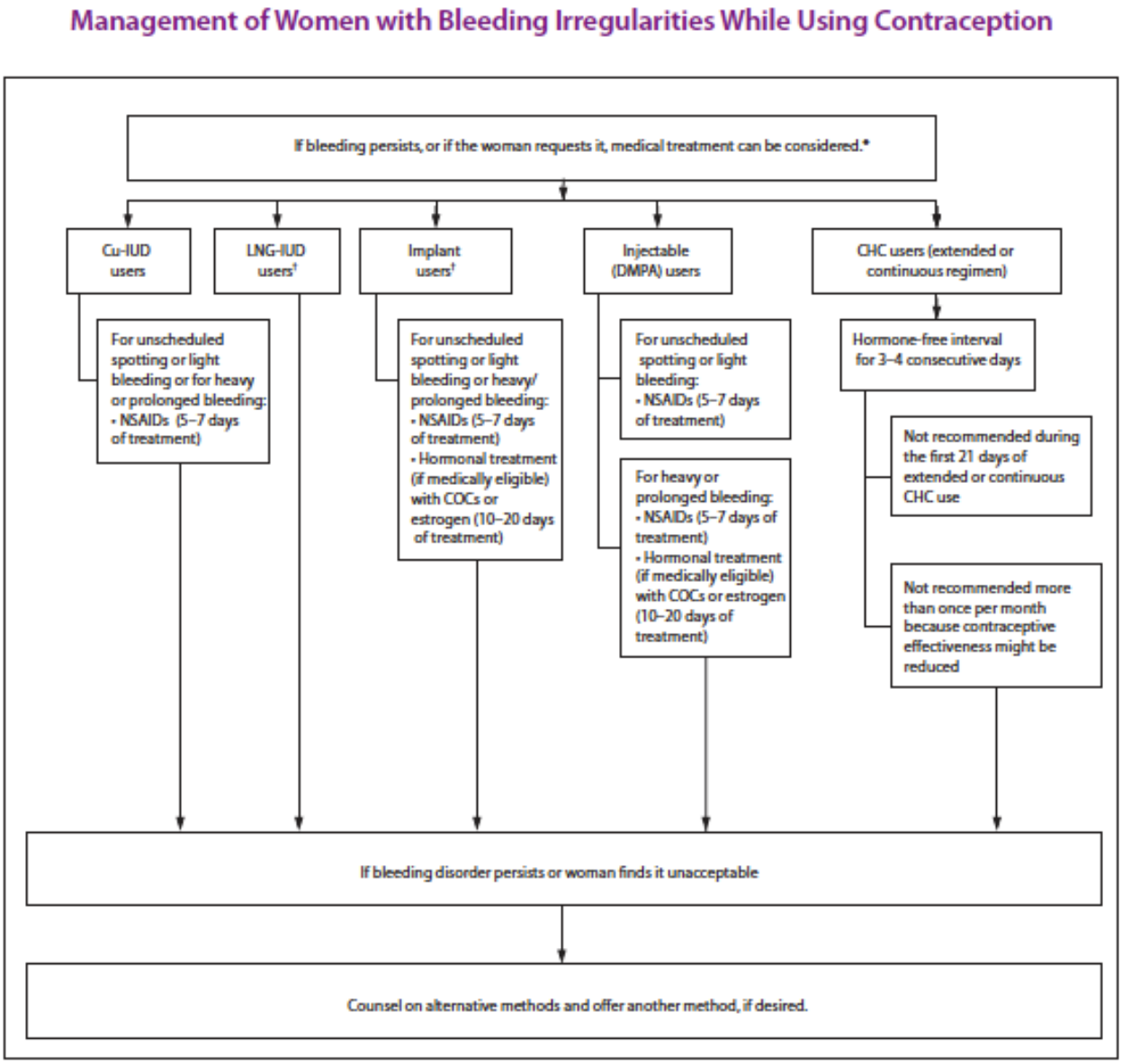
1. Return for re-injection of DMPA IM between 11 and 13 weeks after previous injection and **subcut** between 12 and 14 weeks after previous injection.

2. Treatment of bleeding irregularities:

   a. For bleeding irregularities, rule out infection or cervical lesions. **Refer to protocol for Spotting or Breakthrough Bleeding While Using Hormonal Contraception.** May give:
      1) A combined low-dose oral contraceptive for 1 cycle
      2) Ibuprofen 400mg PO every 4 to 6 hours as necessary for 5 to 7 days. (Maximum dose 1.2 gm/day)

   b. See table below.

Table 1 Management of Bleeding Irregularities, from CDC's US Selected Practice Recommendations



Abbreviations: CHC = combined hormonal contraceptive; COC = combined oral contraceptive; Cu-IUD = copper-containing intrauterine device; DMPA = depot medroxyprogesterone acetate; LNG-IUD = levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine device; NSAIDs = nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs.
* If clinically warranted, evaluate for underlying condition. Treat the condition or refer for care.
† Heavy or prolonged bleeding, either unscheduled or menstrual, is uncommon.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Symptoms of pregnancy.

2. Signs or symptoms of allergic reaction (rash, difficulty breathing, redness and swelling at injection site, etc.).

3. Signs or symptoms of infection (fever, severe pain, redness or swelling at injection site, etc.).

4. Intolerable bleeding pattern.

How to Be Reasonably Certain That a Woman is Not Pregnant

A health-care provider can be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant if she has no symptoms or signs of pregnancy and meets any one of the following criteria:

- is ≤7 days after the start of normal menses
- has not had sexual intercourse since the start of last normal menses
- has been correctly and consistently using a reliable method of contraception
- is ≤7 days after spontaneous or induced abortion
- is within 4 weeks postpartum
- is fully or nearly fully breastfeeding (exclusively breastfeeding or the vast majority [≥85%] of feeds are breastfeeds), amenorrheic, and <6 months postpartum

In situations in which the health-care provider is uncertain whether the woman might be pregnant, the benefits of starting the implant, depot medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA), combined hormonal contraceptives and progestin-only pills likely exceed any risk; therefore, starting the method should be considered at any time, with a follow-up pregnancy test in 2-4 weeks. For IUD insertion, in situations in which the health-care provider is not reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant, the woman should be provided with another contraceptive method to use until the health-care provider can be reasonably certain that she is not pregnant and can insert the IUD.

When to Start Using Specific Contraceptive Methods

Contraceptive method	When to start (if the provider is reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant)	Additional contraception (i.e., back up) needed	Examinations or tests needed before initiation[1]
Copper-containing IUD	Anytime	Not needed	Bimanual examination and cervical inspection[2]
Levonorgestrel-releasing IUD	Anytime	If >7 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	Bimanual examination and cervical inspection[2]
Implant	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	None
Injectable	Anytime	If >7 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	None
Combined hormonal contraceptive	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	Blood pressure measurement
Progestin-only pill	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 2 days.	None

Abbreviations: BMI = body mass index; IUD = intrauterine device; STD = sexually transmitted disease; U.S. MEC = U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use

[1] Weight (BMI) measurement is not needed to determine medical eligibility for any methods of contraception because all methods can be used (U.S. MEC 1) or generally can be used (U.S. MEC 2) among obese women. However, measuring weight and calculating BMI (weight [kg]/height [m^2] at baseline might be helpful for monitoring any changes and counseling women who might be concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.

[2] Most women do not require additional STD screening at the time of IUD insertion. If a woman with risk factors for STDs has not been screened for gonorrhea and chlamydia according to CDC's STD Treatment Guidelines (http://www.cdc.gov/std/treatment), screening can be performed at the time of IUD insertion, and insertion should not be delayed. Women with current purulent cervicitis or chlamydial infection or gonococcal infection should not undergo IUD insertion (U.S. MEC 4).

Source: For full recommendations and updates, see the U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use webpage at http://www.cdc.gov/reproductivehealth/unintendedpregnancy/usspr.htm.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion

TABLE D1. Routine follow-up after contraceptive initiation

	Contraceptive method				
Action	**Cu-IUD or LNG-IUD**	**Implant**	**Injectable**	**CHC**	**POP**
General follow-up					
Advise women to return at any time to discuss side effects or other problems or if they want to change the method. Advise women using IUDs, implants, or injectables when the IUD or implant needs to be removed or when a reinjection is needed. No routine follow-up visit is required.	X	X	X	X	X
Other routine visits					
Assess the woman's satisfaction with her current method and whether she has any concerns about method use.	X	X	X	X	X
Assess any changes in health status, including medications, that would change the method's appropriateness for safe and effective continued use based on U.S. MEC (i.e., category 3 and 4 conditions and characteristics) (Box 1).	X	X	X	X	X
Consider performing an examination to check for the presence of IUD strings.	X	—	—	—	—
Consider assessing weight changes and counseling women who are concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.	X	X	X	X	X
Measure blood pressure.	—	—	—	X	—

Abbreviations: CHC = combined hormonal contraceptives; Cu-IUD = copper-containing intrauterine device; HIV = human immunodeficiency virus; IUD = intrauterine device; LNG-IUD = levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine device; POP = progestin-only pills; U.S. MEC = *U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use*.

REFERENCES

1. "Black Box Warning Added Concerning Long-Term Use of Depo-Provera Contraceptive Injection," *FDA Talk Paper*, T04-50, FDA, November 17, 2004. (Current)

2. Robert Hatcher et al., *Contraceptive Technology,* 20th ed., Ardent Media, Inc., New York, 2011. (Current)

3. Joellen Hawkins et al., *Protocols for Nurse Practitioners in Gynecologic Settings,* **11th** ed., Springer Publishing Co., New York, **2015**.

4. M. Zieman, R.A. Hatcher. *Managing Contraception,* ***13th ed., Ardent Media Inc.,*** **New York, 2015**.

5. **CDC, U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 2016, MMWR 2016; 65: 3** http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6503.pdf

6. **CDC, U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use, 2016. MMWR 2016; 65:4** http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6504.pdf

7. ACOG Committee Opinion #602: Depot Medroxyprogesterone Acetate and Bone Effects,. < http://www.acog.org/-/media/Committee-Opinions/Committee-on-Adolescent-Health-Care/co602.pdf?dmc=1. Accessed 5/25/2017

8. "Lexi-Comp Online," Lexi-Comp, Inc., < **http://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/7233> (June 9, 2015)**

9. **US Department of Health and Human Services; Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. NIOSH list of antineoplastic and other hazardous drugs in healthcare settings, 2016. Available at** https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html . **Updated September 2016. Accessed November 8, 2016.**

10. **Wolters Kluwer; *Lexicomp Online*, 2017; http://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/5245 >accessed June 4, 2017**

11. **Kaunitz, Andrew M., "Depot medroxyprogesterone acetate for contraception" Wolters Kluwer, UpToDate Online accessed 7/20/2017.**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR VAGINAL CONTRACEPTIVE DIAPHRAGM

DEFINITION

The diaphragm is a dome-shaped rubber cup that is inserted into the vagina before intercourse. It consists of soft rubber, latex **or silicone** that is fitted for size. **There are some diaphragms on today's market that do not require special fitting.**

ETIOLOGY

The dome of the diaphragm covers the cervix. The posterior rim rests in the posterior fornix and the anterior rim fits snugly behind the pubic bone. The diaphragm acts as a barrier and prevents sperm from entering. Spermicidal cream or jelly placed in the dome prior to insertion add to its effectiveness by killing any sperm that might slip around the edge of the diaphragm.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient provides a detailed health history (includes menstrual, sexual, contraception, personal health and family history) that does not reveal a condition representing an unacceptable health risk according to the product prescribing information and the CDC *Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use*.

2. Refer to CDC *Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use* for medical conditions that represent an unacceptable health risk for using a diaphragm. Medical conditions include:

   a. HIV/AIDS or high risk of HIV infection
   b. Antiretroviral Therapy
   c. History of Toxic Shock Syndrome
   d. Known allergy or hypersensitivity to **diaphragm material**

3. Patient reports no full-term delivery within the past 6 weeks.

OBJECTIVE

1. **Physical examination and laboratory tests, as indicated. See protocol for Preventive Care and Health Screening.**

2. Pelvic exam shows:

   a. Adequate vaginal tone to hold the diaphragm in place.
   b. Absence of uterine prolapse, severe cystocele or rectocele.
   c. Uterus is not fixed in retroflexed or retroverted position.
   d. Notch behind the symphysis pubis is adequate to support the rim of the diaphragm.

3. Patient is physically able to insert a diaphragm.

ASSESSMENT

Patient has no condition representing an unacceptable health risk if using the diaphragm.

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

Use diaphragm with contraceptive jelly/cream containing spermicide.

For patients with latex allergies, provide latex-free diaphragm (e.g. **Lea's Shield**).

NOTE: Increased use of nonoxynol 9 is associated with risk of vaginal irritation, therefore increased risk of HIV transmission.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

Fit patient for appropriate size and type of diaphragm.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Counsel patient according to the seven basic elements of informed consent (BRAIDED – Benefits Risks Alternatives Inquiries Decision Explanation Documentation).

2. Insertion, removal and care of diaphragm, with return demonstration.

3. Once in position, the diaphragm provides effective contraceptive protection for 6 hours.

4. After intercourse, the diaphragm must be left in place for at least 6 hours, but it should be removed as soon as possible thereafter. Continuous wearing of a contraceptive diaphragm for more than 24 hours is not recommended.

   If more than one act of intercourse in 6 hours, do not remove diaphragm. Add additional spermicide before each act of intercourse. Increased use of nonoxynol 9 is associated with risk of vaginal irritation, therefore increased risk of HIV transmission.

5. Prevention of toxic shock syndrome:

   a. Do not use diaphragm during menses.

   b. Do not leave diaphragm in place for more than 24 hours.

   c. Seek care for danger signs of toxic shock:
      1) Temperature of 101° F or higher.

2) Diarrhea.
3) Vomiting.
4) Muscle aches.
5) Rash appearing like sunburn.

6. Diaphragm will need to be refitted and replaced with new diaphragm at least every 2 years or:

   a. After vaginal delivery.
   b. After gynecologic or lower abdominal surgery.
   c. After weight loss or gain of over 10 pounds.
   d. After second trimester abortion.

7. Discuss risks that decrease the effectiveness of the diaphragm (e.g., petroleum jelly and vaginal medications**,** can weaken latex causing tears and leaks).

8. Provide counseling on preconception health counseling and future fertility. (Refer to Preconception Health Toolkit). **http://www.fpm.emory.edu/preventive/research/projects/**

9. Counsel on **the lack of protection from sexually transmitted infections** and the use of condoms to reduce the risk of STD/HIV.

FOLLOW-UP

Return to clinic in one month, with diaphragm in place, to assess for proper fit.

REFERRAL/CONSULTATION

1. Signs/symptoms of toxic shock syndrome.

2. **Recurrent urinary tract infection or vaginal infection.**

3. Signs/symptoms of cystocele or rectocele.

REFERENCES

1. Robert Hatcher et al., *Contraceptive Technology,* 20th ed., Ardent Media, Inc., New York, 2011. (Current)

2. Joellen Hawkins, et al., *Protocols for Nurse Practitioners in Gynecologic Settings,* **11th** ed., Springer Publishing Co., New York, **2015**.

3. **CDC, U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 2016, MMWR 2016; 65: 3** http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6503.pdf

4. **CDC, U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use, 2016. MMWR 2016; 65:4 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6504.pdf**

5. M. Zieman, R.A. Hatcher. *Managing Contraception,* ***13th ed., Ardent Media Inc.,*** **New York, 2015**

6. "A Resource for Contraception and Healthy Sex," <http://www.contracept.org> (March 27, 2017)

7. **Barbieri, Robert L., *Diaphragm, cervical cap, and sponge,* Wolters Kluwer; Up To Date; https://www-uptodate-com.ezproxy.pcom.edu/contents/diaphragm-cervical-cap-and-sponge?source=machineLearning&search=diaphragm&selectedTitle=1~150&sectionRank=3&anchor=H21#H21 >accessed August 8, 2017.**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SPOTTING OR BREAKTHROUGH BLEEDING WHILE USING HORMONAL CONTRACEPTIVES

DEFINITION

Breakthrough bleeding (BTB) is uterine bleeding that occurs between menstrual periods in women using oral contraceptive, but can also occur with other combined hormonal contraception (patch and ring). Irregular bleeding is also common for progestin only methods (pill, injection and implant). A light amount of BTB is referred to as spotting. Spotting and BTB are generally not signs of any serious problems.

ETIOLOGY

Spotting and BTB are most common (30-50%) in women taking combined OCs, but also may occur with other hormonal contraceptives. Spotting and BTB are most likely to occur during the first few months after a woman begins taking a new hormonal contraceptive and generally resolves by the third or fourth month of use. This may not be the case for some progestin only methods.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient provides a detailed health history (includes menstrual, sexual, contraception, personal health and family history).

2. Patient may have a recent history which includes the following:

   a. started new hormonal contraceptive

   b. missed contraceptive or incorrect usage

   c. inter-menstrual spotting/bleeding for several months

   d. GI problems such as vomiting or diarrhea

   e. abnormal vaginal discharge and/or odor

   f. dyspareunia or pelvic pain

   g. history of abnormal pap

   h. pain during menses

   i. pain or bleeding with sexual intercourse

   j. new sex partner

   k. smoking

   l. new medications

3. Patient may have history of taking anti-seizure medications (phenobarbital, phenytoin, carbamazepine, lamotrigrine, topiramate or promidone, rifampin, or griseofulvin).

OBJECTIVE Pelvic exam, if indicated, is negative for other causes of bleeding. (Pelvic exam is indicated for signs and symptoms of infection, pregnancy, malignancy or to assess heavy bleeding).

ASSESSMENT Spotting or BTB while taking hormonal contraceptive.

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

1. Urine dipstick, if indicated.
2. Gonorrhea and chlamydia tests, if indicated.
3. Pregnancy test, if indicated.
4. Hemoglobin/hematocrit, if indicated.
5. Wet prep, if indicated.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Hazardous agent; use appropriate precautions for handling and disposal which can be found at: https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html

For combined hormonal contraception:

NOTE: Please refer to Appendix A for information on combined hormonal formulations.

1. Combined OCs:

   a. Women with persistent irregular bleeding after 2-3 months while taking OCs, offer changing to other formulations; although no research indicates any specific OCs is best at eliminating spotting or bleeding.

      Breakthrough bleeding and spotting are most commonly seen in very low dose formulations (20 mcg). Offering a switch to a monophasic, 35 mcg pill or to a tri-phasic pill may help these symptoms. Instructions for taking these pills should be one pill orally daily.

OR

For extended-cycle users who have taken at least 21 days of pills, she can stop taking pills for 3 to 4 days to allow a withdrawal bleed to start, then restart the active pills, taking them again for at least 21 days. The length of time between unscheduled bleeding episodes should increase with the duration of use**.** It is not recommended that a woman do this more than once per month because it can reduce contraceptive efficacy.

2. For Patch or Ring:

   a. For those using the contraceptive patch or vaginal ring, ensure that the woman is placing it and changing it on the appropriate time schedule. Reassure her that BTB should improve over the first several months.

   b. For extended-cycle users who has used the ring for at least 21 days, she can stop using the ring for 3 to 4 days to allow a withdrawal bleed to start, then restart use of the ring, using it again for at least 21 days. The length of time between unscheduled bleeding episodes should increase with the duration of use. It is not recommended that a woman do this more than once per month because it can reduce contraceptive efficacy.

3. For DMPA:

   a. For unscheduled or light bleeding offer NSAIDs. If not allergic may order Ibuprofen 400 mg PO every 4 to 6 hours as necessary for 5 to 7 days. (Maximum dose 1.2 gm/day)

   b. For heavy or prolonged bleeding, offer NSAIDs. If not allergic may order Ibuprofen 400 mg PO every 4 to 6 hours as necessary for 5 to 7 days. (Maximum dose 1.2 gm/day).

OR

Hormonal treatment (if medically eligible).

1) Pack of combined OC

OR

2) Estrogen. Suggest conjugated equine estrogen 0.625 mg PO daily or estradiol 0.05mg PO daily, but may be given up to four times daily for 10-20 days if needed.

4. For Contraceptive Implant:

   a. For unscheduled spotting, light or heavy/prolonged bleeding, offer NSAIDs, if not allergic. Ibuprofen 400mg PO every 4 to 6 hours as necessary for 5 to 7 days. (Maximum dose **2.4** gm/day)

      OR

      If patient not allergic to sulfa drugs, can provide Celecoxib 200mg daily for 5 days with food

      OR

      Hormonal treatment (if medically eligible)

      1) Pack of combined OC or
      2) Estrogen (suggest conjugated equine estrogen 0.625 mg PO daily or estradiol 0.05mg PO daily), but may be given up to four times daily for 10-20 days if needed.

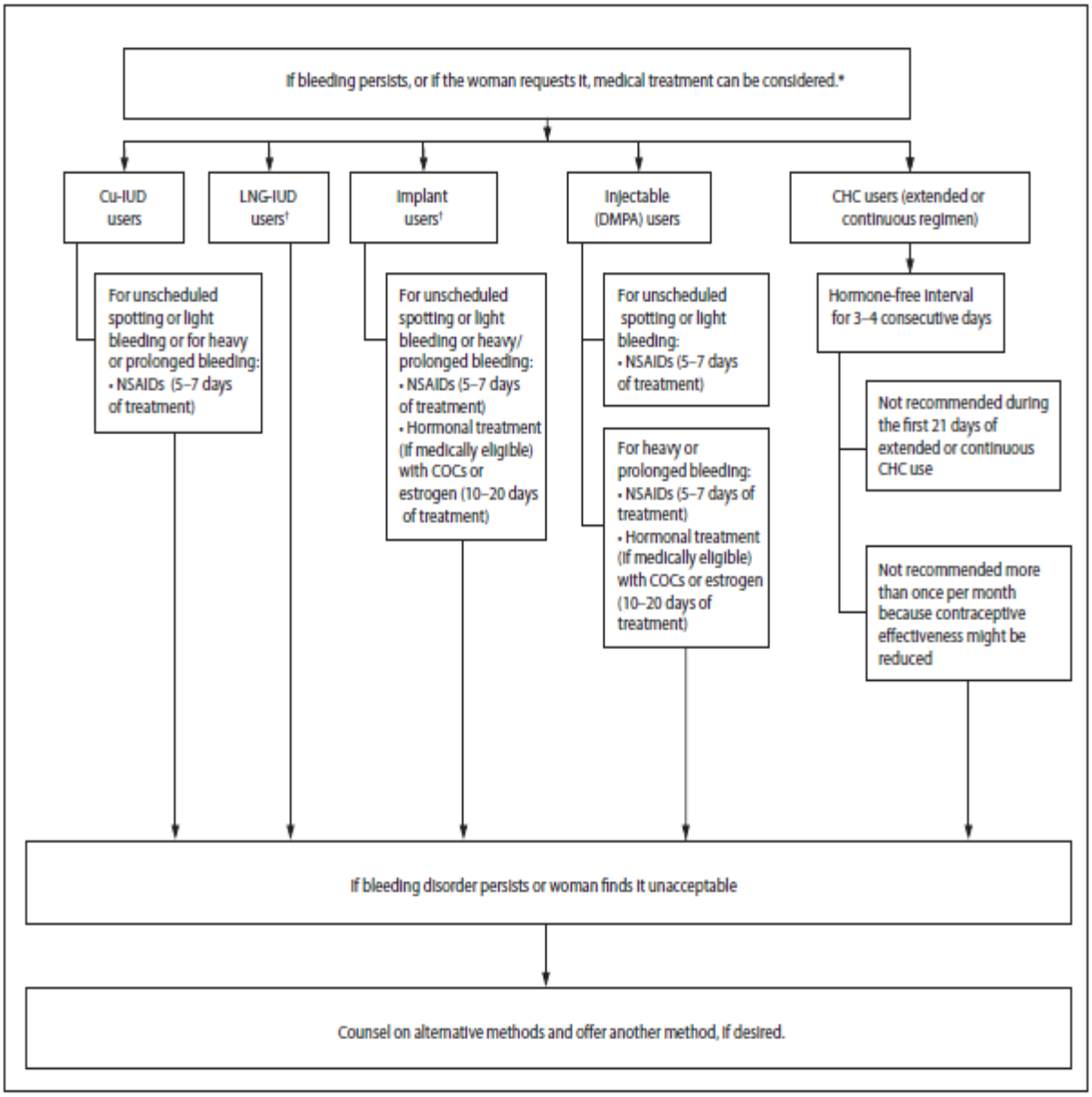
5. For POPs:

   There is not consensus regarding how to manage BTB with POPs. BTB is common with POPs and is generally not a sign that there is anything wrong. The patient can be reassured if there is no objective concern from history, exam or diagnostic study, as described above. If patient is not satisfied with this reassurance, provider should discuss alternative contraceptive methods.

6. For all methods, if symptoms are bothersome or persist despite change, consider changing method. If a woman desires trial of alternate approach (ex. NSAIDs after unsuccessful hormonal treatment), **that is acceptable. If a woman desires a longer course of therapy with either NSAID or hormonal treatment, that is acceptable.** See chart from SPR below regarding Management of Women with Bleeding Irregularities While Using Contraception.

Appendix E

Management of Women with Bleeding Irregularities While Using Contraception



Abbreviations: CHC = combined hormonal contraceptive; COC = combined oral contraceptive; Cu-IUD = copper-containing intrauterine device; DMPA = depot medroxyprogesterone acetate; LNG-IUD = levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine device; NSAIDs = nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs.
* If clinically warranted, evaluate for underlying condition. Treat the condition or refer for care.
† Heavy or prolonged bleeding, either unscheduled or menstrual, is uncommon.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Reassure new hormonal contraceptive users that breakthrough bleeding generally decreases dramatically over the first 3-4 months of initiation.

2. Reinforce proper administration of hormonal contraceptive, especially the importance of taking pills each day.

3. Counsel on use of alternate contraceptive method if hormonal contraceptive is discontinued.

4. Counsel on use of condoms to reduce the risk of STD/HIV.

5. Advise that BTB occurs at a higher rate in women who smoke. Refer patient to local cessation program and/or Georgia Tobacco Quit Line, 1-877-270-STOP (7867), if smoker or tobacco user.

FOLLOW-UP

Reassess spotting or BTB in 3 months depending on the acuity of the problem.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Seek consultation with, as applicable, if spotting or BTB continues.

2. Seek consultation with MD, as applicable, **if patient has abnormal screening tests not covered by nurse protocol** or abnormal diagnostic test results.

3. Refer patient to physician for pelvic pathology.

REFERENCES

1. Robert Hatcher et al., *Contraceptive Technology,* 20th ed., Ardent Media, Inc., New York, 2015.

2. Joellen Hawkins et al., *Protocols for Nurse Practitioners in Gynecologic Settings,* 11th ed., Springer Publishing Co., New York, 2015.

3. Leon Speroff and Marc Fritz, *Clinical Gynecologic Endocrinology and Infertility*, 8th ed., Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia, 2010. (Current)

4. M. Zieman, R.A. Hatcher. *Managing Contraception, 13th ed., Ardent Media Inc.,* New York, 2015.

5. CDC, U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use, 2016. MMWR 2016; 65:4 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6504.pdf

6. US Department of Health and Human Services; Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. NIOSH list of antineoplastic and other hazardous drugs in healthcare settings, 2016. Available at **https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html**. Updated September 2016. Accessed November 8, 2016.

7. Sarina Schrager, M.D. Abnormal Uterine Bleeding Associated with Hormonal Contraception Am Fam Physician. 2002 May15;65 (10):2073-2081.8 8.

8. Wolters Kluwer; *Lexicomp Online*, 2017; http://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/5245 >accessed June 4, 2017

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR IUD-RELATED DYSMENORRHEA

DEFINITION

Dysmenorrhea is pain during menstruation that interferes with daily activities. Intrauterine device (IUD) related dysmenorrhea is painful menses during IUD use.

ETIOLOGY

The main symptom of dysmenorrhea is pain with menses. The pain is concentrated in the abdomen, pelvic region, or lower back. Symptoms often co-occurring with menstrual pain include nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, headaches, weakness, dizziness or lightheadedness. Moderate to severe dysmenorrhea may be an indication for removal of the IUD. **However, the** Levonorgestrel IUD helps reduce menses and dysmenorrhea in many women**.**

Differential diagnosis includes mechanical pressure of IUD against wall of uterus, partial expulsion, pelvic inflammatory disease (PID), endometriosis, cancer, leiomyomata and ectopic pregnancy. Since cramping and abdominal pain may be signs of pregnancy or infection, those two problems must always be ruled out.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient provides a detailed health history (includes menstrual, sexual, contraception, personal health and family history).

2. Patient reports painful menses and gives history of current IUD.

3. Patient may have a recent history which includes the following:

   a. Heavy or late menses
   b. PID/STD
   c. Vaginal infection/**abnormal** discharge
   d. Recent sexual partner change or multiple sexual partners
   e. Pain with IUD in past

4. Patient provides IUD type, insertion date, and date of last string check if applicable.

5. Patient does not report fever or abnormal vaginal discharge.

OBJECTIVE

1. External exam usually within normal limits.

2. Internal exam usually within normal limits; may note vaginal discharge or partially-expelled IUD. Note length of IUD strings.

3. Bimanual exam usually within normal limits. May note tenderness on examination. May feel partially-expelled IUD.

4. **Cervical motion tenderness or pain in the uterus or adnexa are more characteristic of PID.**

ASSESSMENT IUD-related dysmenorrhea

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

1. Urine pregnancy test.

2. Hemoglobin/hematocrit, if indicated.

3. Gonorrhea and chlamydia tests; vaginal wet mount, if indicated.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Prostaglandin inhibitors/nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs may be taken if patient is not allergic**,** such as**:**

   a. Ibuprofen 400mg to 800mg PO every 6-8 hours as needed for pain. (Maximum daily dose 3200mg/day based on patient response and tolerance)

   OR

   b. Naproxen 500mg PO for one dose, then 250mg PO every 6-8 hours as needed for pain. (Day 1 maximum daily dose 1250mg/day, subsequent daily dose maximum of 1000mg/day)

   OR

   c. Over-the-counter-strength products (e.g., Advil, Nuprin, Aleve, Motrin IB, coated aspirin, or acetaminophen) as needed for pain per package directions.

   NOTE: Do not order NSAIDS if patient has a history of allergic reaction to aspirin. Acetaminophen per package instructions would be acceptable in this case.

   d. For optimal relief, encourage starting these medicines 24-48 hours before menses begin and continue through the first two days of the cycle.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Heating pad or hot-water bottle to pelvic region, hot baths or showers and/or warm liquids taken orally.

2. **A progestin-releasing IUD may be associated with decreased pain. Discuss with patient and refer to APRN or physician if she wants a progestin-releasing IUD.**

3. Remove the IUD (refer to APRN or physician) for the following:

    a. Partial expulsion.
    b. Excessive pain not relieved by the above measures.
    c. Patient's request for removal of IUD for any reason.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Discuss findings, treatment rationale.

2. Counsel on the use of condoms to reduce the risk of STD/ HIV.

3. Discuss correct use and side effects of medications.

4. If providing an NSAID, remind patient not to take additional NSAIDs over-the-counter.

FOLLOW-UP

Return to the clinic if symptoms are not relieved or if foul discharge begins.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. **Immediately refer patient to physician if suspect ectopic pregnancy, PID (See STD Nurse Protocol) that does not improve with 2-3 days of antibiotic treatment, or concerns for other gynecologic pathology causing the pain. http://dph.georgia.gov/nurse-protocols**

2. Refer patient to physician if symptoms not relieved by the above measures.

3. **Presence of actinomyces on Pap smear report with evidence of pelvic infection; if no evidence of infection, no action is necessary.**

REFERENCES

1. Robert Hatcher et al., *Contraceptive Technology,* 20th ed., Ardent Media, Inc., New York, 2011. (Current)

2. Joellen Hawkins et al., *Protocols for Nurse Practitioners in Gynecologic Settings,* **11th** ed., Springer Publishing Co., New York, **2015**.

3. M. Zieman, R.A. Hatcher. *Managing Contraception,* ***13th ed.*** *,* ***Ardent Media Inc.,*** **New York, 2015**

4. **CDC, U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 2016, MMWR 2016; 65: 3** http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6503.pdf

5. **CDC, U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use, 2016. MMWR 2016; 65:4** http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6504.pdf

6. **Wolters Kluwer;** ***Lexicomp Online*****, 2017; http://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/5245 >accessed June 4, 2017**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR COPPER IUD-RELATED MENORRHAGIA

DEFINITION

Menorrhagia refers to menstrual periods that occur at regular intervals but are marked by prolonged bleeding (greater than 7 days) or excessive blood loss (greater than 80 mL). IUD-related menorrhagia is prolonged or excessive bleeding with an IUD in place.

ETIOLOGY

Presence of IUD in utero. Bleeding problems constitute one of the more common IUD complications. Women using the copper-releasing IUD (Copper T380A) usually have heavier menses. Excessive bleeding with the Copper T380A can be treated with NSAIDs. Since local prostaglandin production is involved with excessive bleeding, any prostaglandin synthetase inhibitor should help. Starting in advance of menses does not give better results than starting with the onset of flow. If hemoglobin levels drop, oral iron supplementation can be started. Excessive menstrual bleeding may be an indication for removal of the IUD. The levonorgestrel IUD is associated with decreased menstrual bleeding.

Other causes to consider may be: PID, partial expulsion of the IUD, dysfunctional uterine bleeding as a result of an endocrine imbalance, cancer of the cervix or endometrium, cervical or uterine polyps, abnormal perimenopausal bleeding, fibroids, and pregnancy.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient provides a detailed health history (includes menstrual, sexual, contraception, personal health and family history).

2. Patient reports prolonged or excessive menstrual bleeding and gives history of current IUD.

3. Patient may have a recent history which includes the following:

   a. dizziness, weakness or tiredness

   b. pale skin color

OBJECTIVE

1. External exam usually within normal limits.

2. Internal exam may be within normal limits**;** may note partially-expelled IUD or feel IUD in the cervical canal.

3. Bimanual exam may be within normal limits**.** Cervical motion tenderness or pain in uterus and adnexal areas is more characteristic of PID.

ASSESSMENT

IUD-related menorrhagia.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Hematocrit or hemoglobin.

2. Urine pregnancy test.

3. Gonorrhea and chlamydia tests; vaginal wet mounts, if indicated.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. If hemoglobin below normal, treat according to Nurse Protocol for Iron-Deficiency Anemia.

2. Prostaglandin inhibitors/NSAIDs as needed to help reduce menstrual blood loss and for relief of pain**,** if not allergic. Begin at the onset of menses (or if the patient also has dysmenorrhea begin 24-48 hours prior to the onset) and continue for 3-4 days.

   a. Ibuprofen 400 mg PO every 4 hours or **800mg three times daily as needed** for pain or to help relieve menstrual blood loss**.** (Maximum dose **2.4** gm/day).

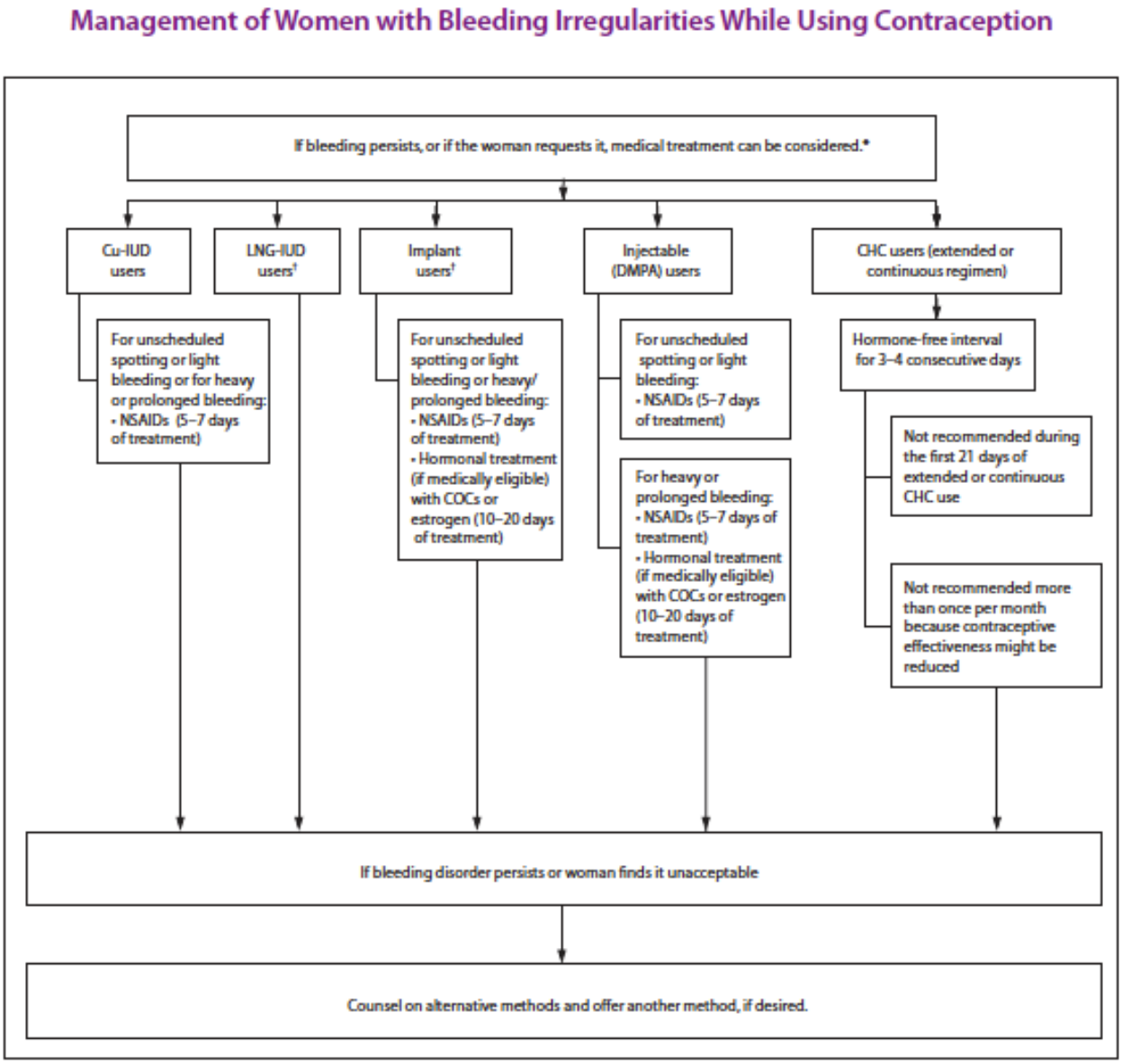
   OR

   b. Naproxen 500 mg PO for one dose, then 250 mg PO every 6-8 hours as needed for pain or to help relieve menstrual blood loss. (Maximum dose 1250mg/day)

   OR

   c. Over-the-counter-strength products (e.g., Advil, Nuprin, Aleve, Motrin IB, coated aspirin, or acetaminophen) per package directions as needed.

Table 1. Management of Women with Bleeding Irregularities, from the CDC's US Selected Practice Recommendations



Abbreviations: CHC = combined hormonal contraceptive; COC = combined oral contraceptive; Cu-IUD = copper-containing intrauterine device; DMPA = depot medroxyprogesterone acetate; LNG-IUD = levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine device; NSAIDs = nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs.
* If clinically warranted, evaluate for underlying condition. Treat the condition or refer for care.
† Heavy or prolonged bleeding, either unscheduled or menstrual, is uncommon.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Remove the IUD (by APRN or physician) for the following:

   a. Partial expulsion.

   b. Excessive menstrual blood loss.

c. Patient's request for removal of IUD for any reason.

2. Consult with APRN or physician to discuss possible need for removal if any of the following:

   a. hemoglobin has dropped 2 gm/dL or more from previous reading.

   b. hemoglobin is less than 9 gm/dL.

   c. hematocrit has dropped 6% or more over 4-6 weeks.

   d. hematocrit is less than 27%.

3. If IUD is removed, may initiate alternate contraceptive method. Hormonal contraceptives (combined oral pills, transdermal contraceptive patch, Nuvaring, DMPA) may decrease bleeding and blood loss. Also, the Levonorgestrel IUD significantly improves menorrhagia. Refer to *CDC Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use* for medical conditions that represent an unacceptable health risk for the selected contraceptive method.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Counsel patient on the importance of iron rich foods in the daily diet of menstruating women.

2. Discuss signs of possible pelvic infection and excessive bleeding.

FOLLOW-UP

Return in 4-6 weeks for evaluation of bleeding and hematocrit/ hemoglobin.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Immediately refer patient to physician if suspect ectopic pregnancy or PID that has not improved with 2-3 days of antibiotics. See Nurse STD Nurse Protocol. https://dph.georgia.gov/sites/dph.georgia.gov/files/related_files/site_page/7.0%20STD%20Nurse%20Protocol%20-%2011-18-15.pdf

2. Refer patient to physician if menorrhagia continues for 1-2 menstrual periods after pharmacologic measures started.

3. Refer patient to APRN or physician if no improvement in anemia after 4 weeks of iron supplemental therapy.

4. Refer to APRN or physician for removal.

REFERENCES

1. Robert Hatcher et al., *Contraceptive Technology,* 20th ed., Ardent Media, Inc., New York, 2011. (Current)

2. Joellen Hawkins et al., *Protocols for Nurse Practitioners in Gynecologic Settings,* 11th ed., Springer Publishing Co., New York, 2015.

3. M. Zieman, R.A. Hatcher. *Managing Contraception, 13th ed., Ardent Media Inc.,* New York, 2015

4. CDC, U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 2016, MMWR 2016; 65: 3 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6503.pdf

5. CDC, U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use, 2016. MMWR 2016; 65:4 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6504.pdf

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR BACTERIAL CYSTITIS

NOTE: Females under age 18 **can consent for sexual and reproductive health services. For this protocol, females under age 18** must be established Women's Health patients **or be accompanied by a parent or guardian who consents to treatment**.

DEFINITION Cystitis is a bladder inflammation.

ETIOLOGY Cystitis is a common lower urinary tract infection that affects the bladder and not the kidneys. Cystitis is usually caused by bacteria (generally e-coli) which travel to the bladder from the urethra. Women are more likely to develop cystitis after sexual intercourse. Bacterial cystitis may be characterized by dysuria, frequency, urgency and low-grade fever.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient provides a detailed health history (includes menstrual, sexual, contraception, personal health and family health) that may reveal factors that increase the risk for bacterial cystitis.

2. Patient may report recent history which includes the following:

   a. Frequency, burning on urination
   b. Urgency, with or without incontinence
   c. Suprapubic pain and/or tenderness

3. No symptoms of vaginal infection. If indicated, do work-up for possible vaginal infection, chlamydia and gonorrhea

4. No recent history of fever, shaking chills, unilateral flank pain, inability to urinate **n**or a sudden decrease in urine volume. No history of kidney disease.

OBJECTIVE

1. Lower abdominal tenderness on palpation.

2. **No flank pain or CVA tenderness on exam.**

3. Temperature less than 100ºF.

4. Diagnostic criterion: Dipstick urinalysis positive for either white blood cells (WBC) and/or nitrites, hematuria, abnormal urine discoloration or odor.

ASSESSMENT Bacterial cystitis

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

1. Dipstick urinalysis positive for either white blood cells (WBC) and/or nitrites, hematuria, abnormal urine discoloration or odor.

2. If diagnosis is questionable, obtain clean-catch urine for urinalysis and culture and sensitivity.

3. If abnormal vaginal discharge or discharge from the urethra, perform wet prep and tests for gonorrhea and chlamydia. For those less than 26 years old, follow guidelines for screening for STDs as these infections may be present without vaginal discharge.

4. Urine pregnancy test, if indicated.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Trimethoprim 160 mg/sulfamethoxazole 800 mg (Bactrim DS, Septra DS, Sulfatrim DS). 1 tablet PO with food, every 12 hours for 3 days.

NOTE: Do not give if patient has a history of allergy to the drug components; asthma, kidney or liver disease, folic acid deficiency states, G6-PD deficiency, or any other blood dyscrasia; is taking, warfarin (Coumadin), phenytoin (Dilantin), or methotrexate; is pregnant; or, is breastfeeding an infant less than 2 months old, or with or an elevated bilirubin. See Referral/Consultation.

OR

2. Nitrofurantoin monohydrate macrocrystals, 100mg twice daily for 5 days (with meals).

NOTE: Do not give if patient has a history of nitro-furantoin allergy, kidney or liver disease, optic neuritis, G6-PD deficiency or anemia; is taking sulfinpyrazone/Anturane, probenecid, or magnesium-containing antacids; is breastfeeding an infant less than one month old or **if infant has** G6-PD deficiency.

3. For non-curative symptomatic relief, if patient is age 12 or older, is not pregnant or breast-feeding and has no history of liver disease:

    a. Phenazopyridine Hydrochloride (Pyridium®) 200mg, 1 tablet PO 3 times a day after meals as needed for 2 days when used concomitantly with an antibacterial agent.

OR

b. Nonprescription phenazopyridine hydrochloride 95 mg (AzoStandard, Azo-Gesic, Prodium) for less than 2 days. Follow package directions.

NOTE: Do not give if patient has a history of allergy to any of the drug components. Discontinue medication immediately if any yellowish or orange discoloration of skin or eyes is noted. This medication may stain contact lenses.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

Increase fluid intake (cranberry juice might be suggested) and empty bladder frequently.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Stress the importance of completing the full course of treatment, unless serious side-effects occur.

2. Discuss common drug-specific instructions and cautions.

   a. For trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole: avoid sun exposure, discontinue drug immediately if develop a rash or signs of liver problems. Drink a full glass of water with each dose.
   b. For nitrofurantoin: discontinue drug if develop peripheral neuropathy, visual problems, diarrhea or symptoms of liver or lung problems.
   c. Phenazopyridine may cause discoloration of urine and may stain underwear. Suggest pantyliners.

3. Discuss potential risk factors for cystitis and prevention strategies.

   a. Empty bladder frequently
   b. Urinate after sex
   c. Wipe from front to back
   d. Do not douche
   e. If using vaginal spermicides, consider switching to a different contraceptive method

4. Seek medical care immediately if medication side effects or systemic symptoms develop.

5. Discuss that post-menopausal women may have increased susceptibility for cystitis because of a decrease in vaginal lactobacilli and an increased pH.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Patient should call the clinic if cystitis symptoms are not improved within 48 hours of starting therapy or if symptoms of severe systemic illness begin.

2. If no improvement in 48 hours after starting therapy or if symptoms persist after therapy is complete, either perform complete UA, culture and sensitivity and treat or refer for testing.

REFERRAL/CONSULTATION

1. Refer to physician if patient is pregnant.

2. Refer to physician if patient has any of the following:

    a. Gross hematuria in a specimen uncontaminated by menses.
    b. Systemic complaints such as temperature equal to or greater than 100°F, fast pulse, shaking chills or unilateral flank pain.
    c. Recurrent cystitis within one month, or more than 3 episodes in one year.
    d. If follow-up urinalysis reveals unexplained (non-menstrual) microhematuria without WBC or nitrite.

REFERENCES

1. Robert Hatcher et al., *Contraceptive Technology,* 20th ed., Ardent Media, Inc, New York, 2011. (Current)

2. "Cystitis – acute", *MedlinePlus*, U.S. National Library of Medicine, <www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/000526.htm> (March 27, 2017)

3. Hooton, TM. Uncomplicated Urinary Tract Infection. NEJM. 2012;366:1028-37

4. **Wolters Kluwer; *Lexicomp Online*, 2017; http://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/5245 accessed June 4, 2017**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR DYSMENORRHEA (PRIMARY)

NOTE: Females under age 18 **can consent for sexual and reproductive health services. For this protocol, females under age 18** must be established Women's Health patients **or be accompanied by a parent or guardian who consents to treatment**.

DEFINITION Primary dysmenorrhea is painful menstruation without identifiable causes.

ETIOLOGY Elevated levels of prostagladins E2 and F in the endometrium cause uterine contractions. This increases intrauterine pressure, creating uterine ischemia and spasmodic pain. The main symptom of dysmenorrhea is pain with menses that is concentrated in the abdomen, pelvic region, or lower back. Symptoms often co-occurring with menstrual pain include nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, headaches, weakness, dizziness or lightheadedness. Differential diagnosis includes: pelvic inflammatory disease, endometriosis, adenomyosis, endometrial hyperplasia, endometrial cancer, leiomyomata, ectopic pregnancy, IUD with partial expulsion.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient provides a detailed health history (includes menstrual, sexual, contraception, personal health and family history).
   Note history of: parity, menarche, method of contraception, pelvic inflammatory disease/sexually transmitted diseases, onset of symptoms/changes over time, family history of dysmenorrhea, nutritional status.

2. Patient reports cramping pain in the lower abdomen just before or during menstruation.

3. Patient may report symptoms of congestive (secondary) dysmenorrhea: irritability, depression, nervousness, exhaustion, backache, constipation, bloating, weight gain, breast tenderness, dull ache, and/or onset of symptoms prior to menses.

4. Patient may report symptoms of spasmodic dysmenorrhea: nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, weakness, dizziness, pelvic cramping, abdominal/back/thigh cramping, sweating, pallor, and/or headache.

OBJECTIVE Physical examination usually within normal limits, unless secondary factors are present.

ASSESSMENT Primary dysmenorrhea

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

As indicated: Pap smear, gonorrhea/chlamydia tests, vaginal wet mount, pregnancy test.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Over the counter analgesics – Coated aspirin, Aleve®, Motrin IB®, Nuprin®, acetaminophen (e.g., Tylenol®), per package directions prn.

OR

2. Ibuprofen 400mg to 800mg PO every 6-8 hours as needed for pain. (Maximum daily dose 3200mg/day based on patient response and tolerance)

OR

3. Naproxen 500mg PO for one dose, then 250mg PO every 6-8 hours as needed for pain. (Day 1 maximum daily dose 1250mg/day, subsequent daily dose maximum of 1000mg/day)

NOTE: Do not order NSAIDs if patient has a history of allergic reaction to aspirin. Acetaminophen per package instructions would be acceptable in this case.

4. For optimal relief, encourage starting these medicines 24-48 hours before menses begin and continue through the first two days of the cycle.

5. May initiate contraceptive method if method poses no unacceptable health risk: OC, medroxyprogesterone acetate, transdermal contraceptive patch, NuvaRing®, LNG IUD, contraceptive Implant may decrease symptoms.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Topical heat.

2. Regular exercise may be helpful.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Inform patient that primary dysmenorrhea probably does not affect fertility.

2. Assess patient's knowledge of activities that may provide relief.

3. Caution patient if taking prostaglandin inhibitors (Aleve®, Motrin Ibuprofen®, Nuprin®, aspirin).

    a. Prolonged chronic use may cause kidney problems and GI upset.
    b. Discuss that one should not simultaneously use several different NSAIDs at the same time**.**
    c. Stop medication and report severe persistent headaches, fever and muscle aches, which may be signs of aseptic meningitis.

FOLLOW-UP

Return to clinic if no relief from therapy after two menstrual cycles.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Refer to physician for differential diagnosis, as indicated.

2. Refer to physician if no relief from therapy or if patient develops severe side effects of medication.

REFERENCES

1. Robert Hatcher et al., Contraceptive Technology, 20th ed., Ardent Media, Inc., New York, 2011. (Current)

2. Joellen Hawkins, et al., *Protocols for Nurse Practitioners in Gynecologic Settings*, **11th** ed., Springer Publishing Co., New York, **2015**.

3. **Wolters Kluwer; *Lexicomp Online*, 2017; http://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/5245 >accessed June 4, 2017**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR IRON-DEFICIENCY ANEMIA IN NON-PREGNANT WOMEN

NOTE: Females under age 18 **can consent for sexual and reproductive health services. For this protocol, females under age 18** must be established Women's Health patients **or be accompanied by a parent or guardian who consents to treatment**.

DEFINITION

Anemia is a condition in which the body does not have enough healthy red blood cells. Red blood cells provide oxygen to the body. Iron deficiency anemia develops due to low iron levels.

NOTE: This protocol is to help manage the most common cause of anemia in premenopausal women but is not intended to manage the full scope of possible anemias in our patients. Attention to the guidance for consultation/referral is recommended.

ETIOLOGY

Iron-deficiency anemia, the most common type of anemia, is present in 20% of all premenopausal women in the United States. The primary cause of iron-deficiency anemia in premenopausal women is loss of blood through menstruation. In postmenopausal women, bleeding is usually from the GI tract (chronically bleeding lesions, reflux esophagitis, peptic ulcers, gastric or colorectal adenocarcinomas). Iron-deficiency anemia also commonly occurs during pregnancy. Iron-deficiency anemia can usually be corrected with iron supplementation.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient provides a detailed health history (includes menstrual, sexual, contraception, personal health and family history).

2. Patient may be asymptomatic if anemia is mild.

3. Patient may report history which includes the following:

   a. Pallor, fatigue**,** malaise, and/or anorexia
   b. History of GI bleeding
   c. Changes in stool color or bleeding from hemorrhoids
   d. Excessive blood loss during menses or history of fibroid tumors
   e. Poor dietary intake of iron rich foods and pica
   f. History of drug/medication use, especially aspirin and other **NSAIDs**
   g. Nonspecific complaints of headache, poor concentration, and/or palpitations
   h. Uncomfortable tingling or crawling feeling in the legs (restless leg syndrome)
   i. Frequent blood donations

4. With severe anemia, the patient may also present with:

a. Weakness and faintness
b. Increased heart rate
c. Shortness of breath
d. Dizziness or lightheadedness
e. Symptoms of heart failure
f. Confusion and dementia
g. Nausea and loss of appetite
h. Headaches
i. Bleeding gums
j. Sore tongue

5. No history of major hemoglobinopathies (e.g., sickle cell anemia, sickle C disease, sickle beta thalassemia, hemoglobin c disease).

OBJECTIVE

1. Patient may have the following:

   a. Pallor, best seen in conjunctivae.
   b. Atrophy of the surface or edges of the tongue.
   c. Inflammation/cracking of the lips.
   d. Spoon nails (thin and concave from side to side).
   e. Tachycardia, flow murmur.

ASSESSMENT

Symptoms of anemia. Anemia in pre-menopausal women is most commonly iron deficiency, and may be due to increased loss with menses, low iron consumption and depleted stores from pregnancies.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Hemoglobin below 11.8 gm/dL for non-pregnant women.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Treatment of (presumed) iron deficiency anemia:

   a. Ferrous Sulfate 325mg (contains 65mg of elemental iron) PO **twice daily**

   OR

   b. Ferrous fumarate 325mg (contains 106mg of elemental iron) PO daily or **twice daily**. Ferrous fumarate has more elemental iron in it than ferrous sulfate**.**

   NOTE: There are extended release products on the market and they are intended for once daily use. To avoid GI upset, start with a single daily dose and increase by 1 tablet per day

each week or as tolerated until desired daily dose is achieved**.** Do not give if patient has sickle cell or hemoglobin variants.

2. Efforts should be directed towards treatment of the underlying reason for the anemia (ex. menorrhagia, low consumption, etc.)

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. For best absorption, take iron supplements on an empty stomach. If the iron upsets the stomach, take iron with a small amount of food but not with dairy products, **antacids, eggs, whole grain breads,** coffee or tea. Foods that may decrease absorption include dietary fiber, soy products, spinach, and eggs. Foods that enhance dietary absorption of iron include broccoli, grapefruit, orange juice, peppers and strawberries.

2. Introduce iron gradually to minimize stomach upset. Take one tablet once a day x 1 week and then increase to twice daily if needed.

3. Beverages consumed with meals or supplements have a dramatic effect on iron absorption.

    a. Vitamin C (Orange juice, **approximately** 1 cup) doubles the absorption of iron.
    b. Tea, coffee or milk can reduce absorption to less than one half and should be consumed in moderation between meals or supplements.

4. Antacids, tetracycline, cimetidine, pancrelipase and proton pump inhibitors interfere with iron absorption. Do not take iron within 3 hours of taking these medications. Iron affects other medications and a pharmacist or health care provider should be consulted before starting another medication.

5. Iron supplements may cause black or dark green bowel movements, diarrhea, or constipation.

6. Counsel patient on other common side effects of iron therapy.

7. Too much iron is dangerous. Iron tablets may look like candy and a package of iron tablets can poison a child. Keep iron supplements out of the reach of children.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Recheck hemoglobin at the end of 4-6 weeks of initial treatment.

    a. If the hemoglobin has increased by 1 gm/dL or more, continue treatment for 2-3 months to replenish iron stores, then recheck hemoglobin.

    b. If the hemoglobin is not increased at least 1 gm/dL, assess for compliance with therapy, diet, enteric parasites and other possible anemia-causing conditions.

    c. **In situations when the hemoglobin has not increased and the patient has not been compliant with the medicine, the provider should explore reasons (constipation, upset stomach, forgot, etc.) and work collaboratively with the patient to suggest a solution that will work for her. Recheck hemoglobin in 4-6 weeks.**

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Refer to physician if hemoglobin less than 9 gm/dL.

2. If after 4-6 weeks the hemoglobin does not increase at least 1 gm/dL, despite compliance with iron supplementation regimen and the absence of acute illness, refer to physician.

3. Refer any patient with sickle cell anemia or other hemoglobin variants to physician.

4. Refer patient to physician if there is evidence of other medical problems, including concerns for GI bleeding (black or tarry stools, patient history with symptoms of reflux or ulcer).

5. Refer any woman at risk for endometrial pathology (ex. 35 years old or older with abnormal bleeding, chronic anovulation, Tamoxifen therapy) to MD for evaluation for possible endometrial sampling.

6. All post-menopausal women with anemia should be referred to physician for evaluation.

REFERENCES

1. CDC, "*Recommendations to Prevent and Control Iron Deficiency in the United States,"* MMWR, Vol. 47, No. RR-3, April 3, 1998. (Current)

2. Mayo Clinic, "Iron Deficiency Anemia," <http://mayoclinic.com/health/iron-deficiency-anemia/DS00323> (March 27, 2017)

3. US Preventive Services Task Force, Clinical Screening Guidelines. < http://www.ahrq.gov/professionals/clinicians-providers/guidelines-recommendations/guide/index.html> (March 27, 2017)

4. Wolters Kluwer; *Lexicomp Online*, 2017; http://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/5245 >accessed June 4, 2017

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SCREENING MAMMOGRAPHY

DEFINITION A mammogram is an x-ray image of the breast.

ETIOLOGY Mammography may detect cancer up to three years before a breast mass is palpable. It is the only method of screening for breast cancer proven to decrease mortality. The goal of performing screening mammograms is the early detection of breast cancer, resulting in reduced morbidity and mortality. Various well-respected professional organizations have differing recommendations as to what age to initiate and how often to conduct the screenings. The American Cancer Society recommends annual breast cancer screening by mammography beginning at age 40, continuing as long as the woman is in good health. Kaiser Permanente Care Management Institute recommends screening mammograms be performed everyone to two years in women age 40 and above.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Obtain health history, including family history of cancers.
2. Reports no breast symptoms requiring diagnostic evaluation.
3. Age 40 or older**.**

OBJECTIVE Perform California Method clinical breast exam

ASSESSMENT Clinical breast exam normal

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

None.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Annual or biennial screening mammogram for women ages 40-49. Women at increased risk for breast cancer should be screened annually.
2. Annual screening mammogram for women age 50 and older (annual as defined by the CDC is every 12-18 months).

NOTE: It is important to ascertain where and when any prior mammograms or breast ultrasounds were done so that appropriate comparison exams are available to the interpreting radiologist.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. No lotions, deodorants, perfumes or powders should be used on breasts or under arms prior to mammogram. This may cause shadows to appear in the imaging.

2. Educate regarding current screening mammogram recommendations.

3. Any unusual breast changes (i.e., mass, skin changes, nipple discharge, and severe pain) that a patient discovers in the future should be evaluated by a clinician as soon as possible.

FOLLOW-UP:

1. If screening mammogram report is incomplete or abnormal, follow radiologist's recommendation for diagnostic mammography or breast ultrasound. Refer to Ordering Diagnostic Mammograms and Breast Ultrasound nurse protocol.

2. Notify patient of screening mammogram results and document in medical record.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Refer to MD as needed for abnormal screening mammogram result.

2. Refer to GA DPH BCCP manual for reimbursement guidelines if screening mammogram is to be funded by **BCCP** program.

REFERENCES

1. Georgia Department of Public Health BCCP Manual, **July 2015**

2. American College of Radiology ACR Appropriateness of Criteria. https://acsearch.acr.org/list. **Last review date: 2016**

3. Women'shealth.gov. http://womenshealth.gov/publications/our-publications/fact-sheet/mammograms.html#j Content last updated: **January 4, 2017**. (**March 28, 2017**)

4. What Is a Mammogram and When Should I Get One? http://www.cdc.gov/cancer/breast/basic_info/mammograms.htm Content last updated **April 4, 2016**. **(March 28, 2017)**

5. American Cancer Society Guidelines for the Early Detection of Cancer, 5/3/2014

6. Kaiser Permanente Care Management Institute (KPCMI). Breast cancer screening clinical practice guideline. Oakland (CA): Kaiser Permanente Care Management Institute; 2010 Aug. 142 p. (Current)

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR ORDERING DIAGNOSTIC MAMMOGRAMS AND BREAST ULTRASOUNDS

DEFINITION

Breast diagnostic procedures may be requested to further evaluate an abnormal finding of the breast, enabling diagnosis. The diagnostic tests that the public health nurse may be asked to order include diagnostic mammogram and/or breast ultrasound. A diagnostic mammogram may include supplemental views and/or spot compressions and is performed under the immediate supervision of the radiologist.

A breast ultrasound uses sound waves to make pictures of the tissues inside the breast and can show all areas of the breast including the area closet to the chest wall, which is hard to study with a mammogram. A breast ultrasound determines whether an area of concern is solid, fluid-filled or a combination of both.

ETIOLOGY

A diagnostic mammogram is appropriate to further assess findings such as a palpable breast mass, persistent focal breast pain, clear (but not necessarily colorless) or bloody nipple discharge and/or skin changes. It is often requested by the radiologist when a screening mammogram requires further investigation. A diagnostic mammogram is also ordered for short-term follow-up of a probable benign finding indicated by a previous BIRADS 3 mammogram interpretation.

Breast ultrasounds evaluate palpable masses and areas of concern discovered on mammograms. In the woman under 30 years of age, initially, an ultrasound alone is often preferred to evaluate a breast mass due to the increased breast density in this population**.**

SUBJECTIVE

1**.** Obtain health history, including family history of cancers.

2. May report unilateral persistent focal pain not associated with menstrual cycle.

3. May report breast mass or skin changes of breast.

4. May have no outward symptoms (if diagnostic testing is requested for further evaluation of incomplete or abnormal screening breast imaging).

OBJECTIVE

Perform California Method clinical breast exam.

ASSESSMENT

Document condition requiring diagnostic mammogram and/or breast ultrasound (i.e., breast mass, skin changes, BIRADS 0 mammogram report, BIRADS 3-short-term follow-up, unilateral focal breast pain**)**

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

None.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Follow BCCP New Palpable Breast Mass algorithm included in this protocol.

2. Order as appropriate (indicate right or left breast if unilateral procedure):

    a. Unilateral or bilateral diagnostic mammogram.
    b. Unilateral or bilateral breast ultrasound.

3. If not already enrolled, enroll patient in BCCP if patient is eligible and funding is available.

NOTE: It is important to ascertain where and when any prior mammograms or breast ultrasounds were done so that appropriate comparison exams are available to the interpreting radiologist.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. No lotions, deodorants, perfumes or powders should be used on breasts or under arms prior to mammogram. This may cause shadows to appear in the imaging.

2. Educate regarding current screening mammogram recommendations.

3. Any unusual breast changes (i.e., mass, skin changes, nipple discharge, and severe pain) that a patient discovers in the future should be evaluated by a clinical breast exam as soon as possible.

FOLLOW-UP:

1. For a newly diagnosed breast mass, follow BCCP New Palpable Breast Mass algorithm included in this protocol.

2. If a breast mass is discovered during the premenstrual time of a woman's menstrual cycle have her return for a recheck of her breast during the week following the end of her menses. If the mass remains present, proceed with diagnostic testing.

3. Continue to follow-up until condition proves benign. If malignancy is identified, follow-up until patient is under oncologic care.

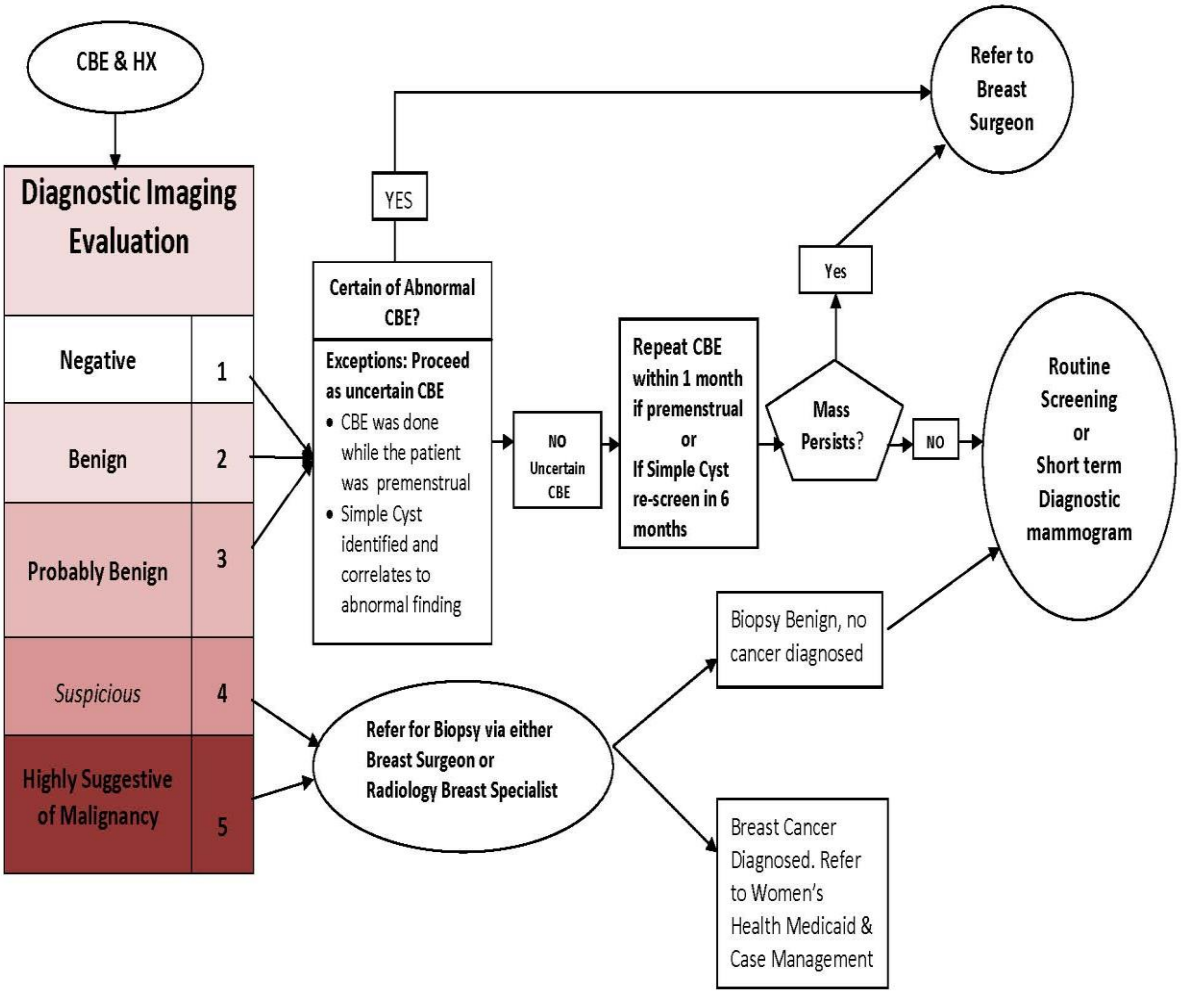
CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Refer to surgeon for evaluation of abnormal clinical findings and further management.

2. Refer women who have bilateral nipple discharge with no evidence of a breast mass to MD for evaluation. The nipple discharge may be due to an underlying medical condition not related to an abnormality of the breast specifically.

3. For unilateral spontaneous nipple discharge refer to the Spontaneous Unilateral Nipple Discharge (Non-Lactating) nurse protocol.

NEW PALPABLE BREAST MASS



REFERENCES

1. Georgia Department of Public Health BCCP Manual, **July 2015**

2. American College of Radiology Practice Parameter for the Performance of Screening and Diagnostic Mammography Amended 2014 (Resolution 39) http://www.acr.org/~/media/3484ca30845348359bad4684779d492d.pdf (October 9, 2014)

3. Women's health.gov. http://womenshealth.gov/publications/our-publications/fact-sheet/mammograms.html#j Content last updated: **January 4, 2017**. (**March 28, 2017**).

4. American College of Radiology Practice Parameter for the Performance of Breast Ultrasound Examination Amended 2014 (Resolution 39) http://www.acr.org/~/media/52d58307e93e45898b09d4c4d407dd76.pdf **(Revised 2016)**

5. T Richards, A Hunt, S Courtney, and H Umeh Nipple Discharge: A Sign of Breast Cancer? Ann R Coll Surg Engl. Mar 2007; 89(2): 124–126. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC1964556/ (October 9, 2014)

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SPONTANEOUS UNILATERAL NIPPLE DISCHARGE (NON-LACTATING)

DEFINITION Spontaneous unilateral nipple discharge is the presence of discharge flowing from the nipple that does not require manipulation of the nipple to visualize the discharge. Spontaneous leaking from the nipple should be absent within 6 months after cessation of breastfeeding.

ETIOLOGY Many conditions may cause spontaneous nipple discharge; most of these conditions are benign. These benign conditions include: intraductal papilloma, mammary duct ectasia, fibrocystic changes, endocrine disorders and infection/abscesses. The most common cause for bloody nipple discharge in the absence of a breast mass is intraductal papilloma. Less than 10% of nipple discharge is associated with breast cancer.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Obtain health history, including family history of cancers.
2. Reports discharge from one nipple that flows spontaneously. Discharge may be described as a single or variety of colors (i.e., white, clear, yellow, green or bloody).
3. Denies known breast mass.

OBJECTIVE Perform California Method clinical breast exam.

ASSESSMENT Spontaneous unilateral nipple discharge observed

OR

Spontaneous unilateral nipple discharge reported

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. **Order bilateral diagnostic mammogram and ultrasound of the breast with discharge.**
2. **Order TSH and Prolactin.**

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

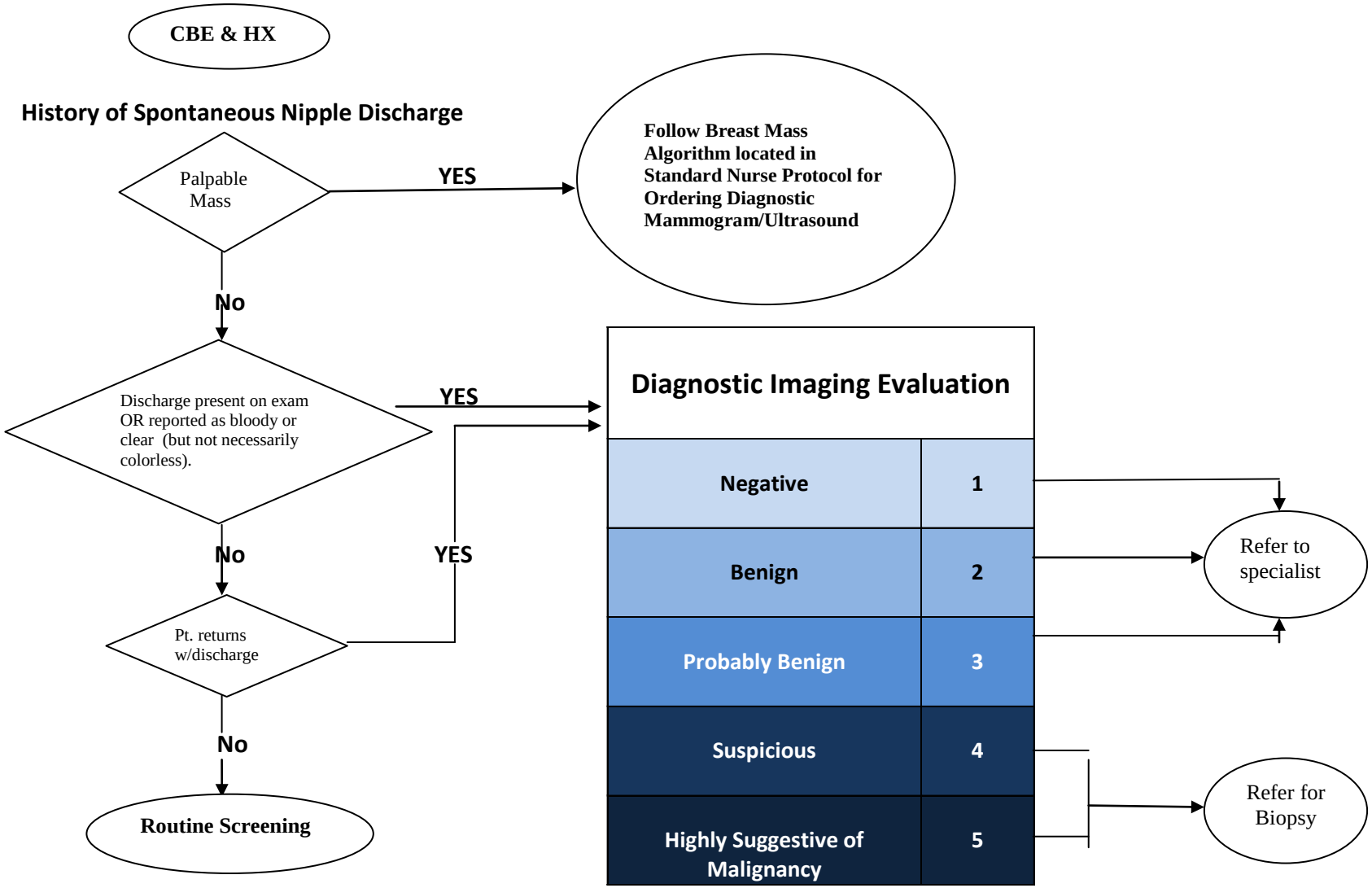
None.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Follow recommendation from the Spontaneous Unilateral Nipple

Discharge (Non-Lactating) algorithm included in this protocol.

Spontaneous Unilateral Nipple Discharge (Non-Lactating)



PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Inform patient that less than 10% of nipple discharge is due to breast cancer but further diagnostic testing is warranted to rule out breast cancer.

2. No lotions, deodorants, perfumes or powders should be used on breasts or under arms prior to mammogram. This may cause shadows to appear in the imaging.

3. It is important to ascertain where and when any prior mammograms or breast ultrasounds were done so that appropriate comparison exams are available to the interpreting radiologist.

4. Educate regarding current screening mammogram recommendations.

5. Any unusual breast changes (i.e., mass, skin changes, nipple discharge, severe pain) that a patient discovers in the future should be evaluated by a clinical breast exam as soon as possible.

FOLLOW-UP:

1. If no discharge is present, follow routine recommendation for breast cancer screening.

2. Instruct the patient not to express discharge from her nipples. Explain that expressing discharge tend**s** to increase the amount of discharge.

3. If no unilateral discharge is noted upon exam and reported discharge is non-bloody, have patient return to clinic for exam if/when unilateral discharge returns.

4. Continue to follow-up until condition proves benign. If malignancy is identified, follow-up until patient is under oncologic care.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Refer to surgeon for evaluation after mammogram results are received.

2. Radiologists' requests for galactogram to be reimbursed by BCCP must be pre-approved by a nurse consultant at the state office. A galactogram is not indicated unless the nipple discharge is spontaneous, unilateral, and expressed from a single pore.

3. All breast masses suspicious for cancer must be referred to surgeon for evaluation after thorough imaging, evaluation and minimally invasive biopsy if indicated.

REFERENCES

1. http://www.merckmanuals.com/professional/gynecology_and_obstetrics/breast_disorders/nipple_discharge.html Last full review/revision September 2013 by Mary Ann Kosir, MD; Content last revised **May 2016.**

2. Georgia Department of Public Health BCCP Manual, **July 2015.**

3. Edward Azavedo, MD, PhD, John M Lewin, MD, Bernard D Coombs, MB, ChB, PhD http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/347305-overview#a01 Breast Imaging in Nipple Discharge Evaluation, Sep 4, 2013. Content last revised **October 9, 2015**

4. Women'shealth.gov., http://womenshealth.gov/publications/our-publications/fact-sheet/mammograms.html#j Content last updated: **January 4, 2017.**

5. ALEXANDER K.C. LEUNG, M.B.B.S. and DANIELE PACAUD, M.D., Diagnosis and Management of Galactorrhea Am Fam Physician. 2004 Aug 1;70(3):543-550.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR LACTATIONAL MASTITIS

DEFINITION Mastitis is an inflammation of the breast. This is a common occurrence in lactating women with 3-20% being impacted. It is more common in the first 6 weeks postpartum but can occur any time while lactating.

ETIOLOGY Inflammation of the breast may or may not involve a bacterial infection. There may be a continuum from breast engorgement to non-infective mastitis to infective mastitis to breast abscess. These symptoms may occur with areas of breast engorgement or blockage because bacteria gain access to static milk via the nipple. Breast engorgement is different than mastitis in that engorgement is generally diffuse and bilateral. A plugged milk duct may cause a palpable tender mass. It is different from mastitis in that **a plugged duct generally does not have systemic symptoms**. An abscess is a severe outcome of mastitis and has the signs and symptoms of mastitis with the presence of a tender, fluctuant mass. When infective mastitis occurs, the most common bacterial cause is *S. aureus.*

SUBJECTIVE

1. Obtain health history, including family history of cancers.
2. **Patient** may report breast pain, redness, fever, chills, muscle aches and flu-like symptoms.
3. Denies known breast mass.

OBJECTIVE Perform clinical breast exam noting skin changes, masses **and/or any other signs and findings consistent with mastitis.**

ASSESSMENT Symptoms and signs of lactational mastitis without underlying mass or signs of mass or abscess.

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Dicloxacillin 500mg PO every six hours for 7 to 14 days. **Take 1 hour before or 2 hours after meals with at least 120mL of water. Do not take lying down or immediately before going to bed.**

OR

2. **Cephalexin 500mg PO four times daily for 7 to 14 days**

OR

3. May use Clindamycin 300**mg** to 450mg PO three times daily x 7 to 14 days for penicillin allergy.

4. Prostaglandin inhibitors/**NSAIDs** may be taken for pain and fever if patient is not allergic, such as**:**

    a. Ibuprofen 200mg every 4 to 6 hours as needed **for pain x 10 days or fever x 3 days**. If no relief, may increase to 400mg every 4 to 6 hours as needed. (Maximum: 1,200 mg/day),

    OR

    b. Naproxen 500mg PO for one dose then, 250mg PO every 6-8 hours as needed for pain or fever. (Maximum daily dose **for** Day 1 **is** 1,250mg; subsequent daily doses should not exceed 1,000mg).

    NOTE: Naproxen that is available OTC is 220mg each.

    OR

    c. Acetaminophen 650mg PO every 4 to 6 hours as needed for pain of fever. (maximum daily dose: 3250mg/day)

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Cold compresses or ice packs can help to reduce breast pain and swelling.

2. Women should be encouraged to completely empty the breast by continuing to breastfeed, pump or express milk by hand. It is safe to breastfeed while undergoing treatment.

3. A plugged mild duct does not required antibiotics for treatment. Women should follow instructions below and consider applying heat to the breast prior to feeding.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Mothers should be encouraged to breastfeed more frequently starting on the affected breast.

2. If pain interferes with the let-down, feeding may begin on the unaffected breast, switching to the affected breast as soon as let-down is achieved.

3. Positioning the infant at the breast with the chin or nose pointing to

the blockage will help drain the affected area.

4. Massaging the breast during the feed**ing** with an edible oil or nontoxic lubricant on the fingers may also be helpful to facilitate milk removal. Massage should be directed from the blocked area moving toward the nipple.

5. After the feeding, expressing milk by hand or pump may augment milk drainage and hasten resolution of the problem.

FOLLOW-UP:

1. Clinical response is generally rapid and dramatic.

2. If there is not improvement in 48 hours, the patient should be referred to MD for evaluation and/or consideration of breast ultrasound or culture of breast milk.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Refer to MD if a breast mass concerning for abscess or malignancy is present on exam.

2. If patient is severely ill or cannot tolerate PO medications, refer to MD or to ER.

REFERENCES:

1. Academy of Breastfeeding Medicine Clinical Protocol #4: Mastitis, Revised March, 2014 http://www.bfmed.org/Media/Files/Protocols/2014_Updated_Mastitis6.30.14.pdf

2. **Wolters Kluwer; *Lexicomp Online*, 2017; http://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/5245 >accessed June 4, 2017**

3. **Wolters Kluwer; *Lexicomp Online*, 2017; http://online.lexi.com.ezproxy.pcom.edu:2048/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/6735?hl=6020 >accessed August 11, 2017.**

STANDARD WOMEN'S HEALTH APRN PROTOCOLS

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

STANDARD APRN PROTOCOL FOR AMENORRHEA

DEFINITION

Amenorrhea is defined as the absence of menses. Primary amenorrhea is defined as no menstrual period by the age of 15, lack of any secondary sexual characteristics by age 13 or no menses within 5 years after the development of breasts, pubic or axillary hair.

Secondary amenorrhea is defined as absence of menstrual periods for greater than 3 months in a woman who was previously menstruating.

ETIOLOGY

1. Primary:

    a. Gonadal failure.
    b. Congenital absence of uterus and vagina.
    c. Constitutional delay.

2. Secondary:

    a. Pregnancy; breastfeeding.
    b. Pituitary disease or tumor; disruption of hypothalamic-pituitary axis.
    c. Menopause.
    d. Too little body fat (about 22% required for menses).
    e. Excessive exercise (e.g., long-distance running, ballet dancing, gymnastics, figure skating, etc.).
    f. Rapid weight loss.
    g. Cessation of menstruation following use of **CHC** or **DMPA**.
    h. Recent change in lifestyle (e.g., increased stress).
    i. Thyroid disease.
    j. Polycystic ovary disease.
    k. Anorexia nervosa or other eating disorders.
    l. Premature ovarian **i**nsufficiency, ovarian dysgenesis, infection, hemorrhage, necrosis, neoplasm.
    m. Cushing Disease
    n. Asherman's Syndrome.
    o. Cervical stenosis.
    p. Medications including psychotropics.
    q. Chronic illness.
    r. Tuberculosis.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient provides a detailed health history (includes menstrual, sexual, contraception, personal health and family history).

2. Patient reports absence of menses (as defined above).

3. Patient may have a history which includes the following**:**

a. Changes in skin/hair, vision/hearing or voice
b. Palpitations
c. Breast size changes or galactorrhea
d. Vasomotor symptoms
e. Changes in weight, dietary habits
f. Cold or heat intolerance
g. Known medical problems
h. Stress
i. Exercise patterns (changes or rigorous)
j. Recent pregnancy, risk for pregnancy
k. Genital tract procedures

OBJECTIVE

1. May be obese or underweight for height.

2. May note on physical examination:

   a. Skin/hair changes – dry skin or warm, moist skin, excessive sweating, palmar erythema, acne, hirsutism, balding**,** purple abdominal striae, absence of pubic or axillary hair.
   b. Facial plethora, moon facies, exophthalmos, ocular signs, visual fields defect, impaired auditory acuity, abnormal thyroid size and consistency, fine silky scalp hair or alopecia pattern.
   c. Tachycardia.
   d. Breast tissue atrophy, galactorrhea.
   e. "Buffalo" hump of back.
   f. On pelvic exam:
      1) External – Vulvar atrophy, clitoromegaly.
      2) Internal – Atrophic vaginal mucosa, change in cervical mucous or imperforate hymen.
      3) Bimanual – Softening of cervix or cervical uterine junction, cervical stenosis, uterine or ovarian atrophy or enlargement.

ASSESSMENT

Primary amenorrhea **or** Secondary amenorrhea with or without galactorrhea.

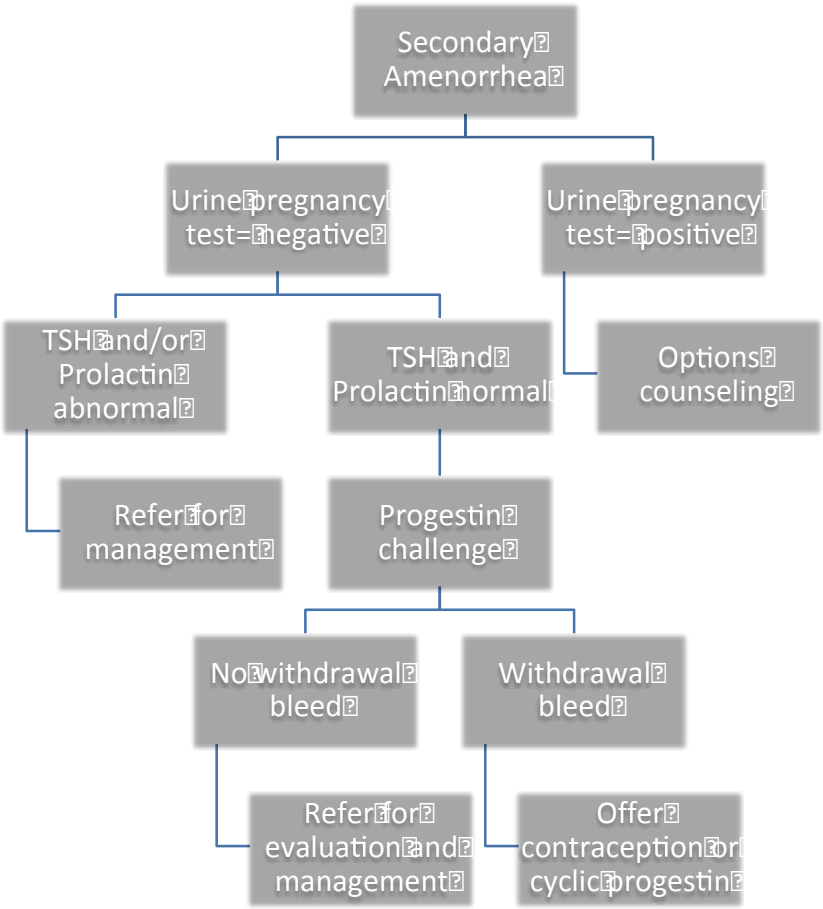
PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Pregnancy test for either primary or secondary amenorrhea.

2. For primary amenorrhea, refer these patients for further evaluation.

3. For secondary amenorrhea, consider TSH and prolactin followed by a progestin challenge test as suggested in Table below. Clinicians may also refer these patients for further evaluation.



THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Hazardous agent; use appropriate precautions for handling and disposal which can be found at:
https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html

1. Progestin challenge test: Medroxyprogesterone Acetate 5mg-10mg (1 tab) PO daily for 5-10 days.

   If bleeding occurs with progestin challenge test (usually within 2-7 days)

   AND

   a. Patient desires contraception, begin any desired contraceptive for which she meets the *CDC Medical Eligibility Criteria.* If she desires cyclic menses, encourage a combined hormonal contraceptive (pill, patch or ring). (See Appendix A)

OR

b. Patient does not desire contraception, give medroxyprogesterone acetate, 10 mg PO daily for the first 10 days of every month for 3 consecutive months. If she does not have spontaneous menses thereafter, refer.

2. If no bleeding occurs with progestin challenge test, repeat pregnancy test. If negative, refer patient for management and/or further evaluation.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Give menstrual calendar and counsel on its use.

2. Inform that bleeding usually occurs within 2 weeks after treatment (frequently 2-7 days).

3. Discuss what can be expected during future evaluation. Explain that accurate diagnosis may take time.

4. Review female anatomy and menstrual cycle to help her understand the testing being done.

5. Discuss contraception, as indicated.

FOLLOW-UP

Return in two weeks if no withdrawal bleeding has occurred after medroxyprogesterone acetate.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. If patient has primary amenorrhea.

2. Positive pregnancy test, perform options counseling and refer as indicated.

3. If patient does not have a withdrawal bleed after progestin challenge test and negative pregnancy test, refer for further evaluation.

4. Patient fails to have spontaneous menses within 3 months after treatment.

5. Suspected eating disorders, or polycystic ovarian syndrome.

6. If patient has abnormal **symptoms,** laboratory test(s), **or exam findings.**

7. Patient has neurological symptoms such as headache or abnormal neurological exam.

8. May refer for diagnostic testing (i.e., prolactin level, TSH, FSH, LH).

REFERENCES

1. Joellen Hawkins et al., *Protocols for Nurse Practitioners in Gynecological Settings,* **11th** ed., Springer Publishing Co., New York, **2015.**

2. Master-Hunter and Hieman. Amenorrhea: Evaluation and Treatment. American Family Physicians. April 15, 2006, Volume 73, Number 8, Pg 1374-1382.

3. **Wolters Kluwer; *Lexicomp Online*, 2017; http://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/5245 >accessed June 4, 2017**

STANDARD APRN PROTOCOL FOR CONTRACEPTIVE IMPLANT INSERTION

NOTE: All clinicians performing insertions and/or removals of the contraceptive implant must complete the manufacturer's (Merck) Clinical Training Program, a required comprehensive hands-on workshop. Only clinicians who complete the program will be able to order the product. You must be an advanced practice clinician or a physician in order to attend the required training. For those who completed training for Implanon, a web-based training can be completed for certification in Nexplanon placement. For those who have never been certified to place the contraceptive implant, in-person training is required. The training is free and can be arranged by calling 1-877-467-5266.

DEFINITION Nexplanon® is a small, thin, implantable hormonal contraceptive that is effective for up at least three years. The product has FDA approval for three years, but evidence indicates that the contraceptive effect is present for four years and longer. The subdermal contraceptive implant is an etonogestrel-impregnated 4cm plastic rod. It is placed under the skin of the upper arm. It does not contain estrogen. It prevents pregnancy primarily by inhibiting ovulation. Other contraceptive effects include thickening cervical mucus and thinning the endometrial lining. Nexplanon® is identical to its predecessor, Implanon®, except that it is radio-opaque and the inserter has been changed**.**

SUBJECTIVE

1. Desires an implant for long-term contraception.

2. Has detailed health history (includes menstrual, sexual, contraception, personal health and family history) that does not reveal a condition representing an unacceptable health risk according to the product prescribing information and to the CDC *Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use*.

3. If breastfeeding, she may initiate immediately. However, there is minimal likelihood of ovulating before one month postpartum in a woman who is breastfeeding.

4. Refer to CDC *Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use* for medical conditions that represent an unacceptable health risk for using the contraceptive implant. Medical conditions include:

   a. Lupus with positive (or unknown) antiphospholipid antibodies
   b. Breast cancer
   c. Cirrhosis – severe (decompensated)
   d. Liver Tumors – benign hepatocellular adenoma; malignant (hepatoma)
   e. Unexplained vaginal bleeding, suspicious for serious underlying condition, before evaluation.

5. Refer to CDC *Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use* for medical conditions that represent an unacceptable health risk if *they develop while using* the contraceptive implant. Women with these conditions may initiate the implant. However, if women who did not have these conditions at the time of initiation develop these conditions after using the implant, the implant should not be continued. Medical conditions include:

    a. Ischemic heart disease
    b. Stroke

6. May report estrogen-excess side effects while taking combined hormonal contraceptives, such as headaches, breast tenderness, weight gain, nausea and thus prefer a method that does not contain estrogen.

OBJECTIVE

1. Physical examination and laboratory tests as indicated. See protocol for Preventive Care and Health Screening.

2. Timing of insertion of implant; see Initiation of Contraceptives Protocol.

ASSESSMENT

Patient has no condition representing an unacceptable risk if using the contraceptive implant. No allergy to any component of the implant.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

Pregnancy test if indicated to rule out pregnancy.

THERAPEUTIC

1. Initiation

    a. If a provider can be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant, implant may be initiated that day with back up x 7 days.

    b. In situations where a provider cannot be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant the benefits of initiating the implant outweigh the risks and contraception can be initiated immediately.
        1) Starting the implant the day of the clinic visit can be easier for patients and can increase access Hormonal contraception will not prevent a pregnancy from sex that has already occurred.

2) Most studies have shown no increased risk for adverse outcomes (congenital anomalies, neonatal or infant death) in infants exposed to contraception.
3) The likelihood of pregnancy in previous studies of immediate initiation in situations like these was 3%.
4) If patient wants to have implant inserted that day, insert implant. Encourage condoms or abstinence for 7 days. Repeat UCG in 14-28 days (this can be done by home pregnancy test if the patient desires).
5) If patient declines initiation of the implant on that day of clinic visit, have her return on the first day of her next menstrual cycle for placement.
6) **If she has had unprotected sex in the last 120 hours, offer EC (ECPs or Paragard IUD). See Emergency Contraceptive Pills Protocol.**

2. Switching from other methods

   a. For patients with an IUD, it may be reasonable to insert the implant when the appointment for IUD removal is made.

   b. When switching from a hormonal method that works primarily by inhibiting ovulation, insert the implant immediately after stopping the other method with no breaks. **If she has been using a contraceptive injection, the implant may be initiated any time within the window of contraceptive coverage. Back up x 7 days.**

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Hazardous agent; use appropriate precautions for handling and disposal which can be found at: https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html

1. Local anesthesia with 3 mL of 1% lidocaine **(**should be injected under the skin and along the insertion track).

2. Insert the contraceptive implant per manufacturer's directions. Before insertion, the patient must read and sign the program's method specific consent form.

   a. The implant should be palpated by both the clinician and patient before patient goes home to ensure proper placement.

3. The provider should fill out the Contraceptive Implant Placement procedure note as indicated.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Take precautions to avert a vasovagal reaction (syncope/ fainting). Allow the patient to lie still several minutes after insertion. Ask about pain or feeling faint. If the patient says she feels like she can sit up, have her sit up slowly while being supported. If no problems in 1-2 minutes, allow her to stand.

2. Treat signs of vasovagal reaction (pallor/cyanosis, pinched-face look, dilated pupils, weak and rapid pulse, rapid shallow breathing, hypotension) according to the Emergency Guidelines**,** Policies and Procedures Nurse Protocol.

3. Ice to insertion area for discomfort.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Counsel patient according to seven basic elements of informed consent (BRAIDED – Benefits Risks Alternatives Inquiries Decision Explanation Documentation).

2. The User Card from the product package should be filled out and given to the patient after the contraceptive implant insertion so she will have a record of the location of implant and when it should be removed.

3. Review warning signs and symptoms of possible insertion site problems: redness, swelling, or purulent discharge at insertion site. Encourage patient to keep insertion site bandaged for the next 3-5 days.

4. Counsel patient on common side effects: menstrual changes or bleeding irregularities (spotting, light bleeding, prolonged bleeding or no bleeding), emotional lability, weight gain, headache, acne, depression.

5. Further counsel patient regarding unpredictable bleeding irregularities, so that she knows what to expect. Women who use the contraceptive implant are likely to have changes in their vaginal bleeding patterns, especially during the first three months of use, which are often unpredictable. These may include changes in bleeding frequency or duration, or amenorrhea. Amenorrhea and oligomenorrhea are common.

6. Take over-the-counter ibuprofen or acetaminophen and/or apply ice to insertion area for discomfort.

7. If inserted more than 5 days from LMP and patient not currently on hormonal contraception, recommend back-up or abstinence for 7 days.

8. Provide counseling on preconception health counseling and future fertility. (Refer to Preconception Health Toolkit). **http://www.fpm.emory.edu/preventive/research/projects/**

9. Use condoms to reduce the risk of STD, including HIV.

10. Counsel patient to discuss all medications and herbal supplements with clinician because they can alter the metabolism of hormonal contraception and cause side effects, and/or decrease effectiveness.

11. The contraceptive implant is approved for use for 3 years. However, clinical data demonstrates its effectiveness for 5 years, and maybe longer. This information can be used when counseling women at the time of initiation as well as at the end of the FDA approval window. If the patient is satisfied with the method at the end of the FDA approval window and would like to continue using it, evidence indicates that it still provides contraception as noted above. If she would like to have it removed, this should be honored.

FOLLOW-UP

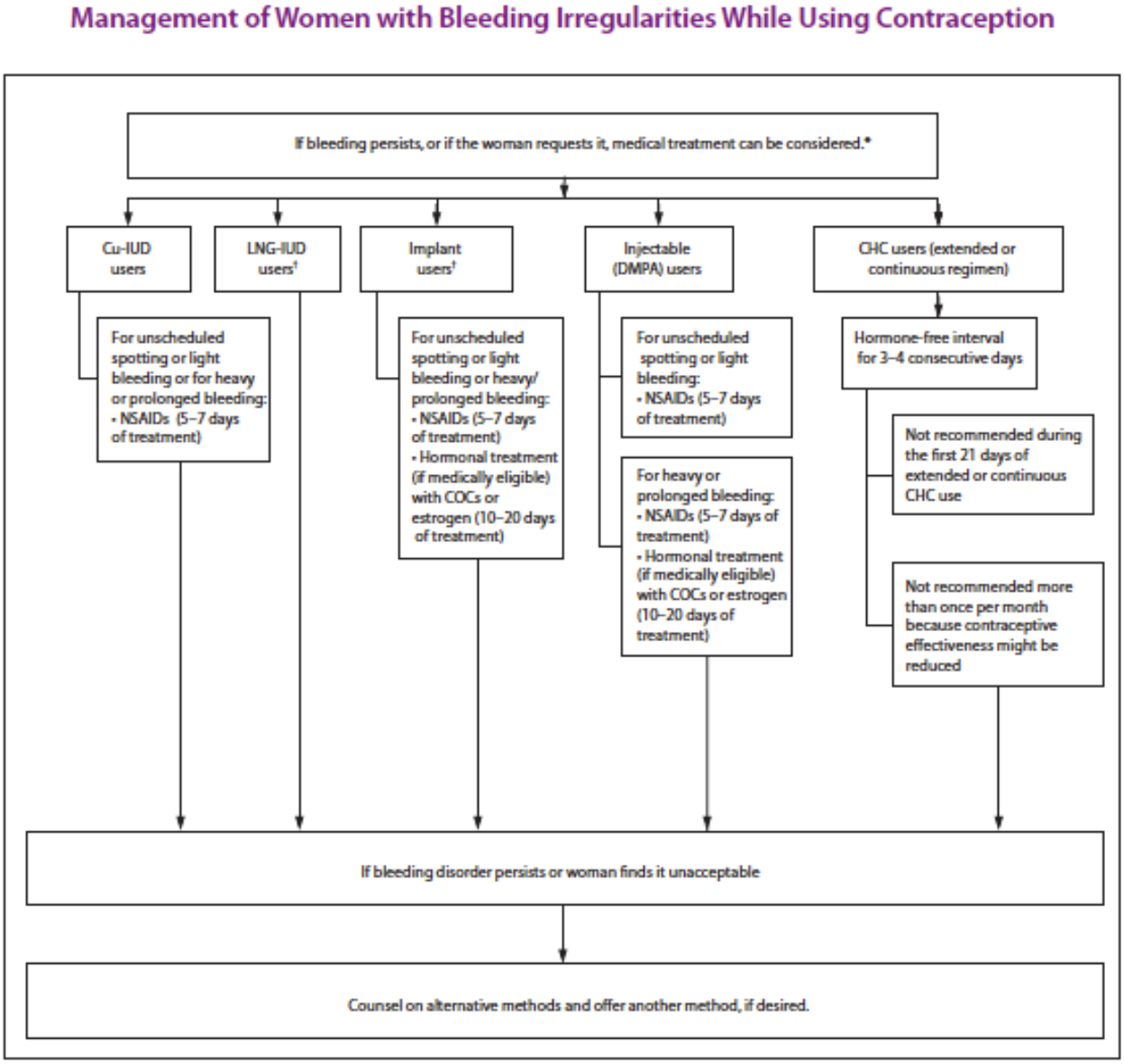
1. Return as scheduled for evaluation or contact clinic if side effects or danger signs develop. See table below, Routine follow-up after contraceptive initiation.

2. Outside of clinic hours, seek physician or emergency care if warning signs develop.

3. Treatment of side effects: None of the following has been proven to be effective for treatment of bothersome bleeding while using the implant. Often continuation of use of the implant is the best treatment, but for some women the bleeding profile may not improve**.** If a woman is interested in continuing the implant and would like to try one of the following, it may be reasonable. If she desires removal, this request should be accommodated.

4. For bleeding irregularities see Nurse Protocol for Spotting and Breakthrough Bleeding while on Hormonal Contraception**.** Please see table below from the CDC's Selected Practice Recommendations.

Table 1. Summary table of from the CDCs Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use



Abbreviations: CHC = combined hormonal contraceptive; COC = combined oral contraceptive; Cu-IUD = copper-containing intrauterine device; DMPA = depot medroxyprogesterone acetate; LNG-IUD = levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine device; NSAIDs = nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs.
* If clinically warranted, evaluate for underlying condition. Treat the condition or refer for care.
† Heavy or prolonged bleeding, either unscheduled or menstrual, is uncommon.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Difficult implant insertion or removal.
2. Allergy to lidocaine.
3. Suspected ectopic pregnancy.
4. Other complications related to implant use.

How to Be Reasonably Certain That a Woman is Not Pregnant

A health-care provider can be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant if she has no symptoms or signs of pregnancy and meets any one of the following criteria:

- is ≤7 days after the start of normal menses
- has not had sexual intercourse since the start of last normal menses
- has been correctly and consistently using a reliable method of contraception
- is ≤7 days after spontaneous or induced abortion
- is within 4 weeks postpartum
- is fully or nearly fully breastfeeding (exclusively breastfeeding or the vast majority [≥85%] of feeds are breastfeeds), amenorrheic, and <6 months postpartum

In situations in which the health-care provider is uncertain whether the woman might be pregnant, the benefits of starting the implant, depot medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA), combined hormonal contraceptives and progestin-only pills likely exceed any risk; therefore, starting the method should be considered at any time, with a follow-up pregnancy test in 2-4 weeks. For IUD insertion, in situations in which the health-care provider is not reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant, the woman should be provided with another contraceptive method to use until the health-care provider can be reasonably certain that she is not pregnant and can insert the IUD.

When to Start Using Specific Contraceptive Methods

Contraceptive method	When to start (if the provider is reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant)	Additional contraception (i.e., back up) needed	Examinations or tests needed before initiation[1]
Copper-containing IUD	Anytime	Not needed	Bimanual examination and cervical inspection[2]
Levonorgestrel-releasing IUD	Anytime	If >7 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	Bimanual examination and cervical inspection[2]
Implant	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	None
Injectable	Anytime	If >7 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	None
Combined hormonal contraceptive	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	Blood pressure measurement
Progestin-only pill	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 2 days.	None

Abbreviations: BMI = body mass index; IUD = intrauterine device; STD = sexually transmitted disease; U.S. MEC = U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use

[1] Weight (BMI) measurement is not needed to determine medical eligibility for any methods of contraception because all methods can be used (U.S. MEC 1) or generally can be used (U.S. MEC 2) among obese women. However, measuring weight and calculating BMI (weight [kg]/height [m^2] at baseline might be helpful for monitoring any changes and counseling women who might be concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.

[2] Most women do not require additional STD screening at the time of IUD insertion. If a woman with risk factors for STDs has not been screened for gonorrhea and chlamydia according to CDC's STD Treatment Guidelines (http://www.cdc.gov/std/treatment), screening can be performed at the time of IUD insertion, and insertion should not be delayed. Women with current purulent cervicitis or chlamydial infection or gonococcal infection should not undergo IUD insertion (U.S. MEC 4).

Source: For full recommendations and updates, see the U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use webpage at http://www.cdc.gov/reproductivehealth/unintendedpregnancy/usspr.htm.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion

TABLE D1. Routine follow-up after contraceptive initiation

	Contraceptive method				
Action	**Cu-IUD or LNG-IUD**	**Implant**	**Injectable**	**CHC**	**POP**
General follow-up					
Advise women to return at any time to discuss side effects or other problems or if they want to change the method. Advise women using IUDs, implants, or injectables when the IUD or implant needs to be removed or when a reinjection is needed. No routine follow-up visit is required.	X	X	X	X	X
Other routine visits					
Assess the woman's satisfaction with her current method and whether she has any concerns about method use.	X	X	X	X	X
Assess any changes in health status, including medications, that would change the method's appropriateness for safe and effective continued use based on U.S. MEC (i.e., category 3 and 4 conditions and characteristics) (Box 1).	X	X	X	X	X
Consider performing an examination to check for the presence of IUD strings.	X	—	—	—	—
Consider assessing weight changes and counseling women who are concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.	X	X	X	X	X
Measure blood pressure.	—	—	—	X	—

Abbreviations: CHC = combined hormonal contraceptives; Cu-IUD = copper-containing intrauterine device; HIV = human immunodeficiency virus; IUD = intrauterine device; LNG-IUD = levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine device; POP = progestin-only pills; U.S. MEC = *U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use*.

REFERENCES

1. Robert Hatcher et al., *Contraceptive Technology,* 20th ed., Ardent Media, Inc., New York, 2011. (Current)

2. Joellen Hawkins et al., *Protocols for Nurse Practitioners in Gynecologic Settings,* 11th ed., Springer Publishing Co., New York, 2015.

3. M. Zieman, R.A. Hatcher. *Managing Contraception, 13th ed., Ardent Media Inc.,* New York, 2015.

4. CDC, U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 2016, MMWR 2016; 65: 3 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6503.pdf

5. CDC, U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use, 2016. MMWR 2016; 65:4 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6504.pdf

6. Lexi-Comp, Inc., "Lexi-Comp Online", Lexi-Comp, Inc. Hudson, Ohio, 2015, http://lexicomponline.com/crlsql/servelt/crlonline (April 28, 2015)

7. Wolters Kluwer; *Lexicomp Online*, 2017; http://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/5245 >accessed June 4, 2017

8. US Department of Health and Human Services; Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. NIOSH list of antineoplastic and other hazardous drugs in healthcare settings, 2016. Available at https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html Updated September 2016. Accessed November 8, 2016.

9. Ali, Moazzam et al. *Extended Use up to Five Years of the Etenogestrel-releasing Subdermal Contraceptive Implant: Comparison to Levonorgestrel-releasing subdermal Implant.* Human Reproduction: 31 (11), pp 2491-2498. September 26, 2016. https://academic.oup.com/humrep/article-pdf/31/11/2491/6629131/dew222.pdf

10. McNicholas C, Swor E, Wan L, et al. Prolonged use of the etonogestrel implant and levonorgestrel intrauterine device: 2 years beyond Food and Drug Administration - approved duration. Am J Obstet Gynecol 2017; 216:586.e1-6. http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.ajog.2017.01.036

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

STANDARD APRN PROTOCOL FOR CONTRACEPTIVE IMPLANT REMOVAL

NOTE: All clinicians performing insertions and/or removals of the contraceptive implant must complete the manufacturer's (Merck) Clinical Training Program, a required comprehensive hands-on workshop. Only clinicians who complete the program will be able to order the product. You must be an advanced practice clinician or a physician in order to attend the required training. For those who completed training for Implanon, a web-based training can be completed for certification in Nexplanon placement. There is no difference in removal between these devices. For those who have never been certified to place the contraceptive implant, in-person training is required. The training is free and can be arranged by calling 1-877-467-5266.

DEFINITION Removal of the contraceptive implant at the patient's request, due to clinical findings such as pregnancy or side effects, or **at the end of the implant's period of contraceptive efficacy.**

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient desires contraceptive implant removal.
2. May be pregnant.
3. Complains of severe side effects.
4. **The window of contraceptive efficacy has passed.**

OBJECTIVE

1. Positive pregnancy test.
2. Clinical findings of severe side effects or a contraindication for continuing with the implant.

ASSESSMENT Removal of the contraceptive implant is desired or recommended.

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

Implant palpable under skin and exact position localized. If implant is not palpable, do not attempt to begin removal process. Nexplanon can be localized with x-ray.

NOTE: Implants placed in other countries may be a two-implant system. If the patient received her implant outside of DPH, inquire about where. If she received it from another country, ask her if she knows if there are one or two implants and palpate for confirmation.

Implanon **can** be localized with ultrasound using a high frequency linear array transducer (10 megahertz or greater) or MRI. **Nexplanon is radio-opaque and can also be visualized by x-ray.** Only remove a non-palpable implant once the location of the implant has been established. If

imaging methods fail, call the manufacturer, Merck, at 1-877-467-5266 for further instructions.

THERAPEUTIC

NOTE: Hazardous agent; use appropriate precautions for handling and disposal which can be found at:
https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html

NOTE: Before removal, the patient must read and sign the consent form for removal. Per manufacturer's instructions, remove the contraceptive implant capsule through a very small incision over the tip that is closest to the elbow.

1. Per manufacturer's removal instructions:

    a. Inject local anesthetic under the distal tip of the implant.

    b. Make a 2-3 mm incision just above the tip of the rod, **the incision should be in-line or parallel to the implant. (If the woman has a two-implant system, sometimes the incision should be perpendicular to both implant tips to be able to remove both through the same incision).**

    c. Gently push the tip of the implant through the incision and grasp with hemostat or forceps for removal.

    d. Place bandage over incision.

    e. **If a patient desires to have an implant removed due to reaching the end of its contraceptive lifespan and would like another placed, this can be placed through the incision made for removal.**

2. If implant is not palpable but has been localized by ultrasound and is found to be deeply inserted, referral to a specialist with expertise in deep removals is highly recommended. This specialist should have a good understanding of the vessels and nerves of the arm. Any adverse events associated with removal should be reported to Merck at 1-877-467-5266.

3. The provider should fill out the Contraceptive Implant Removal procedure note as indicated.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Provide patient with instructions for care. Take over-the-counter ibuprofen or acetaminophen for discomfort if needed.

2. Discuss alternative contraceptive method, if desired. **Another implant can be placed during the same procedure, as noted above.**

3. Menses may be delayed or irregular for a month or more after removal.

FOLLOW-UP

1. May follow-up in 1-2 weeks for incision check, if desired.

2. Return, as needed, for contraception or **preventative care and health screening**.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Difficult/failed removal.

2. Successful removal, patient pregnant.

3. Persistent side effects.

REFERENCES

1. Robert Hatcher et al., *Contraceptive Technology,* 20th ed., Ardent Media, Inc., New York, 2011. (Current)

2. Joellen Hawkins et al., *Protocols for Nurse Practitioners in Gynecologic Settings,* **11th** ed., Springer Publishing Co., New York, **2015**.

3. M. Zieman, R.A. Hatcher. *Managing Contraception,* ***13th ed., Ardent Media Inc.,*** **New York, 2015**

4. **CDC, U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 2016, MMWR 2016; 65: 3** http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6503.pdf

5. **CDC, U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use, 2016. MMWR 2016; 65:4** http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6504.pdf

6. The Nexplanon "Learn about it" site. < http://www.nexplanon-usa.com/en/hcp/learn-about-it/insertion-and-removal/dosage-and-administration/index.asp> (April 13, 2013)

7. **Wolters Kluwer; *Lexicomp Online*, 2017; http://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/5245 >accessed June 4, 2017**

8. US Department of Health and Human Services; Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. NIOSH list of antineoplastic and other hazardous drugs in healthcare settings, 2016. Available at https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html **Updated September 2016. Accessed November 8, 2016.**

9. **Ali, Moazzam et al. *Extended Use up to Five Years of the Etenogestrel-releasing Subdermal Contraceptive Implant: Comparison to Levonorgestrel-releasing subdermal Implant.* Human Reproduction: 31 (11), pp 2491-2498. September 26, 2016. https://academic.oup.com/humrep/article-pdf/31/11/2491/6629131/dew222.pdf**

10. **McNicholas C, Swor E, Wan L, et al. Prolonged use of the etonogestrel implant and levonorgestrel intrauterine device: 2 years beyond Food and Drug Administration - approved duration. Am J Obstet Gynecol 2017; 216:586.e1-6. http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.ajog.2017.01.036**

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

STANDARD APRN PROTOCOL FOR IUD INSERTION: COPPER T380A

DEFINITION The Copper T380A (ParaGard®) intrauterine device, is a copper-bearing contraceptive device that prevents pregnancy for at least 10 years. It prevents pregnancy by immobilizing sperm, inhibiting fertilization and preventing implantation due to local inflammatory responses and endometrial effects. The copper IUD can also be used for emergency contraception. It is the most effective method of emergency contraception within 5 days of unprotected sex. For women who are seeking ongoing highly effective contraception, use of the copper IUD as emergency contraception may be ideal**.**

SUBJECTIVE

1. Desires an IUD for long-term contraception.

2. Has detailed health history (includes menstrual, sexual, contraception, personal health and family history) that does not reveal a condition representing an unacceptable health risk according to the product prescribing information and to the *CDC Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use.* Conditions that present an unacceptable health risk for use of the copper IUD include:

   a. **Currently pregnant**
   b. Unexplained vaginal bleeding, suspicious for serious underlying condition, before evaluation.
   c. Postpartum **sepsis**
   d. Immediately post septic abortion
   e. Current PID or within the past 3 months
   f. Current purulent cervicitis or chlamydial infection or gonorrhea
   g. Uterine anomalies that distort the endometrial cavity
   h. Cervical or endometrial cancer waiting to be treated
   i. Gestational trophoblastic disease **with persistently elevated β-hcg levels or malignant disease with evidence or suspicion of intrauterine disease**
   j. Severe thrombocytopenia **(at the time of initiation)**
   k. Pelvic tuberculosis
   l. Complicated solid organ transplantation: graft failure (acute or chronic), rejection, cardiac allograft vasculopathy

3. May desire hormone-free contraception

4. May desire the most effective emergency contraceptive possible.

OBJECTIVE

1. Physical examination and laboratory tests as indicated.
See protocol for Preventive Care and Health Screening.

2. Pelvic exam must be completed.

3. No pelvic exam findings that are contraindications to placement at the time of insertion.

4. **Determine if reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant (see Initiation of Contraception Protocol) or is in need of emergency contraception with unprotected sex in the past 5 days.**

ASSESSMENT Patient has no condition representing an unacceptable risk if using a Copper T380A.

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

1. Negative pregnancy test, **if indicated.**

2. Laboratory tests:

   a. Negative gonorrhea and chlamydia tests, if indicated. Tests may be performed on the day of placement, and the woman can return for treatment (if necessary). Clarification on this comes from the CDC's Selected Practice Recommendations: Most women do not require additional STD screening at the time of IUD insertion if they have already been screened according to **STD Program's current Screening Criteria for Chlamydia and Gonorrhea**.

   b. If a woman has not been screened according to guidelines, screening can be performed at the time of IUD insertion, and insertion should not be delayed. Women with purulent cervicitis or current chlamydial infection or gonorrhea should not undergo IUD insertion (U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria 4).

   c. Wet mount, if indicated.

   NOTE: Trichomonas, yeast and BV are not contraindications to IUD placement. Clinicians may diagnose, treat, and place an IUD on the same day.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Before insertion, the patient must read and sign the program's method specific consent form.

1. May encourage an over-the-counter (OTC) non-steroidal anti-inflammatory agent 30-60 minutes before the procedure to reduce discomfort.

2. Insert Copper T380A per manufacturer's directions. May be inserted any time in the cycle **if** pregnancy has been ruled out. **The Copper T380A is effective immediately after insertion.**

3. **If a provider can be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant, any contraceptive, including a Copper IUD may be initiated on that day.**

   a. **This includes women who were not on a contraceptive method.**

   b. **This also includes women who have been consistently and correctly using another method of contraception (CHC, injection, implant, POP, IUD). Insert on the same day that removal of the implant or other IUD occurs.**

4. **In situations where a provider cannot be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant, the woman should be provided an alternate method of contraceptive and should return for IUD placement when the provider can be reasonably certain she is not pregnant. If she does not desire a bridge hormonal method, she can be rescheduled to return within 5 days of the start of her next menses.**

   An exception to this: If she has had unprotected sex in the last 120 hours, has no other acts of unprotected sex since her LMP and desires the Copper T380A for EC and for ongoing contraception, it may be placed immediately.

5. **After Childbirth: May be inserted immediately following delivery of the placenta or within 7 days following a spontaneous induced abortion; do not insert if puerperal sepsis or septic abortion is present. If IUD had not been placed immediately postpartum and patient desires an IUD postpartum for contraception, wait a minimum of 6 weeks after delivery or until the uterus is fully involuted and pregnancy is ruled out.**

6. **If lactating, there appears to be an increased risk of perforation.**

7. The provider should complete the IUD Placement procedure note as indicated.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Take precautions to avert a vasovagal reaction (syncope/ fainting) caused by uterine manipulation and sounding. After IUD insertion, allow the patient to lie still for at least 30 seconds. Ask about pain or cramping. If the patient says she feels okay, have her sit up slowly while being supported. If no problems in 30 seconds, allow her to stand.

2. Treat signs of vasovagal reaction (pallor/cyanosis, pinched-face look, dilated pupils, weak and rapid pulse, rapid shallow breathing, hypotension) according to the Emergency Guidelines, Policies, Procedures and Protocols.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Counsel patient according to seven basic elements of informed consent (BRAIDED – Benefits Risks Alternatives Inquiries Decision Explanation Documentation).

2. Discuss checking for IUD strings.

   a. The IUD can be expelled without being noticed, and the package insert suggests that women check for the strings monthly. However, checking for the strings has not been shown to add to optimal use of the IUD. If a patient feels reassured by checking the strings, she may do so. However, she should not be instructed that this practice is necessary.

   b. If the patient does check for her strings routinely and cannot feel the strings, or if the plastic part is felt, use another method of contraception and return to the clinic.

   c. Women who had an IUD placed immediately postpartum may require a string trim when they present for postpartum follow-up.

   d. Most likely cause of IUD failure is expulsion with risk highest during the first year, particularly within the first 3 months after insertion.

3. Review warning signs and symptoms of possible problem: abdominal pain, vaginal discharge, pain with intercourse, missing string, pregnancy symptoms, heavy bleeding.

4. There is a small increased risk of PID, which is most likely to occur within the first 2-3 weeks after insertion. Patient should be instructed to return for signs and symptoms of infection.

5. Menstrual irregularities (spotting, light bleeding) are common in the first 3-6 months after insertion.

6. Take over-the-counter ibuprofen or naproxen sodium per package directions if needed for discomfort.

7. Should strongly consider adding condoms for STD protection if patient is at risk for STDs (multiple partners, partner with multiple partners).

8. Provide counseling on preconception health counseling and future fertility. (Refer to Preconception Health Toolkit) **http://www.fpm.emory.edu/preventive/research/projects/**

9. Use condoms to reduce the risk of STD, including HIV.

10. The T380A is approved for use for 10 years, however clinical data **demonstrates** its effectiveness for 12 years, and maybe longer. **This information can be used when counseling women at the time of initiation as well as at the end of the FDA approval window. If the patient is satisfied with the method at the end of the FDA approval window and would like to continue using it, evidence indicates that it still provides contraception as noted above. If she would like to have it removed, this should be honored.**

FOLLOW-UP

1. Outside of clinic hours, seek physician or emergency care if warning signs develop.

2. Re-examine and evaluate the patient as indicated. See table below.

3. If evidence of pelvic inflammatory disease, see Nurse Protocol for Pelvic Inflammatory Disease. IUD removal is not necessary unless no improvement after 2-3 days of antibiotic treatment.

http://dph.georgia.gov/sites/dph.georgia.gov/files/related_files/site_page/7.0%20STD%20Nurse%20Protocol%20-%2011-18-15.pdf

4. If pregnancy occurs, counsel patient that IUD should be removed at time of diagnosis whether pregnancy is continued or terminated.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Difficult IUD insertion or removal.
2. Suspected uterine or ectopic pregnancy.
3. To MD for IUD removal if pregnant.
4. Other complications related to IUD use.
5. Presence of actinomyces on Pap smear report with evidence of pelvic infection.

How to Be Reasonably Certain That a Woman is Not Pregnant

A health-care provider can be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant if she has no symptoms or signs of pregnancy and meets any one of the following criteria:

- is ≤7 days after the start of normal menses
- has not had sexual intercourse since the start of last normal menses
- has been correctly and consistently using a reliable method of contraception
- is ≤7 days after spontaneous or induced abortion
- is within 4 weeks postpartum
- is fully or nearly fully breastfeeding (exclusively breastfeeding or the vast majority [≥85%] of feeds are breastfeeds), amenorrheic, and <6 months postpartum

In situations in which the health-care provider is uncertain whether the woman might be pregnant, the benefits of starting the implant, depot medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA), combined hormonal contraceptives and progestin-only pills likely exceed any risk; therefore, starting the method should be considered at any time, with a follow-up pregnancy test in 2-4 weeks. For IUD insertion, in situations in which the health-care provider is not reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant, the woman should be provided with another contraceptive method to use until the health-care provider can be reasonably certain that she is not pregnant and can insert the IUD.

When to Start Using Specific Contraceptive Methods

Contraceptive method	When to start (if the provider is reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant)	Additional contraception (i.e., back up) needed	Examinations or tests needed before initiation[1]
Copper-containing IUD	Anytime	Not needed	Bimanual examination and cervical inspection[2]
Levonorgestrel-releasing IUD	Anytime	If >7 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	Bimanual examination and cervical inspection[2]
Implant	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	None
Injectable	Anytime	If >7 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	None
Combined hormonal contraceptive	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	Blood pressure measurement
Progestin-only pill	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 2 days.	None

Abbreviations: BMI = body mass index; IUD = intrauterine device; STD = sexually transmitted disease; U.S. MEC = U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use

[1] Weight (BMI) measurement is not needed to determine medical eligibility for any methods of contraception because all methods can be used (U.S. MEC 1) or generally can be used (U.S. MEC 2) among obese women. However, measuring weight and calculating BMI (weight [kg]/height [m^2] at baseline might be helpful for monitoring any changes and counseling women who might be concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.

[2] Most women do not require additional STD screening at the time of IUD insertion. If a woman with risk factors for STDs has not been screened for gonorrhea and chlamydia according to CDC's STD Treatment Guidelines (http://www.cdc.gov/std/treatment), screening can be performed at the time of IUD insertion, and insertion should not be delayed. Women with current purulent cervicitis or chlamydial infection or gonococcal infection should not undergo IUD insertion (U.S. MEC 4).

Source: For full recommendations and updates, see the U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use webpage at http://www.cdc.gov/reproductivehealth/unintendedpregnancy/usspr.htm.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion

TABLE D1. Routine follow-up after contraceptive initiation

Action	Contraceptive method				
	Cu-IUD or LNG-IUD	Implant	Injectable	CHC	POP
General follow-up					
Advise women to return at any time to discuss side effects or other problems or if they want to change the method. Advise women using IUDs, implants, or injectables when the IUD or implant needs to be removed or when a reinjection is needed. No routine follow-up visit is required.	X	X	X	X	X
Other routine visits					
Assess the woman's satisfaction with her current method and whether she has any concerns about method use.	X	X	X	X	X
Assess any changes in health status, including medications, that would change the method's appropriateness for safe and effective continued use based on U.S. MEC (i.e., category 3 and 4 conditions and characteristics) (Box 1).	X	X	X	X	X
Consider performing an examination to check for the presence of IUD strings.	X	—	—	—	—
Consider assessing weight changes and counseling women who are concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.	X	X	X	X	X
Measure blood pressure.	—	—	—	X	—

Abbreviations: CHC = combined hormonal contraceptives; Cu-IUD = copper-containing intrauterine device; HIV = human immunodeficiency virus; IUD = intrauterine device; LNG-IUD = levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine device; POP = progestin-only pills; U.S. MEC = *U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use*.

REFERENCES

1. Robert Hatcher et al., *Contraceptive Technology,* 20th ed., Ardent Media, Inc., New York, 2011. (Current)

2. Joellen Hawkins et al., *Protocols for Nurse Practitioners in Gynecologic Settings,* **11th** ed., Springer Publishing Co., New York, **2015.**

3. M. Zieman, R.A. Hatcher. *Managing Contraception,* ***13th ed., Ardent Media Inc.,*** **New York, 2015**

4. **CDC, U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 2016, MMWR 2016; 65: 3** http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6503.pdf

5. **CDC, U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use, 2016. MMWR 2016; 65:4 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6504.pdf**

6. **Wolters Kluwer; *Lexicomp Online*, 2017; http://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/5245 >accessed June 4, 2017**

7. **GA DPH, Nurse Protocols for STD, Nurse Protocols for Registered Professional Nurses in Public Health, 2016.**

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

STANDARD APRN PROTOCOL FOR IUD INSERTION: Levonorgestrel (LNG) Releasing Intrauterine System®

DEFINITION

The LNG-releasing intrauterine systems (Mirena®, Liletta®, Skyla® **and Kyleena**) are available in the United States. The LNG-releasing system consists of a small T-shaped frame with a steroid reservoir that contains levonorgestrel, a potent progestin found in many combination oral contraceptives, progestin-only pills, and implants.

The LNG intrauterine system releases a low dose of LNG into the uterine cavity, a system similar to that of LNG implants or LNG-containing mini-pills. As with these methods, thickening the cervical mucus and inhibition of ovulation, sperm motility and function are considered the primary means of preventing pregnancy. A weak foreign-body effect is also noted which could decrease implantation. Unlike the copper IUD, the LNG IUD is not approved for use as emergency contraception.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Desires an IUD for long-term contraception.

2. Has detailed health history (includes menstrual, sexual, contraception, personal health and family history) that does not reveal a condition representing an unacceptable health risk according to the product prescribing information and to the *CDC Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use.* Conditions that present an unacceptable health risk for use of the LNG IUD include:

   a. Currently pregnant
   b. Unexplained vaginal bleeding, suspicious for serious underlying condition, before evaluation.
   c. Postpartum **sepsis**.
   d. Immediately post septic abortion.
   e. Current PID or within the past 3 months.
   f. Current purulent cervicitis or chlamydial or gonorrhea infection
   g. Uterine anomalies that distort the endometrial cavity.
   h. Cervical or endometrial cancer waiting to be treated.
   i. Gestational trophoblastic disease **with persistently elevated β-hcg levels or malignant disease with evidence or suspicion of intrauterine disease.**
   j. Lupus with positive or unknown antiphospholipid antibodies.
   k. Breast cancer.
   l. Cirrhosis – severe (decompensated).
   m. Liver Tumors – benign hepatocellular adenoma; malignant (hepatoma).
   n. Pelvic tuberculosis.
   o. Complicated solid organ transplantation: graft failure (acute or chronic), rejection, cardiac allograft vasculopathy.

3. Refer to CDC *Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use* for medical conditions that represent an unacceptable health risk if they develop while using the LNG-releasing intrauterine system. Women with these conditions may initiate the implant. However, if women who did not have these conditions at the time of initiation develop these conditions after using the implant, the implant should not be continued. Medical conditions include:

   a. Ischemic heart disease.

4. May desire lighter periods or no periods at all.

OBJECTIVE

1. Physical examination and laboratory tests as indicated. See protocol for Preventive Care and Health Screening.

2. Pelvic exam must be completed.

3. No pelvic exam findings that are contraindications to placement at the time of insertion.

4. **Determine if reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant (see Initiation of Contraception Protocol).**

ASSESSMENT

Patient has no condition representing an unacceptable risk if using a LNG IUD. Not allergic to any component of the IUD.

5. **PLAN**

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Negative pregnancy test at the time of insertion.

2. Laboratory tests:

   a. Negative gonorrhea and chlamydia tests, if indicated. Tests may be performed on the day of placement, and the woman can return for treatment (if necessary). Clarification on this comes from the CDC's Selected Practice Recommendations. Most women do not require additional STD screening at the time of IUD insertion if they have already been screened according to **STD Program's current Screening Criteria for Chlamydia and Gonorrhea.**

   b. If a woman has not been screened according to guidelines, screening can be performed at the time of IUD insertion, and insertion should not be delayed.

   c. Women with purulent cervicitis or current chlamydial infection

or gonorrhea should not undergo IUD insertion (U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria 4).

d. Wet mount, if indicated.

NOTE: Trichomonas, yeast and BV are not contraindications to IUD placement. Clinicians may diagnose, treat, and place an IUD on the same day.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Hazardous agent; use appropriate precautions for handling and disposal which can be found at:
https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html

NOTE: Before insertion, the patient must read and sign the program's method specific consent form.

1. May encourage an over-the-counter (OTC) non-steroidal anti-inflammatory agent 30-60 minutes before the procedure to reduce discomfort.

2. Insert LNG IUD per manufacturer's directions.

3. **If a provider can be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant, any contraceptive, including an LNG IUD may be initiated on that day.**

   a. This includes women who were not on a contraceptive method. If not inserted during the first 7 days of the menstrual cycle, a barrier method should be used for 7 days.

   b. This also includes women who have been consistently and correctly using another method of contraception (CHC, injection, POP, IUD). If inserted during active use of the previous method, continue the previous method for 7 days when possible.

   c. Insert on the same day that removal of an implant or other IUD occurs.

4. **In situations where a provider cannot be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant, the woman should be provided an alternate method of contraceptive and should return for IUD placement when the provider can be reasonably certain she is not pregnant. If she does not desire a bridge hormonal method, she can be rescheduled to return within 5 days of the start of her next menses.**

5. After childbirth: May be inserted immediately following delivery of the placenta or within 7 days following a spontaneous induced abortion; do not insert if puerperal sepsis or septic abortion is present. If IUD had not been placed immediately postpartum and patient desires an IUD postpartum for contraception, wait a minimum of 6 weeks after delivery or until the uterus is fully involuted and pregnancy is ruled out.

6. If lactating, there appears to be an increased risk of perforation.

7. Mirena® releases 20mcg per day initially then declines; is approved for use for 5 years.

8. Skyla® releases 14mcg per day initially then declines; is approved for use for 3 years.

9. Liletta® releases 18.6mcg per day initially then declines; is approved for **4** years.

10. **Kyleena® releases 17.5 mcg per day initially and then declines; is approved for use for 5 years.**

11. The provider should complete the IUD Insertion Procedure Note as indicated**.**

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Take precautions to avert a vasovagal reaction (syncope/ fainting) caused by uterine manipulation and sounding. After IUD insertion, allow the patient to lie still for at least 30 seconds. Ask about pain or cramping. If the patient says she feels okay, have her sit up slowly while being supported. If no problems in 30 seconds, allow her to stand.

2. Treat signs of vasovagal reaction (pallor/cyanosis, pinched-face look, dilated pupils, weak and rapid pulse, rapid shallow breathing, hypotension) according to Emergency Guidelines, Policies, Procedures and Protocols.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Counsel patient according to seven basic elements of informed consent (BRAIDED – Benefits Risks Alternatives Inquiries Decision Explanation Documentation).

2. Discuss checking for IUD strings.

    a. The IUD can be expelled without being noticed, and the package insert suggests that women check for the strings monthly. However, checking for the strings has not been shown to add to optimal use of the IUD. If a patient feels reassured by checking the strings, she may do so. However, she should not be instructed that this practice is necessary.

    b. If the patient does check for her strings routinely and cannot feel the strings, or if the plastic part is felt, use another method of contraception and return to the clinic.

    c. Women who had an IUD placed immediately postpartum may require a string trim when they present for postpartum follow-up.

    d. Most likely cause of IUD failure is expulsion with risk highest during the first year, particularly within the first 3 months after insertion.

3. Review warning signs and symptoms of possible problem: abdominal pain, vaginal discharge, pain with intercourse, missing string, pregnancy symptoms, heavy bleeding.

4. There is a small increased risk of PID, which is most likely to occur within the first 2-3 weeks after insertion. Patient should be instructed to return for signs and symptoms of infection.

5. Discuss common side effects:

    a. 1 to 4 months: may have frequent spotting.

    b. After 3- 6 months: reduced duration and amount of bleeding.

    c. Overall 90% reduction in menstrual bleeding.

    d. After 12 months, about 20% of women have no bleeding.

e. The patient should keep a menstrual record and report a sudden change in menses or suspected pregnancy immediately.

f. The Mirena system is the only one approved by FDA to reduce dysmenorrhea and leads to a significant reduction in the amount and length of bleeding. **It is reasonable to believe that the other LNG IUDs would also result in improvements in dysmenorrhea and heavy bleeding.**

g. As with other progestin-only methods, persistent ovarian follicles can occur. They do not require treatment or removal of the LNG system, and they usually resolve spontaneously. However, regular follow-up by ultrasound is recommended until cysts disappear.

h. Give patient copy of LNG system post-insertion instructions.

6. Take over-the-counter ibuprofen or naproxen sodium per package directions if needed for discomfort.

7. Should strongly consider adding condoms for STD protection if patient is at risk for STDs (multiple partners, partner with multiple partners).

8. Provide counseling on preconception health counseling and future fertility. (Refer to Preconception Health Toolkit) **http://www.fpm.emory.edu/preventive/research/projects/**

9. Use condoms to reduce the risk of STD, including HIV.

10. The Mirena is approved for use for 5 years. However, clinical data **demonstrates** its effectiveness for up to 7 years. **This information can be used when counseling women at the time of initiation as well as at the end of the FDA approval window. If the patient is satisfied with the method at the end of the FDA approval window and would like to continue using it, evidence indicates that it still provides contraception as noted above. If she would like to have it removed, this should be honored.**

11. Some drugs or herbal products may decrease the serum concentration of LNG, please advise to check with a health care professional for potential interactions.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Outside of clinic hours, seek physician or emergency care if warning signs develop.

2. Re-examine and evaluate as indicated. See table below.

3. If evidence of pelvic inflammatory disease, see Nurse Protocol for Pelvic Inflammatory Disease (PID). IUD removal is not necessary unless no improvement after 2-3 days of antibiotic treatment. https://dph.georgia.gov/sites/dph.georgia.gov/files/related_files/site_page/7.0%20STD%20Nurse%20Protocol%20-%2011-18-15.pdf

4. If pregnancy occurs, counsel patient that IUD should be removed at time of diagnosis whether pregnancy is continued or she chooses to terminate.

5. After the IUD has been in for the FDA-approved length of time, check with manufacturer regarding possible approval for a longer time.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Difficult IUD insertion or removal.

2. Suspected uterine or ectopic pregnancy.

3. To MD for IUD removal if pregnant.

4. Other complications related to IUD use.

5. Presence of actinomyces on Pap smear report with evidence of pelvic infection.

How to Be Reasonably Certain That a Woman is Not Pregnant

A health-care provider can be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant if she has no symptoms or signs of pregnancy and meets any one of the following criteria:

- is ≤7 days after the start of normal menses
- has not had sexual intercourse since the start of last normal menses
- has been correctly and consistently using a reliable method of contraception
- is ≤7 days after spontaneous or induced abortion
- is within 4 weeks postpartum
- is fully or nearly fully breastfeeding (exclusively breastfeeding or the vast majority [≥85%] of feeds are breastfeeds), amenorrheic, and <6 months postpartum

In situations in which the health-care provider is uncertain whether the woman might be pregnant, the benefits of starting the implant, depot medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA), combined hormonal contraceptives and progestin-only pills likely exceed any risk; therefore, starting the method should be considered at any time, with a follow-up pregnancy test in 2-4 weeks. For IUD insertion, in situations in which the health-care provider is not reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant, the woman should be provided with another contraceptive method to use until the health-care provider can be reasonably certain that she is not pregnant and can insert the IUD.

When to Start Using Specific Contraceptive Methods

Contraceptive method	When to start (if the provider is reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant)	Additional contraception (i.e., back up) needed	Examinations or tests needed before initiation[1]
Copper-containing IUD	Anytime	Not needed	Bimanual examination and cervical inspection[2]
Levonorgestrel-releasing IUD	Anytime	If >7 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	Bimanual examination and cervical inspection[2]
Implant	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	None
Injectable	Anytime	If >7 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	None
Combined hormonal contraceptive	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	Blood pressure measurement
Progestin-only pill	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 2 days.	None

Abbreviations: BMI = body mass index; IUD = intrauterine device; STD = sexually transmitted disease; U.S. MEC = U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use

[1] Weight (BMI) measurement is not needed to determine medical eligibility for any methods of contraception because all methods can be used (U.S. MEC 1) or generally can be used (U.S. MEC 2) among obese women. However, measuring weight and calculating BMI (weight [kg]/height [m^2] at baseline might be helpful for monitoring any changes and counseling women who might be concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.

[2] Most women do not require additional STD screening at the time of IUD insertion. If a woman with risk factors for STDs has not been screened for gonorrhea and chlamydia according to CDC's STD Treatment Guidelines (http://www.cdc.gov/std/treatment), screening can be performed at the time of IUD insertion, and insertion should not be delayed. Women with current purulent cervicitis or chlamydial infection or gonococcal infection should not undergo IUD insertion (U.S. MEC 4).

Source: For full recommendations and updates, see the U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use webpage at http://www.cdc.gov/reproductivehealth/unintendedpregnancy/usspr.htm.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion

TABLE D1. Routine follow-up after contraceptive initiation

Action	Contraceptive method				
	Cu-IUD or LNG-IUD	Implant	Injectable	CHC	POP
General follow-up					
Advise women to return at any time to discuss side effects or other problems or if they want to change the method. Advise women using IUDs, implants, or injectables when the IUD or implant needs to be removed or when a reinjection is needed. No routine follow-up visit is required.	X	X	X	X	X
Other routine visits					
Assess the woman's satisfaction with her current method and whether she has any concerns about method use.	X	X	X	X	X
Assess any changes in health status, including medications, that would change the method's appropriateness for safe and effective continued use based on U.S. MEC (i.e., category 3 and 4 conditions and characteristics) (Box 1).	X	X	X	X	X
Consider performing an examination to check for the presence of IUD strings.	X	—	—	—	—
Consider assessing weight changes and counseling women who are concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.	X	X	X	X	X
Measure blood pressure.	—	—	—	X	—

Abbreviations: CHC = combined hormonal contraceptives; Cu-IUD = copper-containing intrauterine device; HIV = human immunodeficiency virus; IUD = intrauterine device; LNG-IUD = levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine device; POP = progestin-only pills; U.S. MEC = *U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use*.

REFERENCES

1. Robert Hatcher et al., *Contraceptive Technology,* 20th ed., Ardent Media Inc., New York, 2011. (Current)

2. Joellen Hawkins et al., *Protocols for Nurse Practitioners in Gynecologic Settings,* **11th** ed., Springer Publishing Co., New York, **2015.**

3. M. Zieman, R.A. Hatcher. *Managing Contraception,* ***13th ed., Ardent Media Inc.,*** **New York, 2015**.

4. **CDC, U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 2016, MMWR 2016; 65: 3** http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6503.pdf

5. **CDC, U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use, 2016. MMWR 2016; 65:4 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6504.pdf**

6. **Wolters Kluwer; *Lexicomp Online*, 2017; http://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/5245 >accessed June 4, 2017**

7. US Department of Health and Human Services; Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. NIOSH list of antineoplastic and other hazardous drugs in healthcare settings, 2016. Available at https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html **Updated September 2016. Accessed November 8, 2016**.

8. **Odyssea Pharma SPRL, an Allergan affiliate. Medicines 360; *FDA Approves Medicines360's sNDA for LILETTA® (levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterinesystem) 52 mg to Prevent Pregnancy for up to Four Years.* http://medicines360.org/news/fda-approves-medicines360-s-snda-for-liletta-levonorgestrel-releasing-intrauterine-system-52-mg-to-prevent-pregnancy-for-up-to-four-years > accessed August 8, 2017.**

9. **McNicholas C, Swor E, Wan L, et al. Prolonged use of the etonogestrel implant and levonorgestrel intrauterine device: 2 years beyond Food and Drug Administration - approved duration. Am J Obstet Gynecol 2017; 216:586.e1-6. http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.ajog.2017.01.036**

THIS PAGE LEFT INTENTIONALLY BLANK

STANDARD APRN PROTOCOL FOR LOST IUD STRINGS

DEFINITION Inability to visibly locate IUD (intrauterine device) strings or inability to feel the IUD strings.

ETIOLOGY Lost IUD strings may be the result of expulsion of the IUD, retraction of the strings into the uterine cavity, perforation of the IUD through the cervix or uterine wall, or use of an IUD (from another country) that never had a string attached. In some rare instances, clinicians have intentionally cut strings off or cut the strings short.

SUBJECTIVE Patient may report that she cannot feel IUD strings on self-exam.

OBJECTIVE No IUD strings visible upon careful examination of the vagina and cervical opening, and inability to feel the strings.

ASSESSMENT IUD strings not visible.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

Sensitive urine pregnancy test (HCG).

THERAPEUTIC

1. If pregnancy test is positive, immediately refer patient to physician.

2. If pregnancy is ruled out by HCG and exam:

   a. Prepare cervix os with insertion using betadine.

   b. If the patient is not pregnant and the strings are not visible, attempt to retrieve the IUD string using cytobrush, curved forceps, alligator forceps, or IUD retriever. Use tenaculum if necessary to steady the cervix

3. If unsuccessful in locating strings:

   a. Refer for pelvic ultrasound or if necessary, abdominal x-rays. Advise alternative method of contraception while trying to locate IUD.

   b. If the IUD is identified as properly positioned in the uterus, no action is necessary; reassure the patient**.**

   c. If ultrasound identifies the IUD, but unable to identify in uterus, refer to MD.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. If the IUD is **not in the uterus**, advise the patient to use another method of contraception.

FOLLOW-UP

Return to clinic as needed for contraception or preventive care.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Immediately refer patient to physician, if pregnancy test is positive.

2. Consult with a physician for any questions regarding management (see APRN Protocol for IUD Removal/Complications and Actions).

REFERENCES

1. Robert Hatcher et al., *Contraceptive Technology,* 20th ed., Ardent Media, Inc., New York, 2011. (Current)

2. Joellen Hawkins et al., *Protocols for Nurse Practitioners in Gynecologic Settings,* **11th** ed., Springer Publishing Co., New York, **2015**.

3. M. Zieman, R.A. Hatcher. *Managing Contraception,* ***13th ed., Ardent Media Inc.,*** **New York, 2015.**

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

STANDARD APRN PROTOCOL FOR IUD REMOVAL/COMPLICATIONS AND ACTIONS

DEFINITION Removal of an IUD by the clinician at the patient's request, due to clinical findings such as pregnancy or partial expulsion, or per recommended time frame for the device. It is important to comply with a woman's wishes if she wants to have her IUD removed.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient may request IUD removal for any reason.

2. Patient may report a condition that precludes IUD use, such as suspected or confirmed pregnancy or partial expulsion.

6. Patient may complain of dysmenorrhea, dyspareunia, menorrhagia, aching, abdominal pains, and tenderness on ambulation, malaise, and chills/fever.

7. History of use of the **IUD use past its length of contraceptive effect.**

OBJECTIVE May have findings on pelvic exam or laboratory tests that require IUD removal such as: partial expulsion, enlargement of uterus, positive pregnancy test, other pelvic infection/disease.

ASSESSMENT Indications for removal of IUD.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

If indicated:

1. Sensitive urine pregnancy test.

2. Wet mount.

3. Gonorrhea and chlamydia tests.

THERAPEUTIC (by APRN or MD)

NOTE: Hazardous agent; use appropriate precautions for handling and disposal which can be found at:
https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html

NOTE: Easier removal may be possible at the time of menses or at midcycle.

1. If patient is not pregnant, remove IUD slowly, applying gentle, steady traction to string with sponge forceps.

2. If patient is not pregnant and the IUD cannot be removed with gentle traction, use a tenaculum to steady the cervix and straighten the anteversion or retroversion.

3. If the patient is not pregnant and the strings are not visible, attempt to retrieve the IUD string using cytobrush, curved forceps, alligator forceps, or IUD retriever. Use tenaculum if necessary to steady the cervix.

4. If patient is pregnant, patient should be counseled that removal is recommended. Removal is associated with a slight risk of pregnancy loss at the time of removal, but the risk of infection, miscarriage and preterm birth are more serious if left in situ. After counseling, refer patient to physician for removal of IUD.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Choose any method if the patient does not desire pregnancy.

2. If the patient is seeking pregnancy, return to fertility is rapid. Initiate folic acid supplementation.

3. There are no known major long-term side effects after removal of an IUD.

4. Provide counseling on preconception health counseling and future fertility. (Refer to PCH Toolkit)

FOLLOW-UP

Return to clinic as needed, for contraception or preventive care.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

Refer or consult with physician if:

1. Difficult/failed removal.

2. Patient pregnant.

3. Unable to visualize and/or probe for strings.

TABLE OF IUD COMPLICATIONS AND ACTIONS

CONDITION	ACTION
1. Pain from tenaculum application to the cervix.	1. May consider application of topical anesthesia such as Lidocaine gel, etc.
2. Pain with sounding of the uterus during insertion.	2. Sound slowly and gently consider smaller sound. If severe, check alignment of uterine cavity.
3. Cramping/pain immediately after insertion, for a day or so thereafter, or with each menses: a. if severe b. if mild	3. a. Consider IUD removal by APRN. b. See Nurse Protocol IUD- Related Dysmenorrhea.
4. Pain at time of insertion, persistent and increasing, and signs of abdominal tenderness: a. if strings are present b. if strings are absent	4. a. Presume partial perforation has occurred; remove IUD and treat for pelvic infection. b. Consider possibility of perforation. Refer patient to physician.
5. Partial expulsion of an IUD.	5. Remove IUD. Pregnancy test as indicated.
6. **Actinomyces-like organisms on pap smear.**	**6. If no evidence of pelvic infection, no action is needed. Counsel patient that any signs of infection (pain, foul discharge, fever) warrant an evaluation.**
7. Pelvic inflammatory disease.	7. See Nurse Protocol for Pelvic Inflammatory Disease. http://dph.georgia.gov/sites/dph.georgia.gov/files/related_files/site_page/7.0%20STD%20Nurse%20Protocol%20-%2011-18-15.pdf
8. Spontaneous abortion	8. Refer to physician.
9. Uterine Pregnancy or Ectopic pregnancy	9. Refer to physician.

REFERENCES

1. Robert Hatcher et al., *Contraceptive Technology,* 20th ed., Ardent Media, Inc., New York, 2011. (Current)

2. Joellen Hawkins et al., *Protocols for Nurse Practitioners in Gynecologic Settings,* **11th** ed., Springer Publishing Co., New York, **2015**.

3. M. Zieman, R.A. Hatcher. *Managing Contraception,* ***13th ed.,*** *Ardent Media Inc.,* New York**, 2015**

4. **CDC, U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 2016, MMWR 2016; 65: 3** http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6503.pdf

5. **CDC, U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use, 2016. MMWR 2016; 65:4 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6504.pdf**

6. **US Department of Health and Human Services; Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. NIOSH list of antineoplastic and other hazardous drugs in healthcare settings, 2016. Available at** https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html**. Updated September 2016. Accessed November 8, 2016.**

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

APPENDIX A: CONTRACEPTIVES

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Women's Health Products

CONTRACEPTIVE CATEGORY	PRODUCT NAME	NDC	Progestin	mg	Estrogen	mcg	Mfr
MONOPHASIC 20mcg							
MonoPhasic	TARINA FE 1-20 TABLET	50102012803	Norethindrone	1	Estradiol	20	Afaxys, Inc.
MonoPhasic	LOESTRIN FE 1-20 TABLET	51285012570	Norethindrone	1	Estradiol	20	Teva Women's Health, Inc.
MonoPhasic	JUNEL FE 24 TABLET	00093532862	Norethindrone	1	Estradiol	20	Teva Pharmaceuticals USA Inc
MonoPhasic	NORETHINDRONE ACETATE AND ETHINYL ESTRADIOL TABLETS	68462013281	Norethindrone	1	Estradiol	20	Glenmark Generics
MonoPhasic LoDose	VESTURA 3MG/0.02MG	52544098231	Drospirenone	3.0	Estradiol	20	Actavis (Watson)
MonoPhasic LoDose	YAZ TAB	50419040503	Drospirenone	3.0	Estradiol	20	Bayer HC
MonoPhasic LoDose	NIKKI TB 3/.02MG LUPI 3X28	68180088613	Drospirenone	3.0	Estradiol	20	Lupin Pharma
MonoPhasic LoDose	LORYNA 3/0.02 UD	00781565615	Drospirenone	3.0	Estradiol	20	Sandoz
MonoPhasic LoDose	DROSPIRENONE AND ETHINYL ESTRADIOL TABLETS	68462072029	Drospirenone	3.0	Estradiol	20	Glenmark Generics
MonoPhasic LoDose	GIANVI TB 3/0.02MG BP	00093542358	Drospirenone	3.0	Estradiol	20	Teva
MonoPhasic Ultra LoDose	DELYLA .1MG/.02MG TAB RAN 28@	51660057286	Levonorgestrel	0.1	Estradiol	20	Ranbaxy
MonoPhasic Ultra LoDose	LESSINA TAB 0.1/0.02MG	00555901467	Levonorgestrel	0.1	Estradiol	20	Teva
MonoPhasic Ultra LoDose	ORSYTHIA TAB 0.1/0.02 Q/P	00603763449	Levonorgestrel	0.1	Estradiol	20	Qualitest
MonoPhasic Ultra LoDose	LEVONO+ES TB.1MG/.02MGLUP3X28@	68180085413	Levonorgestrel	0.1	Estradiol	20	Lupin Pharma
MonoPhasic Ultra LoDose	LEVON/ETH TB 0.1/.02MG MYL 84@	00378728753	Levonorgestrel	0.1	Estradiol	20	Mylan
MonoPhasic Ultra LoDose	FALMINA TAB0.1/0.02MG3X28NSTR@	16714035903	Levonorgestrel	0.1	Estradiol	20	NorthStar Rx LLC
MonoPhasic Ultra LoDose	AVIANE TAB 0.1/0.02MG	00555904558	Levonorgestrel	0.1	Estradiol	20	Teva
MonoPhasic Ultra LoDose	ORSYTHIA TAB 0.1/0.02 Q/P	00603763417	Levonorgestrel	0.1	Estradiol	20	Qualitest
MonoPhasic Ultra LoDose	FALMINA TAB0.1/0.02MG6X28NSTR@	16714035904	Levonorgestrel	0.1	Estradiol	20	NorthStar Rx LLC
MonoPhasic Ultra LoDose	LUTERA TB 0.1/0.02MG	52544094928	Levonorgestrel	0.1	Estradiol	20	Mayne Pharma
MonoPhasic Ultra LoDose	SRONYX TAB 0.1/0.02MG	05186254506	Levonorgestrel	0.1	Estradiol	20	Mayne Pharma
MonoPhasic Ultra LoDose	LOESTRIN FE TAB 1/20 30X28	51285012698	Nor. Acetate	1	Estradiol/FE	20	Teva
MonoPhasic Ultra LoDose	NORETHIN FE TAB 1/.02 MYL3X28@	00378728353	Nor. Acetate	1	Estradiol/FE	20	Mylan
MonoPhasic Ultra LoDose	JUNEL FE 1MG/20MCG	00555902658	Nor. Acetate	1	Estradiol/FE	20	Teva
MonoPhasic Ultra LoDose	GILDESS FE 1/0.2MG TB	00603760917	Nor. Acetate	1	Estradiol/FE	20	Qualitest
MonoPhasic Ultra LoDose	LARIN FE 1/20 1/02MG 6X28NSTR@	16714040604	Nor. Acetate	1	Estradiol/FE	20	NorthStar Rx LLC
MonoPhasic Ultra LoDose	MICROG FE 1.0MG/20MCG	51862001206	Nor. Acetate	1	Estradiol/FE Fum	20	Mayne Pharma
MonoPhasic Ultra LoDose	JUNEL TAB 1MG/20MCG	00555902542	Nor. Acetate	1	Estradiol	20	Teva
MonoPhasic Ultra LoDose	GILDESS TAB 1/0.02MG Q/P 3X21@	00603760748	Nor. Acetate	1	Estradiol	20	Qualitest
MonoPhasic Ultra LoDose	NORE/ETHIN TB 1/.02MG MYL3X21@	00378728053	Nor. Acetate	1	Estradiol	20	Mylan
MonoPhasic Ultra LoDose	LARIN 1MG/0.02MG NSTR 3X21@	16714040803	Nor. Acetate	1	Estradiol	20	NorthStar Rx LLC
MonoPhasic Ultra LoDose	LOESTRIN 21 TAB 1/20 5x21	51285013197	Nor. Acetate	1	Estradiol	20	Teva
MonoPhasic Ultra LoDose	GILDESS TAB 1/0.02MG Q/P 6X21@	00603760715	Nor. Acetate	1	Estradiol	20	Qualitest
MonoPhasic Ultra LoDose	MICROGESTIN 1/0.020MG BP	51862000706	Nor. Acetate	1	Estradiol	20	Mayne Pharma
MonoPhasic Ultra LoDose	AUBRA-28 TABLET	50102012048	Levonorgestrel	0.1	Estradiol	20	Afaxys, Inc.

Monophasic 25mcg							
MonoPhasic LoDose	NOR/ET ESTR TB.8/.025 MYL3X28	00378730853	Norethindrone	0.8	Estradiol/Iron	25	Mylan
MONOPHASIC 30mcg							
MonoPhasic Ultra LoDose	LOESTRIN (R) FE 1.5MG/30MCG	51285012998	Nor. Acetate	1.5	Estradiol/FE Fu	30	Teva
MonoPhasic	LOESTRIN 21 1.5-30 TABLET	51285012797	Norethindrone	1.5	Estradiol	30	Teva Women's Health, Inc.
MonoPhasic LoDose	DESOGEN TAB 0.15/0.03MG	00052026106	Desogestrel	0.15	Estradiol	30	Schering/ Merck
MonoPhasic LoDose	EMOQUETTE TB 0.15/0.03Q/P	00603754049	Desogestrel	0.15	Estradiol	30	Qualitest
MonoPhasic LoDose	ENSKYCE TAB 0.15MG LUPI 3X28	68180088213	Desogestrel	0.15	Estradiol	30	Lupin Pharma
MonoPhasic LoDose	EMOQUETTE TB 0.15/0.03Q/P	00603754017	Desogestrel	0.15	Estradiol	30	Qualitest
MonoPhasic LoDose	DESOGEST TAB 0.15MG 6X28 NSTR@	16714036704	Desogestrel	0.15	Estradiol	30	NorthStar Rx LLC
MonoPhasic LoDose	APRI TAB 0.15/0.03MG	00555904358	Desogestrel	0.15	Estradiol	30	Teva
MonoPhasic LoDose	ORTHO-CEPT TAB 0.15/0.03MG	50458019615	Desogestrel	0.15	Estradiol	30	JOM Ortho
MonoPhasic LoDose	RECLIPSEN TB 0.15/0.03MG	52544095428	Desogestrel	0.15	Estradiol	30	Actavis (Watson)
MonoPhasic LoDose	YASMIN TAB	50419040203	Drospirenone	0.03	Estradiol	30	Bayer HC
MonoPhasic LoDose	ZARAH TB 3MG/0.03MG	52544098131	Drospirenone	0.03	Estradiol	30	Mayne Pharma
MonoPhasic LoDose	DROSPIR/ETH TB 3/.03MG	68180090213	Drospirenone	0.03	Estradiol	30	Lupin Pharma
MonoPhasic LoDose	SYEDA TAB 3/0.03MG	00781565815	Drospirenone	0.03	Estradiol	30	Sandoz
MonoPhasic LoDose	DROSPIRENONE AND ETHINYL ESTRADIOL TABLETS	68462073329	Drospirenone	0.03	Estradiol	30	Glenmark Generics
MonoPhasic LoDose	OCELLA TB 3/0.03MG	00555913167	Drospirenone	0.03	Estradiol	30	Teva
MonoPhasic LoDose	ALTAVERA TAB 3X28 UD 0.15/0.03MG	00781558315	Levonorgestrel	0.15	Estradiol	30	Sandoz
MonoPhasic LoDose	KURVELO TAB .15MG/.3MG LUPI 3	68180084413	Levonorgestrel	0.15	Estradiol	30	Lupin Pharma
MonoPhasic LoDose	LEVON/ETH EST.15/.03MG MYL 84	00378655053	Levonorgestrel	0.15	Estradiol	30	Mylan
MonoPhasic LoDose	MARLISSA TAB 0.15mg/0.03mg	68462038829	Levonorgestrel	0.15	Estradiol	30	Glenmark Generics
MonoPhasic LoDose	LEVORA TAB 0.15/30	52544027928	Levonorgestrel	0.15	Estradiol	30	Mayne Pharma
MonoPhasic LoDose	CHATEAL-28 TABLET	50102013048	Levonorgestrel	0.15	Estradiol	30	Afaxys, Inc.
MonoPhasic LoDose	PORTIA TB 0.150/.03MG	00555902058	Levonorgestrel	0.15	Estradiol	30	Teva
MonoPhasic LoDose	JUNEL 1.5/30 3X21	00555902742	Nor. Acetate	1.5	Estradiol	30	Teva
MonoPhasic LoDose	GILDESS TAB 1.5/0.03 Q/P 3X21@	00603760648	Nor. Acetate	1.5	Estradiol	30	Qualitest
MonoPhasic LoDose	LARIN 1.5MG/0.03MG 3X21 NSTR@	16714040703	Nor. Acetate	1.5	Estradiol	30	NorthStar Rx LLC
MonoPhasic LoDose	LOESTRIN 21 TAB 1.5/30	51285012797	Nor. Acetate	1.5	Estradiol	30	Teva
MonoPhasic LoDose	GILDESS TAB 1.5/0.03 Q/P 6X21@	00603760615	Nor. Acetate	1.5	Estradiol	30	Qualitest
MonoPhasic LoDose	MICROG 1.5/0.030MG BP	05186227906	Nor. Acetate	1.5	Estradiol	30	Mayne Pharma
MonoPhasic LoDose	GILDESS FE 1.5/0.03	00603760817	Nor. Acetate	1.5	Estradiol/Iron	30	Qualitest
MonoPhasic LoDose	JUNEL FE 1.5MG/30MCG	00555902858	Nor. Acetate	1.5	Estradiol/Iron	30	Teva
MonoPhasic LoDose	LARIN FE TB 1.5/30	16714040504	Nor. Acetate	1.5	Estradiol/Iron	30	NorthStar Rx LLC
MonoPhasic LoDose	MICROG FE 1.5MG/30MCG	05186229206	Nor. Acetate	1.5	Estradiol/Iron	30	Mayne Pharma
MonoPhasic LoDose	ELINEST TB 0.3/0.03MG6X28NSTR@	16714036504	Norgestrel	0.3	Estradiol	30	NorthStar Rx LLC
MonoPhasic LoDose	CRYSELLE TB 0.3/.03MG	00555904958	Norgestrel	0.3	Estradiol	30	Teva/Barr
MonoPhasic LoDose	LOW-OGESTREL TAB	05186256406	Norgestrel	0.3	Estradiol	30	Mayne Pharma

MonoPhasic Ultra Ultra Lo 10mcg							
MonoPhasic Ultra Ultra Lo FE	LO LOESTRIN FE TAB	00430042014	Nor. Acetate	1	Estradiol/FE Fum	10	Actavis (Warner Chilcott)
MONOPHASIC Chewables							
MonoPhasic Chewables	MINASTRIN 24 FE CHEWABLE TAB	00430054050	Norethindrone	1	Estradiol	20	Actavis- US Brands formerly Warner Chilcott PLC
MonoPhasic Chewables	LAYOLIS FE CHEWABLE TABLET	52544006431	Norethindrone	0.8	Estradiol	25	Actavis Inc. formerly Watson Brand
MonoPhasic LoDose Chewables	GENERESS FE TAB 0.8/25mcg **Chewable w/Iron**	52544020431	Norethindrone	0.8	Estradiol/Iron	25	Allergan
MonoPhasic LoDose Chewables	ZEOSA CHEWABLE TABLET	00093209058	Norethindrone	0.4	Estradiol/FE Fum	35	Teva Pharmaceuticals USA Inc
MonoPhasic LoDose Chewables	FEMCON FE 0.4mg/35mcg Chewable w/Iron	00430001005	Norethindrone	0.4	Estradiol/Iron	35	Actavis (Warner Chilcott)
Biphasic							
Biphasic	VIORELE TAB 0.15/.02-.01mg	68462031829	Desogestrel	0.15/ 0.0	Estradiol	20/10	Glenmark Generics
Biphasic	DESOGEST TAB 0.15MG MYL 3X28@	00378729653	Desogestrel	0.15/ 0.0	Estradiol	20/10	Mylan
Biphasic	KARIVA TAB 0.15/.02-.01mg	00555905058	Desogestrel	0.15/ 0.0	Estradiol	20/10	Teva
Biphasic	AZURETTE TAB 0.15/.02-.01mg	52544094028	Desogestrel	0.15/ 0.0	Estradiol	20/10	Mayne Pharma
Biphasic	PIMTREA .15MG/.02MG 6X28 NSTR@	16714040404	Desogestrel	0.15/ 0.0	Estradiol	20/10	NorthStar Rx LLC
Biphasic	MIRCETTE 28-DAY CYCLE PK	51285012058	Desogestrel	0.15/ 0.0	Estradiol	20/10	Teva
Biphasic	KIMIDESS 28 DAY TABLET	00603751249	Desogestrel	0.15/ 0.0	Estradiol	20/10	Qualitest Pharmaceuticals Inc
Biphasic	KIMIDESS 28 DAY TABLET	00603751217	Desogestrel	0.15/ 0.0	Estradiol	20/10	Qualitest Pharmaceuticals Inc
Biphasic	NECON TAB 10/11	52544055428	Norethindrone	0.5/1.0	Estradiol	35	Actavis (Watson)
Triphasic							
TriPhasic	ESTROSTEP FE TAB 3X28	00430000531	Nor. Acetate	1	Estradiol	20/30/35	Actavis (Warner Chilcott)
TriPhasic	TILIA FE TAB 3/ 7/ 9/ 7	05186228403	Nor. Acetate	1	Estradiol	20/30/35	Mayne Pharma
TriPhasic	TRI-LEGEST FE TAB	00555903270	Nor. Acetate	1	Estradiol	20/30/35	Teva
TriPhasic	CAZIANT TAB	05186223803	Desogestrel	0.1/0.125/0.15	Estradiol	25	Mayne Pharma
TriPhasic	VELIVET TAB	00555905167	Desogestrel	0.1/0.125/0.15	Estradiol	25	Teva
TriPhasic	MYZILRA TAB Q/P 3X28	00603762549	Levonorgestrel	0.05/0.075/0.125	Estradiol	30	Qualitest
TriPhasic	ENPRESSE TB 0.05/0.03 6/5/10	00555904758	Levonorgestrel	0.05/0.075/0.125	Estradiol	30	Teva
TriPhasic	MYZILRA TB 0.05/0.03/0.075/0.04:0.125/0.03 TriPhasic	00603762517	Levonorgestrel	0.05/0.075/0.125	Estradiol	30	Qualitest
TriPhasic	LEVONEST TAB 6X28 NSTR@	16714034004	Levonorgestrel	0.05/0.075/0.125	Estradiol	30	NorthStar Rx LLC
TriPhasic	TRIVORA TAB 6/5/10	05186251006	Levonorgestrel	0.05/0.075/0.125	Estradiol	30	Mayne Pharma
TriPhasic	CYCLAFEM 7/7/70.5/0.035	00603752549	Norethindrone	0.5/0.75/1.0	Estradiol	35	Qualitest
TriPhasic	ALYACEN 7/7/7 TAB	68462055629	Norethindrone	0.5/0.75/1.0	Estradiol	35	Glenmark Generics
TriPhasic	PIRMELLA 7/7/7 MULTMG TAB 3X28	68180089213	Norethindrone	0.5/0.75/1.0	Estradiol	35	Lupin Pharma
TriPhasic	NECON 7/7/7 TAB	52544016528	Norethindrone	0.5/0.75/1.0	Estradiol	35	Actavis (Watson)
TriPhasic	NORTREL TAB 7/7/7	00555901258	Norethindrone	0.5/0.75/1.0	Estradiol	35	Teva
TriPhasic	DASETTA 7/7/7	16714034604	Norethindrone	0.5/0.75/1.0	Estradiol	35	NorthStar Rx LLC
TriPhasic	CYCLAFEM 7/7/70.5/0.035	00603752517	Norethindrone	0.5/0.75/1.0	Estradiol	35	Qualitest
TriPhasic	ORTHO NOVUM 7/7/7	50458017815	Norethindrone	0.5/0.75/1.0	Estradiol	35	JOM Ortho
TriPhasic	ARANELLE TAB 7/9/5	00555906667	Norethindrone	0.5/1.0/0.5	Estradiol	35	Teva
TriPhasic	LEENA TAB 7/9/5	05186247106	Norethindrone	0.5/1.0/0.5	Estradiol	35	Mayne Pharma
TriPhasic	TRI-NORINYL TAB WALLETTE 7/9/5	05186247003	Norethindrone	0.5/1.0/0.5	Estradiol	35	Mayne Pharma
TriPhasic	NORG-ETH ESTR0.18/0.03	68462056529	Norgestimate	0.18/0.215/0.25	Estradiol	35	Glenmark Generics
TriPhasic	TRI-EST 35+180/215/250 3X28SAN	00781406015	Norgestimate	0.18/0.215/0.25	Estradiol	35	Sandoz
TriPhasic	ORTHO TRI-CYCLEN	50458019115	Norgestimate	0.18/0.215/0.25	Estradiol	35	JOM Ortho
TriPhasic	TRINESSA TAB 0.18/0.215/0.25	52544024828	Norgestimate	0.18/0.215/0.25	Estradiol	35	Actavis (Watson)
TriPhasic	TRI-PREVIF 0.18/0.35MGQ/P	00603766317	Norgestimate	0.18/0.215/0.25	Estradiol	35	Qualitest
TriPhasic	TRI-SPRINTEC TAB 0.18/0.215/0.25	00555901858	Norgestimate	0.18/0.215/0.25	Estradiol	35	Teva
TriPhasic	TRI-LO SPRINTEC (EE\NORGE) TAB 3X28	00093214062	Norgestimate	0.18/0.215/0.25	Estradiol	35	Teva
TriPhasic	TRI-LN TB.18MG/.035MG6X28NSTR@	16714036304	Norgestimate	0.18/0.215/0.25	Estradiol	35	NorthStar Rx LLC
TriPhasic Lo	ORTHO TRI-CYCLEN LO TAB	50458025115	Norgestimate	0.18/0.215/0.25	Estradiol	25	JOM Ortho
TriPhasic Lo	NORGESTIMATE AND ETHINYL ESTRADIOL TABLETS	17478026106	Norgestimate	0.18/0.215/0.25	Estradiol	25	Akorn
TriPhasic Lo	NORGESTIMATE AND ETHINYL ESTRADIOL TABLETS	68462071929	Norgestimate	0.18/0.215/0.25	Estradiol	25	Glenmark Generics
TriPhasic Lo	TRI-LO-ESTARYLLA 215 + 25 mcg 84 KIT US	00781406215	Norgestimate	0.18/0.215/0.25	Estradiol	25	Sandoz

QuadPhasic							
QuadPhasic	NATAZIA TAB	50419040903	Dienogestrel	2 and 3	Estradiol Valerate	1, 2, and 3	Bayer HC
Extended Cycle	QUARTETTE (TM) TRADE 91	51285043165	Levonorgestrel	0.15	Estradiol	2, 2.5, 3, & 1	Teva
Monophasiac with levomeolate, calcium							
Combinations	SAFYRAL TAB 3mg / 0.03 mg B vitamin 451mcg	50419040303	Drospirenone	3mg	Estradiol w/Levomefolate Calcium 451 mcg	0.03	Bayer HC
Combinations	BEYAZ TAB (drsp®) 3 mg/20mcg a B vitamin,451 mcg	50419040703	Drospirenone	3mg	Estradiol w/Levomefolate Calcium 451	0.02	Bayer HC
Extended Cycle							
Extended Cycle	AMETHIA TB 0.15/0.03MG	51862004791	Levonorgestrel	0.15	Estradiol	30	Mayne Pharma
Extended Cycle	CAMRESE TAB 2X91	00093313482	Levonorgestrel	0.15	Estradiol	30	Teva
Extended Cycle	ASHLYNA.15MG/.03MG TB GLEN2X91	68462064693	Levonorgestrel	0.15	Estradiol	30	Glenmark Generics
Extended Cycle	DAYSEE TB.15MG/.03MG 2X91	68180084613	Levonorgestrel	0.15	Estradiol	30	Lupin Pharma
Extended Cycle	SEASONIQUE EC TAB 2X91	51285008787	Levonorgestrel	0.15	Estradiol	30	Teva
Extended Cycle	LEVONORG+ESTR TAB LUPI 3X91	68180084313	Levonorgestrel	0.15	Estradiol	30	Lupin Pharma
Extended Cycle	JOLESSA 91DAY OC PK	00555912366	Levonorgestrel	0.15	Estradiol	30	Teva
Extended Cycle	LEVONOR-ETH ESTRAD 0.15-0.03	68462067295	Levonorgestrel	0.15	Estradiol	30	Glenmark Pharmaceuticals
Extended Cycle	LEVONOR-ETH ESTRAD 0.15-0.03	00378728153	Levonorgestrel	0.15	Estradiol	30	Mylan Pharmaceuticals Inc
Extended Cycle	QUASENSE TB 0.15/0.03	52544096691	Levonorgestrel	0.15	Estradiol	30	Actavis (Watson)
Extended Cycle	LEVONOR-ETH ESTRA 0.09-0.02 MG	68462063729	Levonorgestrel	0.09	Estradiol	20	Glenmark Pharmaceuticals
Extended Cycle	AMETHYST TAB 90/20MCG	52544029528	Levonorgestrel	0.9	Estradiol	20	Actavis (Watson)
Extended Cycle	LOSEASONIQUE TAB 0 .1-0.02MG 2X91	51285009287	Levonorgestrel	0.1	Estradiol	20	Teva
Extended Cycle	CAMRESE LO TAB 2X91	00093614882	Levonorgestrel	0.1	E. Estradiol	20	Teva
Extended Cycle	LEVONORG+ESTR TAB LUPI 2X91@	68180084813	Levonorgestrel	0.1	E. Estradiol	20	Lupin Pharma
Extended Cycle	AMETHIA LO 0.1/0.02/0.01MG	5186204591	Levonorgestrel	0.1	Estradiol	20	Mayne Pharma
Progestogen Only Contraceptives (Oral)							
Progestogen Only Contraceptives (Oral)	HEATHER TAB 0.35MG	68462030329	Norethindrone	0.35	None		Glenmark Generics
Progestogen Only Contraceptives (Oral)	NORETHINDR TAB 0.35MG	68462030529	Norethindrone	0.35	None		Glenmark Generics
Progestogen Only Contraceptives (Oral)	NORETHINDR 0.35MG TAB	00378727253	Norethindrone	0.35	None		Mylan
Progestogen Only Contraceptives (Oral)	NORETHIN TAB 0.35MG MYL 3X28@	00378729253	Norethindrone	0.35	None		Mylan
Progestogen Only Contraceptives (Oral)	NORETHINDR TAB 0.35MG	68180087613	Norethindrone	0.35	None		Lupin Pharma
Progestogen Only Contraceptives (Oral)	JENCYCLA TAB 0.35MG LUPI 3	68180087713	Norethindrone	0.35	None		Lupin Pharma
Progestogen Only Contraceptives (Oral)	NORLYRO 0.35MG TB RAN BP 6X28@	51660012786	Norethindrone	0.35	None		Ranbaxy
Progestogen Only Contraceptives (Oral)	CAMILA TAB 0.35MG	00555071558	Norethindrone	0.35	None		Teva
Progestogen Only Contraceptives (Oral)	ERRIN TAB 0.35MG	00555034458	Norethindrone	0.35	None		Teva
Progestogen Only Contraceptives (Oral)	DEBLITANE TAB .35MG 168 NSTR@	16714044004	Norethindrone	0.35	None		NorthStar Rx LLC
Progestogen Only Contraceptives (Oral)	SHAROBEL TAB .35MG 6X28 NSTR@	16714044104	Norethindrone	0.35	None		NorthStar Rx LLC
Progestogen Only Contraceptives (Oral)	JOLIVETTE TAB 0.35MG	52544089228	Norethindrone	0.35	None		Actavis (Watson)
Progestogen Only Contraceptives (Oral)	ORTHO MICRONOR TB DIALPAK	50458019416	Norethindrone	0.35	None		JOM Ortho
Progestogen Only Contraceptives (Oral)	NOR-Q.D. TAB 0.35MG	52544023528	Norethindrone	0.35	None		Actavis (Watson)
Progestogen Only Contraceptives (Oral)	NORA-BE TAB 0.35MG	52544062928	Norethindrone	0.35	None		Actavis (Watson)
Progestogen Only Contraceptives (Oral)	LYZA 0.35 MG TABLET	50102010048	Norethindrone	0.35	None		Afaxys, Inc.

Emergency							
Emergency	**PLAN B ONE-STEP 1.5mg (single tablet dose) - OTC Clinic PK**	**51285014619**	Levonorgestrel	1.5	None		Teva
Emergency	PLAN B ONE-STEP 1.5mg (single tablet dose) non-clam shell - OTC	51285016288	Levonorgestrel	1.5	None		Teva
Emergency	**Opcicon™ One-Step**	**62756071860**	Levonorgestrel	1.5	None		Sun Pharmaceuticals
Emergency	MY WAY TAB 1.5MG GAVI 1@	43386062230	Levonorgestrel	1.5	None		Gavis Pharmaceutical
Emergency	REACT 1.5 MG TABLET	64679005002	Levonorgestrel	1.5	None		Wockhardt
Emergency	NEXT CHOICE TAB 1.5MG	52544006554	Levonorgestrel	1.5	None		Actavis (Watson)
Emergency	LEVONORGESTREL 0.75 MG TABLET	45802084054	Levonorgestrel	0.75	None		Perrigo Pharmaceuticals Company
Emergency	ECONTRA EZ 1.5 MG TABLET	50102011112	Levonorgestrel	1.5	None		Afaxys, Inc.
Emergency	FALLBACK SOLO 1.5 MG TABLET	68180085313	Levonorgestrel	1.5	None		Lupin Pharmaceuticals
Emergency	ELLA 30 MG TABLET	50102091101	Ulipristal Acetate	30	None		Afaxys, Inc.
Injectible DMPA							
Injectible DMPA	**Medroxyprogesterone Depo-SubQ Pro 104 PFS**	**00009470913**	**Progesterone**	**104**	**None**		**Pfizer**
Injectible DMPA	Medroxyprogesterone 150 MG/ML PFS	59762453802	Progesterone	150	None		Greenstone
Injectible DMPA	DEPO-PROVERA SYRDSP 150MG/ML 1	00009737611	Progesterone	150	None		Pfizer
Injectible DMPA	Medroxyprogesterone 150 MG/ML Vial	59762453701	Progesterone	150	None		Greenstone
Injectible DMPA	Depo-Provera 150 MG/ML Vial	00009074630	Progesterone	150	None		Pfizer
Injectible DMPA	Medroxyprogesterone 150 MG/ML Vial	59762453702	Progesterone	150	None		Greenstone
Injectible DMPA	Depo-Provera 150 MG/ML Vial	00009074635	Progesterone	150	None		Pfizer
IUD							
IUD's, NON-HORMONAL	**Paragard T 380A Intrauterine Copper Device - 10 year**	**51285020401**	**Spermicide**				**Teva - ICS/Paragard**
IUD's	Mirena IUS DS - 5 year device	50419042301	Levonorgestrel	52		20/day	Bayer
IUD's	Skyla - 3 year device	50419042201	Levonorgestrel	13.5			Bayer
IUD's	Kyleena - 5 year device	5041942401	Levonorgestrel	19.5			Bayer
IUD's	Nexplanon	00052433001	Etonogestrel	68			Merck
IUD's	Nexplanon	00052027401	Etonogestrel	68			Merck
IUD's	Liletta 52 mg (IUD) Single Handed Inserter	00023585801					Allergan
IUD's	Liletta 52 mg (IUD)	52544003554	Levonorgestrel	52			Allergan
Patch							
Patches	XULANE NORELGES TDS MYL CT3@	00378334053	Norelgestromin	6.0	E. Estradiol	0.75 mg	Mylan

Department of Public Health, Office of Pharmacy, September 6, 2017

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Legal References

LEGAL REFERENCES O.C.G.A. § 43-34-23 - Delegation of authority to nurse or physician assistant to order or dispense drugs, medical treatments or diagnostic studies. The nurse protocol statute law may be accessed online at http://www.lexisnexis.com/hottopics/gacode/Default.asp

Rules of Georgia Board of Nursing: Regulation 410-11-.13 and 410-11-.14 (Advanced Practice Registered Nurse Protocols). Georgia Board of Nursing Laws, Rules, Regulations and Policies may be accessed online at http://sos.ga.gov/index.php/licensing/plb/45

Rules of Georgia State Board of Pharmacy: Chapter 480-30, Dispensing of Drugs under Authority of Job Description or Nurse Protocol: 480-30-.01-.07 Georgia Board of Pharmacy Policies and Laws may be accessed online at http://gbp.georgia.gov/lawspolicies-rules

O.C.G.A. § 26-4-130 – Dispensing drugs; compliance with labeling and packaging requirements; records available for inspection by board may be accessed on line at http://gbp.georgia.gov/laws-policies-rules

O.C.G.A. § 43-26-5 - Georgia Registered Professional Nurse Practice Act: General Powers and responsibilities of board may be accessed on line at http://www.lexisnexis.com/hottopics/gacode/Default.asp OR http://sos.ga.gov/index.php/licensing/plb/45

O.C.G.A. § 43-34-103 (Physician Assistant Act) - may be accessed on line at http://www.lexisnexis.com/hottopics/gacode/Default.asp

O.C.G.A. § 43-26-1 Georgia Registered Professional Nurse Practice Act may be accessed on line at http://sos.ga.gov/index.php/licensing/plb/45 OR http://sos.ga.gov/PLB/acrobat/Forms/38%20Reference%20-20Nurse%20Practice%20Act.pdf